



Smithsonian Institution  
Scholarly Press

SMITHSONIAN CONTRIBUTIONS TO BOTANY • NUMBER 94



# Marine Algae of the Northern Gulf of California: Chlorophyta and Phaeophyceae

*James N. Norris*

## **SERIES PUBLICATIONS OF THE SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION**

Emphasis upon publication as a means of “diffusing knowledge” was expressed by the first Secretary of the Smithsonian. In his formal plan for the Institution, Joseph Henry outlined a program that included the following statement: “It is proposed to publish a series of reports, giving an account of the new discoveries in science, and of the changes made from year to year in all branches of knowledge.” This theme of basic research has been adhered to through the years by thousands of titles issued in series publications under the Smithsonian imprint, commencing with Smithsonian Contributions to Knowledge in 1848 and continuing with the following active series:

Smithsonian Contributions to Anthropology  
Smithsonian Contributions to Botany  
Smithsonian Contributions to History and Technology  
Smithsonian Contributions to the Marine Sciences  
Smithsonian Contributions to Museum Conservation  
Smithsonian Contributions to Paleobiology  
Smithsonian Contributions to Zoology

In these series, the Institution publishes small papers and full-scale monographs that report on the research and collections of its various museums and bureaus. The Smithsonian Contributions Series are distributed via mailing lists to libraries, universities, and similar institutions throughout the world.

Manuscripts submitted for series publication are received by the Smithsonian Institution Scholarly Press from authors with direct affiliation with the various Smithsonian museums or bureaus and are subject to peer review and review for compliance with manuscript preparation guidelines. General requirements for manuscript preparation are on the inside back cover of printed volumes. For detailed submissions requirements and to review the “Manuscript Preparation and Style Guide for Authors,” visit the Submissions page at [www.scholarlypress.si.edu](http://www.scholarlypress.si.edu).

# Marine Algae of the Northern Gulf of California: Chlorophyta and Phaeophyceae

*James N. Norris*



Smithsonian Institution  
Scholarly Press

WASHINGTON D.C.  
2010

## ABSTRACT

Norris, James N. Marine Algae of the Northern Gulf of California: Chlorophyta and Phaeophyceae. *Smithsonian Contributions to Botany*, number 94, x + 276 pages, 109 figures, 2010. — The present treatment constitutes a taxonomic study of the green and brown benthic marine algae currently known in the northern Gulf of California. In all, 133 species were found: 4 classes, 7 orders, 13 families, 20 genera, and 63 species of Chlorophyta and 9 orders, 15 families, 26 genera, and 70 species of Phaeophyceae. The systematic account is a guide to the identification of marine algae from the northern Gulf of California, with the accepted name, keys, and descriptions of the orders, families, genera, and species. The date, place, and author(s) of valid publication of each taxon are cited. The current name for each species is given along with its basionym, type locality, synonyms, relevant taxonomic studies, habitat, and distribution in the Gulf of California and in the Pacific Ocean. Illustrations are provided for most species. A remarks section includes additional information on taxonomy, nomenclature, ecology, and/or other problems or facts of interest. In addition to reviewing the taxonomic phycological literature pertinent to the Gulf of California and Pacific México, new records and distribution extensions are given. Four new sections of *Sargassum* subgen. *Sargassum* are proposed: *S.* sect. *herporhizum* E. Y. Dawson ex J. N. Norris, *S.* sect. *johnstonii* E. Y. Dawson ex J. N. Norris, *S.* sect. *lapazeanum* E. Y. Dawson ex J. N. Norris, and *S.* sect. *sinicola* E. Y. Dawson ex J. N. Norris; five new combinations are made: *Desmarestia munda* subsp. *mexicana* (E. Y. Dawson) J. N. Norris, *Epicladia condensata* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) J. N. Norris, *Epicladia mexicana* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) J. N. Norris, *Hinckesia bryantii* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) J. N. Norris, and *Sargassum sinicola* subsp. *camouii* J. N. Norris et Yensen. One new species, *Sporochnus neushulii* J. N. Norris, is described.

Cover images, left to right: Figures 55, 37, and 79A (details).

---

Published by Smithsonian Institution Scholarly Press  
P.O. Box 37012, MRC 957  
Washington, D.C. 20013-7012  
www.scholarlypress.si.edu

### Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Norris, James N.

Marine algae of the northern Gulf of California: Chlorophyta and Phaeophyceae / James N. Norris.  
p. cm. — (Smithsonian contributions to botany ; no. 94)

Includes bibliographical references and index.

1. Marine algae—Mexico—California, Gulf of. I. Title. II. Series: Smithsonian contributions to botany ; no. 94.

QK571.9.C35N67 2010

579.8'8091641—dc22

2009046617

ISSN: (print) 0081-024X; (online) 1938-2812

∞ The paper used in this publication meets the minimum requirements of the American National Standard for Permanence of Paper for Printed Library Materials Z39.48-1992.

# Contents

---

LIST OF FIGURES	vii
INTRODUCTION	1
General Oceanographic Features of the Gulf of California	3
General Features of the Marine Flora of the Northern Gulf of California	7
Historical Review of Marine Botanical Exploration of the Gulf of California	13
Current Study	16
PART I: GREEN ALGAE	19
CHLOROPHYTA	19
ULVOPHYCEAE	20
Ctenocladales	21
Uvellaceae	21
<i>Entocladia</i> Reinke	22
<i>Epicladia</i> Reinke	25
<i>Stromatella</i> Kornmann et Sahling	26
<i>Uvella</i> P. Crouan et H. Crouan	28
Phaeophilales	30
Phaeophilaceae	30
<i>Phaeophila</i> Hauck	30
Ulvales	31
Ulvaceae	31
<i>Ulva</i> Linnaeus	32
CLADOPHOROPHYCEAE	49
Cladophorales	49
Cladophoraceae	50
<i>Chaetomorpha</i> Kützing	50
<i>Cladophora</i> Kützing	54
<i>Rhizoclonium</i> Kützing	64

Siphonocladales sensu stricto	67
Boodleaceae	67
<i>Cladophoropsis</i> Børgesen	68
<i>Phyllodictyon</i> J. E. Gray	70
Siphonocladaceae	74
<i>Ernodesmis</i> Børgesen	74
Valoniaceae	75
<i>Valoniopsis</i> Børgesen	75
BRYOPSIDOPHYCEAE	77
Bryopsidales	77
Bryopsidineae	78
Bryopsidaceae	78
<i>Bryopsis</i> J. V. Lamouroux	79
Derbesiaceae	82
<i>Derbesia</i> Solier	82
<i>Halicystis</i> -phase	85
Codiaceae	85
<i>Codium</i> Stackhouse	86
Halimedineae	92
Caulerpaceae	94
<i>Caulerpa</i> J. V. Lamouroux	94
Halimedaceae	98
<i>Halimeda</i> J. V. Lamouroux	99
DASYCLADOPHYCEAE	101
Dasycladales	101
Polyphysaceae	102
<i>Acetabularia</i> J. V. Lamouroux	102
PART II: BROWN ALGAE	105
STRAMENOPILES	105
PHAEOPHYCEAE	106
Ishigeales	108
Ishigeaceae	108
<i>Ishige</i> Yendo	108
Sphacelariales sensu stricto	111
Sphacelariaceae	111
<i>Sphacelaria</i> Lyngbye in Hornemann	111
Dictyotales	117
Dictyotaceae	117
<i>Dictyopteris</i> J. V. Lamouroux	119
<i>Dictyota</i> J. V. Lamouroux	122
<i>Padina</i> Adanson	133
<i>Rugulopteryx</i> De Clerck et Coppejans	141
<i>Spatoglossum</i> Kützing	142
Desmarestiales	144
Desmarestiaceae	144
<i>Desmarestia</i> J. V. Lamouroux	145

Sporochnales	148
Sporochnaceae	150
<i>Sporochnus</i> C. Agardh	150
Ralfsiales*	155
Ralfsiaceae	155
<i>Hapterophycus</i> Setchell et N. L. Gardner in Setchell	156
<i>Ralfsia</i> Berkeley in J. E. Smith et J. C. Sowerby	157
Cutleriales	161
Cutleriaceae	162
<i>Cutleria</i> Greville	162
Ectocarpales	165
Acinetosporaceae	166
<i>Feldmannia</i> Hamel	167
<i>Hincksia</i> J. E. Gray	168
Chnoosporaceae	171
<i>Chnoospora</i> J. Agardh	172
Chordariaceae	174
<i>Hecatonema</i> Sauvageau	174
<i>Nemacystus</i> Derbès et Solier	176
<i>Streblonema</i> Derbès et Solier	177
Ectocarpaceae	180
<i>Ectocarpus</i> Lyngbye	180
Pylaiellaceae	186
<i>Pylaiella</i> Bory de Saint-Vincent	186
Leathesiaceae**	187
<i>Leathesia</i> S. F. Gray	187
Scytosiphonaceae	189
<i>Colpomenia</i> (Endlicher) Derbès et Solier	189
<i>Compsonema</i> Kuckuck	194
<i>Hydroclathrus</i> Bory de Saint-Vincent	195
<i>Rosenvingea</i> Børgesen	196
Fucales	199
Sargassaceae	200
<i>Sargassum</i> C. Agardh	200
Excluded Records of Phaeophyceae	219
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS	221
APPENDIX 1: LIST OF NEW TAXA AND COMBINATIONS	225
APPENDIX 2: ENDEMIC TAXA OF THE GULF OF CALIFORNIA THAT OCCUR IN THE NORTHERN GULF	227
APPENDIX 3: ALGAL SPECIMENS ILLUSTRATED: SPECIES LOCALITY INFORMATION AND HERBARIUM	229
REFERENCES	235
INDEX OF SCIENTIFIC NAMES	271

\* Contributed by Daniel León Álvarez and James N. Norris.

\*\* Contributed by Luis E. Aguilar-Rosas, Raúl Aguilar-Rosas, and James N. Norris.





# Figures

---

1. <i>Gemini V</i> photograph of northern Gulf of California	2
2. Map of the northern Gulf of California, Mexico	4
3. Summer intertidal marine flora, Puerto Peñasco	8
4. Winter intertidal marine flora, Puerto Peñasco	9
5. <i>Colpomenia sinuosa</i> and <i>Codium simulans</i>	11
6. Intertidal zonation, low tide, Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda	12
7. E. Yale Dawson (left) and Palmer T. Beaudette during 1959 expedition to Pacific Mexico and Central America	15
8. E. Yale Dawson preparing for collecting dive during 1958 cruise on M/V <i>Stella Polaris</i> ; collecting subtidal algae in Costa Rica, 1959	15
9. <i>Entocladia marchantiae</i> , <i>E. polysiphoniae</i> , <i>Entocladia</i> sp., and <i>E. viridis</i>	24
10. <i>Epicladia condensata</i> and <i>E. mexicana</i>	26
11. <i>Stromatella monostromatica</i> epiphytic on <i>Polysiphonia</i>	27
12. <i>Uvella lens</i> and <i>U. setchellii</i> epiphytes on <i>Cladophora</i>	29
13. <i>Ulva</i> anatomy: diagrammatic transections of <i>Ulva</i> sect. <i>ulva</i> and <i>Ulva</i> sect. <i>enteromorpha</i>	31
14. <i>Ulva californica</i> habits, typical forms found in the northern Gulf	35
15. <i>Ulva lactuca</i> habit	36
16. <i>Ulva lobata</i> habit	37
17. <i>Ulva nematoidea</i> habits	38
18. <i>Ulva rigida</i> habit	40
19. <i>Ulva acanthophora</i> habit and close-up	42
20. <i>Ulva clathrata</i> habit	43
21. <i>Ulva flexuosa</i> lower thallus and close-up	45
22. <i>Ulva intestinalis</i> : cluster of tubular thalli	47
23. <i>Ulva linza</i> : three blades, characteristically unbranched	48
24. <i>Chaetomorpha antennina</i> and <i>C. aerea</i>	52
25. <i>Chaetomorpha bangioides</i> and <i>C. antennina</i>	53

26. <i>Cladophora albida</i> and <i>C. tiburonensis</i>	56
27. <i>Cladophora columbiana</i> and <i>C. macdougalii</i>	57
28. <i>Cladophora graminea</i>	58
29. <i>Cladophora hesperia</i>	59
30. <i>Cladophora microcladioides</i> branching patterns	61
31. <i>Rhizoclonium tortuosum</i> , terminal portions of filaments	66
32. <i>Cladophoropsis gracillima</i> , drawings of type specimen	69
33. <i>Phyllocladon pulcherrimum</i> axis with well-developed open reticulate fronds	71
34. <i>Phyllocladon robustum</i> variation in habits	73
35. <i>Ernodesmis verticillata</i> , upper portion showing successive series of whorled branches	75
36. <i>Valoniopsis hancockii</i> and <i>V. pachynema</i>	77
37. <i>Bryopsis pennata</i> showing featherlike fronds	81
38. <i>Derbesia marina</i> filamentous sporophyte	84
39. <i>Halicystis</i> -phase globose gametophytes, epiphytic on articulated coralline <i>Amphiroa</i>	85
40. <i>Codium amplivesiculatum</i> , habit of large specimen	88
41. Utricles of <i>Codium</i> species: <i>C. amplivesiculatum</i> , <i>C. brandegeei</i> , <i>C. simulans</i>	89
42. <i>Codium brandegeei</i> , habit of “ <i>C. macdougalii</i> -form”	90
43. <i>Codium simulans</i> habit	92
44. <i>Codium</i> sp. 1 specimen somewhat similar to “ <i>Codium cuneatum</i> -form” of <i>C. simulans</i>	93
45. <i>Caulerpa mexicana</i> f. <i>pectinata</i> habit	95
46. <i>Caulerpa sertularioides</i> habits	97
47. <i>Caulerpa vanbosseae</i> habits	98
48. <i>Halimeda discoidea</i> habit, surface view and transection	100
49. <i>Acetabularia caliculus</i> cluster of thalli and gametangial rays	103
50. <i>Ishige sinicola</i> , habit variation and transection	110
51. <i>Sphacelaria rigidula</i> apical region and propagules	113
52. <i>Sphacelaria californica</i> and <i>S. hancockii</i> propagules	115
53. <i>Sphacelaria tribuloides</i> apical region and propagules	117
54. Northern Gulf of California Dictyotaceae: diagrammatic illustrations of apical region and transections of <i>Dictyota</i> , <i>Rugulopteryx</i> , <i>Dictyopteris</i> , <i>Spatoglossum</i> , and <i>Padina</i>	120
55. <i>Dictyopteris undulata</i> habit with prominent midrib	121
56. <i>Dictyota conrescens</i> habits of isotype and Gulf specimens	124
57. <i>Dictyota coriacea</i> habit	125
58. <i>Dictyota crenulata</i> habit and close-up showing characteristic dentate margins	127
59. <i>Dictyota dichotoma</i> var. <i>intricata</i> habit variations	129
60. <i>Dictyota flabellata</i> habit	130
61. <i>Dictyota stolonifera</i> thalli with basal stolons	131
62. <i>Dictyota vivesii</i> habit	132
63. <i>Padina caulescens</i> blades above long flat stipes	135
64. <i>Padina crispata</i> habit and upper, lower sides of blade	136
65. <i>Padina durvillei</i> , leathery flabellate blades	137
66. <i>Padina gymnospora</i> blades	139

67. <i>Padina mexicana</i> var. <i>mexicana</i> blades forming rosettelike clusters	140
68. <i>Rugulopteryx okamurae</i> habit and transection	142
69. <i>Spatoglossum lanceolatum</i> , part of type specimen	143
70. <i>Spatoglossum subflabellatum</i> habit	144
71. <i>Desmarestia filamentosa</i> habit, specimen from the type locality	147
72. <i>Desmarestia filamentosa</i> , apex of branch and portion with developing opposite lateral branches	148
73. <i>Desmarestia munda</i> subsp. <i>mexicana</i> , main axis with lateral blades and primary blade with secondary blades	149
74. <i>Sporochnus anomalus</i> habit and branches with numerous stalked, tufted branchlets	151
75. <i>Sporochnus anomalus</i> branch with stalked receptacles and tufts of filaments	152
76. <i>Sporochnus neushulii</i> sp. nov. holotype: habit, tufted branchlets, and receptacles	154
77. <i>Hapterophycus anastomosans</i> holotype	157
78. <i>Ralfsia hancockii</i> , <i>R. confusa</i> , and <i>R. pacifica</i>	159
79. <i>Cutleria hancockii</i> gametophytes and sporophytes	164
80. <i>Feldmannia irregularis</i> , drawing of type specimen	167
81. <i>Hincksia granulosa</i> and <i>H. bryantii</i>	169
82. <i>Hincksia mitchelliae</i> filaments with sporangia	171
83. <i>Chnoospora pacifica</i> habit and close-ups	173
84. <i>Hecatonema streblonematoides</i> , upper portions of filaments with plurilocular gametangia	175
85. <i>Nemacystus brandegeei</i> habit, transection, and close-up	178
86. <i>Streblonema transfixum</i> , uniseriate filaments with terminal plurilocular structure	179
87. <i>Ectocarpus acutus</i> , filament portion showing barrel shape cells and acute apices	181
88. <i>Ectocarpus commensalis</i> , <i>E. gonodioides</i> , <i>E. hancockii</i> , and <i>E. sonorensis</i>	183
89. <i>Ectocarpus parvus</i> filament with plurilocular sporangia	185
90. <i>Leathesia nana</i> , several thalli on <i>Sargassum</i> blade, habits, and transection	188
91. <i>Colpomenia phaeodactyla</i> and <i>C. ramosa</i> habits	191
92. <i>Colpomenia sinuosa</i> and <i>C. tuberculata</i> habits	192
93. <i>Compsonema serpens</i> , erect and prostrate filaments	195
94. <i>Hydroclathrus clathratus</i> habit	196
95. <i>Rosenvingea floridana</i> habit and portion showing opposite branching	198
96. <i>Rosenvingea intricata</i> , compressed tubular branches narrowing toward tips	199
97. <i>Sargassum johnstonii</i> branch and habit	203
98. <i>Sargassum johnstonii</i> f. <i>gracile</i> , habit of isotype specimen	204
99. <i>Sargassum lapazeanum</i> habit and close-up	205
100. <i>Sargassum acinacifolium</i> branch and isotype specimen	206
101. <i>Sargassum macdougalii</i> habit and upper portion of axis	208

102. <i>Sargassum sonorensis</i> habit of young thallus	<b>209</b>
103. <i>Sargassum sinicola</i> subsp. <i>sinicola</i> habit	<b>211</b>
104. <i>Sargassum sinicola</i> subsp. <i>sinicola</i> habit	<b>212</b>
105. Comparison of <i>Sargassum sinicola</i> subsp. <i>sinicola</i> with <i>S. sinicola</i> subsp. <i>camouii</i>	<b>214</b>
106. <i>Sargassum sinicola</i> subsp. <i>camouii</i> habit, insert of conical holdfast	<b>215</b>
107. <i>Sargassum herporhizum</i> habit	<b>216</b>
108. <i>Sargassum herporhizum</i> thallus with basal rhizomes; upper portion of branch	<b>217</b>
109. <i>Sargassum brandegeei</i> habits	<b>218</b>

# Marine Algae of the Northern Gulf of California: Chlorophyta and Phaeophyceae

---

## INTRODUCTION

Spanish explorer Hernán Cortés described an island, “Baja California,” in a letter to the King of Spain (1524). Cortés’ account was based on reports of his ships’ captains who were exploring the Pacific Ocean (León-Portillo, 1972). It was still considered an island 10 years later when Cortés himself sailed into the southern region and established a colony at Santa Cruz in 1535 (later renamed La Paz by Sebastián Viscaíno in 1596) (Lindsay, 1983). In 1539 Cortés sent Francisco de Ulloa with three ships from Acapulco to explore northward along the west coast of Mexico (León-Portillo, 1995). During the expedition Francisco de Ulloa became the first nonnative to circumnavigate what he called the “Mar de Cortés” (Sea of Cortez) (Lindsay, 1983), revealing Baja California to be a peninsula and not an island. The Gulf of California has also been called “Mar Bermejo” (Vermilion Sea) for the reddish color given by the muddy Río Colorado waters flowing into the upper Gulf; it was not named, as generally assumed, for the reddish color of the plankton blooms (van Andel and Shor, 1964).

A structurally complex trough reaching nearly oceanic depths, the Gulf of California is a large evaporation basin (Roden, 1964) lying between the arid, mountainous Baja California peninsula on the west and the dry Sonoran and Sinaloan coasts of the Mexican mainland on the east (Figure 1) (Álvarez-Borrego, 1983, 2002). The Gulf of California is approximately 1400 km in length and narrow in width, varying from 150 to 200 km (average width is less than 166 km), and has a surface area of 258,593 km<sup>2</sup> (=99,843 mi<sup>2</sup>) (Brusca et al., 2005).

The Gulf is composed of five physiographic zones (Lavín and Marinone, 2003:figs. 1, 2): (Zone1) The entrance at the Gulf’s southern end, where the outer mouth extends from Cabo San Lucas (Baja California Sur) to Cabo Corrientes (Jalisco), is about 204 km wide, more than 3000 m deep, and in open communication with the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean. (2) The southern Gulf of California begins at the inner mouth from Cabo San Lucas to El Dorado (Sinaloa) and extends northward to the southern end of the Midriff Islands (Las Islas de la Cintura), and it has more oceanic conditions than zones 3 to 5 to the north. (3) The Midriff Islands have narrow channels and sill depths of 300–600 m (note that Ballenas Channel (Canal de Ballenas) is extraordinarily deep, with



---

FIGURE 1. Northern Gulf of California. *Gemini V* photograph taken by astronauts Gordon Cooper and Charles Conrad, 21 August 1965 (courtesy of NASA).

---

depths to 1600 m, and the Guaymas Basin, a geologically active spreading center with depths of 2000 m and hydrothermal vents, may be considered oceanographic provinces themselves). (4) The northern Gulf of California has continental shelf sea characteristics. (5) The upper Gulf of California, north of 31°N to the Río Colorado Delta, is very shallow, with depths less than 30 m.

For the purpose of this study, the Gulf of California was divided into halves near latitude 28°N (Figure 2), separated south of the Islas de la Cintura (Midriff Islands), which includes the Gulf's two largest islands, Isla Ángel de la Guarda and Isla Tiburón. The northern Gulf (Figures 1, 2), surveyed in this study, extends eastward from Bahía San Francisquito (Baja California) across the Gulf to Guaymas (Sonora) and northward to the Río Colorado. The area studied herein approximates the "Northern Gulf of California Faunal Region" of Brusca et al. (2005:fig. 9.1) and covers more than 60,000 km<sup>2</sup> (=24,000 mi<sup>2</sup>). The southern Gulf, as referred to herein, extends from Bahía San Francisquito across the Gulf to Guaymas and southward to Cabo San Lucas (tip of Baja California Sur) and southeast to Cabo Corrientes (Jalisco).

The semi-enclosed Gulf is divided into a series of basins and trenches separated from one another by transverse ridges (Shepard, 1950; Rusnak et al., 1964; Álvarez-Borrego, 1983). Allison (1964) reviewed the geology of the areas bordering the Gulf of California, and Lavín and Marinone (2003) provided an overview of its unique physical oceanographic features. Brusca (1980) summarized the tectonic origin of the Gulf, and more recent studies on the tectonic evolution of northwestern Mexico are in Johnson et al. (2003). Although earlier estimates of the age of the Gulf were up to 10 million years ago (Ma), the origin of the Gulf ("proto-Gulf") began in the late Miocene about 8 Ma, and by the early Pliocene, about 4 Ma, the Gulf was open to the Pacific Ocean (Carreño and Helenes, 2002).

The temperature-moderating effect of the Pacific Ocean upon the climate of the Gulf is greatly reduced by the series of mountain ranges that run the length of the Baja California peninsula (i.e., the Peninsular Ranges: Sierra Juárez, Sierra San Pedro Mártir, Tres Virgenes, Sierra de la Giganta, and Sierra de la Laguna). The mountains of Baja California, together with the Sierra Madre Occidental mountains of the mainland of western Mexico, isolate the Gulf's atmosphere topographically, thus creating a semi-enclosed Gulf in a meteorological as well as an oceanic sense (Badan-Dangon et al., 1991; Álvarez-Borrego, 2002). As a result of these barriers, the climate along the Gulf coasts of Baja California and Sonora is more continental than oceanic (Roden, 1964), with greater

extremes in temperature, hotter summers, and colder winters than on the Pacific (western) coast of the Baja California peninsula.

The effects of the surrounding deserts and their seasons influence ocean conditions in the northern Gulf and have a clear impact on its marine flora. For example, the harsh physical extremes in the upper Gulf are a naturally occurring seasonal disturbance that can induce algal mortality when conditions are beyond the physiological tolerance of a species. In the upper Gulf the benthic algal community is maintained in a subclimax condition by the strongly fluctuating environmental conditions (Littler and Littler, 1981).

#### GENERAL OCEANOGRAPHIC FEATURES OF THE GULF OF CALIFORNIA

The oceanography of the Gulf of California has been described by Roden (1964), van Andel and Shor (1964), Maluf (1983), Álvarez-Borrego (1983, 2002), Badan-Dangon (1998), and Lavín and Marinone (2003). Several oceanographic features make the Gulf unique among the semi-enclosed seas of similar latitude and size, most notably the strong tidal mixing, some of which is close to deep stratification (Lavín and Marinone, 2003). The climate of the Gulf of California can be depicted as two seasons: a midlatitude winter and a subtropical summer (Mosiño and García, 1974). A summary of the general meteorological, hydrographic, and oceanographic features of this unique body of water is given herein.

*Air Temperature:* The mean annual air temperature range increases from about 6°C at Cabo Corrientes to 18°C at the Río Colorado Delta. During winter the air temperatures are higher near the southern entrance and decrease to their lowest at the Gulf's northern end, while during summer the air temperatures shift to being lowest near the Gulf's southern entrance and highest at the northern end. The differences in air temperature between the east (Gulf) and west (Pacific) coasts of the Baja California peninsula in summer are large, sometimes over 10°C, while in winter the differences are small, about 2°C. Within the Gulf, air temperatures on its bordering coasts are usually the same at the same latitude. The water temperatures, are also generally equal to each other on both sides of the Gulf at the same latitude.

*Precipitation:* Generally, there is more rain on the east coast of the Gulf of California (Sonora and Sinaloa) than on its west coast (Baja California). With an annual rainfall of less than 10 cm, the northern Gulf is drier and more influenced by the surrounding desert than the

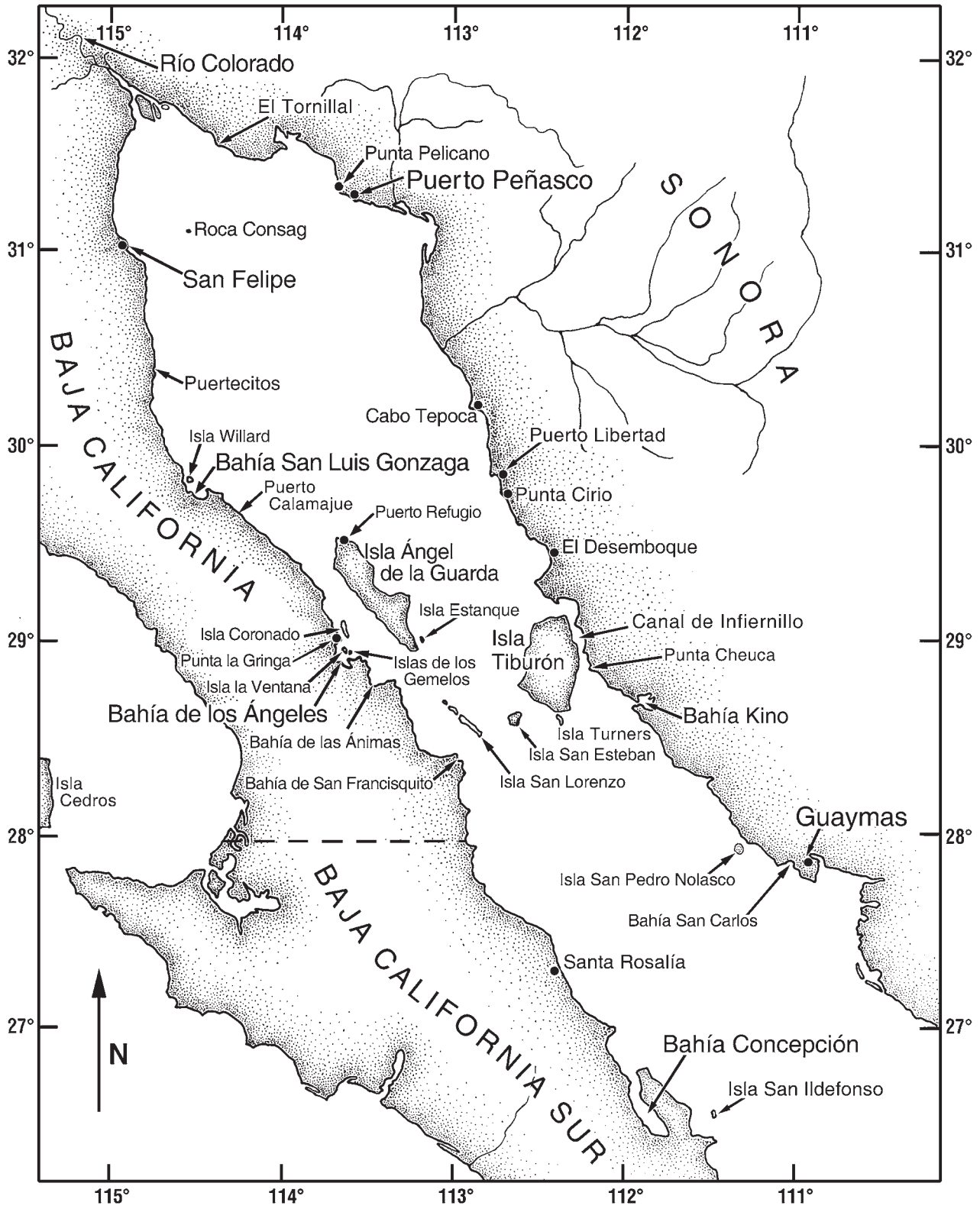


FIGURE 2. Map of the northern Gulf of California, Mexico (drawn by Alice R. Tangerini, National Museum of Natural History, Smithsonian Institution).



southeastern part of the Gulf, where the annual rainfall can be greater than 100 cm. From Isla Ángel de la Guarda and Isla Tiburón northward, rains occur mostly during winter, while south of the Midriff Islands the most rain usually occurs from June to October. The amount of rain on land increases with altitude, the mountains of the Baja California peninsula having an average rainfall of 25–75 cm/y. In contrast, the rainfall on the coasts is less than 10 cm/y. However, month-to-month variations can be large, and year-to-year variations can change by as much as a factor of seven. The number of rainy days decreases from an average of 60 days/y at Cabo Corrientes (Jalisco) to only 5 days/y along the Baja California and Sonora coasts of the central Gulf.

**Sediments:** The chief source of waterborne sediments to the Gulf was the Río Colorado until the construction of Hoover Dam was completed in 1936. When the Río Colorado ran free, this river alone contributed 50% of the total sediment brought to the Gulf annually, or about 600 m<sup>3</sup>/s (mean annual). After the construction of Hoover Dam, sediment from the Río Colorado dramatically decreased to only an average of about 120 m<sup>3</sup>/s (ranging from about 11 m<sup>3</sup>/s in October to 260 m<sup>3</sup>/s in January). Today, the combined diversion of waters by the Hoover Dam, Glenn Canyon Dam (completed in 1963), and other smaller dams in the United States and Mexico (e.g., Morelos Dam) has resulted in virtually no surface freshwater from the Río Colorado reaching the Gulf, except during winters with abundant rainfall or snowmelt or when water is released from the dams. Other rivers that contribute sediment and nutrients to the Gulf occur along its eastern coast: Río Concepción, Río Yaqui, and Río Mayo (Sonora); Río Fuerte, Río Sinaloa, Río Piaxtla, Río Presidio, and Río Baluarte (Sinaloa); and Río Grande de Santiago (Nayarit).

The sediment composition of these rivers is similar, being high in sulfate, sodium, and calcium ions, followed by bicarbonate, chlorides, and magnesium. Along with the waters of the Río Colorado, water from these ecologically important rivers has been increasingly put to use to support agriculture, ranching, and urban use by growing human populations, so that now little river water bearing sediments reaches the Gulf (Gilmartin and Revelante, 1978; Álvarez-Borrego, 1983). Dispersion of sediments in the northern Gulf is now mostly cross-basinal rather than long-basinal, suggesting dispersion is mainly controlled by oceanic forcing rather than fluvial processes (Carriquiry et al., 2001).

The loss of both sediments and freshwater to the upper Gulf has resulted in the loss or degradation of wetland, lagoon, and estuarine environments. These are

critical habitats for aquatic plants, birds, invertebrates, and spawning and nursery grounds for commercially important shrimp and fish, such as *Totoaba macdonaldi* Gilbert (Thomson et al., 2000). Habitat loss of their spawning and nursery grounds, along with overfishing and fishnet capture of juveniles (Guevara-Escamilla, 1973), and natural factors have had disastrous effects on totoaba populations, a Gulf-endemic species that once supported a commercially important fishery (Lercari and Chávez, 2007). While it is assumed or suspected that the loss of river water with its sediments and nutrients has also had an effect on the benthic marine flora, there have been no quantitative ecological temporal and spatial studies on the impact to the marine intertidal and subtidal benthic communities of the upper or northern Gulf.

**Evaporation:** In the coastal areas of the Gulf the mean annual rate of evaporation is 200–250 cm/y, with a minimum in winter and a maximum during summer. Evaporation is less in the open waters; e.g., it has been estimated to be 128 cm/y in the southern Gulf. As water evaporates, residual salts are concentrated in the remaining seawater, and as freshwater input and precipitation are both extremely low in the northern Gulf, the salinity of northern Gulf waters increases.

**Salinities:** In general, salinities within the Gulf of California are 1.0–2.0‰ greater than at comparable latitudes outside the Gulf (Bray, 1988a, 1988b). In the northern Gulf, where evaporation exceeds precipitation, salinities range from 35.3‰ to 37.2‰ (Lavín et al., 1998). These increases are related to the Gulf's geographical isolation from the Pacific Ocean and enhanced evaporation and higher water temperatures in the upper Gulf. Salinities greater than 36‰ are encountered locally (e.g., the Río Colorado Delta is now usually hypersaline, with salinities up to 39.0‰ in summer) and in semienclosed and shallow esteros (coastal lagoons) and bays of the northern Gulf (e.g., Bahía Cholla, Bahía de Adair, Bahía las Ánimas, and Bahía San Jorge) and in Bahía Concepción of the southern Gulf. In the upper Gulf, with no freshwater release from the Río Colorado, the salinities typically increase northwestward, ranging from 35.28‰ in October to over 38.50‰ in July (Álvarez-Borrego et al., 1973; Lavín et al., 1998; Álvarez-Borrego, 2002). In the southern third of the Gulf the offshore salinity, usually 34.6–35.8‰, is closer to that of oceanic waters. However, in the coastal areas of the southern Gulf it may be less than 34.6‰ during the rainy season, June to October.

**Winds:** The marked seasonal changes in the prevailing winds in the Gulf result from changes of atmospheric pressure in the vicinity of the Gulf and the channeling effect

of the mountain chains on both sides of the Gulf. Winds are northwesterly from November to May, typically with speeds of 8–12 m/s (meters per second). During the winter months, strong winds blow out of the north, sometimes for several days at a time, with wind speeds that gust 10–15 m/s (Bray and Robles, 1991). Southeasterly winds predominate from June to October, with mean speed of about 5 m/s (Badan-Dangon, 1998; Lavín and Marinone, 2003). During summer, the hot desert winds strongly influence the coastal marine systems of the upper Gulf.

In the northern Gulf, winds can be extremely variable and, as any fisherman or sailor of these waters knows, often unpredictable. Near the coast the land and sea breeze system prevails, with diurnal wind changes larger than annual ones. Sea breezes reach a maximum velocity in early afternoons and usually calm down after sunset. Land breezes are generally weaker, but mountain and valley winds predominate in the northern mountainous coasts.

*Storms:* Northwest gales occur in the northern Gulf from December to February and are particularly strong in the Ballenas Channel, between the mountainous Isla Ángel de la Guarda and the Gulf coast of Baja California. The southern Gulf has violent, short-duration storms, called chubascos, during the rainy season of June through October. Some of these may occasionally move northward.

Large tropical storms and hurricanes are generated in the eastern North Pacific off the southern coast of mainland Mexico, from June to November (mainly in September and October). These can either continue west or, although not often (Serra, 1971), turn north to northeast and enter the Gulf (Álvarez-Borrego, 1983), where they usually dissipate along the Sinaloa and Sonora coasts before reaching Isla Tiburón and Isla Ángel de la Guarda. However, those that do proceed up the Gulf, occasionally as far north as Arizona, can cause much damage and can be devastating to humans, but no short-term or long-term studies have been done on their ecological effects on the Gulf's marine communities (Álvarez-Borrego, 1983).

*Wave Action:* The seasonal winds in the Gulf of California drive ocean swells that influence the wave intensity. Wave action is characteristically stronger on the north sides of the islands and on coastal peninsulas. In general, wave action is much reduced on the Gulf of California coasts when compared to outer coasts of Pacific Mexico, except during large storms, such as chubascos, tropical storms, and hurricanes, when waves can be high and damaging, especially when in combination with high tides.

*Water Circulation:* Beier (1997) developed a model that showed a seasonal reversing gyre that forms in the

northern Gulf (Lavín et al., 1997). Typically, in the northern Gulf there is an anticyclonic (clockwise) circulation during winter and a cyclonic (counterclockwise) circulation during summer (Lepley et al., 1975; see Álvarez-Borrego, 2002:fig. 3.5), with two transitional periods (Carrillo and Palacios-Hernández, 2002). However, there are continuous changes throughout the year, and it is not always clearly one or the other (Álvarez-Borrego, 2002). The water masses of the Gulf of California have been reviewed by Bray and Robles (1991) and Badan-Dangon (1998).

*Tides:* Tides are a mixture of semidiurnal (twice a day) and diurnal (once a day) components. In the regions of the Gulf's entrance and in the upper Gulf and, to a lesser extent, in the southern Gulf and the northern Gulf, the semidiurnal tidal components are dominant, larger than the diurnal components. In the central Gulf, around Santa Rosalía, the diurnal tidal components dominate over the semi-diurnal components (Marinone and Lavín, 1997). The tidal range increases gradually from the Gulf entrance to Isla Tiburón and Isla Ángel de la Guarda, and then increases rapidly northward to the Río Colorado.

The lowest tides of the year are from February to April, and the highest are from July to September. The time of the daily high and low tides gets later as one proceeds north from the Gulf's entrance to the upper Gulf. The time difference is approximately 5.5 hours for high water and 6.0 hours for low water, resulting in high water at one end of the Gulf while it is low at the other (Roden, 1964). These tidal changes contribute to high water velocities in the central Gulf area, with the strongest tidal currents in the narrow channels between the large Midriff Islands and the adjacent coasts (e.g., Canal de Ballenas and Canal de Infiernillo; Figure 2). The speed of the currents is variable, dependent on the stage of the moon and prevailing winds. Current speeds increase from 3 cm/s at the Gulf's mouth to 60 cm/s at the head of the Gulf (Álvarez-Borrego, 2002:fig. 3.4). Tidal currents are strong in the narrow passages to shallow bays and estuaries and are especially notable in the narrow channels between the Midriff Islands and Gulf coasts, with speeds reported up to 3 m/s (=6 knots) in the Ballenas Channel (Álvarez-Sánchez et al., 1984).

The semidiurnal tidal amplitude in the region of the Gulf entrance is moderate, about 30 cm. In contrast, the tidal amplitude increases dramatically northward. During spring tides, vertical amplitude is greater than 4 m in the Midriff Islands, up to 7 m in the northern Gulf, and even more pronounced in the upper Gulf, greater than 9 m (Álvarez-Borrego, 2002). The difference between the semidiurnal tide and diurnal tide is also striking (Álvarez-Borrego, 2002). The amplitude of the diurnal tide slowly

increases northward to the upper Gulf to about twice that of the mouth of the Gulf.

The northern Gulf has some of the greatest tides in the world (Brusca et al., 2005). The large vertical amplitude covers and exposes vast areas and is especially pronounced at low tides in the shallow, low-angle sloping, mudflats, sandy beaches, and rocky reefs, tide pools, terraces, and platforms.

*Currents:* At the Gulf entrance (Cabo San Lucas to Cabo Corrientes) the surface current is variable. In winter, north of Cabo Corrientes, the wind-driven southward currents characterize surface circulation. During summer a northward current flowing along the mainland coast of western Mexico enters the Gulf at the central to eastern regions of the mouth (entrance) and continues north, while a southward current flows along the Gulf coast of Baja California (Roden, 1958; Granados-Gallegos and Schwartzlose, 1974). Tidal currents predominate north of Isla Tiburón. In the narrows between the Midriff Islands and adjacent coasts, they are often accompanied by rips and eddies, where currents of 1–3 m/s have been measured. The largest interannual variations in current patterns in the Gulf of California are due to the ENSO (El Niño–Southern Oscillation) phenomenon (Bray and Robles, 1991; Lavín and Marinone, 2003).

Net outflow of surface currents at the Gulf entrance is –10 cm/s in February, and net inflow is +21 cm/s in August. However, compensation must take place or sea level changes would take place. How that compensation occurs is not fully understood, but there are three hypotheses: (1) opposite flow at different levels (depths), (2) opposite flow along shores, or (3) a combination of both processes.

*Sea Temperature:* From April to September, the Gulf seawater is warmer than that of Pacific Baja California at 10 m depths, while from October to March their sea temperatures at 10 m are about the same.

Within the Gulf, diurnal fluctuations are greater at the surface and become more pronounced in the northern portions of the Gulf. The annual range of seawater temperatures is about 15°C at Río Colorado, in comparison to about 9°C at the Gulf's southern entrance. In the northern Gulf there are marked seasonal changes in coastal seawater temperatures. They are lowest in winter, 8°C–12°C, whereas in summer they are significantly higher, 30°C or more. The coldest sea surface temperatures occur where mixing is strongest, e.g., Canal de Ballenas–Canal de Salsipuedes (Martínez-Díaz de León et al., 2006; Marinone, 2007).

*Vertical Distribution of Water Properties:* The northern Gulf is relatively shallow; it has large seasonal and year-to-year variations of temperature and salinity in

the upper 150 m. The strong tidal components contributing to the vertical mixing, some of it close to deep stratification, make the Gulf unique from other semi-enclosed seas (Lavín and Marinone, 2003).

The thermocline in winter is almost isothermal, whereas in late summer, it is strongest, with the water temperature difference between the surface and 150 m depth approximately 14°C. During spring, salinities are higher along the Gulf's Baja California peninsula side than off the coast of Sonora, while in summer the highest salinities are in the central Gulf. Oxygen at the surface is 5.5 ml/L in April but decreases to 4.5 ml/L in August because of the increase in water temperature. At 150 m there is a slight salinity increase from spring to summer, despite the temperature increase and strong thermocline (Roden 1964). There may be a convective overturn in the upper Gulf (i.e., surface density exceeds the density of subsurface layers). This is possible because the density increases with decreasing temperature and increasing salinity, and because the lowest temperatures and highest salinities occur near the coastal regions of the upper Gulf.

*Upwelling and Downwelling:* Upwelling in the Gulf of California occurs along the Mexican mainland coast (e.g., Lluch-Cota, 2000) at the same time downwelling is occurring along the Baja California Gulf coast and vice versa. The dominant effects of atmospheric pressure, wind directions, and temperature cause this phenomenon.

The prevailing winds in the Gulf produce upwelling in some areas. In summer, southeasterly winds lead to upwelling and cooler temperatures along the Gulf side of the Baja California peninsula. The low temperatures along the lee side (east coast) of Isla Tiburón in winter are related to upwelling, caused by the prevailing northwesterly winds.

#### GENERAL FEATURES OF THE MARINE FLORA OF THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

The most conspicuous feature of the marine flora of the northern Gulf, especially to those familiar with the marine flora of the Pacific coast of North America, is the relatively smaller size of the algae present. This general impression is due mostly to the absence of large brown kelps (Laminariales) and Fucales other than *Sargassum*. Although the marine flora of the northern Gulf is rich in species (over 430 species recorded), the brown algal species of *Sargassum* (Fucales) and those of *Padina* (Dictyotales) compose the greatest portion of the biomass of fleshy macroalgae.

Largely influenced by its desert surroundings, the uniqueness of the northern Gulf is due, in part, to its



---

FIGURE 3. Summer marine flora. Intertidal platform with characteristic yellow-brown hue of summer flora, Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Mexico (July 1973).

---



---

FIGURE 4. Winter marine flora. Intertidal platform with the dark brown color of winter flora, Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Mexico (February 1973).

---

continental rather than oceanic climate, with wide air temperature variation between summer, 31.2°C–32.8°C (88°F–91°F), and winter, 10.0°C–11.1°C (50°F–52°F). The intertidal regions of the northern Gulf are subject to extreme tidal exposure during the low tide series: up to 4 m vertical amplitude in the Midriff Islands, as much as 7 m in Puerto Peñasco, and up to 10 m at the Río Colorado Delta. This tidal exposure subjects the intertidal algae and sea grasses to severe desiccation, high light intensity (solar burn), temperature extremes, and low surf action. The northern Gulf has a distinctive and diverse flora because of these unique variations of temperatures, tides, and water circulation, along with seasonally alternating desert conditions of winter cold and summer heat, which operate on a great diversity of protected and exposed shore environments, from estuaries, esteros (lagoons), shallow bays, intertidal mudflats, sand/rock, coquina limestone, caliche shell-hash, and rocky tidal platforms (Figures 3, 4), sandy and rocky shores (Figures 5B, 6), and subtidal reefs and sand plains.

While the benthic marine flora of the northern Gulf of California is largely subtropical/warm temperate, there are also some tropical and temperate elements. A high percentage, 19% of the 133 species of northern Gulf Chlorophyta and Phaeophyceae, are endemic species (see Appendix 2) (about 11% of the greens, 7 of the 63 species, and about 27% of the browns, 19 of the 70 species).

Dawson (1941, 1960c) observed that some of the prominent benthic algae of the northern Gulf of California are species also known in Japan. For example, the Japanese brown algae *Dictyopteris undulata* and *Dictyota coriacea* were possibly introduced as viable fragments in ballast water of Japanese fishing boats operating in the northern Gulf of California in the early 1900s (Dawson, 1960c, as “*Pachydictyon coriaceum*”). Ballast waters from Japan would have been dumped into Gulf waters, most likely as the catch of shrimp or fish was unloaded. Other species of marine algae, such as *Gracilaria textorii* and *Lomentaria hakodatensis*, with a similar Gulf of California–Japan distribution may have also been unintentionally transported by Japanese fishing boats as viable fragments, spores or zygotes, and subsequently introduced into the Gulf. It is also conceivable that these same boats may have inadvertently transported some Gulf algal species back to Japan along with their catch. Without any significant collections of the Gulf’s benthic macroalgae prior to 1921 (Setchell and Gardner, 1924a; Dawson, 1960c; Norris, 1976b), it is difficult to discern if this was the case. However, with current molecular analyses and systematic, phylogenetic, and phylogeographic studies (e.g., Gavio and Fredericq,

2002; Gurgel et al., 2004; De Clerck et al., 2006), it is now possible to test this hypothesis.

In the upper Gulf there is a strong seasonal turnover in species and their relative abundance, resulting in a pronounced alternation of a summer flora with a winter flora. At low tide, these seasonal changes are obvious to a novice observer who returns to the same locality at different seasons. An example of the marked contrast between the seasons is seen on the tidal platform at Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora (Figure 2). The marine flora of this region in summer (July) has a yellow-brown appearance (Figure 3). This color hue is caused by the turf-forming community of the mid intertidal zone, due mostly to *Chondrophycus paniculatus* (= *Laurencia paniculata*), which grows in association with *Porolithon sonorensis* (a crustose coralline that may be responsible as a cementing agent for the rock/shell hash material which comprises the tidal platform). In contrast, during winter (February), the tidal platform takes on its characteristic dark-brown color (Figure 4) because of the conspicuous ephemeral and annual brown algal species that grow, mostly epiphytically on and among the *Chondrophycus*. These are predominately the large, coarse, and wart-like *Colpomenia tuberculata*, the more delicate and smooth, but often convoluted, *C. sinuosa* (Figure 5A), the brown finger-like hollow sacs of *C. phaodactyla*; and the fan-shaped *Cutleria hancockii*.

Although usually not growing on the top of the Playa Estación platform, other perennials, such as species of *Sargassum* and *Padina*, also contribute to the dark-brown winter coloration. Occurring in the numerous tide pools (such as the large Cupleños Tide Pool, Playa Estación), tidal runoff areas, and crevices throughout the platform, these brown algae can obtain their largest sizes in winter to spring in these habitats. Some of the intertidal macroalgae can persist through the summer in these less-exposed habitats off the platform top.

*Midriff Island Environments:* There are more than 900 islands and islets in the Gulf of California (Carreño and Helenes, 2002; Brusca et al., 2005). The largest are the Midriff Islands (Islas de la Cintura) of the central Gulf (Figure 2), where large bathymetric gradients in combination with currents and tidal forces cause great volumes of water to accelerate in the narrow passages between the islands and the nearby coasts. Around the Midriff Islands, strong mixing and turbulence occur year round, advecting deep cool water with high nutrient concentrations to upper water layers, boosting biological productivity (Douglas et al., 2007). Isla Tiburón, the largest of the Gulf’s islands, is separated from mainland Sonora (Bahía Sargento to Bahía Kino) by the Infiernillo Channel (Canal de Infiernillo), and

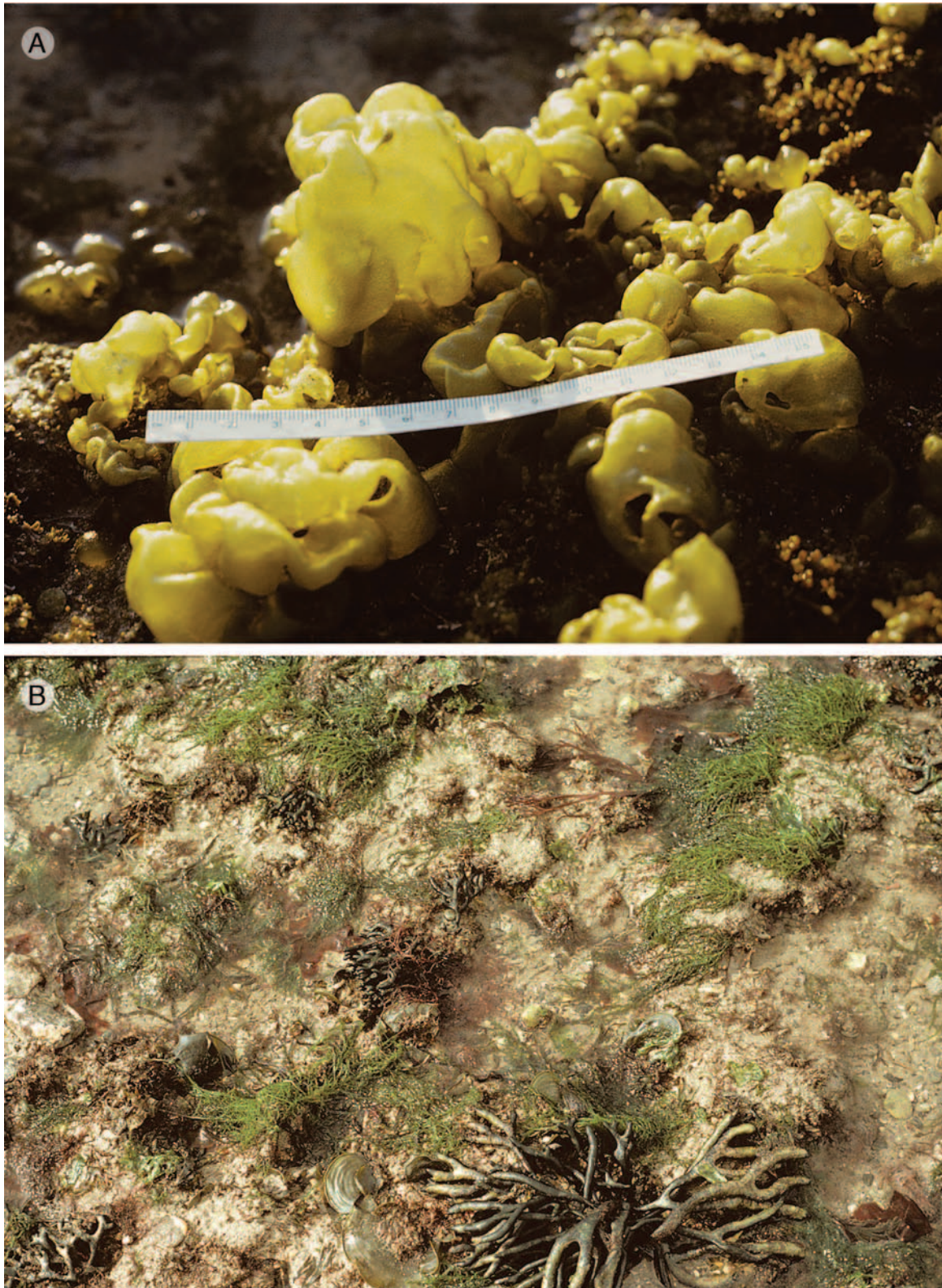


FIGURE 5. A. *Colpomenia sinuosa*, low intertidal platform, Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora (February 1974). B. *Codium simulans*, intertidal rock-sand flat at low tide, El Desemboque, Sonora, Mexico (April 1973).



---

FIGURE 6. Intertidal zonation, low tide at Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda, Mexico. High intertidal zone dominated by green algae, particularly *Ulva* species; mid to low intertidal zone dominated by large, dark brown *Sargassum johnstonii*, with scattered individuals of golden-brown species of *Colpomenia* (R/V *Dolphin* cruise, April 1974).

---



the second largest, Isla Ángel de la Guarda is separated from the Gulf coast of Baja California (Punta Bluff to Bahía de Los Ángeles), by the Ballenas Channel (Figure 2). The Ballenas Channel is characterized by strong deep-water currents near deep basins (800–1000 m depths) that create conditions resembling persistent upwelling (López et al., 2006) and provide sustained nutrient enrichment to the shallow upper water layers.

At Puerto Refugio, a protected bay on the north end of Isla Ángel de la Guarda (Figure 2), these conditions support abundant seaweed populations that along with other primary producers sustain an associated wealth of animal populations (e.g., invertebrates, fish, and marine mammals and bird and sea lion rookeries). The algal communities at Puerto Refugio are diverse and luxuriant (Figure 6), with some of the Gulf's macroalgal species reaching their largest size on the Midriff Islands. While most of the northern Gulf's marine flora is generally considered to be warm temperate to subtropical, the cooler, more stable subtidal water temperatures associated with the Ballenas Channel (López et al., 2006) influence the species composition of the marine flora of the Midriff Islands. For example, subtidal brown algal species of *Desmarestia* and *Sporochnus*, both with cool-temperate to cold-temperate affinities, have been found in the Gulf of California only in the Midriff Islands (Dawson, 1941, 1944; Norris and Bucher, 1976). Deep subtidal populations of *Desmarestia* and *Sporochnus*, although different species than those of the northern Gulf, have also been reported in the tropical northwest Pacific, off Necker Island (Northwest Hawaiian Islands [NWHI], Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument) by Abbott and Huisman (2003b, 2004).

Graham et al. (2007) presented a predictive model for kelp refugia in the tropics by identifying habitats where kelp (Phaeophyceae) could survive. While there is no evidence of kelps (i.e., Laminariales) in the northern Gulf, certain subtidal habitats of the Midriff Islands host populations of cold-water large brown algae, such as *Desmarestia*, that are often associated with kelps. Whether these are relic or pioneering populations, their island subtidal habitats are unique within the Gulf due to their stable cool, nutrient-rich waters and may serve as refugia (sensu Graham et al., 2007) for these ecologically and geographically isolated brown algae.

#### HISTORICAL REVIEW OF MARINE BOTANICAL EXPLORATION

January 1870 marked the collection of the first known scientific specimen of a marine alga from the Gulf of California when *Wurdemannia miniata* (Rhodophyta) was

obtained by Edward Palmer (McVaugh, 1956; Beatty, 1964; Lindsay, 1983), a professional plant collector and an early ethnobotanist, on the shore of Isla Carmen, off Loreto (Baja California Sur) (Dawson, 1944; Norris, 1976b). The next known algal collections, consisting mostly of specimens of *Sargassum*, came from the third expedition of the California Academy of Sciences (San Francisco) to the Gulf in 1890 (Dawson, 1944; Lindsay and Engstrand, 2002) and were collected by Townshend S. Brandegee (Setchell, 1928) and Walter E. Bryant (Fisher, 1905; Godínez-Ortega, 2008). M. Paul Hariot (1895) published the earliest account of some Gulf of California algae on the basis of a small collection of marine (mostly corallines) and freshwater algae obtained by Léon Diguët, a French chemical engineer who became interested in the natural history and ethnology of Baja California while employed at the Boleo mines in Santa Rosalía between 1888 and 1892 (Lindsay, 1955, 1983). His collections were of such interest to the Museum d'Histoire Naturelle (Paris) that he returned to Baja California as a field investigator and collector for the Paris museum from 1893 to 1913 (Godínez-Ortega, 2008). During his exploration, Diguët spent some time in La Paz and on Isla Espiritu Santo investigating the pearl fisheries then under French concession and used their facilities at La Paz to study the marine fauna.

The first marine algal collections from the northern Gulf were made in 1904 by Daniel T. MacDougal (Humphrey, 1961), while he collected for the New York Botanical Garden on a boat trip from Yuma, Arizona, to San Felipe, Baja California. Shortly thereafter, drift material was gathered in the southern Gulf at La Paz by Gastón L. Vives in 1911, which together with the San Felipe collections of MacDougal, were the basis for the first detailed study of several Gulf algae by Marshall A. Howe (1911; Setchell, 1938). Both of these collectors had species named for them by Howe (1911), i.e., *Cladophora macdougalii* and *Dictyota vivesii* and *Gracilaria vivesii*.

The expedition of the California Academy of Sciences to the Gulf of California in 1921 yielded extensive collections during the over 2914.5 km (= 1811 miles) covered by the schooner *Silver Gate* (Slevin, 1923). The marine algal specimens were collected by the botanist aboard, Ivan M. Johnston (Thomas, 1969), who was then a student of W. A. Setchell. These specimens comprised the largest part of the monograph of Gulf of California algae (1924a) by William A. Setchell (Drouet, 1943; Campbell, 1945; Papenfuss, 1976) and Nathaniel L. Gardner (Setchell, 1937c; Papenfuss, 1976). For Johnston's efforts, Setchell and Gardner (1924a) named nine species for him, including *Sargassum johnstonii*. Their study also incorporated

the 1917 collection of Dr. and Mrs. Daisy R. Marchant (Godínez-Ortega, 2008), and the earlier materials of T. S. Brandegee and W. E. Bryant, with several new species named after those collectors, e.g., *Pringsheimia marchantiae*, *Gonodia marchantiae*, *Codium brandegeei*, *Sargassum brandegeei*, and *Ectocarpus bryantii*. In all, 144 species and varieties of red, brown, and green algae were reported, 111 of which were described as new taxa (Setchell and Gardner, 1924a). In a separate publication, Setchell and Gardner (1924b) described another new brown alga from the Gulf, *Nemacystus brandegeei*.

Collections of D. T. MacDougal in 1923 from Puerto Libertad, Sonora, resulted in two new species being described by Gardner (1927), and later two more, *Codium macdougalii* and *Sargassum macdougalii*, were described by E. Yale Dawson (1944). The 1932 Templeton Crocker Expedition of the California Academy of Sciences on the yacht *Zaca* from Isla Guadalupe to the Galápagos yielded several specimens from the southern end of the Gulf. The algae, collected mostly by John Thomas Howell (Daniel et al., 1994), were included in the studies of Setchell (1937b) and Dawson (1944). Waldo L. Schmitt (National Museum of Natural History, Smithsonian Institution (Chace, 1978) obtained algae from Baja California during the Allan Hancock Pacific Expedition of 1933 and, from his dredging of the cape region of southern Baja California during the Presidential Cruise of 1938. Both collections were later treated by William R. Taylor (1939, 1945, respectively; Wynne, 1991). The Field Museum (Chicago) Expedition to Sonora, made by Francis Drouet (Forest, 1983) and Donald Richards in the winter of 1939, yielded numerous algal collections, including many blue-greens, from the Sonoran coast. Other upper Gulf specimens were obtained in the spring of 1941 by John Poindexter at Puerto Peñasco, Sonora. Edward F. Ricketts (Astro, 1976, 2001; Rodger, 2006) made some algal and sea grass collections from Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda, in April 1940 (for an excellent account of this Sea of Cortez trip and natural history, particularly of the marine fauna, see Steinbeck and Ricketts, 1941; Steinbeck, 2001). During the fall of 1940, J. Wyatt Durham brought in some algae while aboard the schooner *E. W. Scripps* on a research expedition of the Geological Society of America and Scripps Institution of Oceanography (Anderson et al., 1950).

E. Yale Dawson studied the Gulf of California marine algae for his doctoral dissertation (University of California, Berkeley, 1942; published 1944) under the joint direction of Lee Bonar (UC Berkeley) and Gilbert M. Smith (Stanford University; Silva, 1960; Wiggins, 1962).

All of the previous Gulf of California collections mentioned above, except the earliest of Diguet (Hariot, 1895) and those of Schmitt (Taylor, 1939, 1945), were studied by Dawson. While a student at UC Berkeley, his phyco-logical interests were encouraged early on and mentored by William “Uncle Bill” Setchell. As a boy of 14, Dawson was first introduced to plants of the desert and coast during a trip to Baja California with his father in 1933, and his interest in cacti (e.g., Setchell and Dawson, 1941) and seaweeds persisted throughout his life (Hawkes, 2005). Dawson’s first sea voyage to the Gulf was aboard the *M/Y Velero III* expedition of the Allan Hancock Foundation (University of Southern California) in 1940 (Garth, 1967), allowing him to be the first marine botanist to visit and collect marine algae of the Gulf of California (Dawson, 1941). After serving in the U.S. Army Air Corps during World War II (1943–1945), Dawson, as a fellow of the John Simon Guggenheim Foundation in 1946–1947, made several overland collecting trips in Baja California and along the Mexican mainland from Punta Peñasco (Sonora) to Tapachula (Chiapas) and obtained additional collections from the Midriff Islands while aboard the boat *Guanero* of Guanos y Fertilizantes de México. Beginning in 1948 and continuing to 1954, Dawson participated in five other expeditions aboard the *M/Y Velero IV* of the Allan Hancock Foundation. While Research Director and Vice President of the Beaudette Foundation (Santa Ynez, California) and, later, as Curator of Botany (Los Angeles County Museum), Dawson made other cruises (1957–1964) on the *M/Y Stella Polaris* (Figure 7) that resulted in further knowledge of the marine algae of the southern Gulf (Dawson, 1959a). Having learned to scuba dive, he became the first marine botanist to dive and explore the subtidal waters of the Gulf of California and Central America (Figure 8A, B). Several friends and biologists, including Carl L. Hubbs, Bibiano F. Osorio-Tafall, J. Laurens Barnard, Michael Neushul Jr., Robert D. Wildman, Wheeler J. North, and Robert W. Hoshaw, made or shared collections with him. Among the scuba divers he dove with in Mexico were pioneering underwater photographer Don Ollis (Beaudette Foundation, Santa Barbara) and Michael Neushul, Robert D. Wildman, Richard H. Rosenblatt, James R. Stewart (Scripps Institution of Oceanography), and John Bleck (Santa Barbara). Acknowledging their interest and appreciating their help, Dawson named species for them, e.g., *Myriogramme osorioi*, *Botryocladia neushulii*, *Kalymenia bleckii*, *Fauchea hoshawsii*, *Lejolisia hoshawii*, and *Antithamnion hubbsii*.



FIGURE 7. E. Yale Dawson (left) with Palmer T. Beaudette (right) during an expedition to Pacific Mexico and Central America in 1959; note the *M/V Stella Polaris* anchored in the background.

In all, E. Yale Dawson made more than 20 expeditions into the Gulf of California from 1940 until his untimely death in 1966, with over 50,000 specimens collected from 130 different stations during those years (Dawson's field notebooks are deposited in the Phycology Library of the Algal Collection of the U.S. National Herbarium, National Museum of Natural History, Smithsonian Institution, where he was curator from 1965 to 1966). Dawson's published accounts of marine algae are numerous, with taxonomic, floristic, and distributional studies on the algae from the Gulf of California and the Pacific Coast of Mexico (see Abbott, 1966; Zaneveld, 1966; Garth, 1967; Silva, 1967; Norris, 1976b). Among his major contributions to Mexican phycology, resulting from more than 25 years of research, are "Marine Algae of the Gulf of California" (Dawson, 1944) and eight monographs: "Marine Red Algae of Pacific Mexico" (Dawson, 1953a, 1954c, 1960b, 1961a, 1962a, 1963a, 1963b). Of the studies published after his death, two concerned Gulf marine algae: an annotated list of marine algae of Puerto Peñasco,

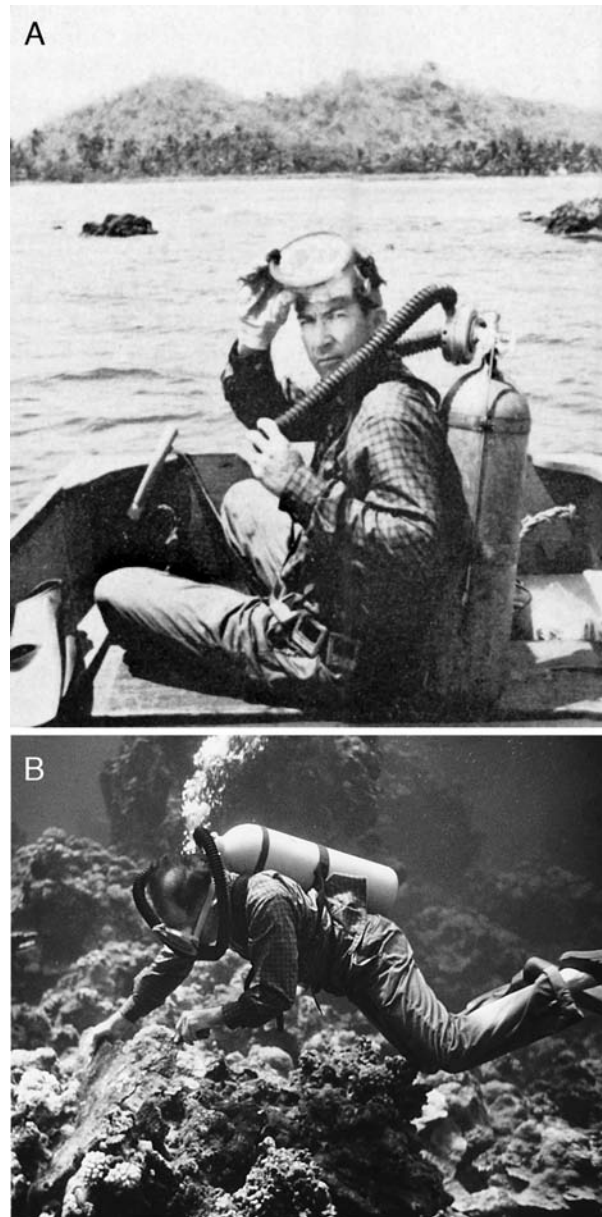


FIGURE 8. E. Yale Dawson (A) preparing for algal collecting dives using scuba during the 1958 cruise of the *M/V Stella Polaris* and (B) diving and collecting subtidal algae in 1959 in Costa Rica. (Photos by Don Ollis, formerly of Beaudette Foundation for Biological Research [now defunct]; photos now part of Dawson papers collection at NMNH Department of Botany).

Sonora (Dawson, 1966a), and new species and distribution records (Dawson, 1966b).

Contributions to our knowledge of the marine algae of the Gulf of California from 1965 to 1986 were furthered

by the collections of Robert W. Hoshaw (University Arizona, Tucson) and his students, particularly, Arthur E. Dennis, Nichols P. Yensen, and Richard M. McCourt. Marine flowering plants (sea grasses) were recorded from the Sonoran coast by Steinbeck and Ricketts (1941), Dawson (1960c), and Norris (1985c). The ecological and natural history knowledge of the Seri Indians (Comcaac) has contributed to our understanding the plants and animals of coastal Sonora; e.g., their use of the eel grass seed has added to our knowledge of distribution and ecology of *Zostera marina* in the Gulf (Felger and Moser, 1973), sea turtle temporal distribution (Felger et al., 1976), and Seri ethnobotany (Felger and Moser, 1985; Norris, 1985).

Professor Laura Huerta-Múzquiz (Escuela Nacional de Ciencias Biológicas, Instituto Politécnico Nacional; Calderón de Rzedowski and Rzedowski-Rotter, 2000) began studying Gulf and Baja California algae in the late 1950s (e.g., Huerta-Múzquiz, 1960), and her students, more recently Catalina Mendoza-Gonzalez and Luz Elena Mateo-Cid, are among those who have continued to make contributions to our knowledge of Gulf of California and Pacific Mexico algae. In the 1980s, Professor Marta M. Ortega (Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México) and her students also worked on algae of Sonora and Sinaloa, although focusing primarily on marine algae of the Gulf of Mexico and the Caribbean Sea (e.g., Ortega et al., 2001).

The 1980s also marked the beginning of phycological research centered at Universidad Autónoma de Baja California, Ensenada, with Luis E. Aguilar-Rosas and Raúl Aguilar-Rosas and marine botanists Marcos A. Aguilar-Rosas, Isaí Pacheco-Ruíz, and José A. Zertuche-González, along with their students, all making numerous contributions based on their collections and studies of the marine algae of Baja California and the Gulf of California (see References).

Jorge González-González (Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México) and his students, including Daniel León-Alvarez, Hilda León-Tejera, and Elisa Servièrre-Zaragoza, have been adding to our knowledge of Gulf of California and Pacific Mexico marine algae with their studies, including their useful catalogue of benthic marine algae of Mexico (González-González et al., 1996). More recently, Jose Espinoza-Ávalos and Rafael Riosema-Rodriguez (Universidad Autónoma de Baja California Sur), Francisco F. Pedroche (Universidad Autónoma Metropolitana, Unidad Iztapalapa), and others studying the Gulf marine algae have continued to further our knowledge of the floristics, taxonomy, and ecology of Gulf algae. Today, the marine botanists of Mexico represent an active and productive era in Gulf of California phycology (see,

for example, their numerous publications on Gulf greens and browns among the References).

#### CURRENT STUDY

Although my visits to Baja California and the Gulf of California via vehicle began in 1963, my first trip as a student of marine biology was by sea in 1969 on the cruise of the M/Y *Makrele* (Moss Landing Marine Laboratories of the California State Universities) to the northern Gulf of California (Norris, 1973). During 1972–1975, while a graduate student at the University of California, Santa Barbara, it was my pleasure to be in residence as Station Director of Laboratorio de Biología Marina of the University of Arizona and Universidad de Sonora in Puerto Peñasco, supported and encouraged by Robert W. Hoshaw, Donald A. Thomson, and John R. Hendrickson (University of Arizona). Field explorations on the Sonora and Baja California coasts were made possible through support from National Science Foundation grants (BMS-73-07000-A01 and BMS-75-13960) and USDC NOAA-04-5-158-20. The Islas de la Cintura were surveyed during the 1974 cruise of the R/V *Dolphin* (Scripps Institution of Oceanography) to the northern Gulf of California (Norris and Bucher, 1976, 1977). From 1972 to 1979, selected localities on the Baja California and Sonora coasts (Figure 2) of the northern Gulf were sampled several times to assess seasonal changes of the marine algae. The algal collections from these field trips form the basis for the present taxonomic study and were supplemented by the appreciable collections of E. Y. Dawson (US Alg. Coll.; AHFH, now UC [see below for list of definitions for abbreviations used in this paper]) and those of Ivan Johnston and others that were included in the studies of W. A. Setchell and N. L. Gardner (CAS, now UC; US Alg. Coll.).

Specimens were obtained by intertidal collecting and subtidally with use of scuba by me and Katina E. Bucher; collection numbers designated by the prefix *JN*- refer to our field notebooks (Algal Collection, National Museum of Natural History, Smithsonian Institution). Methods for field handling of algal collections and their subsequent preservation, mounting as herbarium specimens, and preparation for light microscope study are as given by Tsuda and Abbott (1985). Photomicrographs were made using an Olympus Q-5 digital camera mounted on a Zeiss Universal microscope; all images used herein were prepared using Adobe Photoshop PS-3 on a Macintosh G-5 computer.

Specimens studied or examined for this work are deposited in collections at the institutions listed below, which are abbreviated for subsequent mention in the text. Herbarium

abbreviations herein follow the Index Herbariorum (Holmgren et al., 1990; Holmgren and Holmgren, 1998, continuously updated, <http://sweetgum.nybg.org/ih/>).

AHFH	Herbarium of the Allan Hancock Foundation, University of Southern California, Los Angeles; Algae Collection to LAM now UC
CAS	Herbarium of the California Academy of Sciences, San Francisco; now UC
CMMEX	Algae Herbarium of the Universidad Autónoma de Baja California, Ensenada, Mexico
LAM	Herbarium Los Angeles County Museum, Los Angeles; Algae Collection now UC
LD	Botanical Museum, Lund, Sweden
MICH	Herbarium of the University of Michigan, Ann Arbor
PC	Muséum National d'Histoire Naturelle, Laboratoire de Cryptogamie, Paris
UC	Herbarium of the University of California, Berkeley
US Alg. Coll.	Algal Collection of the U.S. National Herbarium, National Museum of Natural History, Smithsonian Institution, Washington, D.C.

Several botanical and phycological references were invaluable throughout this study, notably the second edition of *Taxonomic Literature* (referred to as TL-2) by

Stafleu and Cowan (1976–1988) and its supplement volumes (Stafleu and Mennega, 1992–2000; Dorr and Nicolson, 2008), Stafleu (1972) on dates of publication of the extensive volumes of Engler and Prantl, Stearn's (2004) *Botanical Latin*, and the thorough *AlgaeBase* (<http://www.algaebase.org>) developed, updated, and maintained by Michael and Wendy Guiry (Guiry and Guiry, 2008). The citation of the authors of taxa names follows Brummitt and Powell (1992).

Place and locality names of the land-based collection sites and ship-based cruise stations that are used herein are from the U.S. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) charts 21008, 21120, 21124, 21141, 21161, 21181, 21182, and 21014, Carta de Farode Hidrografía de México F.H. 600, and the boating and cruising sea guides to Baja California and the Gulf of California by Lewis (1971), Williams (1996), Cunningham (2004, 2006a, 2006b), and Rains (2006).

It is hoped this publication will encourage algal taxonomic and phylogenetic research as it makes available a taxonomic baseline for further biodiversity and marine botanical and ecological investigations in the northern Gulf of California. Accurate identification of the marine algae is essential for conservation studies and ecosystem management of this unique region. The biological uniqueness of the northern Gulf of California is today internationally recognized, and conservation of its ecosystems biodiversity is hopefully provided by the several marine biosphere reserves, marine protected areas (for natural resources or flora and fauna), marine sanctuaries, and national marine parks in the Gulf of California (e.g., Case et al., 2002; Cartron et al., 2005a, 2005b; Danemann and Ezcurra, 2008).



# PART I: GREEN ALGAE

---

## CHLOROPHYTA

Chlorophyta Pascher, 1914:158

The Chlorophyta (green algae) are an extremely large, diverse group with wide variation in vegetative morphologies, ranging from unicellular to structurally complex species. Members of this group are found in freshwater (including snow and ice), estuarine, marine, terrestrial, and subaerial (e.g., on trees, walls, sloth fur, and polar bear hairs, etc.) habitats. In marine environments, they range from microscopic phytoplankton to the benthic microalgae and minute to large macroalgae of intertidal and subtidal habitats, down to 210 m depths (Littler et al., 1985, 1986; Norris and Olsen, 1991).

The color of these algae varies greatly, from dark green to pale or yellow green, because of the dominance of the green photosynthetic pigments, chlorophylls *a* and *b*, over the various accessory pigments, such as the carotenes (alpha, beta, and gamma) and xanthophylls (lutein, antheraxanthin, neoxanthin, violaxanthin, and zeaxanthin). While most are noncalcified, some marine genera are calcified. Cells are either uninucleate or multinucleate, with cellulose found in the cell walls in all but a few unicellular species. Chloroplasts vary in size, shape, and number per cell but always have two encircling membranes without a periplastid endoplasmic reticulum and often contain one or more pyrenoids (storage reserves of starch). Thylakoids (structures inside chloroplasts where light-dependent reactions of photosynthesis occur) are singular or stacked. Cell division occurs with a phragmoplast (cytoskeletal structure instrumental in deposition of new cell wall material).

Vegetative reproduction occurs by cell division and fragmentation. Reproduction can be by non-motile aplanospores and sometimes resting spores (akinetes). Swimming cells have two flagella or multiples of two, with a stellate structure linking nine pairs of microtubules at the basal transition region. Zoospores are usually biflagellate or quadriflagellate, with acronematic (whiplash) type of flagella. Parthenogenesis is also reported in a few species. Sexual reproduction may be isogamous or anisogamous, usually with biflagellate gametes, or oogamous.

**REMARKS.** The most recent classification system considers the Chlorophyta to be within the Chloroplastida Adl et al. (2005; Lewis and McCourt,

2004, as “Chlorobionta C. Jeffery 1982”) as members of the Archaeplastida; the latter is one of the seven clusters that represent the basic groups (or traditional kingdoms) of the eukaryotes (Adl et al., 2005).

The benthic green macroalgae found in the Gulf of California are in four classes: Ulvophyceae, Cladophorophyceae, Bryopsidophyceae, and Dasycladophyceae.

**KEY TO THE CLASSES OF CHLOROPHYTA IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA**

- 1a. Algae unicellular or multicellular; cells uninucleate or multinucleate; chloroplasts with pyrenoids; no cytoplasmic streaming within cells . . . . . 2
- 1b. Algae coenocytic; a single large multinucleate cell or simple to branched tubes or siphons; chloroplasts with or without pyrenoids; with cytoplasmic streaming (observable in living specimens) . . . . . 3
- 2a. Cells uninucleate, containing only a single parietal chloroplast with 1 to several pyrenoids . . . . . **Ulvophyceae**
- 2b. Cells multinucleate, with numerous chloroplasts; in many (but not all) there is a single pyrenoid per chloroplast . . . . . **Cladophorophyceae**
- 3a. Algae siphonous and radially symmetrical, with a central axis that bears lateral branches in whorls; chloroplasts without pyrenoids . . . . . **Dasycladophyceae**
- 3b. Algae of various filamentous or vesiculate forms (not radially symmetrical); numerous chloroplasts with or without pyrenoids . . . . . **Bryopsidophyceae**

**ULVOPHYCEAE**

Ulvophyceae Mattox et K. D. Stewart, 1984:41, 66, *nom. invalid.* [see McNeill et al., 2006:Art. 36.2; Pröschold and Leliaert, 2007:129]; O’Kelly and Floyd, 1984:123.

Species range from individual to colonial unicellular forms to the macrothalli of variable morphologies that include (1) multicellular filamentous forms, (2) multicellular monostromatic or distromatic sheets, or (3) multicellular or siphonous forms, mostly of cushion-like clumps of entangled or compacted filament-like tubes. Members are predominately marine or estuarine and may be simple and unbranched or branched. Each cell has a single cup-shaped or band-shaped chloroplast that contains one to

several pyrenoids. Cell division occurs by the furrowing of the persistent, closed, centric mitotic spindle.

Life histories, where known, involve an isomorphic or heteromorphic alternation of generations. Mobile reproductive cells, occurring in most members, have one or two pairs of flagella without mastigonemes (flagellar “hairs”). Each flagellum has basal bodies with four microtubular roots arranged in a cruciate pattern and smaller rootlets of two sizes that alternate between two or more microtubules.

One of the orders, the Ulotrichales Borzi (1895) is present in the southern Gulf, based on the report of *Ulothrix* Kützing (1843) by Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones (1991).

Three of the orders, the Ctenocladales, Phaeophilales, and Ulvales, are represented in the northern Gulf of California.

**KEY TO THE ORDERS OF THE ULVOPHYCEAE IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA**

- 1a. Algae macroscopic, and either biseriate filaments; or tubular (1 cell layer); or membranaceous and partially tubular and partially bladelike (1–2 cell layers); or membranaceous blades throughout (1–4 cells layers) . . . . . **Ulvales**
- 1b. Algae microscopic or minute, uniseriate branched filaments that may be erect or prostrate or prostrate with erect axes; uniseriate filaments either remain free and not adjoined throughout or, in some, are partially or entirely consolidated into pseudoparenchyma (1 cell thick at margins and 1–4 cells thick centrally) . . . . . 2
- 2a. Algae microscopic to macroscopic, but minute; mostly endophytic or epiphytic on cells of other algae; uniseriate filaments free or partially or completely consolidated into pseudoparenchyma, 1–4 cells thick . . . . . **Ctenocladales**
- 2b. Algae microscopic, uniseriate filaments; mostly endolithic in dead shells, coral rubble, or crustose corallines; 1 cell thick throughout, and further separated by zoosporangia formation, and zoospore ultrastructure . . . . . **Phaeophilales**



**CTENOCLADALES**

“Ctenocladales” Silva, 1982:147.  
 Ctenocladales P. C. Silva in Silva, Meñez et Moe, 1987:131.

Algae are uniseriate, branched filaments, which may be (1) entirely erect, (2) entirely prostrate, or (3) a combination of both with an attached prostrate portion from which erect branching filaments develop. Prostrate filaments may form a pseudoparenchyma. Cells are uninucleate, with a single chloroplast and usually one or more pyrenoids. Unicellular colorless hairs or multicellular setae (hair-like) branches are present in some species.

Asexual reproduction is by fragmentation or by akinetes. Sporangia are formed within vegetative cells and produce aplanospores, or biflagellate, triflagellate, or quadriflagellate zoospores. Sexual reproduction has not been confirmed for most species. Where reported, sexual reproduction, may be isogamous or anisogamous, with biflagellate gametes formed within enlarged vegetative cells (gametangia). Sporangia and gametangia may form a pore, papilla, or neck.

**REMARKS.** The taxonomy of the members of the Ctenocladales and Chaetophorales group has been largely based on culture and ultrastructural studies, and the ordinal and family placement of their members has been variously interpreted. The reliability of certain taxonomic characters has been questioned, and taxonomic placement of some genera is still in a state of flux (e.g., Silva et al., 1996b). For example, the Ulvellaceae is placed in the Ctenocladales herein (following, e.g., Silva et al., 1996b; Abbott and Huisman, 2004; Pedroche et al., 2005), but others consider the family in the Ulvales (e.g., Schneider and Searles, 1991; Kraft, 2007). At present,

their taxonomy and phylogenetic relationships are somewhat problematic and in need of further elucidation.

There is one family in the northern Gulf of California.

**ULVELLACEAE**

Ulvellaceae Schmidle, 1899:57, *emend.* O’Kelly and G. L. Floyd, 1983:162.

Algae are usually microscopic, prostrate, and composed of filaments that are freely branched or laterally coherent or coalesced to form a pseudoparenchyma, and may be, endophytic or epiphytic on other algae or marine plants, or grow on other marine organisms. Cells have a lateral, band-shaped or platelike chloroplast and are with or without pyrenoids. Colorless setae or hair-like projections from the cell wall are present in some genera and absent in others.

Sporangia and gametangia are developed in vegetative cells and become larger than vegetative cells. Asexual reproduction is usually by biflagellate or quadriflagellate zoospores or aplanospores. Sexual reproduction where known, is usually by biflagellate isogametes or anisogametes but is in need of investigation for many species.

**REMARKS.** Members are found in brackish and marine environments. Species are based on the growth form of the filaments (i.e., if the filaments are consolidated into pseudoparenchyma versus not consolidated and free), differences in cell size and number of pyrenoids, and habitat and host (Nielsen, 1984; Ricker, 1987; Kraft, 2000). O’Kelly and Yarish (1981b) suggested detailed features of sporangial development may be more reliable taxonomic characters.

Four genera are known in the northern Gulf of California.

**KEY TO THE GENERA OF ULVELLACEAE IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA**

- 1a. Microscopic, prostrate filaments spreading, remaining free of each other throughout (not coalescing into a pseudoparenchyma) . . . . . *Entocladia* (in part)
- 1b. Microscopic, disc-shaped to spreading; prostrate filaments either entirely coalesced into a pseudoparenchyma, or partially coalescing in varying degrees with some filaments free . . . . . 2
- 2a. Crusts initially a single cell layer, developing to 2 to 4 cell layers (polystromatic) centrally and a single cell layer (monostromatic) outward . . . . . *Ulvella*
- 2b. Crust or sheet-like, a single cell layer thick (monostromatic) throughout . . . . . 3
- 3a. Filaments originating from a central point; forming a more or less circular disc, with or without filaments extending from margin . . . . . 4
- 3b. Filaments not originating from a central point, not circular, but forming a crust with irregular outer margins . . . . . 5
- 4a. Filaments with setae (hair-like structures without nuclei; not always present in field-collected material) . . . . . *Entocladia* (in part)
- 4b. Filaments without “hairs” or setae . . . . . *Epicladia*

- 5a. Filaments forming pseudoparenchymatous, sheet-like thallus, with outer noncoalesced to loosely coalesced filaments; per-current axes sometimes visible as primary and lateral branches develop; cells with 1(-3) pyrenoids . . . . . *Stromatella*
- 5b. Filaments loosely to tightly coalescing in some portions, with outer short to long filaments remaining free of each other; cells with 1-3 (-7) pyrenoids . . . . . *Entocladia* (in part)

**Entocladia Reinke**

*Entocladia* Reinke, 1879:476.

Algae are microscopic prostrate filaments, usually epiphytic on or endophytic within the cell walls of various larger algae, sea grasses, or other aquatic vascular plants. Filaments are either unconsolidated and irregularly branched and free; or may be compacted in varying degrees into a pseudoparenchyma. Cells are quadrate to elongated, with a single nucleus and chloroplast that contains one to several pyrenoids. Hairs or setae-like structures are present (observable in culture, but not always seen in field collections).

Life histories, where known, are with isomorphic sporophytes and gametophytes. Asexual reproduction is by

quadriflagellate zoospores, formed by sequential division in cells near the center of the thallus. Sexual reproduction is by biflagellate isogametes formed in the same manner as zoospores.

**REMARKS.** *Entocladia* and *Epicladia* are recognized herein; the two usually separated by growth form and if the cells of the filaments have hairs or setae (*Entocladia*) or lack them (*Epicladia*) (see Nielsen, 1980, 1984). This generic separation is problematic; e.g., Kraft (2000) noted that hairs were rarely (if at all) found in field collections, but they have been shown to occur under culture conditions for some species.

Four species of *Entocladia* and two of *Epicladia* are known in the northern Gulf of California.

**KEY TO THE SPECIES OF ENTOCLADIA AND EPICLADIA (ULVELLACEAE) IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA**

- 1a. Prostrate filamentous thallus disc-shaped (more or less circular) in surface view . . . . . 4
- 1b. Prostrate filamentous thallus not disc-shaped in surface view . . . . . 2
- 2a. Filaments free of each other (not consolidated into pseudoparenchyma); cells mostly elongated, some irregular in shape, 3-5 µm wide, 10-40 µm long . . . . . *Entocladia polysiphoniae*
- 2b. Filaments mostly free, sometimes with portions consolidated to varying degrees to form a pseudoparenchyma . . . . . 3
- 3a. Filaments mostly free, with portions aggregated (i.e., not closely consolidated); cells variable in shape, squarish to rectangular, most 6-8 µm wide, 6-20 (-35) µm long; 1-3 pyrenoids per cell . . . . . *Entocladia viridis*
- 3b. Filaments extensively consolidated, spreading and covering host cells; margins with extending filaments; 3-7 pyrenoids per cell . . . . . *Entocladia* sp. A
- 4a. Disc somewhat circular; inner cells isodiametric, with few to several central cells empty; outer cells narrower, much longer; margin border more or less even . . . . . *Entocladia marchantiae*
- 4b. Disc irregular in outline, with filaments extending from the margins . . . . . 5
- 5a. Disc-shaped with only a few, short marginal filaments; central cells 12-16 µm wide; marginal cells 5-9 µm in diameter . . . . . *Epicladia condensata*
- 5b. Discoid, with fringelike margin of numerous longer filaments; central cells 15-18 µm in diameter; marginal cells 5-7 µm in diameter . . . . . *Epicladia mexicana*

***Entocladia marchantiae*  
(Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Cribb**

FIGURE 9A

*Pringsheimia marchantiae* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:720 [as "*P. marchantiae*"], pl. 12: fig. 8; Dawson, 1944:205; González-González et al., 1996:138.

*Entocladia marchantiae* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Cribb, 1995:23, pl. 1: fig. 5; Pedroche et al., 2005:18.  
*Acrochaete marchantiae* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Nielsen et McLachan, 1986b:516, figs. 3-14.  
*Pringsheimiella marchantiae* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Schmidt et Petrak in Schmidt, 1935:29 [as "*P. marchantiae*"]; Dawson, 1961b:372; Nielsen and McLachan, 1985:511; González-González et al., 1996:138.

Algae microscopic, more or less discoid, 100–120 (–170)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; monostromatic pseudoparenchyma with few to several empty central cells (released spores?); outer marginal filaments of 1–7 cells, unbranched or sparsely, alternately branched; some outer filaments free. Cells with a parietal chloroplast and 1(–2) pyrenoids. Central cells isodiametric, (8–)10–20  $\mu\text{m}$  wide. Outer marginal cells narrower and longer (more or less rectangular), (2–)3–5  $\mu\text{m}$  wide and (4–)5–10  $\mu\text{m}$  long. Hairs not observed; reported in culture studies (Nielsen and McLachan, 1986b).

**HABITAT.** Epiphytic on species of *Laurencia* and *Gracilaria textorii*; low intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Isla Coronado (Isla Smith), off Bahía de Los Ángeles; La Paz.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Epiphytic on *Laurencia*, La Paz, Baja California Sur, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** *Entocladia marchantiae* from Isla Coronado, represents a new record for the northern Gulf (JN-4411; US Alg. Coll. slide 4257). Regarding the species epithet, Nielsen and McLachan (1986b) thought it was named only for Mrs. Marchant and corrected the spelling to “*marchantiae*.” However, Setchell and Gardner (1924a) are rather vague in their species dedication, citing only the collection number (“*Marchant no. 68x*”), then in their introduction “a collection made by Dr. and Mrs. Marchant in 1917” (p. 696), and later acknowledging “our indebtedness to Dr. and Mrs. Marchant...for collections of marine algae” (p. 697). If it can be shown that it was their intention to name the species for both Dr. and Mrs. Marchant, then the species name would be correctable to “*marchantiorum*” (McNeill et al., 2006:Art. 60C.1).

***Entocladia polysiphoniae*  
Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURE 9B

*Entocladia polysiphoniae* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:718, pl. 13: fig. 18; Dawson, 1944:204; Dawson, 1961b:371; Noda, 1968:56, fig. 4; Nielsen, 1972:265; Konno and Noda, 1980:27, fig. 2; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; González-González et al., 1996:137; Yoshida, 1998:18; Kraft, 2000:518, fig. 3F–H; Pedroche et al., 2005:18; Kraft, 2007:31, fig. 11A–E.

*Entocladia viridis* sensu Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1999:45, figs. 37, 38 [non *Entocladia viridis* Reinke, 1879:476].

Algae endophytic, microscopic; composed of irregularly branched filaments, mostly 3–5  $\mu\text{m}$  in width, that

remain free of each other (not consolidated into a pseudoparenchyma) within cells of the host, and covering an area up to 1 mm in diameter. Cells irregularly variable in shape, mostly elongated, 10–40  $\mu\text{m}$  in length and 3–5(–9)  $\mu\text{m}$  in width; parietal chloroplast with a single pyrenoid.

Sporangia (?) intercalary in filaments, up to 24  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, numerous, formed at irregular intervals.

**HABITAT.** Endophytic in *Polysiphonia*.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: El Desemboque to Guaymas; La Paz. Pacific coast: Oaxaca; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Endophytic in cell walls of *Polysiphonia marchantiae* (now *P. johnstonii*), Guaymas, Sonora, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** In the Gulf, *Entocladia polysiphoniae* is only known from the type specimen and a few other collections. It is distinguished by filaments that remain free of each other (never consolidated) and branches that can develop, often at right angles, from the middle or toward the ends of intercalary cells. *Entocladia polysiphoniae* has also been reported from Japan (Noda, 1968, 1975; Konno and Noda, 1980; Yoshida, 1998) and from Lord Howe Island, Australia (Kraft, 2000, 2007). Further collections of Gulf *E. polysiphoniae* will be helpful in accessing its life history, taxonomic, and phylogenetic status.

***Entocladia* sp. A**

FIGURE 9C

Algae microscopic, cells of filaments coalescing forming a spreading, monostromatic pseudoparenchyma; up to 2 mm across; sometimes completely surrounding cell of host *Cladophora*; cells of outer marginal filaments mostly coherent or occasionally with some outermost filaments extending distally up the host cell and remaining free. Cells with a parietal chloroplast and (2–)3–7 pyrenoids; cells mostly irregularly squarish or polygonal, (8–)10–16  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; cells of outer filaments more or less rectangular, elongated, rectilinear, 15–30  $\mu\text{m}$  long and 8–12  $\mu\text{m}$  wide. Hairs not observed in Gulf specimen.

**HABITAT.** Endophytic within lower cells of *Cladophora*; shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Islas de Los Gemelos (west island), vicinity of Bahía de Los Ángeles.

**REMARKS.** The northern Gulf specimen of *Entocladia* sp. A (JN-4492; US Alg. Coll. slide 4154) is apparently an unknown species. It is somewhat similar to *Entocladia robustum* Cribb (1995; = *Endoderma viride* f. *major* Børgesen, 1920) in cell shape and size and the number of pyrenoids per cell. It is also remotely similar to

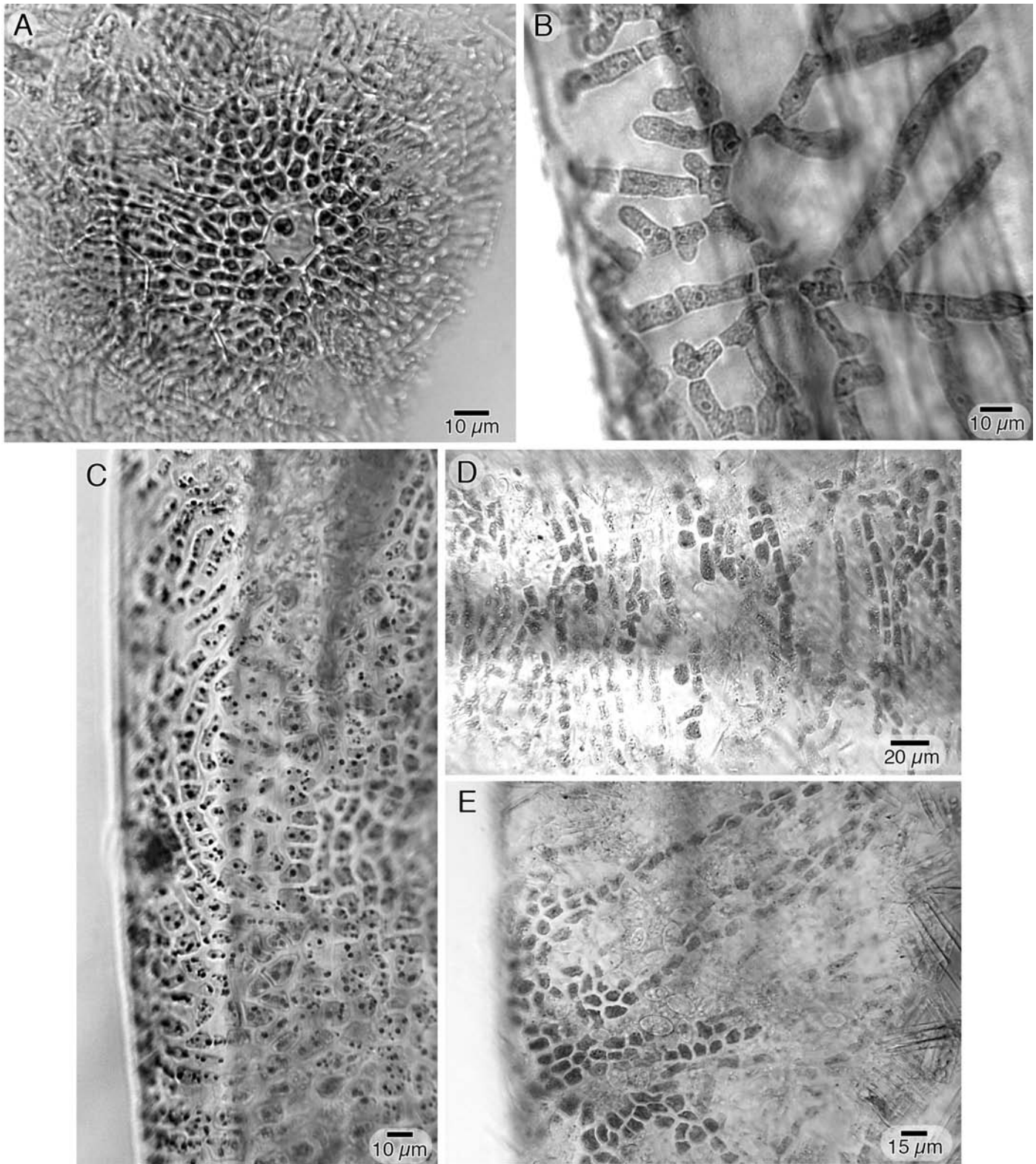


FIGURE 9. Species of *Entocladia*. A. *Entocladia marchantiae*: Surface view, disc of consolidated cells, isodiametric in interior (some central cells empty), and narrower, elongated cells toward margin; epiphytic on *Gracilaria textorii* (JN-4411b). B. *Entocladia polysiphoniae*: Free filaments, branching mostly from midregions of intercalary cells; epiphytic on *Polysiphonia* (JN-5190). C. *Entocladia* sp. A: Filaments aggregated into loose pseudoparenchyma; several pyrenoids per cell; covering cell wall of host *Cladophora* (JN-4492b). D, E. *Entocladia viridis*: Free filaments extending from aggregated cells; growing horizontally across a basal cell of *Chaetomorpha aerea* (JN-5180b).

*Entocladia velutina* Cribb (1995) in cell shape and number of pyrenoids per cell, but the cell sizes are smaller in the Gulf *Entocladia* sp. A, and the hair cells described in the Australian type (Heron Island, Queensland) were not observed.

### ***Entocladia viridis* Reinke**

FIGURE 9D,E

*Entocladia viridis* Reinke, 1879:476, pl. VI: figs. 6–9; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:289; Smith, 1944:35; Dawson, 1957a:2; Dawson, 1961b:372; Dawson and Neushul, 1966:174; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:64, fig. 18; O’Kelly and Yarish, 1981a:549, figs. 1–4; O’Kelly and Yarish, 1981b:33, figs. 1–12; O’Kelly and Floyd, 1983:153, figs. 1–29; Huerta-Múzquiz -Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42; Ortega et al., 1987:77, pl. 13: fig. 52; Santelices and Abbott, 1987:5; Cribb, 1995:25, pl. 5: figs.1–3; González-González et al., 1996:286; León-Tejera and González-González, 2000:327 [as “*E. aff. viridis*”]; Kraft, 2000:517, fig. 3D,E; Abbott and Huisman, 2003a:283, fig. 13; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:43, fig. 4A; Pedroche et al., 2005:18; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:58; Kraft, 2007:30, fig. 10A–D.

*Endoderma viride* (Reinke) Lagerheim, 1883:74; Collins, 1909b:279; Børgesen, 1920:416, figs. 397–399.

*Endoderma viride* (Reinke) De Toni, 1889:209.

*Acrochaete viridis* (Reinke) R. Nielsen, 1979:442, fig. 2A–L; Nielsen and McLachan, 1986a:809; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:111.

*Phaeophila viridis* (Reinke) Burrows in Parke and Dixon, 1976:568.

Algae minute epiphytes, of irregularly branched filaments, mostly 5–8(–10)  $\mu\text{m}$  in width, usually remaining free (not coalesced; or slightly coalescing to varying degrees) on cell walls of host. Cells variable in shape, inner cells squarish to rectangular, and outer cells elongate, 5–8 (–10)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter and (5–)10–20(–30)  $\mu\text{m}$  long. Cells contain a parietal chloroplast with up to 3 pyrenoids.

**HABITAT.** Growing on outer cell walls of *Acartabularia*, *Chaetomorpha*, and probably other algae; intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco; Estero de Bacorehúis (Laguna Agiabampo) to Bahía Balandra (north of La Paz); Playa Los Cerritos (vicinity of Mazatlán), Sinaloa. Pacific coast: British Columbia to southern California; Oaxaca; Hawaiian Islands; Rapa Nui (Easter Island); Galápagos Islands.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Napoli (Naples), Italy.

**REMARKS.** *Entocladia viridis* may be a species complex of more than one taxon (Kylin, 1938; Kraft, 2000). O’Kelly and Yarish (1981b) also noted *Entocladia viridis* is a polyphyletic assemblage and that specimens from California reported by Setchell and Gardner (1920b) as “*E. viridis*” are possibly another species. Reports of *Entocladia viridis* in the Gulf of California (Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985; Ortega et al., 1987; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006) are probably this species in the sense of Smith (1944) and Abbott and Hollenberg (1976).

### ***Epicladia* Reinke**

*Epicladia* Reinke, 1889b:31.

Algae are microscopic, uniseriate branched filaments, usually growing as endophytes or epiphytes on various algae and sea grasses or epizoic on invertebrates; also on shells. Most species are prostrate and composed of either irregularly branched filaments from the center portion or of cells compacted into pseudoparenchyma, usually with short to long filaments extending from the margin. Hairs and setae are not present. Vegetative cells are uninucleate with a single parietal, platelike or band-shaped chloroplast and one or more pyrenoids.

Sporangia are formed by sequential division in vegetative cells near the center of the thallus; pyriform-shaped, biflagellate or quadriflagellate zoospores exit through a papilla or short tube. Sexual reproduction is by biflagellate isogametes formed in a similar manner as the zoospores.

**REMARKS.** Although *Epicladia* has been considered a synonym of *Entocladia* by O’Kelly and Yarish (1981a, 1981b), Nielsen (1980, 1984) concluded the genera were distinct, with species referred to *Epicladia* differing primarily from those of *Entocladia* by the absence of hairs or seta in both nature and in culture.

There are two species of *Epicladia* known from the Gulf of California (see “Key to the species of *Entocladia* and *Epicladia*”).

### ***Epicladia condensata* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) J. N. Norris, comb. nov.**

FIGURE 10A,B

*Entocladia condensata* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:718, pl. 12: figs. 4, 5; Dawson, 1944:204; Dawson, 1961b:371; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; González-

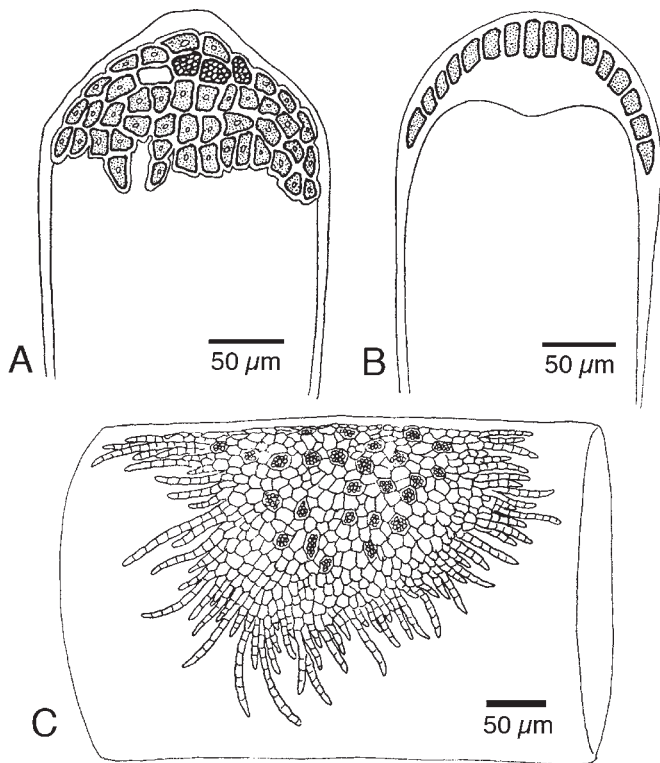


FIGURE 10. Species of *Epicladia*. A, B. *Epicladia condensata*: A. Surface view, endophytic on upper portion of a *Codium* utricle (after Setchell and Gardner, 1924a: pl. 12, fig. 4). B. Longitudinal section of a *Codium* utricle showing *E. condensata* within the utricle cell wall (after Setchell and Gardner, 1924a: pl. 12, fig. 5). C. *Epicladia mexicana*: Surface view, pseudoparenchymatous center with scattered sporangia, and free filaments extending from around the margin (after Setchell and Gardner, 1924a: pl. 19, fig. 57).

González et al., 1996:137; Pedroche et al., 2005:17; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:201.

Algae disc-shaped, with compacted cells in the center and a few short filaments extending outward from the margin. Hairs or setae absent. Vegetative cells in center, angular, 12–16 µm in diameter in surface view; cells of short marginal filaments, 7–9 µm in diameter.

Sporangia (?) slightly larger than central vegetative cells.

**HABITAT.** Endophytic within the cell wall of utricles of various species of *Codium*; intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Libertad; Bahía San Francisquito; Isla San Esteban.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** In utricles of *Codium*; Bahía San Francisquito, Baja California, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** Apparently a Gulf endemic, *Epicladia condensata* is found in the utricles of *Codium*.

Similarly, *Acrochaete codicola* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) O'Kelly (in Gabrielson et al., 2006; basionym: *Entocladia codicola* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1920a, 1920b) from the Pacific coast is found in the utricles of *Codium fragile* (Suringar) Hariot (1889). *Epicladia condensata* is disc-shaped, with an irregular margin, and composed of a much larger central pseudoparenchyma of cells (12–16 µm in diameter) that is more compacted throughout and has only a few short marginal filaments of 1–2 angular cells (7–9 µm in diameter) (Setchell and Gardner, 1924a), thus differing from *A. codicola*, which has a smaller central pseudoparenchyma and numerous, free (not adjoined), much longer, branched filaments that are up to at least six, long, cylindrical cells (3–4 µm in diameter, 7.5–21 µm in length) (see Smith, 1944; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976; both as “*Entocladia codicola*”).

***Epicladia mexicana* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner)  
J. N. Norris, comb. nov.**

FIGURE 10C

*Entocladia mexicana* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:719, pl. 19: fig. 57; Dawson, 1944:205; Dawson, 1961b:371; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; González-González et al., 1996:137; Pedroche et al., 2005:18; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:201.

Algae endophytic, disc-shaped, 350–450 µm in diameter; pseudoparenchymatous in center, and with numerous free filaments around the margin. Cells of pseudoparenchymatous center of thallus 15–18 µm in diameter; cells of marginal filaments, 7.5–17.5 µm long and 5–7 µm in diameter.

Sporangia (?) numerous, scattered, up to 20 µm in diameter.

**HABITAT.** Endophytic within *Chaetomorpha antennina* and *Valoniopsis hancockii*; mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda; La Paz.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Endophytic in cell wall of *Chaetomorpha*; La Paz, Baja California Sur, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** Although not well known, *Epicladia mexicana* is apparently an endemic species in the Gulf of California.

***Stromatella* Kornmann et Sahling**

*Stromatella* Kornmann et Sahling, 1985:223.

*Stromatella* Kornmann et Sahling, 1983:10, *nom. inval.*

[note that lacking their selection of a species as the gene-

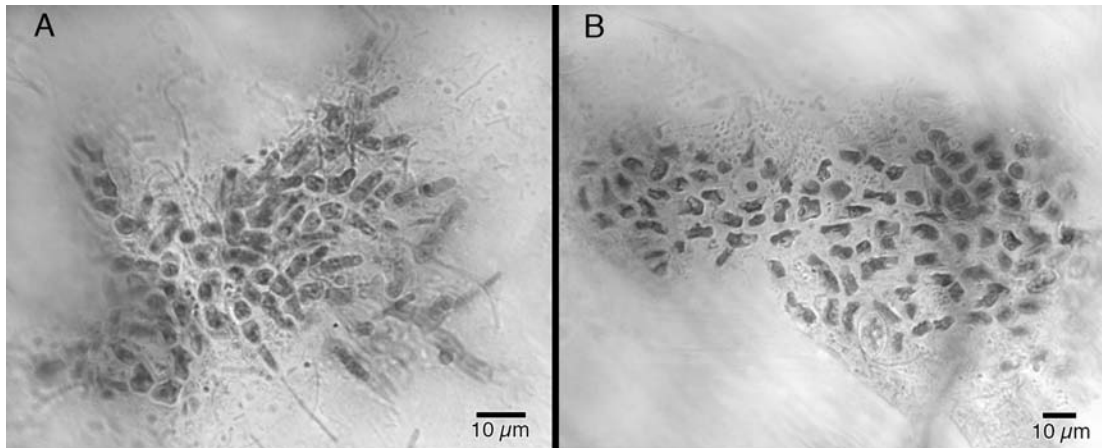


FIGURE 11. *Stromatella monostromatica*, epiphytic on *Polysiphonia* (JN-4442b): A. Aggregation of cells forming monostromatic pseudoparenchyma; margins irregular with branching peripherally extending filaments. B. Filaments consolidate forming a single-layer pseudoparenchyma spreading over host; percurrent axes barely discernible.

riotype, the first use of the generic name was invalid (see McNeill et al., 2006:Art. 37.1); *Stromatella* was later validly published by Kornmann and Sahling (1985)].

Algae are microscopic filaments, forming monostromatic crusts that grow as prostrate epiphytes on various algae. Cells of the filaments coalesce to form a single-layer pseudoparenchyma with laterally branched, marginal filaments that are loosely aggregated (not coalescing). Cells have a single chloroplast with one pyrenoid.

Reproduction is by the conversion of vegetative cells into sporangia and the subsequent division into eight zoospores. Sporangia develop progressively from the interior of the pseudoparenchyma outward toward the margin.

**REMARKS.** Although superficially similar to *Ulvella*, *Stromatella* differs in vegetative anatomy (monostromatic throughout) and reproductive characters (Kornmann and Sahling, 1983). Cells of *Stromatella* have a chloroplast with one pyrenoid, whereas in *Ulvella* there are 0–3 pyrenoids per cell. The taxonomic status of *Stromatella* was subsequently corroborated by studies of Nielsen (1988b).

There is one species in the northern Gulf of California.

***Stromatella monostromatica* (P. J. L. Dangeard)  
Kornmann et Sahling**

FIGURE 11A,B

*Ulvella monostromatica* P. J. L. Dangeard, 1965:45, pl. I: figs. 8–13, pl. III: fig. 1.

*Stromatella monostromatica* (P. J. L. Dangeard) Kornmann et Sahling, 1985:223 [footnote]; Nielsen, 1988a:255, fig. 22a–h; Nielsen, 1988b:427, figs. 1–17; Kraft, 2000:516, fig. 3B,C; Abbott and Huisman, 2003a:283, fig. 12; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:43, fig. 4B; Kraft, 2007:23, fig. 7A–C.

*Stromatella monostromatica* (P. J. L. Dangeard) Kornmann et Sahling *comb. inval.*, 1983:10, fig. 4.

Algae epiphytic, monostromatic crusts. Interior of compact angular cells, 8–12 µm long and 6–8 µm in width, forming a pseudoparenchyma; with filaments at margins loose and unconsolidated, laterally branched, of narrow, elongated cells, 6–15 µm long and 4–5 µm in width. Cells with a single pyrenoid.

**HABITAT.** Epiphytic on *Polysiphonia*, *Bryopsis*, and probably other algae; intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Isla Coronado (Isla Smith) and Isla la Ventana, Bahía de Los Ángeles. Pacific coast: Washington; Hawaiian Islands.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Collioure, Pyrénées-Orientales, southern France.

**REMARKS.** Apparently a highly variable species (Nielsen, 1988a, 1988b), *Stromatella monostromatica* has been reported on many different hosts and from a wide range of habitats and geographical localities. The collections from Isla la Ventana (JN-4442b; US Alg. Coll. slide 4160) and Isla Coronado (JN-4401; US Alg. Coll. slide 4142), off Bahía de Los Ángeles, are the first records for

the Gulf of California and are similar to thalli reported from Hawaii (Abbott and Huisman, 2003a, 2004) and Australia (Kraft, 2000, 2007).

### ***Ulvela* P. Crouan et H. Crouan**

*Ulvela* P. Crouan et H. Crouan, 1859:288.

Algae are microscopic to minute, prostrate, more or less circular discs, usually less than 2 mm in diameter, and attached directly (without rhizoids) to algae, sea grasses, or other substratum. Initially, a monostromatic disc of rounded to angular cells in the center with outward radiating, bifurcate filaments. As development continues, the central portion of the disc becomes 2–4 cell layers thick, while the outer portion remains monostromatic. Cells are uninucleate and have a parietal chloroplast with (0–)1–3 pyrenoids. Hairs are usually not present in field collections but may develop under certain culture conditions (Nielsen, 1977; Notoya, 1983).

Reproduction by quadriflagellate zoospores has been reported (Nielsen, 1977).

**REMARKS.** The genera distinction of *Ulvela* and *Pseudulvela* Wille (1910) has long been considered problematic (e.g., Dangeard, 1931), with the nature of the zoospores (quadriflagellate in *Ulvela* and biflagellate in *Pseudulvela*) the only apparent character separating them (Papenfuss, 1962; Yarish, 1975). The two were merged into a single genus by Nielsen (1977), but later she noted that not all of the species of *Pseudulvela* belong in *Ulvela* (Nielsen in Silva et al., 1996a:725). Recent studies of the generitype, *Pseudulvela americana* (Snow) Wille (1910), have shown the two to be distinct genera, belonging not only to different families but in different classes of green algae (Sanchez-Puerta et al., 2006). The taxonomic status of the species of *Ulvela* in the Gulf of California, as well as those on the Pacific coast (Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976), needs to be critically studied.

Two species of *Ulvela* are now known in the northern Gulf of California.

#### KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *ULVELLA* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Central cells mostly rounded; marginal cells 6–10  $\mu\text{m}$  wide, and <20  $\mu\text{m}$  in length . . . . . *U. lens*  
 1b. Central cells mostly elongate; marginal cells thinner and longer, 3–5  $\mu\text{m}$  wide, usually >20  $\mu\text{m}$  in length . . . *U. setchellii*

### ***Ulvela lens* P. Crouan et H. Crouan**

FIGURE 12A

*Ulvela lens* P. Crouan et H. Crouan, 1859:288, pl. 22: fig. E; Nielsen, 1977:1, figs. 1–14; Kornmann and Sahling, 1983:16, Notoya, 1983:9, fig.1; Burrows, 1991:130; Hoffman and Santelices, 1997:42, fig. 2 (1–2); Yoshida, 1998:19; Kraft, 2000:514, figs. 2D–G; Abbott and Huisman, 2003a:283, fig. 9; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:44, fig. 4C; Kraft, 2007:25, fig. 8A–D.

Algae minute prostrate epiphytes, disc-shaped, usually less than 500  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; initially monostromatic, then becoming polystromatic, up to 2–3 cell layers, in the central portion; outer portions of 1 cell layer. Cells of central portion, rounded to angular, (6–)10–12  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; outer cells and margin cells, elongate and narrower, 10–18  $\mu\text{m}$  in length, 6–10  $\mu\text{m}$  in width; a few marginal cells bifid (more readily seen in smaller, developing specimens). Cells either lacking pyrenoids or with a single pyrenoid.

Sporangia not observed in Gulf specimens (sporangia, slightly larger than vegetative cells, develop from central

cells; zoospores released through a hole in top of sporangium [Nielsen, 1977:1, fig. 12]).

**HABITAT.** Epiphytic on *Cladophora* and probably on other algae as well and possibly epizooic on mollusk shells; intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda. Pacific coast: Japan; Hawaiian Islands; Chile.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Rade de Brest, Finistère, Atlantic coast of France (Burrows, 1991:130).

**REMARKS.** *Ulvela lens* is now reported for the Gulf of California (EYD-271; US Alg. Coll. slide 4165) but is probably more common in the Gulf than the current record indicates. Thalli of northern Gulf *U. lens* are relatively small in diameter but have been reported up to 2 mm in diameter elsewhere. Although similar to *U. setchellii*, *U. lens* differs in having rounded to angular central cells and shorter outer cells.

The Pacific coast *Ulvela applanata* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) G. R. South et Tittley (1986; = *Pseudulvela applanata* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1920a; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976) has been considered to be a synonym of *U. lens* (see Guiry and Guiry, 2008); however,



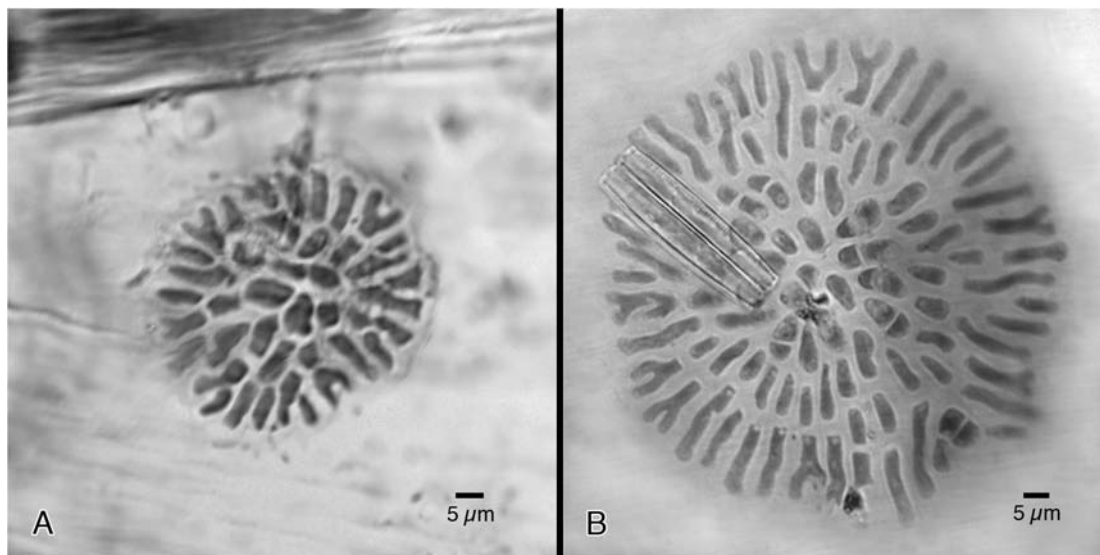


FIGURE 12. Species of *Ulvella*. A. *Ulvella lens*: Immature specimen, nearly circular with some bifurcate cells at disc margin; epiphytic on *Cladophora* (EYD-271). B. *Ulvella setchellii*: Disc with elongate cells outward from central region and long, narrow, commonly bifurcate marginal cells; epiphytic on *Cladophora microcladioides* (EYD-46-980).

the taxonomic relationship of these two taxa needs to be reinvestigated.

### ***Ulvella setchellii* P. J. L. Dangeard**

FIGURE 12B

*Ulvella setchellii* Dangeard, 1931:317, figs. 1D,1E, pl. 1; Feldmann, 1937:188, fig. 9C; Smith, 1944:38; Hollenberg, 1948:155; Dawson, 1961b:372; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:59, fig. 9; Nielsen, 1977:3, figs. 15–21; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:140; Stewart, 1991:25; González-González et al., 1996:140; Cribb, 1995:28, pl. 6: fig. 5, pl. 7: fig. 7; Kraft, 2000:514, fig. 3A; Abbott and Huisman, 2003a:283, fig. 10; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:45, fig. 4D; Pedroche et al., 2005:18; Kraft, 2007:27, fig. 9A–E.

*Ulvella lens* sensu Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:295, pl. 33; Setchell and Gardner, 1930:138; Dawson, 1946b:169; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:111 [non *Ulvella lens* P. Crouan et H. Crouan 1859:288].

Algae minute epiphytes, circular to irregularly disc-shaped, 30–300 µm in diameter; initially monostromatic, later becoming polystromatic of 2–4 cell layers in central portion; outer portions of 1 cell layer. Cells of central portion angular to slightly elongate, mostly 5–8 µm in

diameter. Marginal cells of Gulf specimens, long and narrow, 12–27 µm long and 3–5 µm wide, most terminating with divided tips (appearing Y-shaped, with one side usually longer than the other). Cells uninucleate, chloroplast with 2–3 pyrenoids.

Sporangia not observed in Gulf specimens (central cells become sporangia and develop conical protuberances that function as exit tubes for zoospores [Nielsen, 1977:4, fig. 16]).

**HABITAT.** Epiphytic on *Cladophora* and probably on other algae as well; intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Bahía Agua Dulce (Bahía Tecomate), Isla Tiburón; Bahía Kino; Playa Los Cerritos (vicinity Mazatlán), Sinaloa. Pacific coast: British Columbia to Isla Guadalupe (Baja California).

**SYNTYPE LOCALITIES.** Roscoff, Finistère, France (on *Polysiphonia*); Croisic, Loire Inférieure, France (on *Phyllophora*); and Pacific Grove, Monterey County, California (on *Laurenica*).

**REMARKS.** Specimens of *Ulvella setchellii* from Bahía Agua Dulce, Isla Tiburón (US Alg. Coll. slide 892), epiphytic on *Cladophora* (EYD-46-980), and Bahía Kino (US Alg. Coll. slide 4166), also epiphytic on a *Cladophora* (EYD-2928), represent the first records for the northern Gulf of California. Although the cell diameters of Gulf *U. setchellii* and *U. setchellii* from California (e.g., Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976) are in general agreement, the outer

marginal cells differ in length; Gulf *U. setchellii* are not as long (only up to 27 µm) compared to those from California (up to 50 µm in length). This may be a reflection of a smaller, immature state of the Gulf specimens.

### PHAEOPHILALES

Phaeophilales Chappell, O'Kelly, L. W. Wilcox, et G. L. Floyd, 1990:516.

Algae are microscopic, multicellular, and filamentous. Vegetative cells contain a single nucleus.

The order is defined on developmental and ultrastructural characters. Reproductive development: initially the zoosporangia become multinucleate, and then the zoospores are formed by simultaneous cleavage (O'Kelly and Yarish, 1981a). Zoospore ultrastructure: reproduction is by scaleless, quadriflagellate zoospores that are formed in the zoosporangia. The anterior-most pair of flagellar basal bodies in the zoospores has simple, convex terminal caps.

**REMARKS.** On the basis of the ontogeny of the zoosporangia and ultrastructural characters of the zoospores of the generitype *Phaeophila dendroides*, Chappell et al. (1990) removed the genus from the Ulvellaceae and established a new family and order. Although the Phaeophilales and Phaeophilaceae are recognized herein, their status is problematic. O'Kelly et al. (2004) noted that while their molecular phylogenetic reconstructions supported six lineages, including a *Phaeophila* lineage, it may be premature to interpret their higher level classification, including the proposed order and family of Chappell et al. (1990).

### PHAEOPHILACEAE

Phaeophilaceae Chappell, O'Kelly, L. W. Wilcox, et G. L. Floyd, 1990:516.

Algae are branched uniseriate filaments, with the characteristics of the order.

**REMARKS.** The taxonomic status of the family is unresolved (O'Kelly et al., 2004; see also Remarks for Phaeophilales).

A monotypic family, its single genus is represented in the northern Gulf of California.

### *Phaeophila* Hauck

*Phaeophila* Hauck, 1876:56.

Algae minute, endophytic or epiphytic, and composed of branching uniseriate filaments, with cells that bear hairs (without a septa separating them from the cell). Cells contain parietal chloroplasts with few to several pyrenoids.

Zoosporangia can be similar in size to the vegetative cells or slightly larger and are often terminal on the branches. The zoospores are quadriflagellate.

**REMARKS.** Although Nielsen (1972) recognized 11 species in *Phaeophila* (some of which have been subsequently transferred to other genera [Nielsen, 1983, 1988a; Nielsen et al., 1995]), most have considered it to be a monotypic genus (e.g., O'Kelly and Yarish, 1981a; Chappell et al., 1990; Kitayama and Yoshida, 1992). More recently, O'Kelly et al. (2004) noted it is unclear whether any species other than *P. dendroides* actually belong in *Phaeophila*. For example, results from culture studies by Moewus (1949) of *Ectochaete ramulosa* L. Moewus (1949; = *Phaeophila ramulosa* (L. Moewus) Nielsen) and by Yarish (1975) of *Endoderma vagans* Børgesen (1920; = *P. vagans* (Børgesen) Nielsen) suggest both are not *Phaeophila* but belong to *Acrochaete* sensu Nielsen (1979).

There is one species in the northern Gulf of California.

### *Phaeophila dendroides* (P. Crouan et H. Crouan) Batters

*Ochlochaete dendroides* P. Crouan et H. Crouan, 1852:Vol. 3, No. 346; Crouan and Crouan, 1867:128, pl. 8.

*Phaeophila dendroides* (P. Crouan et H. Crouan) Batters, 1902:13; Taylor, 1945:47; van den Hoek, 1958:212, fig. 6d-f; Dawson, 1961b:371; Nielsen, 1972:255-257, 261, figs. 2, 3, pl. 3a-f; O'Kelly and Yarish, 1981a:549, figs. 1, 15-27; Garbary et al., 1985:43; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:419; Nielsen, 1987:435, figs. 9C-E, 10A-P; Kitayama and Yoshida, 1992:47, figs. 1-12; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1992:23; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Cribb, 1995:21, pl. 1: fig. 4; González-González et al., 1996:288, 372; Yoshida, 1998:21, fig. 1-1F; O'Kelly et al., 2004:789-798; Wysor, 2004:214; Pedroche et al., 2005:19; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:58; Tribollet et al., 2006: 292-303; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:7.

*Phaeophila engleri* Reinke, 1889a:86; Thivy, 1943:245, pls. 1, 2; Taylor, 1945:46; Dawson, 1961b:371; Earle, 1972:85; León-Tejera and González-González, 1993:498; González-González et al., 1996:372; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998:24.

Minute algae of uniseriate filaments, irregularly alternate or oppositely branched; endophytic or epiphytic, endoepilithic or penetrating shells or dead coral. Cells elongated, cylindrical, (5–)7–25  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter and 15–55  $\mu\text{m}$  long; some may be swollen (subglobose) up to 25  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; with parietal chloroplast with 1–13 pyrenoids; and wavy setae (hairs), up to 400  $\mu\text{m}$  long and (1–)2–5  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter.

Sporangia 10–40  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, with an emission tube, 3.5–7.7  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter and up to 4 times longer than diameter of sporangium.

**HABITAT.** In shells, coral rubble, and crustose corallines; intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Guaymas. Pacific coast: British Columbia to Washington; Isla Clarión (Islas Revillagigedo); Isla María Magdalena (Islas Tres Marías), Nayarit to Oaxaca; Panamá; Hawaiian Islands; Galápagos Islands.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Brest, Finistère, France.

**REMARKS.** *Phaeophila dendroides* is usually reported to be within mollusk or barnacle shells and crustose corallines. However in the northern Gulf it was reported as epiphytic on non-calcareous algae, i.e., on “*Laurencia*” (Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986) and *Chaetomorpha* (Mateo-Cid et al., 2006).

## ULVALES

Ulvales Blackman et Tansley, 1902:136.

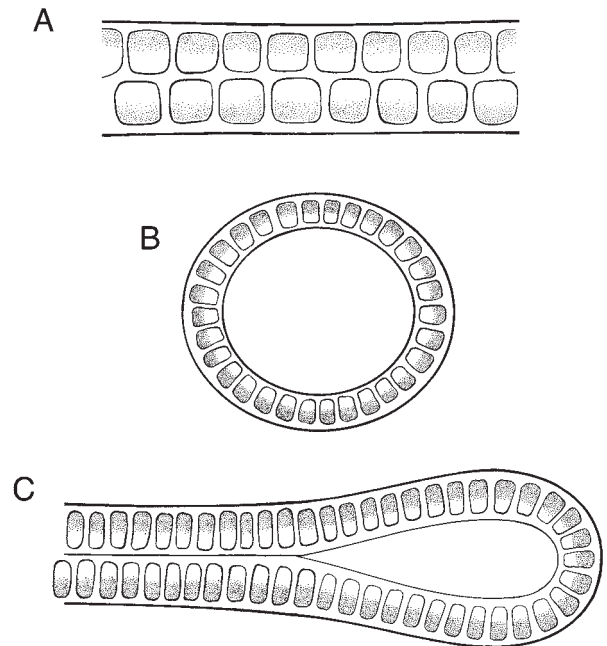
Algae are multicellular and consist of biserial filaments or monostromatic or distromatic thalli that are tubular or compressed or form partly to completely flattened blades. Growth is by intercalary cell division. Cells are uninucleate, with a single laminate or cup-shaped chloroplast and one or more pyrenoids.

Life histories are generally isomorphic with phases of morphologically similar asexual and sexual thalli, but a few species are known to be heteromorphic, with dissimilar gametophytes and sporophytes. Asexual reproduction is by bi- or quadriflagellate zoospores, which are formed within cells. Many can also reproduce vegetatively by fragmentation. Sexual reproduction may be isogamous, anisogamous, or oogamous.

One family is well represented in the northern Gulf of California.

## ULVACEAE

Ulvaceae Lamouroux ex Dumortier, 1822:71.



**FIGURE 13.** *Ulva* anatomy, diagrammatic transections: A. *Ulva* sect. *ulva*: Flat blade of two cell layers throughout. B, C. *Ulva* sect. *enteromorpha*: B. Cylindrical, hollow, and one cell layer throughout. C. Flattened blade of two cell layers, with hollow, one-cell-layer margins. (drawn by Alice R. Tangerini, NMNH)

Most members of the Ulvaceae are marine species that are membranous and exhibit high morphological variability within species, often overlapping between species. They may be (1) flat, distromatic (two cells thick throughout; Figure 13A), and entire, divided, or branched, with smooth, ruffled, or puckered surfaces; (2) tubular to compressed, monostromatic (one cell thick throughout; Figure 13B), and simple to extensively branched; or (3) with both a flattened portion (two cell layers) and tubular margins and/or a tubular basal portion (both one cell layer) (Figure 13C). Members are attached to the substratum by a basal disc or rhizoidal outgrowths from basal cells of blade margins.

Asexual reproduction is by biflagellate or quadriflagellate zoospores. For most, where the life history is known, there is an alternation of isomorphic gametophytes and sporophytes. Sometimes a single phase, either gametophytic or sporophytic, is repeated without alternating phases, and for a few the life history is entirely sporophytic. Gametophytes produce biflagellate isogametes or anisogametes.

**REMARKS.** *Ulva* is a cosmopolitan genus and widespread in distribution throughout the Gulf of

California. The reports of *Blidingia minima* (Nägeli ex Kützing) Kylin (1947b) from La Paz (Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999, both as “*E. micrococca*”), Pacific Baja California (Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978, as “*E. minima* and *E. micrococca*”), and Oaxaca (Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970, as “*E. micrococca*”) and *B. marginata* (J. Agardh) P. J. L. Dangeard ex Bliding (1963) from Isla San Benedicto (Islas Revillagigedo), Oaxaca, and Chiapas (Huerta-Múzquiz and Garza-Barrientos, 1975, as “*E. marginata*”) establish another genus, *Blidingia* Kylin (1947b), in the southern Gulf and Pacific Mexico.

One genus, *Ulva*, is known in the northern Gulf of California.

### ***Ulva* Linnaeus**

*Ulva* Linnaeus, 1753:1163.

*Enteromorpha* Link in Nees, 1820:5.

*Chloropelta* Tanner, 1980:129.

Although members are of two basic forms, they can exhibit widely variable morphologies. One group, *Ulva* sect. *ulva*, includes flattened blades of two layers (distromatic) of closely adherent cells with gelatinous walls of varying thickness (Figure 13A). These blades range from narrowly lanceolate to broadly expanded forms and may be entire, irregularly lobed, cuneate, or deeply divided, with most having a smooth surface (some may have perforations or holes), and smooth, ruffled, or dentate margins. The blades are attached to the substratum by a basal holdfast of compacted rhizoidal cells either directly (without stipe) or below a stipitate portion, and/or rhizoidal extensions of cells from the lower portions of the blade that may run between the two cell layers of the blade. Growth is diffuse by cell divisions, primarily along the margins. Vegetative cells are uninucleate, with a single laminate or cup-shaped chloroplast, and usually one pyrenoid. However, rhizoidal cells are often multinucleate.

Most members of the other group, *Ulva* sect. *enteromorpha*, are cylindrical to compressed, hollow, and one cell layer (monostromatic) throughout (Figure 13B), while a few others may be a flat, distromatic blade with margins and/or a basal portion that are hollow and monostromatic (Figure 13C). These may be unbranched or branched (often repeatedly), sometimes with uniseriate or pluriseriate proliferations or branchlets, and are basally attached by a system of rhizoidal nonseptate filaments that form a holdfast or by rhizoids growing from the lower basal cells. These rhizoidal extensions may fill the basal portion of the

thallus to form a solid stipe. Cells are uninucleate with a single (laminate or cup-shaped) chloroplast and one to several pyrenoids; rhizoidal cells are sometimes multinucleate.

Vegetative reproduction can be by fragmentation or by developing new upright thalli from basal cells or persistent holdfasts. Life histories are usually an isomorphic alternation of generations of a diploid sporophyte and haploid gametophytes. Some are capable of parthenogenetic development, and for other species a sexual generation is apparently lacking. All cells of the thallus, except some of basal and rhizoidal cells, are capable of becoming reproductive. Asexual reproduction is by quadriflagellate zoospores or aplanospores produced within the thallus cells. Sexual reproduction is by the formation of biflagellate isogametes or anisogametes. In some species the biflagellated swimmers develop parthenogenetically. Spores, parthenogenetic gametes, and fertilized gametes initially develop into a uniseriate filament that forms a tubular monostromatic germling. As the tube develops, it either (1) remains one cell layer throughout, or becomes partially flattened with or without a hollow basal portion and/or hollow margins (*Ulva* sect. *enteromorpha*) or (2) becomes compressed throughout with the cell walls adhering to form a distromatic blade (*Ulva* sect. *ulva*).

**REMARKS.** Species of *Ulva* are found worldwide in marine, estuarine, and freshwater habitats. While most are attached, some become unattached and can be free-floating or form mats on intertidal mud and sand flats. Other unattached species sink and grow in shallow to deep subtidal waters (e.g., one species formed extensive meadows at 650 m depths in the Hawaiian Islands; Sylvia A. Earle, NOAA [currently with Deep Ocean Exploration and Research], personal communication).

Species concepts of the “*Ulva-Enteromorpha* complex” are based on morphology and anatomy and are complicated by a high degree of plasticity. Characters primarily used to separate the species are (1) morphological, if cylindrical, compressed or flattened, entire or branched, and smooth or dentate margins; (2) anatomical, one or two layers thick; and (3) cytological, such as cell shape and arrangement (regularly or irregularly arranged), dimensions and thickness of cell walls (in transections and surface views), chloroplast shape, and number of pyrenoids. Many studies have shown these characters to be highly variable within species, varying with age, reproductive condition, and influenced by ecological factors such as wave exposure, tidal factors, currents, temperature, salinity, and light and biotic factors such as grazing or microorganisms in seawater (e.g., Provasoli and Pintner, 1964, 1980, 1981; L. Fries, 1975; Bonneau, 1977).

Studies of field-collected specimens, combined with morphological and reproductive details, cytological developmental patterns in culture, and the apparent inability of species to interbreed, have also been used to evaluate species concepts (Bliding, 1963, 1968; Koeman and van den Hoek, 1981, 1982a, 1982b, 1984; Hoeksema and van den Hoek, 1983; Tanner, 1986; Phillips, 1988). Originally considered a single genus by Linnaeus (1753), it was Link (in Nees, 1820) who divided *Ulva* and described the genus *Enteromorpha*. Since then, it has long been suggested that *Enteromorpha* and *Ulva* are closely related, perhaps the same genus. Recent molecular analyses support that they are a single genus (Tan et al., 1999; Shimada et al., 2003; Hayden et al., 2003; Hayden and Waaland, 2004).

Two Asian species, potentially invasive, have been recently reported in Pacific Mexico. *Ulva fasciata* Delile

(1813), apparently introduced (Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 2003), is reported from Pacific Baja California and Sinaloa to Oaxaca (R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2005a). A Japanese species, *U. pertusa* Kjellman (1897), first reported in southern California (Hayden and Waaland, 2004), has now been identified in northwest Baja California (R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2008). Hopefully, continued monitoring and measures taken, if necessary, will prevent their introduction and spread into the Gulf of California.

A broadly expanding species, *U. expansa* (Setchell) Setchell et N. L. Gardner (1920a), has been reported in the southern Gulf, from Bahía de La Paz (Howe, 1911, as “*U. fasciata* f. *expansa*”; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001; Pedroche et al., 2005).

Twelve species of *Ulva*, in two separate morphological sections, are present in the northern Gulf of California.

KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *ULVA* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Thalli flat, linear to rounded blades; 2 cell layers thick throughout [Figure 13A] ..... *Ulva* sect. *ulva* 2
- 1b. Thalli either: tubular to compressed and hollow and 1 cell layer throughout; or with upper flat or blade-like portion of 2 cell layers with hollow margins of 1 cell layer, and a tubular hollow basal portion of 1 cell layer [Figure 13B,C] .....  
 ..... *Ulva* sect. *enteromorpha* 7
- 2a. Blades mostly less than 2 cm tall; in small clumps ..... *U. californica* (in part)
- 2b. Blades mostly over 5 cm tall; usually not in clumps ..... 3
- 3a. Cells in transection of middle portion of blade, quadrate to only slightly elongate ..... *U. lactuca*
- 3b. Cells in transection of middle portion of blade, subquadrate to anticlinally elongate ..... 4
- 4a. Blades digitate, with a lower basal or bicular portion and up to 6 lanceolate segments tapering upward . . . . *U. nematoidea*
- 4b. Blades not digitate, either orbicular to wider than tall or linear and much taller than wide, entire or divided, with basal portion narrowed toward base ..... 5
- 5a. Blades linear, up to 6 times taller than wide, often spirally twisted with ruffled margins. . . . . *U. californica* (in part)
- 5b. Blades not linear; obovate (broadest near upper end) or wider than tall ..... 6
- 6a. Blades obovate and deeply lobed; margins smooth; transection, thicker in central portion, of cells up to 2 times taller than wide ..... *U. lobata*
- 6b. Blades orbicular (circular and flattened) to wider than tall; margins usually dentate; in transection, more or less same thickness throughout, of elongated cells, up to 3 times taller than wide ..... *U. rigida*
- 7a. Thalli bladelike; flattened upward (2 cells thick), with hollow (1 cell thick) margins and/or tubular basal portions .....  
 ..... *U. linza*
- 7b. Thalli tubular to compressed, simple to much branched; hollow and 1 cell layer throughout ..... 8
- 8a. Thalli more or less tubular throughout; axes and branches usually densely covered with numerous short branchlets and spinelike projections ..... *U. acanthophora*
- 8b. Thalli tubular to compressed, simple and unbranched to branched; axes and branches without spiny projections; short branchlets, if present, not dense ..... 9
- 9a. Cells in surface view irregularly arranged throughout (not arranged in longitudinal rows in any part of thallus) ..... 10
- 9b. Cells in surface view in distinct to more or less clearly arranged longitudinal rows (often more evident in younger or narrower portions of axes and branches) ..... 11
- 10a. Thallus tubular throughout (or rarely only slightly compressed); usually not branched (or if branched, only one to few simple branches); in transection outer cell wall thin ..... *U. intestinalis*
- 10b. Thallus compressed, usually widening upward and branched; in transection outer cell wall thick ..... *U. compressa*

- 11a. Thalli cylindrical to slightly compressed; repeatedly and usually densely branched up to several orders; ultimate branchlets multiseriate or partly to entirely uniseriate . . . . . *U. clathrata*  
 11b. Thalli either: simple and unbranched, or with branches only near base, or a main axis with lateral branches . . . . . 12  
 12a. Thallus with lateral branches or proliferations (rarely unbranched); cells in surface view in longitudinal but not transverse rows . . . . . *U. radiata*  
 12b. Thallus either: unbranched, or with branches only from or near base; cells in surface view in longitudinal and transverse rows (although sometimes may be obscure) . . . . . *U. flexuosa*

### ***Ulva* sect. *ulva***

Members of this section include species of *Ulva* that are flat, bladelike, and distromatic throughout (Figure 13A). The two cell layers of the blade are developmentally independent but closely adherent.

Five of the known species of this section are in the northern Gulf of California.

### ***Ulva californica* Wille**

FIGURE 14A,B

*Ulva californica* Wille in Collins, Holden and Setchell, 1899:Exsiccate No. 611; Collins, 1909b:215; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:264; Dawson, 1945c:23; Doty, 1947:11, pl. 2: figs. 6–10; Dawson, 1960a:31; Dawson, 1961b:374; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:78, fig. 35; Littler and Littler, 1981:149, 150; Pedroche and González-González, 1981:63; González-González, 1993:443; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Bertsch, 1983:114, 120; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1985:125; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:22; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruiz, 1986:77; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:419; Tanner, 1986:517, figs. 1–19; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:39; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruiz, 1989:81; R. Aguilar-Rosas and Machado-Galindo, 1990:188; Stewart, 1991:27; León-Tejera et al., 1993:199; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; R. Aguilar-Rosas and M. Aguilar-Rosas, 1994:517, 529; González-González et al., 1996:139; Núñez-López et al., 1998:39; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1998:169, 177; Hayden and Waaland, 2004:378, tbl. 3; Pedroche et al., 2005:22; Kawai et al., 2007:223–226, figs. 3, 4.

*Ulva angusta* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1920a:283, pls. 27, 31: fig.1; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:264, pls. 22, 26: fig.1; Setchell and Gardner, 1930:137; Dawson, 1944:201; Smith, 1944:45, pl. 4: figs. 1–3; Dawson, 1961b:374; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:78, fig. 34; Silva, 1979:341; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Bertsch,

1983:114; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:140; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1985:125; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:419; González-González et al., 1996:139.

*Enteromorpha angusta* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Doty, 1947:20, pl. 1: figs. 1–6.

*Ulva scagelii* Chihara, 1968:87, figs. 3–8.

*Ulva taeniata* sensu Dawson, 1945b:59, 64 [non *Ulva taeniata* (Setchell) Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1920a:286].

Algae variable in size and shape in the Gulf: blades usually small, up to 2 cm tall and 1.5 cm wide, cuneate or more or less triangular-shaped, with undulate margins; but blades can also be larger, lanceolate to oblanceolate (much taller than wide) up to 15 cm long and to 5 cm wide, usually with ruffled margins; attached below by a slender stipe and along base of the blade. Two cell layers, 30–40(–60)  $\mu\text{m}$  thick in transection; usually thicker near base. Cells in surface view polygonal with rounded corners, usually irregularly arranged, (5–)10–23  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter by (5–)10–15  $\mu\text{m}$  long; chloroplast with 1–2(–4) pyrenoids. Cells in transection more or less quadrate to slightly elongate, 5–12  $\mu\text{m}$  wide by 5–18  $\mu\text{m}$  tall.

Quadriflagellate zoospores develop into gametophytes. Anisogamous gametes fuse to form a zygote; female gametes capable of developing parthenogenetically; male gametes can also develop without fertilization (Tanner, 1986).

**HABITAT.** On rocks or occasionally epiphytic; high to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to La Paz. Pacific coast: Alaska to Baja California Sur; Isla Guadalupe; Isla Magdalena; Nayarit to Michoacán; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Pacific Beach, south of La Jolla, San Diego County, California.

**REMARKS.** In the northern Gulf, *Ulva californica* is usually found growing in its smaller, more or less triangular-shaped form (cf. Tanner, 1986:514, figs. 1, 4, 5). On the basis of similarities in morphology, cytology, and life histories, the absence of interfertility barriers, and preliminary electrophoretic data, two larger Pacific species, *U. angusta* and *U. scagelii*, were placed in synonymy with

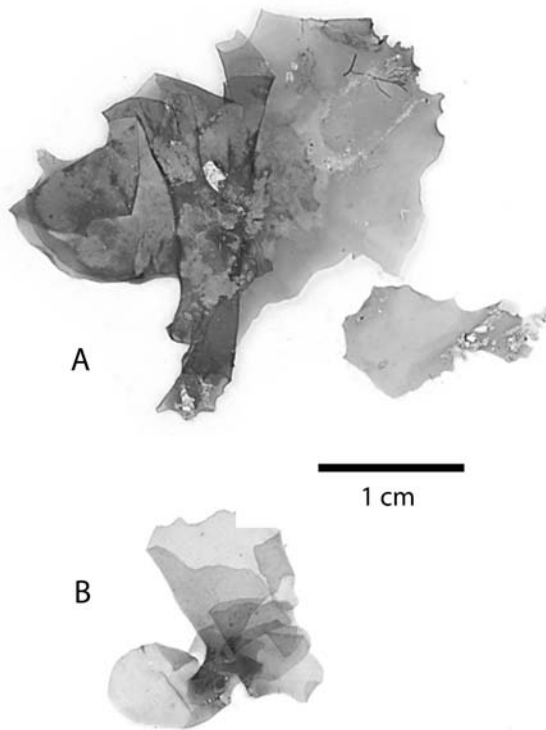


FIGURE 14. *Ulva californica*: Habits, small cuneate forms, typically found in the northern Gulf. A. EYD-27407. B. JN-5425.

*U. californica* (Tanner, 1986); this has been supported by the molecular analyses of Hayden and Waaland (2004). The larger thalli of *U. californica* are not common in the northern Gulf but have been reported from Guaymas as “*U. angusta*” (Dawson, 1961b; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986).

### ***Ulva lactuca* Linnaeus**

FIGURE 15

*Ulva lactuca* Linnaeus, 1753:1163; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:265; Collins, 1909b:214; Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:717; Setchell and Gardner, 1930:138; Dawson, 1944:202; Smith, 1944:45, pl. 3: figs. 6,7; Dawson, 1945b:64; Taylor, 1945:42; Dawson, 1959a:5, 8–11; Dawson, 1961b:374; Dawson, 1962b:228; Dawson, 1962c:278; Scagel, 1966:60, pl. 31: figs. I–K; Bliding, 1968:537, figs. 1–5; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:126; Chávez B., 1972:268; Norris, 1973:3, 17; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:83, fig. 39; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:336, 337, 339; Pedroche and González-

González, 1981:63; R. Aguilar-Rosas, 1982:84; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1982:52, fig. 8; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Bertsch, 1983:115, 120; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:22; Ibarra-Obando and R. Aguilar-Rosas, 1985:96; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruíz, 1986:77; Ortega et al., 1987:77, 90, pl. 13: figs. 56, 57; Sánchez-Vargas and Hendrickx, 1987:161; Salcedo-Martínez et al., 1988:82; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:39; Santelices, 1989:243, pl. AA: fig. 4; Dreckmann et al., 1990:24, 37; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1992:24; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:27; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:30; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:23; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992:24; González-González, 1993:443; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:51; Stout and Dreckmann, 1993:4; León-Tejera et al., 1993:199, 202; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994a:51, 60; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:34, 44; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:103, 112; González-González et al., 1996:289; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; Anaya-Reyna and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 1996:862; Bucio-Pacheco and Dreckmann, 1998:42; Yoshida, 1998:40; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998:24, 27; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:22; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:69; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2002:200; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2003:447; Hayden and Waaland, 2004:373, tbl. 3; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:101; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:146; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2005b:36; Pedroche et al., 2005:28; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:48; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:8; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:191, 201.

Algae cuneate, ovate to oblanceolate, up to 5 cm tall, light green, usually entire, occasionally lacinate, with undulate margins; attached by a small discoid holdfast. Thickness at margins 40–55  $\mu\text{m}$ ; in midportions up to 85  $\mu\text{m}$ ; and in basal region 80–100  $\mu\text{m}$  thick. Cells irregularly arranged in surface view; quadrangular to polygonal, 12–20  $\mu\text{m}$  by 10–25  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, with a single parietal chloroplast and 1–2 pyrenoids. Cells in transection, more or less quadrate, 15–25(–30)  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 10–25  $\mu\text{m}$  wide.

**HABITAT.** On rocks; high intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Cabo Pulmo. Pacific coast: Alaska to central California; northern Baja California to Oaxaca; Costa Rica; Ecuador; Galápagos Islands; Peru; Chile; China; Japan.

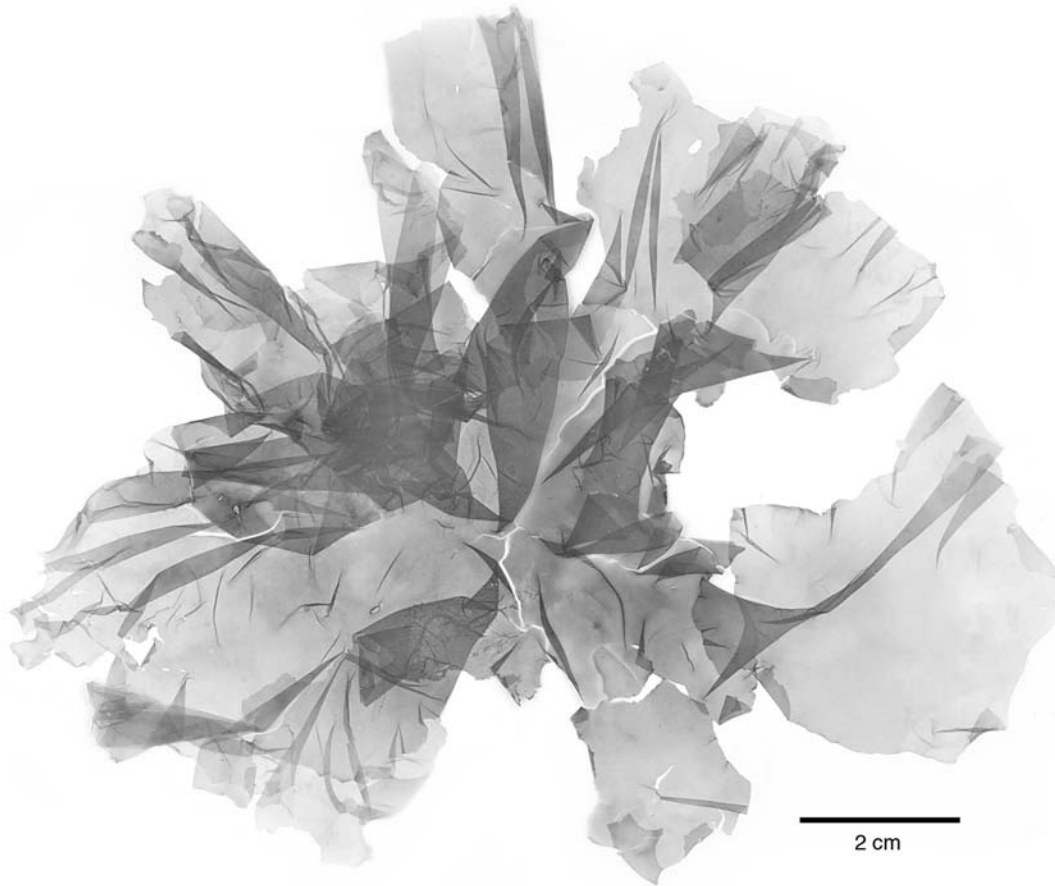


FIGURE 15. *Ulva lactuca*: Habit (US Alg. Coll.-36624).

**TYPE LOCALITY.** “*In Oceano*” (Linnaeus, 1753); probably west coast of Sweden (Womersley, 1984).

**REMARKS.** *Ulva lactuca*, the type species of the genus, has been reported worldwide. In the northwest Gulf of California, the effects of an El Niño year (1997–1998) on populations of *Ulva lactuca* were dramatic (Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2003). Stands of *U. lactuca* along the Gulf coast of Baja California across from Canal de Ballenas were significantly reduced in aerial coverage by 70% and biomass by 80% during El Niño in comparison to the pre-El Niño years (May 1995, 1996) and the post-El Niño year (May 2000) recovery.

### ***Ulva lobata* (Kützinger) Harvey**

FIGURE 16

*Phycoseris lobata* Kützinger, 1847:54; Kützinger, 1849:477; Kützinger, 1856:10, pl. 27.

*Ulva lobata* (Kützinger) Harvey, 1855:265; Silva et al., 1996a:748; Silva et al., 1996b:235; Pedroche et al., 2005:30.

*Ulva lobata* (Kützinger) Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1920a:284; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:268; Smith, 1944:46, pl. 4: figs. 4, 5; Taylor, 1945:43; Doty, 1947:10; Dawson, 1957a:2, 4; Dawson, 1959a:4; Dawson, 1959c:4; Dawson, 1961b:374; Guzmán del Prío et al., 1972:260; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:85, fig. 40; Silva, 1979:341; Pedroche and González-González, 1981:64; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:39; Santelices, 1989:242, pl. AA: fig. 6; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:30; León-Tejera et al., 1993:199; Servièze-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; González-González et al., 1996:140; Hoffmann and Santelices, 1997:65, fig. 10; León-Alvarez et al., 1997:397; Servièze-Zaragoza et al., 1998:169; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:133, 134; Hayden et al., 2003:279; Hayden and Waaland, 2004:377, tbl. 3.



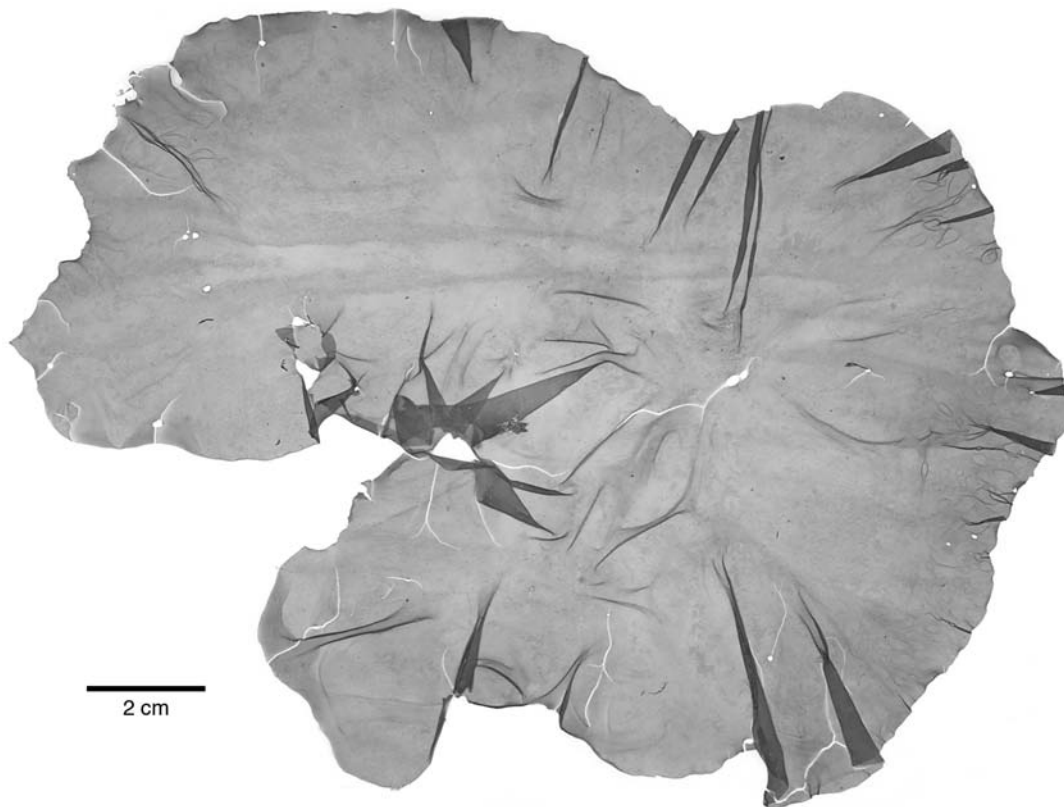


FIGURE 16. *Ulva lobata*: Habit (JN-6103a).

*Ulva fasciata* f. *lobata* Setchell in Collins, Holden and Setchell, 1901b:No. 863; Collins, 1909b:216.

Blades up to 15 cm tall, obovate, mostly deeply lobed or divided; margins smooth to ruffled; gradually narrowed in lowermost portion, sometimes more or less stipe-like at holdfast. Blades in transection 40–50  $\mu\text{m}$  thick at margins and noticeably thicker in midportion, up to 90  $\mu\text{m}$ . Cells viewed in transection appear vertically elongated, almost twice as tall as wide; with a cup-shaped chloroplast.

**HABITAT.** On rocks or mud and sand; mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Santa Teresa; Bahía de La Paz. Pacific coast: Oregon to Baja California; Jalisco to Guerrero; Clipperton Island; Ecuador; Galápagos Islands; Chile; Juan Fernandez Island.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Chile.

**REMARKS.** Although Levring (1941, as “*Phycoseris lobata*”; see also Wynne, 2002) listed *U. lobata* as a synonym of *U. nematoidea*, molecular analyses have not supported this (Hayden and Waaland, 2004), and these two are recognized as separate species.

### ***Ulva nematoidea* Bory de Saint-Vincent**

FIGURE 17A,B

*Ulva nematoidea* Bory de Saint-Vincent, 1828:190; Levring, 1941:605, figs. 1B–D, pl. 49: fig. 1; Levring, 1960:9; Wynne, 2002: figs. 1–3.

*Ulva fasciata* f. *costata* M. Howe, 1914:20, pl. 1, pl. 2: figs. 10–23; Taylor, 1947:60; Dawson et al., 1964:8, pl. 3; Acleto O., 1977a:16, fig. 13; Acleto O., 1977b:3, fig. 4.

*Ulva costata* (M. Howe) Hollenberg, 1971:283, fig. 1, *nom. illeg.* [since it is a later homonym of *Ulva costata* Wollny, 1881:30]; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:80, fig. 36; Santelices and Abbott, 1978:215; Acleto O. 1980:2, figs. 1–3; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Bertsch, 1983:114, 120; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1984a:151; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1984b:159; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruíz, 1985:71; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1985:125; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruíz, 1986:77; Acleto O., 1986:38, fig. 4; Santelices, 1989:241, pl. AA: fig. 3; R. Aguilar-Rosas and Machado-Galindo, 1990:188; R. Aguilar-Rosas and M. Aguilar-Rosas, 1994:517, 526;

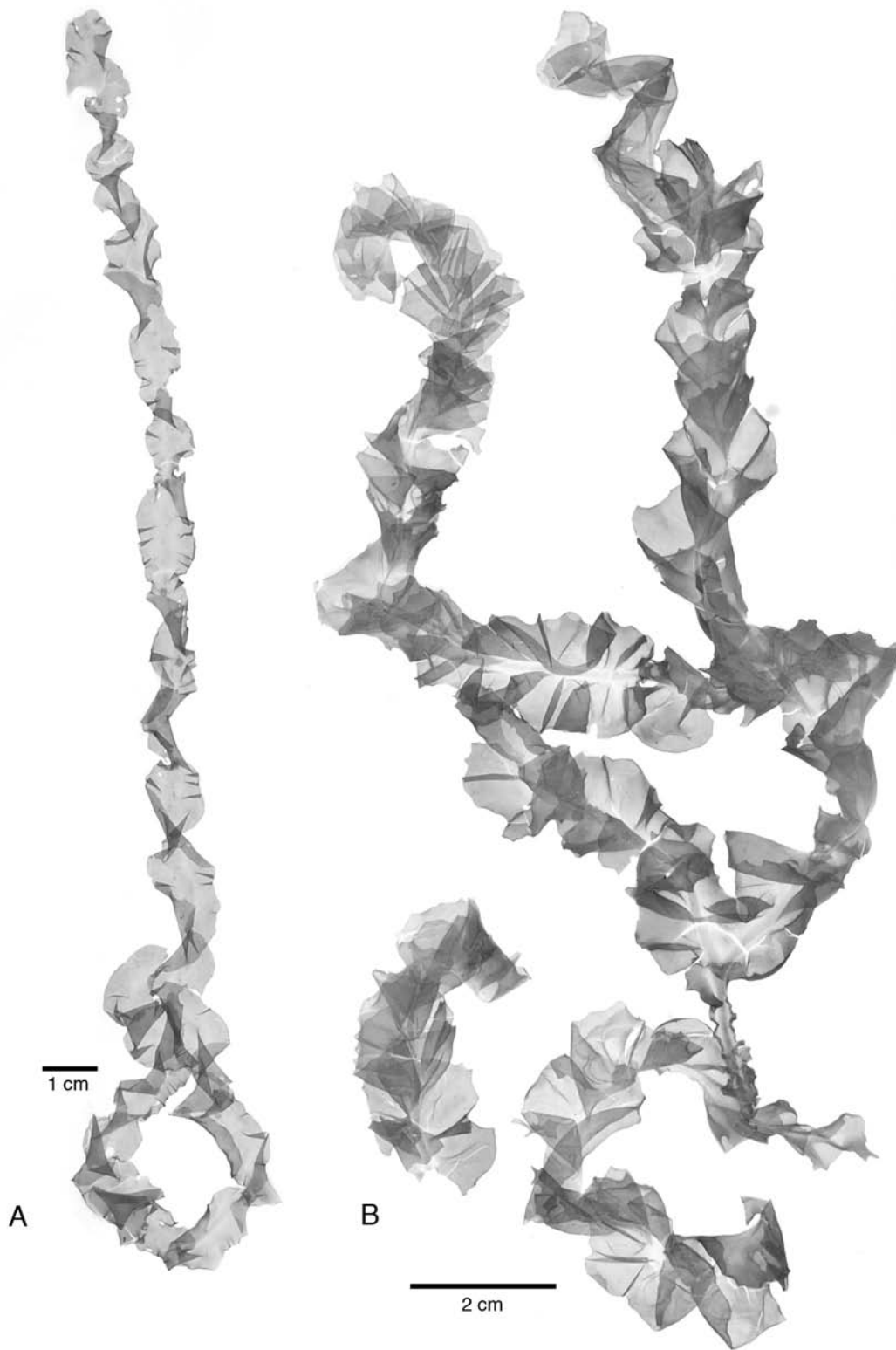


FIGURE 17. *Ulva nematoidea*: A. Thallus narrowly linear and twisted (EYD-10421). B. Thallus with central planar region and ruffled margins (US Alg. Coll.-8799).

Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994a:51; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:34, 44; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:112; González-González et al., 1996:139; Hoffman and Santelices, 1997:59, fig. 8; Mendoza-González et al., 1999:60; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2005b:36.

*Ulva dactylifera* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1920a:285, pl. 26: fig.1; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:272, pl. 21: fig.1; Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:717; Dawson, 1944:201; Dawson, 1959a:6, 11; Dawson, 1961b:374; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:80, fig. 37; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:339; Pedroche and González-González, 1981:63; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Bertsch, 1983:115, 120; González-González, 1993:443; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1985:125; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:419; Stewart, 1991:28; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:24; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1992:23; Servière-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; González-González et al., 1996:140; Bucio-Pacheco and Dreckmann, 1998:42; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:22; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:133, 134; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146; Pedroche et al., 2005:25; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:146.

*Ulva fasciata* f. *taeniata* Setchell in Collins, Holden and Setchell, 1901b: No. 862.

*Ulva taeniata* (Setchell) Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1920a:286, pl. 28; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:273, pl. 23; Smith, 1944:48, pl. 3: figs. 1–3; Dawson, 1945b:64; Doty, 1947:8, pl. 2: figs. 11, 12, pl. 4: figs. 3, 4; Dawson, 1961b:374; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:87, fig. 43; Santelices and Abbott, 1978:215; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:335; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruíz, 1986:77; Santelices, 1989:247, pl. AA: figs. 1,2; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:24; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:27; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1992:24; Servière-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994a:51; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:34, 44; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:103, 112; González-González et al., 1996:140; Hoffmann and Santelices, 1997:71, fig. 12; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Hayden and Waaland, 2004:379, tbl. 3; Pedroche et al., 2005:33.

Algae up to 10 cm tall, with upper blade divided into 4–6 narrow, linear segments, each 5–15 mm wide; often twisted, sometimes with a central planar region (midrib), and usually with crisped, ruffled margins that may or may not be dentate; lower portion of blade orbicular and attached along the basal margin or attached by a short

stipe. Cells in surface view isodiametric, 15–20 µm in diameter; in transection (16–)20–40 µm tall by 16–20 µm wide. Middle of upper lanceolate segments, up to 190 µm thick; with cells in surface view, 12–16 µm in diameter, and in transection, elongated, 12–16 wide and 35–60(–80) µm tall. Cells of margins in transection, mostly slightly elongate, 12–16 µm wide and 12–16 µm tall.

**HABITAT.** On rocks; upper to mid intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Santa Teresa to Bahía La Paz; Playa Los Cerritos (vicinity Matzalán), Sinaloa. Pacific coast: Oregon to Punta Eugenia, Baja California Sur; Sinaloa to Michoacán; Peru; Chile; Juan Fernandez Island. (Galápagos Islands and Ecuador [Taylor, 1945:43, with a query].)

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Concepción, Provincia Concepción, Chile.

**REMARKS.** Tanner (1979) and Stewart (1991) suggested that *U. costata*, *U. dactylifera*, and *U. taeniata* were conspecific; this has been recently supported by molecular evidence (Hayden and Waaland, 2004). Although Levring (1941, 1960) considered *U. costata* and *U. nematoidea* to be one species, this has been largely ignored. Recently, Wynne (2002) provided morphological evidence that these two were the same, with *U. nematoidea* having nomenclatural priority.

### *Ulva rigida* C. Agardh

FIGURE 18

*Ulva rigida* C. Agardh, 1823:410; Howe, 1914:18; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:269; Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:717; Setchell and Gardner, 1930:137; Levring, 1941:606; Dawson, 1944:202; Smith, 1944:47; Dawson, 1949:239, 242; Taylor, 1947:60; Papenfuss, 1960:305, text-fig. 4, pl. 1: fig. 11; Dawson, 1961b:374; Dawson et al., 1964:8; Dawson, 1966a:5; Scagel, 1966:61, pl. 30: figs. A–C, pl. 31: figs. A–H; Bliding, 1968:546, figs. 6–10; Acleto O., 1973:9; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:87, fig. 41; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:338; Koeman and van den Hoek, 1981:37, figs. 78–107; Littler and Littler, 1981:151–153; Hoeksema and van den Hoek, 1983:74, figs. 20–24; Littler and Littler, 1984:15, 24; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:22; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruíz, 1986:77; Dungan, 1986:295; Phillips, 1988:445, figs. 24–26; Santelices, 1989:243, pl. AA: fig. 5; R. Aguilar-Rosas and Machado-Galindo, 1990:188; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1990:123; Stewart, 1991:28; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:27; Rocha-Ramírez and

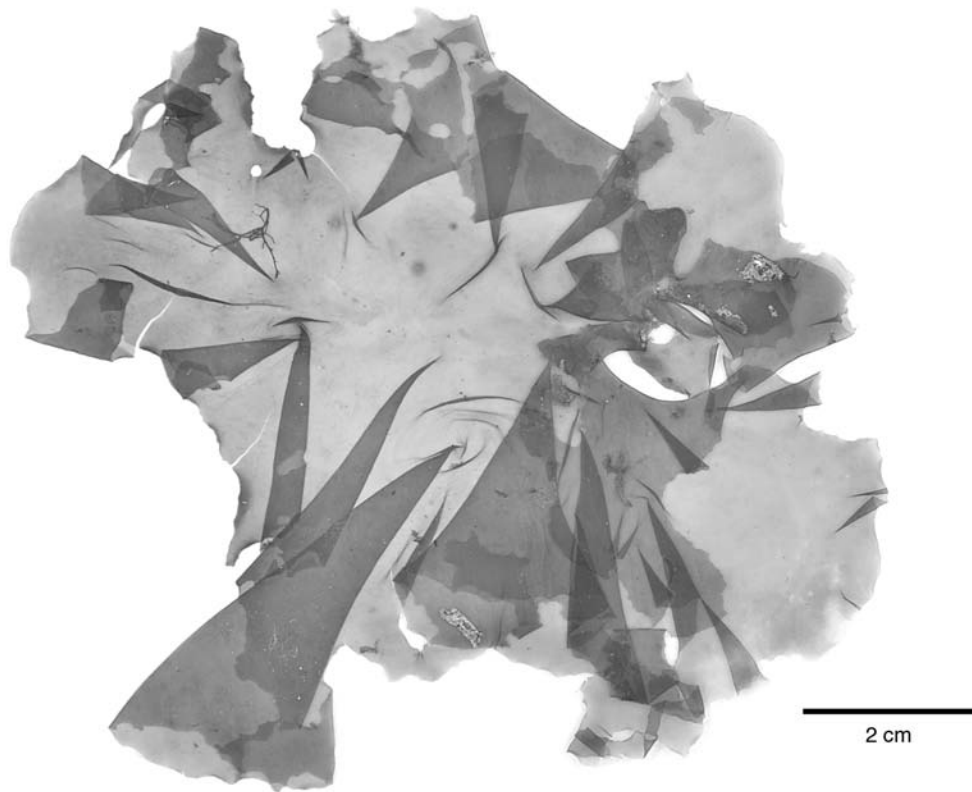


FIGURE 18. *Ulva rigida*: Habit, showing the wider than tall nature of the thallus (JN-5742).

Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:30; R. Aguilar-Rosas and M. Aguilar-Rosas, 1994:517, 526; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:44; González-González et al., 1996:290; Hoffmann and Santelices, 1997:68, fig. 11; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998:25; Mendoza-González et al., 1999:60; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:133; Kraft, 2000:532, fig. 11A–E; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:57, fig. 12A–D; Hayden and Waaland, 2004:379, tbl. 3; Pedroche et al., 2005:32; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:48; Kraft, 2007:46, fig. 19A–E; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:191, 201.

*Ulva lactuca* var. *rigida* (C. Agardh) Le Jolis, 1863:38; Collins, 1903:8, pl. 41: fig.1; Collins, 1909b:215; Howe, 1911:490; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:335; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432.

Blades broader than tall, up to 5 cm tall and to 10 cm wide in the Gulf, dark green; sometimes deeply lobed, usually with dentate margins (spines 1–3 cells long); firm

and comparatively stiff, narrowed abruptly at base to a short solid stipe above a small discoid holdfast. Cells in surface view irregularly arranged, polygonal to rounded, 10–15  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; with a single chloroplast and 1–3 pyrenoids. Transection of 2-cell-layer blade, up to 100  $\mu\text{m}$  thick (thickest in lowermost portion), with a distinct thick hyaline, mucilage layer between cell layers. Cells in transection predominately elongated (most evident in mid to lower portions), occasionally squarish, 15–45  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 10–15  $\mu\text{m}$  wide.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, usually exposed; high to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Bahía La Paz. Pacific coast: Alaska to Colima; Peru; Chile; Juan Fernandez Island; Hawaiian Islands.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Cádiz, southern Spain (Papenfuss, 1960).

**REMARKS.** *Ulva rigida* is distinguished from other species of the Gulf by blades that are generally wider than tall, darker green in color, and usually with microscopic teeth along the blade margins.

***Ulva* sect. *enteromorpha*  
(Link in Nees) Endlicher**

*Enteromorpha* Link in Nees, 1820:5.

*Ulva* sect. *enteromorpha* (Link in Nees) Endlicher, 1843:19.

Unlike *Ulva* sect. *ulva*, thalli of the members of *U.* sect. *enteromorpha* are completely monostromatic throughout or not completely distromatic throughout. This section includes species that are either (1) tubular to slightly compressed and only one cell thick (monostromatic) throughout (Figure 13B) or (2) compressed to flattened upward to form two-cells-thick (distromatic) blades that have hollow, one-cell-thick (monostromatic) margins (Figure 13C) and/or a one-cell thick (monostromatic) tubular base (Figure 13B).

Seven species are known in the northern Gulf of California.

***Ulva acanthophora* (Kützinger)  
Hayden, Blomster, Maggs, P. C. Silva,  
Stanhope et Waaland**

FIGURE 19A,B

*Enteromorpha acanthophora* Kützinger, 1849:479; Kützinger, 1856:pl.34: fig.1; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:254; Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:715, pl. 16: fig. 43, pl. 38; Dawson, 1944:203; Dawson, 1949:234; Dawson et al., 1960b:9, 13; Dawson, 1961b:373; Dawson, 1962c:278; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:126; Norris, 1973:3; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:337, 338; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:22; Norris, 1985:211; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:419; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:30; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:23; González-González et al., 1996:136; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190.

*Ulva acanthophora* (Kützinger) Hayden, Blomster, Maggs, P. C. Silva, Stanhope et Waaland, 2003:288; Pedroche et al., 2005:21; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:201.

*Enteromorpha ramulosa* var. *acanthophora* (Kützinger) Chapman, 1956:419, fig. 67; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146 [Pedroche et al., 2005:21 noted this combination was invalid].

*Enteromorpha ramulosa* sensu Adams, 1994:29, 51, pl. 3 [non *Enteromorpha ramulosa* (J. E. Smith) Carmichael in W. J. Hooker, 1833:315; basionym: *Ulva ramulosa*

J. E. Smith, 1810: pl. 2137, which is a synonym of *Ulva clathrata* (Roth) C. Agardh, 1811:23].

Algae more or less tubular throughout, usually profusely branched, up to 30(–45) cm tall, 1–2 mm in diameter; branches tubular, constricted at base; axes and branches beset with numerous short and spinose ultimate branchlets. Cells in surface view, mostly 10–15 µm in diameter, and not arranged in longitudinal series in main axes and branches; but more or less in longitudinal series in ultimate branchlets and spinose projections.

**HABITAT.** On rocks and tidal platforms, often exposed, and in sand in shallow protected waters; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal; also dredged 22–36 m (Dawson, 1944).

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Bahía Tepoca to Bahía La Paz; Isla Espiritu Santo. Pacific coast: Bahía San Quintín, Baja California; Bahía Tortuga and Bahía Almejas (Isla Santa Margarita), Baja California Sur; Golfo de Tehuantepec, Oaxaca.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Bay of Islands, northeast coast of North Island, New Zealand.

**REMARKS.** Within the Gulf of California, *Ulva acanthophora* has been collected in November but appears to be more common from February to June. It can be distinguished from other Gulf species by its large size and the characteristic, numerous, short branchlets and spine-like projections along its axes and branches. The presence of the New Zealand species in the Gulf and Pacific Mexico shows a very disjunct distribution. It would be interesting to comparatively test Gulf *U. acanthophora* with the New Zealand type and type locality specimens of *U. acanthophora* (Chapman, 1956; Adams, 1994) using morphological and molecular studies, such as those of Blomster et al. (1998, 1999), Hayden et al. (2003), and Hayden and Waaland (2004).

***Ulva clathrata* (Roth) C. Agardh**

FIGURE 20

*Conferva clathrata* Roth, 1806:175.

*Ulva clathrata* (Roth) C. Agardh, 1811:23; Blomster et al., 1999:579; Pedroche et al., 2005:23; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:8; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:191, 201.

*Enteromorpha clathrata* (Roth) Greville, 1830:lxvi, 181; Collins, 1909b:199; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:260; Dawson, 1959a:7, 10; Dawson, 1961b:373; Dawson, 1962b:228; Bliding, 1963:107, figs. 64–69; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:126; Norris,

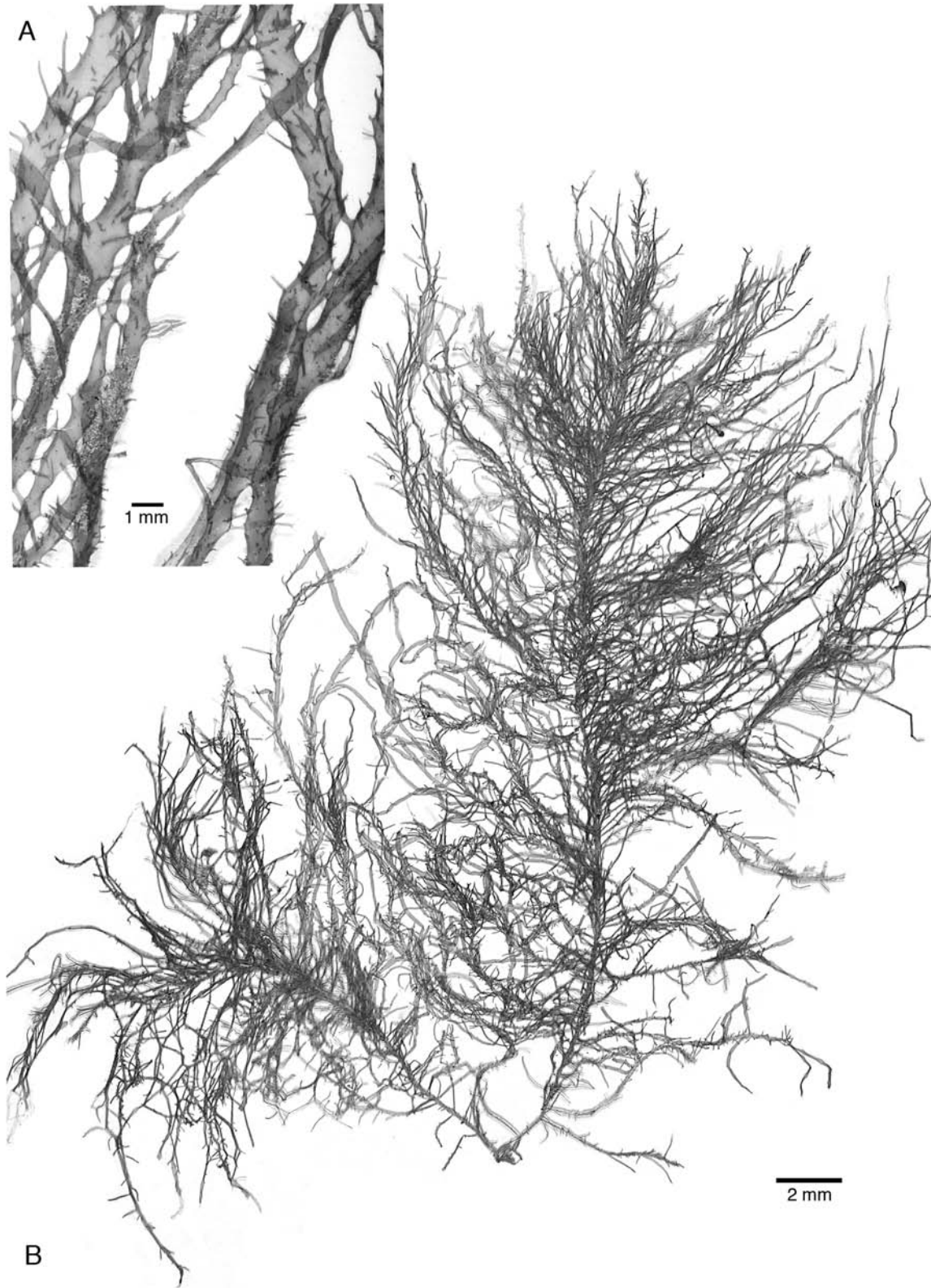


FIGURE 19. *Ulva acanthophora*: A. Close-up of spiny axes and branches (JN-5455). B. Robust thallus with abundant lateral branches, branchlets, and spines (JN-383).

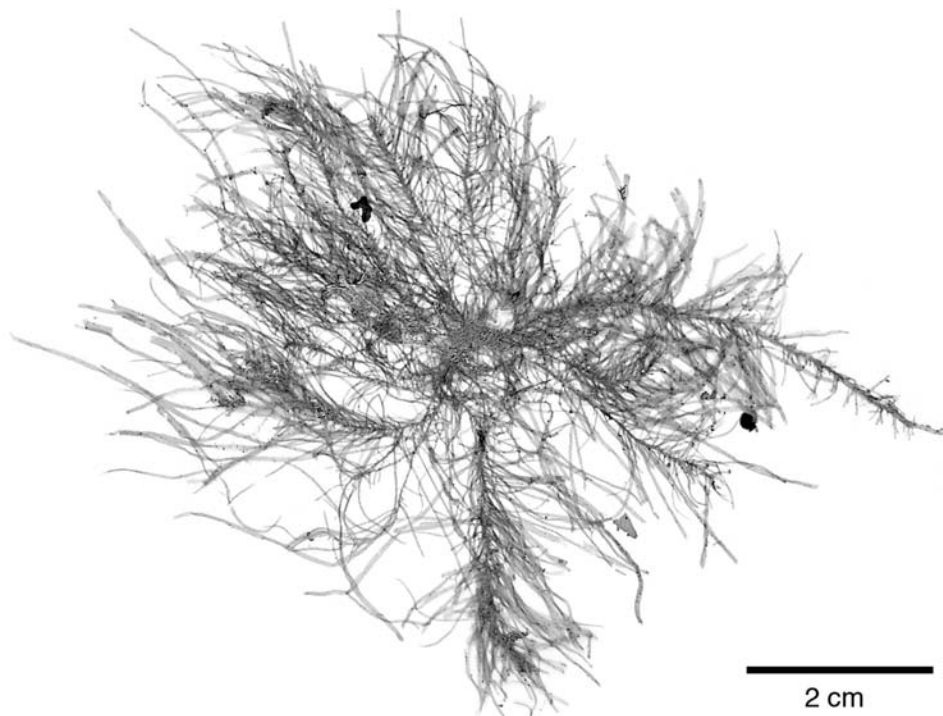


FIGURE 20. *Ulva clathrata*: Habit of extensively branched thallus (JN-4994).

- 1976a:73, fig. 27; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:339; Silva, 1979:340; R. Aguilar-Rosas, 1982:84; Ibarra-Obando and R. Aguilar-Rosas, 1985:96; De la Lanza et al., 1989:91; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:26; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:24; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:51; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:111; González-González et al., 1996:283; Riosmena-Rodríguez and Paul-Chávez, 1997:66; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998:24; Yoshida, 1998:34; Núñez-López et al., 1998:38; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:22; Blomster et al., 1999:575, figs. 2, 10–16, Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:69; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Hayden et al., 2003:288, tbl. 4; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:46, fig. 5A–C; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2005b:35.
- Enteromorpha crinita* Link in Nees, 1820:2 [index]; Dawson, 1945b:22.
- Enteromorpha clathrata* var. *crinita* (Link in Nees) Hauck, 1884:429; R. Aguilar-Rosas, 1982:85; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:39.
- Ulva muscoides* Clemente y Rubio, 1807:320; Cremades and Pérez-Cirera, 1990:490.
- Enteromorpha muscoides* (Clemente y Rubio) J. Cremades in Cremades and Pérez-Cirera, 1990:489; Silva et al., 1996a:737; Núñez-López et al., 1998:38; Blomster et al., 1999:575, figs. 1, 3–9, 22–25; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190.
- Enteromorpha plumosa* sensu Setchell and Gardner, 1930:137 [non *Enteromorpha plumosa* Kützinger, 1843:300; which is now *Ulva paradoxa* C. Agardh, 1817:XXII].
- Ulva ramulosa* J. E. Smith, 1810:pl. 2137.
- Enteromorpha ramulosa* (J. E. Smith) Carmichael in W. J. Hooker, 1833:315; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:126; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998:24.

Algae cylindrical to slightly compressed, up to 10 cm tall and 0.5–2.0 mm in diameter, and repeatedly branched, with numerous proliferations. Branches and ultimate branchlets end in multiseriate or uniseriate rows of cells. Cells in surface view, in distinct longitudinal rows in narrower portions, and either similarly ordered or more randomly arranged in broader older portions; cells 8–20  $\mu\text{m}$  wide and 8–36  $\mu\text{m}$  long, with a single chloroplast and 1 or more pyrenoids.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, mudflats and tidal platforms, in crevices, and in tide pools; generally in protected habitats; high to mid intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Bahía de La Paz; Punta Arena (vicinity of Cabo Pulmo). Pacific coast: Alaska to Oaxaca; Isla Clarion (Islas Revillagigedo); Isla Clipperton; Hawaiian Islands; Chile; China; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Fehmarn, SW Baltic Sea (Roth, 1806) [neotype locality: Landskoma, Baltic Oresund (neotype illustrated by Bliding, 1963: fig. 69a–d)].

**REMARKS.** Surprisingly, *Ulva clathrata* has not yet been reported from the northern Gulf. Collections in the vicinity of Puerto Peñasco (JN-4994; US Alg. Coll. 310816) represent a northern extension from Puerto Escondido (Dawson, 1959a).

### ***Ulva compressa* Linnaeus**

*Ulva compressa* Linnaeus, 1753:1163; Linnaeus, 1755:433; Blomster et al., 1998:332, figs. 50 (typotype), 55–57; Hayden et al., 2003:289, tbl. 4; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:48, 58; Pedroche et al., 2005:24; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:191, 201.

*Enteromorpha compressa* (Linnaeus) Link ex Nees, 1820:Index [2]; León-Tejera et al., 1993:199; González-González, 1993:443; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Leskinen and Pamilo, 1997:17; Bucio-Pacheco and Dreckmann, 1998:42; Yoshida, 1998:34; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:144; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:48, fig. 5D.

*Enteromorpha compressa* (Linnaeus) Greville, 1830:180, pl. 18: figs. 1–3; Setchell and Gardner, 1903: 213; Collins, 1909b:201; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:251, pl. 14: figs. 7, 8, pl. 16: fig. 3; Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:716; Dawson, 1944:203; Dawson, 1949:236; Dawson, 1957b:7; Dawson, 1959a:4, 6, 11; Dawson, 1961b:373; Dawson, 1962b:228; Dawson, 1962c:278; Bliding, 1963:132, figs. 82–84; Dawson, 1966a:5; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:126; Chávez B., 1972:268; Norris, 1973:3, 17; Norris, 1976a:74, fig. 29; Deviny, 1978:358; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:336; 338; Silva, 1979:340; Pedroche and González-González, 1981:63; Koeman and van den Hoek, 1982a:288, figs. 2–30; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:22; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:419; Dreckmann et al., 1990:24; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:27; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:23; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid,

1992:23; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992:24; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:51; León-Tejera and González-González, 1993:497; León-Tejera et al., 1993:199; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994a:51; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:44; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:112; González-González et al., 1996:283; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1996:74, 87, pl. 23: figs. 102, 103; Blomster et al., 1998:319, figs. 4–6, 10–15, 30–40, 55–57; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002:235; Dreckmann et al., 2006:153.

Algae mostly compressed, sometimes more or less tubular; up to 10 cm tall and mostly to 5 mm wide; upper portions usually sparsely branched (rarely unbranched); branches more slender near their branching origin and usually broadening distally; sometimes with microscopic, multiseriate or rarely uniseriate, branchlets; basal portion tapering to holdfast of rhizoidal cells. Cells in surface view, more or less quadrate, angular or rounded, 8–15 µm in diameter; irregularly arranged throughout; with 1 or occasionally 2 pyrenoids.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, usually in exposed habitats; also in mudflats and estuaries, sometimes free-floating, rarely epiphytic; high to mid intertidal (also dredged 4–32 m; Dawson, 1944).

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Las Piedras del Burro to Bahía de La Paz. Pacific coast: Alaska to Costa Rica; Peru; Chile; Hawaiian Islands; China; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Probably Bognor, Sussex, England (based on selection of lectotype illustration of Dillenius [1742:pl. 9: fig. 8] and typotype [see Stearn, 1957:129] by Blomster et al. [1998:332, figs. 50, 55–57]).

### ***Ulva flexuosa* Wulfen**

FIGURE 21A,B

*Ulva flexuosa* Wulfen, 1803:1; Hayden et al., 2003:289, tbl. 4; Pedroche et al., 2005:26; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:8.

*Conferva flexuosa* Roth, 1800:188–190, *nom. illeg.* [since it is a homonym of *Conferva flexuosa* O. F. Müller, 1782:5].

*Enteromorpha flexuosa* (Wulfen) J. Agardh, 1883:126; Collins, 1909b:203; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:255; Taylor, 1945:38; Dawson, 1957b:5; Bliding, 1963:73, figs. 38–41; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:126; Chávez B., 1972:268; Huerta-Múzquiz and Garza Barrientos, 1975:6; Norris, 1976a:76, fig. 30; Deviny, 1978:358; Silva, 1979:340; Pedroche



and González-González, 1981:63; R. Aguilar-Rosas, 1982:84; Schnetter and Bula Meyer, 1982:15, pl. 1: figs. A–F; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1985:125; Oliva-Martínez and Ortega, 1987:127, pl. 3: figs. 4a,b; Ortega et al., 1987:77, pl. 13: figs. 53–55; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruíz, 1989:81; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:39; De Lara-Isassi et al., 1989:102; Dreckmann et al., 1990:24; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:27; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992:24; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:51; González-González, 1993:443; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; R. Aguilar-Rosas and M. Aguilar-Rosas, 1994:517; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:112; González-González et al., 1996:284; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1996:74, 87, pl. 24: figs. 104–106; Leskinen and Pamilo, 1997:17;

Bucio-Pacheco and Dreckmann, 1998:42; Yoshida, 1998:35; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998:24, 27; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1998:169, 180; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:22; López et al., 2000:340; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002:235; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:48, fig. 6A–C; Wysor, 2004:215; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:146; Dreckmann et al., 2006:153.

*Enteromorpha compressa* var. *flexuosa* (Wulfen) Hamel, 1931a:65, fig. 48 (5,6).

*Enteromorpha prolifera* var. *flexuosa* (Wulfen) Doty, 1947:15; Dawson, 1961b:374.

*Enteromorpha lingulata* J. Agardh, 1883:143; Setchell and Gardner, 1930:137; Taylor, 1945:39; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:126, 131; Huerta-Múzquiz

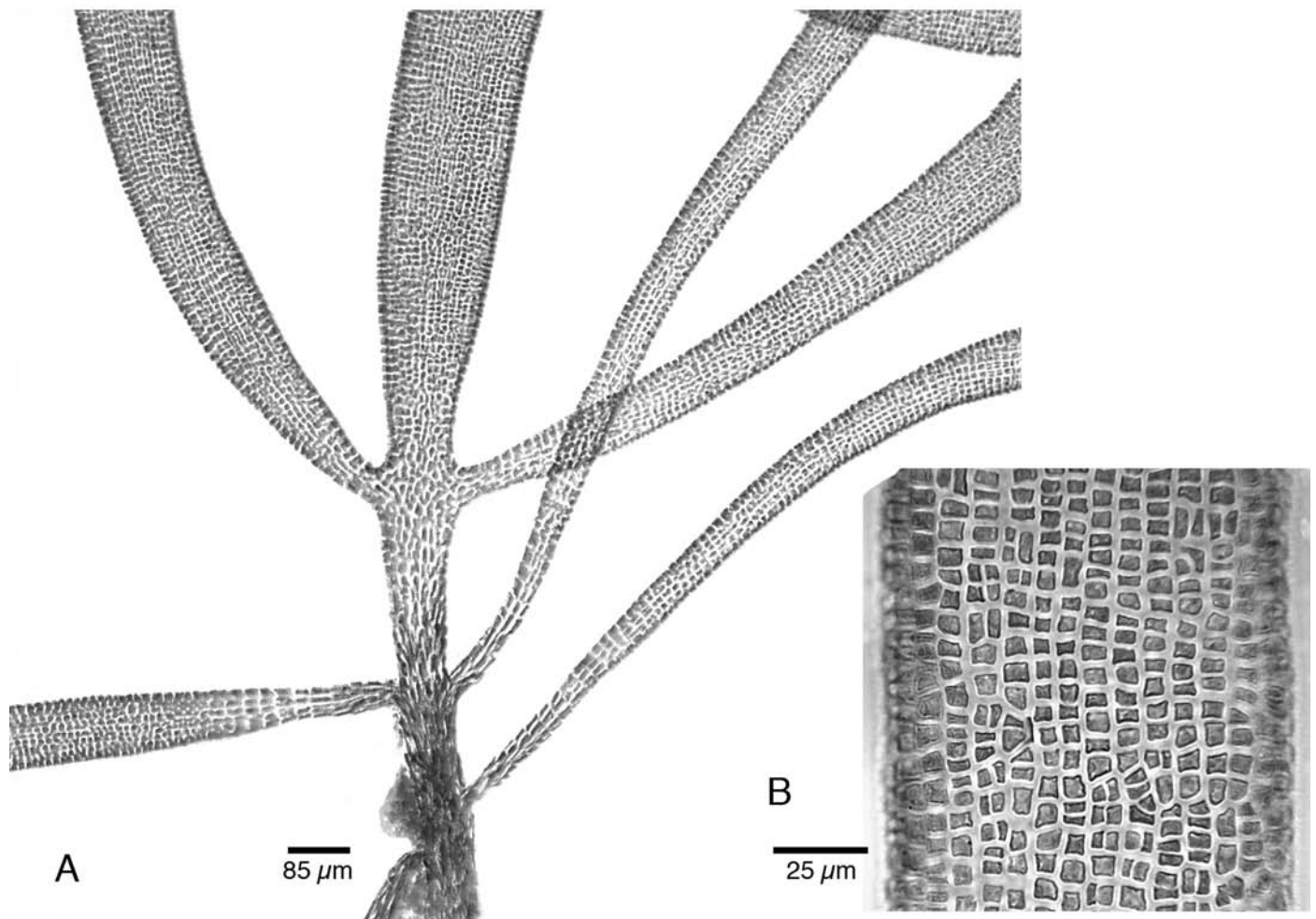


FIGURE 21. *Ulva flexuosa* (JN-4790): A. Lower portion of small thallus with several lateral branches and rhizoids growing downward toward the base. B. Surface view of cell arrangement in regular longitudinal and more or less transverse rows.

and Garza Barrientos, 1975:6; León-Tejera et al., 1993:199, 204; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998:24.

*Enteromorpha tubulosa* (Kützinger) Kützinger, 1856:11, pl. 32: fig. 2; Dawson, 1945b:59; Taylor, 1945:38, "prox."; Dawson, 1961b:374; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:126; Chávez B., 1972:268; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:335, 338; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42.

*Enteromorpha intestinalis* var. *tubulosa* Kützinger, 1845:247.

Algae cylindrical to slightly compressed, up to 10 cm tall and 0.5–5.0 mm wide, usually unbranched or sometimes sparsely branched (rarely with secondary branches), and without proliferations. Cells in surface view in longitudinal rows and transverse rows (evident in younger, narrower portions; not always distinct in older or broader portions); angular, quadrate to elongate, 8–15  $\mu\text{m}$  wide by 10–20  $\mu\text{m}$  long, with a parietal chloroplast and 1–2(–6) pyrenoids. Transverse section of 1 cell layer, 20–30  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; with cells 12–20(–30)  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 9–20  $\mu\text{m}$  wide.

**HABITAT.** On rocks; high to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: El Tornillal to La Paz. Pacific coast: British Columbia to Costa Rica; Panamá; Colombia; Ecuador; Galápagos Islands; Chile; Hawaiian Islands; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Duino (NW of Trieste), Italy, Adriatic Sea.

### *Ulva intestinalis* Linnaeus

FIGURE 22

*Ulva intestinalis* Linnaeus, 1753:1163; Linnaeus, 1755:418; Blomster et al., 1998:332, figs. 49 (typotype), 52–54; Hayden et al., 2003:289, tbl. 4; Hayden and Waaland, 2004:377, tbl. 3; Pedroche et al., 2005:27; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:48; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:191, 201.

*Enteromorpha intestinalis* (Linnaeus) Link in Nees, 1820:Index [2], 5; Howe, 1911:490; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:252; Dawson, 1944:203; Dawson, 1961b:373; Dawson, 1962c:278; Bliding, 1963:139, figs. 87–89; Dawson, 1966a:5; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:126; Brusca and Thomson, 1975:42; Norris, 1976a:76, fig. 31; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:336, 338; Silva, 1979:340; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1982:61; R. Aguilar-Rosas, 1982:84; Koeman and van den Hoek, 1982a:308, figs. 70–94; Littler and Arnold, 1982:309; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Bertsch, 1983:114, 119; L. Aguilar-Rosas et

al., 1985:125; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42; Ibarra-Obando and R. Aguilar-Rosas, 1985:96; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruíz, 1986:77; Tello-Velazco, 1986:73; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruíz, 1989:81; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:39; R. Aguilar-Rosas and Machado-Galindo, 1990:188; Dreckmann et al., 1990:24, 37; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:30; González-González, 1993:443; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:51; Stout and Dreckmann, 1993:4; R. Aguilar-Rosas and M. Aguilar-Rosas, 1994:517, 529; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:112; González-González et al., 1996:285; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1996:74, 87, pl. 23: figs. 98–101; Anaya-Reyna and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 1996:862; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; Leskinen and Pamilo, 1997:17; Bucio-Pacheco and Dreckmann, 1998:42; Yoshida, 1998:35; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998:24, 27; Blomster et al., 1998:319, figs. 1–3, 16–26, 27–29, 49, 52–54; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:30; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:133; León-Tejera and González-González, 2000:327; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:49, fig. 7A–C; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:101; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:146; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al. 2005b:35; Dreckmann et al., 2006:153.

*Enteromorpha marchantiae* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:716, pl. 16: figs. 40–42.

Algae usually simple, tubular and smooth throughout (sometimes irregularly inflated and constricted), up to 15 mm in diameter; attenuated toward base, remaining tubular (rarely becoming slightly compressed) and broadening upward; rarely branched. Cells in surface view, irregularly arranged throughout; 5–10  $\mu\text{m}$  wide and 5–12 (–17)  $\mu\text{m}$  long; with a single cup-shaped chloroplast and usually 1(–2) pyrenoid(s).

**HABITAT.** On rocks, occasionally epiphytic on other algae; high to low intertidal; also dredged 4–50 m (Dawson, 1944).

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Bahía La Paz. Pacific coast: Alaska to Chiapas; Peru; Chile; Hawaiian Islands; Japan; China.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** "In Mari omni" (Linnaeus, 1753); probably Woolwich, River Thames, London, England (based on selection of lectotype illustration of Dillenius [1742:pl. 9: fig. 7] and typotype [see Stearn, 1957:129] by Blomster et al. [1999:332, figs. 49, 52–54]).

**REMARKS.** Although some specimens of *Ulva intestinalis* can sometimes be confused with morphologically



FIGURE 22. *Ulva intestinalis*: Cluster of tubular thalli; most unbranched, a few branched near base (JN-3327).

similar specimens of *U. compressa*, studies have shown them to be genetically distinct (Blomster et al., 1998; Hayden and Waaland, 2004).

### ***Ulva linza* Linnaeus**

FIGURE 23

*Ulva linza* Linnaeus, 1753:1163; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:262, pl. 12: figs. 1–4; Levring, 1941:605; Smith, 1944:44, pl. 3: figs. 4, 5; Hayden et al., 2003:289, tbl. 4; Hayden and Waaland, 2004:378, tbl. 3; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:48; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:191, 201.

*Enteromorpha linza* (Linnaeus) J. Agardh, 1883:134, pl. 4: figs. 110–112; Collins, 1909b:206; Howe, 1911:490; Doty, 1947:18, pl. 1: figs. 7–9; Dawson, 1961b:373; Dawson, 1966a:5; Norris, 1976a:76, fig. 32; Silva,

1979:340; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:30; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1992:23; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:51; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; González-González et al., 1996:285, 371; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; Yoshida, 1998:36, pl. 1-3: fig. G; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998:24; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:133, 137; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002:235; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:50, fig. 7D; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2005b:36.

Algae linear to lanceolate, unbranched blades, up to 40 cm long and up to 10 cm wide; composed of a flattened upper portion of 2 cell layers, with margins usually hollow and 1 cell thick; margins smooth or sometimes ruffled; and a lower portion that gradually tapers downward to a tubular, hollow monostromatic basal portion. Cells with a single cup-shaped chloroplast and usually 1 pyrenoid. Cells in surface view irregularly arranged in upper flat portions, 10–20 µm in diameter; cells in longitudinal rows in basal portions, elongated, up to 35 µm long. Cells in transection rectangular, up to 20 µm tall and to 35 µm wide.

**HABITAT.** On sand/mud covered rocks and shells in drainage channels of estuaries; occasionally in tide pools and shaded habitats; and epiphytic on crustose corallines (L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000); mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Las Piedras del Burro to La Paz. Pacific coast: Alaska to Baja California; Jalisco; Oaxaca; Chile; Juan Fernandez Island; Hawaiian Islands; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** “*In Oceano*” (Linnaeus, 1753:1163); Sheerness, Kent, England (Hayden et al., 2003:289).

**REMARKS.** On the basis of molecular analysis, Hayden and Waaland (2004) noted that northeast Pacific “*Ulva linza*” and European *U. linza* (Tan et al., 1999) may be different taxa. It will be interesting to see the results of comparative molecular analyses of the Gulf “*U. linza*,” Pacific “*U. linza*,” and European *U. linza* (type or type locality), to test their taxonomic status and phylogenetic relationships.

### ***Ulva radiata* (J. Agardh) Hayden, Blomster, Maggs, P. C. Silva, Stanhope et Waaland**

*Enteromorpha radiata* J. Agardh, 1883:156; Koeman and van den Hoek, 1982b:54, figs. 54–78.

*Ulva radiata* (J. Agardh) Hayden, Blomster, Maggs, P. C. Silva, Stanhope et Waaland, 2003:290, tbl. 4.

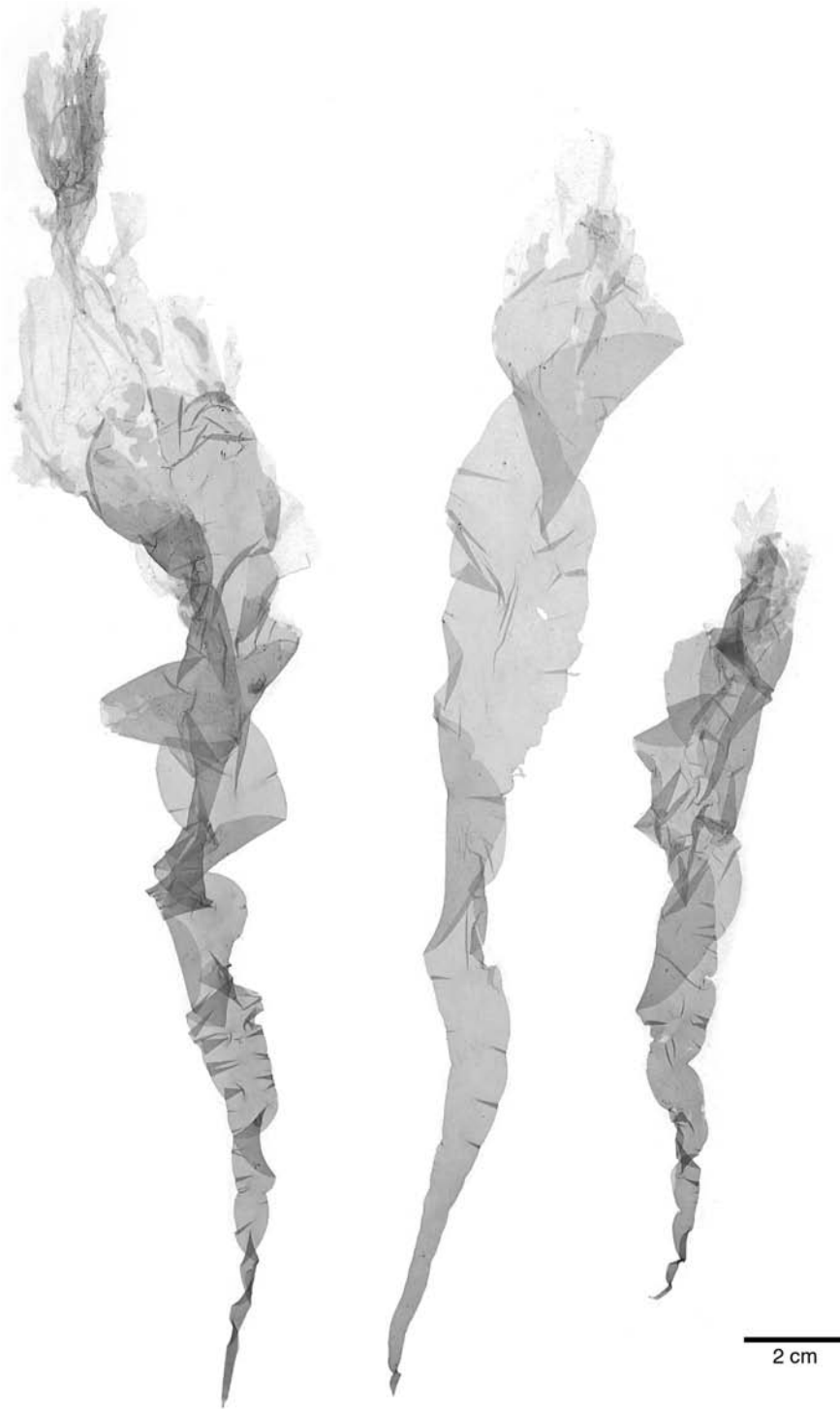


FIGURE 23. *Ulva linza*: Thalli of three unbranched blades, widening upward; flattened upper portion with tubular margins, above a short tubular basal portion (JN-3694).

*Enteromorpha prolifera* subsp. *radiata* (J. Agardh) Bliding, 1963:56, figs. 25–28.

*Enteromorpha prolifera* sensu Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:254; Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:715;

Dawson, 1944:204; Doty, 1947:14; Glynn and Stewart, 1973:216; Norris, 1976a:77, fig. 33; Pedroche and González-González, 1981:63; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42; Mendoza-González

and Mateo-Cid, 1986:419; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:23; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; González-González et al., 1996:286; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Pedroche et al., 2005:32; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:201 [non *Enteromorpha prolifera* (O. F. Müller) J. Agardh, 1883:129; which is *Ulva prolifera* O. F. Müller, 1778:7, fig. 1].

*Ulva prolifera* sensu Hayden and Waaland, 2004:377, tbl. 3 [non *Ulva prolifera* O. F. Müller, 1778:7].

*Enteromorpha tubulosa* sensu Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:716 [non *Enteromorpha tubulosa* (Kützinger) Kützinger, 1856:11; *E. intestinalis* var. *tubulosa* Kützinger, 1845:247; which is *Ulva flexuosa* Wulfen, 1803:1].

Algae with a distinct, cylindrical to compressed main axis, variable in width from very slender (hairlike) filaments to broad, expanded or convoluted masses; usually with numerous lateral branches (rarely sparingly branched). Cells with a single chloroplast, usually with only 1 pyrenoid; in surface view in more or less longitudinal series (usually distinct in some portions); angular, quadrate to polygonal, (10–)12–18 µm wide, becoming elongated near base, 10–18 µm wide by 12–20(–34) µm long. Cells in transection, 10–18 µm wide by 15–30 µm tall.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, forming mats on mudflats or free-floating; usually in sheltered bays or estuaries; intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Bahía de Los Ángeles to Bahía La Paz. Pacific coast: Washington to southern California; Jalisco; Panamá.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Arctic Norway (Bliding, 1963).

**REMARKS.** Gulf of California specimens are tentatively referred to *Ulva radiata*. This species is probably more widely distributed in the Gulf of California than

current records indicate. Bliding (1963, as “*E. prolifera* subsp. *radiata*”) proposed that *E. prolifera* and *E. radiata* were different taxa. Hayden and Waaland (2004) found the Pacific coast “*U. prolifera*” (Washington to southern California) was only distantly genetically related to European *U. prolifera* (Blomster et al., 1998) and hypothesized that the Pacific Northwest material identified as “*U. prolifera*” was *U. radiata*, noting this needed to be tested with comparative molecular data from the European *U. radiata*. Comparisons of Gulf “*U. radiata*” with *U. radiata* from Europe (type locality: Arctic Norway) and the western Pacific are needed to evaluate its taxonomic status.

## CLADOPHOROPHYCEAE

Cladophorophyceae C. Hoek, D. G. Mann et Jahns, 1995:408, *nom. invalid.* [see McNeill et al., 2006:Art. 36.2; Pröschold and Leliaert, 2007:130].

Algae are uniseriate unbranched or branched filaments composed of multinucleate cells, with thalli ranging from simple filaments to structurally more complex forms. Cells of sporophytes and gametophytes are multinucleate and with numerous chloroplasts that form a parietal network or a more or less continuous layer. Some of the chloroplasts may also have a single pyrenoid. The principal polysaccharide of the cell wall is crystalline cellulose.

Life histories for many of the species are isomorphic. Sporophytes produce quadriflagellate zoospores that develop into gametophytic thalli. Gametophytes produce biflagellate isogametes or anisogametes. After fusion of two gametes, the zygote develops into a diploid sporophyte.

Two of the orders are present in the northern Gulf of California.

### KEY TO THE ORDERS OF CLADOPHOROPHYCEAE IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Algae unbranched or branched filaments of terete cells throughout; tenacular cells absent; sequential formation of laterals at nodes; cell division by centripetal crosswall formation . . . . . **Cladophorales**
- 1b. Algae of diverse forms: large siphonous, tubular cells or inflated, clavate, or globose cells; tenacular cells present; simultaneous development of laterals at nodes; cell division lenticular or segregative . . . . . **Siphonocladales**

### CLADOPHORALES

Cladophorales Haeckel, 1894:302.

Cladophorales G. S. West, 1904:56; van den Hoek, 1984:157–178.

Algae are filamentous and may be (1) simple and unbranched or with few to many branches, or (2) branched filaments with few to many lateral branches that unite to

form a network. Most are attached to the substratum by rhizoids, although some may become unattached and free-floating. The cells of the filaments have crosswalls and are multinucleate, with one or more discoid or reticulate chloroplasts and usually one or more pyrenoids. Growth is apical or intercalary. Cell division is by nonsynchronous centripetal invagination, in which the parent wall divides into more or less equal halves (= “*Cladophora*-type” of cell division).

Vegetative propagation by fragmentation is known for many of the species. The life histories, where known, are isomorphic (with gametophytes and sporophytes of similar morphologies). Sporophytes produce biflagellate or quadriflagellate zoospores in sporangia derived from vegetative cells. Gametophytes produce biflagellate isogametes or anisogametes.

**REMARKS.** There have been different opinions on whether the Cladophorales should also include the Siphonocladales (e.g., van den Hoek, 1984; Bakker et al., 1994; Hanyuda et al., 2002; Abbott and Huisman, 2004; Wynne, 2005), or if the two should be kept as separate orders (Womersley, 1984; Leliaert et al., 2003; Kraft, 2007) with the type of cell division being a principle taxonomic character. The use of families in the Cladophorales/Siphonocladales complex is also problematic as there seems to be no phylogenetic basis that supports the currently accepted families (Leliaert et al., 2007). For now, the families are treated herein in these two orders. Members of the Cladophorales are mostly marine (although a few, e.g., *Cladophora*, also have freshwater species) and distributed from sub-boreal to tropical seas, and members of the Siphonocladales are exclusively marine and subtropical to tropical.

There is one family, well represented, in the northern Gulf of California.

### CLADOPHORACEAE

Cladophoraceae W. Wille in Warming, 1884:30.

Algae in this family are filamentous, uniseriate, branched or unbranched, and vary in color from light to dark green. Cells are multinucleate, with parietal chloroplasts containing few to many pyrenoids.

Asexual reproduction for many is by fragmentation. Sexual reproduction, where known, is isogamous.

**REMARKS.** In the northern Gulf of California the family is represented by three genera, *Chaetomorpha*, *Cladophora*, and *Rhizoclonium*. However, the taxonomic distinction of the unbranched genera *Rhizoclonium* and *Chaetomorpha* is questionable (Blair et al., 1982; Blair, 1983; Silva et al., 1996a), with taxonomy based solely on filament diameter, cell sizes, and nature of the holdfasts. The generic and species concepts need further study and phylogenetic testing.

#### KEY TO THE GENERA OF CLADOPHORACEAE IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Filaments sparsely to densely branched, to 1 or more orders ..... *Cladophora*  
 1b. Filaments simple and unbranched or with short rhizoidal branches ..... 2  
 2a. Filaments unattached, entangled or free-floating; or if attached, by short rhizoidal branches along their length .....  
 ..... *Rhizoclonium*  
 2b. Filaments attached by a discoid basal cell or by rhizoids extending only from the basal cell ..... *Chaetomorpha*

### *Chaetomorpha* Kützing

*Chaetomorpha* Kützing, 1845:203.

Algae are uniseriate, unbranched filaments that grow singularly or in clumps and may be free-floating or attached by a discoid basal cell or by nonseptate rhizoidal processes from an elongate basal cell. Growth is by intercalary cell division only. Cells of the filaments can be shorter or up to 10 times longer than wide, and rectangular, isodiametric, or cylindrical to barrel-shaped. Cells are multinucleate, with a parietal or reticulate chloroplast and many pyrenoids.

Vegetative reproduction is by fragmentation. Life histories are presumed to be an isomorphic alternation of stages. Sporangia are formed in undifferentiated cells and

produce quadriflagellate zoospores (probably meiospores). Sexual reproduction is isogamous, with gametangia (also formed in an undifferentiated cell) producing biflagellate isogametes. Isogametes have also been reported to develop parthenogenetically.

**REMARKS.** Five species have been reported to occur only in the southern Gulf (Dawson, 1949; Dawson, 1950c; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985; R. Aguiar-Rosas and Machado-Galindo, 1990; Riosmena-Rodríguez and Paul-Chávez, 1997; Pedroche et al., 2005): *C. linoides* Kützing (1847), *C. minima* Collins et Hervey (1917), *C. pachynema* (Montagne) Kützing (1847), *C. spiralis* Okamura (1903, 1912), and *C. javanica* Kützing (1847).

Of the four species that are known in the northern Gulf of California, three also occur in the southern Gulf.

KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *CHAETOMORPHA* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Filaments unattached, free-floating or lying on substratum, or entangled with other algae . . . . . *C. linum* (in part)  
 1b. Filaments attached by a basal cell or rhizoids from basal cell; forming clumps or tufts . . . . . 2  
 2a. Upper filament cells 400–900  $\mu\text{m}$  wide, 1–4 times longer than wide; distinctive basal cell very long, up to 9 mm, usually with annular constrictions . . . . . *C. antennina*  
 2b. Upper filament cells narrower, 175–450  $\mu\text{m}$  wide, only 0.5–2.5 times longer than wide; basal cell shorter, less than 4 mm, without annular constrictions . . . . . 3  
 3a. Cells wider than long, 250–280  $\mu\text{m}$  wide by 125–148  $\mu\text{m}$  long (0.5–0.6 times diameter); lowermost 1–2 basal cells 1.25 times longer than wide, up to 350  $\mu\text{m}$  long . . . . . *C. bangioides*  
 3b. Cells longer than wide, 625–1100  $\mu\text{m}$  long (0.75–2.5 times diameter), 250–450  $\mu\text{m}$  wide; basal cell 3–5 times longer than wide . . . . . 4  
 4a. Filaments mostly curly; cells 175–450  $\mu\text{m}$  wide, more or less squarish to slightly longer (0.75–1.5 times diameter); basal cell less than 5 times longer than wide. . . . . *C. linum* (in part)  
 4b. Filaments straight; 240–400  $\mu\text{m}$  wide; cells longer than wide (mostly 1.5–2.5 times diameter); basal cell up to 5–8 times longer than wide . . . . . *C. aerea*

***Chaetomorpha aerea* (Dillwyn) Kützing**

FIGURE 24B

*Conferva aerea* Dillwyn, 1806:pl. 80.

*Chaetomorpha aerea* (Dillwyn) Kützing, 1849:379; Collins, 1909b:324; Hartmann, 1929:485; Dawson, 1944:208 (in part); Chávez B., 1972:268; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:338; Silva, 1979:342; Blair, 1983:187, figs. 5, 6; Oliva-Martínez and Ortega, 1987:128, pl. 4: fig. 2a–d; Ortega et al., 1987:78, pl. 14: figs. 65–67; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992:24; Servière-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:112; González-González et al., 1996:278; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; Yoshida, 1998:54; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:133; Abbott and Huisman, 2004: 65, fig. 17; Pedroche et al., 2005:34; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:201.

*Chaetomorpha linum* sensu Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:101 [in part] [non *Chaetomorpha linum* (O. F. Müller) Kützing, 1845:204].

Tufts of erect, straight, uniseriate filaments, up to 4 (or more) cm tall, attached to substrate by an elongate basal cell with a disc-shaped holdfast. Upper to lower cells of more or less same diameter throughout, (125–)240–400  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, often more or less squarish to slightly elongate, 1.0–2.0 times longer than wide; lowermost cells, 1.0–2.5 times longer than wide. Basal cell (nonannulate) of

similar diameter to cells above, but much longer, (4–)5–8 times longer than wide, up to 1.8 mm long.

Reproduction not observed in Gulf specimens. Fertile cells reported from elsewhere, up to 600  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter (Blair, 1983).

**HABITAT.** On rocks; high to mid intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puertecitos to Bahía de Los Ángeles. Pacific coast: central California to Nayarit; Peru; Chile; Hawaiian Islands; Japan.

**SYNTYPE LOCALITIES.** England and Wales, UK.

**REMARKS.** Some specimens of *Chaetomorpha aerea* (e.g., JN-5180a on US Alg. Coll. slide 4144; El Desemboque, Sonora) were particularly rich with microscopic endophytes and epiphytes, such as *Entocladia viridis*, that grew on, sometimes encircling, the cells of the basal region.

Some phycologists consider *Chaetomorpha aerea* and *C. linum* to be growth forms of a single species (e.g., Christensen, 1957; Burrows, 1991). However, herein these two are recognized as separate species (e.g., following Kornmann, 1972; Blair et al., 1982; Blair, 1983; Silva et al., 1996a), until further morphological and molecular systematic studies have been done on types and type-locality specimens of these species, along with needed comparisons to elucidate their relationship to Gulf of California "*C. aerea*." Although crystalline cell inclusions are reported in *C. aerea* from other regions (Leliaert and Coppejans, 2004:202, fig. 47), they have not been observed in Gulf *C. aerea*.

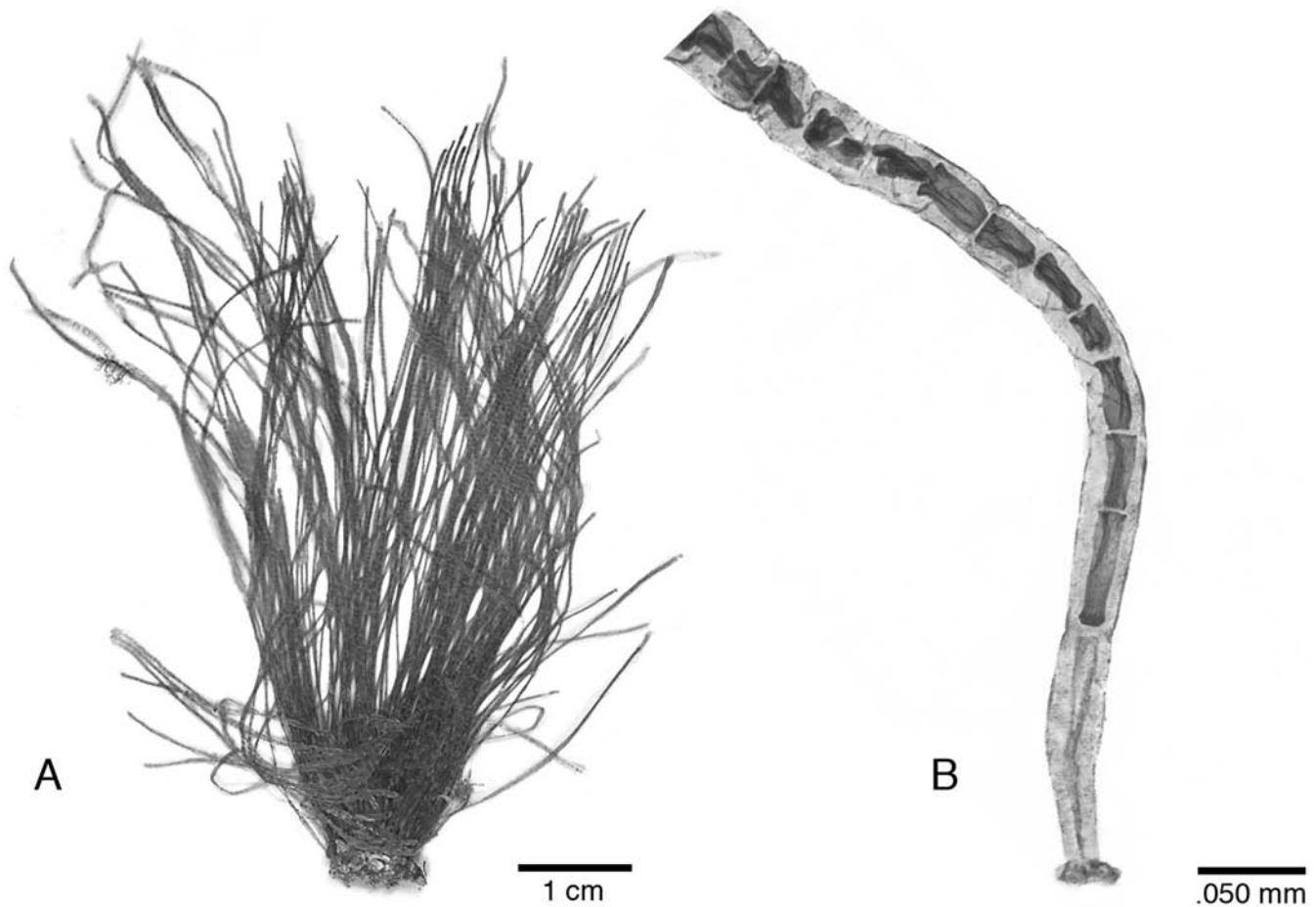


FIGURE 24. Species of *Chaetomorpha*. A. *Chaetomorpha antennina*: Clump of relatively stiff filaments (EYD-11023). B. *Chaetomorpha aerea*: Lower region of filament; long basal cell ending in disc-shaped base with short rhizoids (JN-5180a).

***Chaetomorpha antennina*  
(Bory de Saint-Vincent) Kützing**

FIGURES 24A, 25B

*Conferva antennina* Bory de Saint-Vincent, 1804a:381; Bory de Saint-Vincent, 1804b:161.

*Chaetomorpha antennina* (Bory de Saint-Vincent) Kützing, 1847:166; Kützing, 1849:379; Collins, 1909b:324; Howe, 1914:37; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:203; Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:713; Setchell and Gardner, 1930:136; Dawson, 1944:207; Dawson, 1945b:59; Taylor, 1945:52; Dawson, 1949:245, 251; Dawson, 1950c:149, figs. 6, 7; Dawson, 1951:52; Dawson, 1954a:3; Dawson, 1959a:9, 12; Dawson, 1959c:4; Dawson and Beaudette, 1959:18, 20; Dawson, 1961b:376; Dawson, 1961c:403, pl. 1: figs 7, 8; Dawson, 1962b:172, fig. 8 (right); Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:126; Norris,

1973:3, 19; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:101, fig. 58; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:338–340; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:140; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:22; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:419; Salcedo-Martínez et al., 1988:82; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:39; Dreckmann et al., 1990:24, 37; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:27; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1992:24; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992:24; González-González, 1993:443; Stout and Dreckmann, 1993:4; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994a:52; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:44; León-Tejera and González-González, 1994:493; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:112; González-González et al., 1996:278; Silva et al., 1996b:229, 234; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1996:75, 87, pl. 25, figs. 109, 110; Pacheco-Ruiz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; León-Alvarez et al.,



1997:397; Galindo-Villegas et al., 1997:4; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1997:56; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1998:169, 176, 178; Bucio-Pacheco and Dreckmann, 1998:44; Aguila-Ramírez et al., 1998:511; Yoshida, 1998:54; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998:25, 27; Mendoza-González et al., 1999:61; León-Tejera and González-González, 2000:237; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:69; Carballo et al., 2002:752; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:66, fig. 18A–D; Pedroche et al., 2005:35–36; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:146; Dreckmann et al., 2006:154; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:7; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:201.

*Conferva media* C. Agardh, 1824:100.

*Cladophora media* (C. Agardh) Kützing, 1849:380; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:120, 131, 135; Chávez B., 1972:268; Pedroche and González-González, 1981:64.

*Cladophora pacifica* Kützing, 1849:379 (see Collins 1909b:324; Howe, 1914:37).

Algae erect, tufted or clumped, of relatively stiff, uniseriate filaments, up to 10 cm tall, attached by an elongated basal cell with long slender rhizoids from proximal end. Upper cells 400–900 µm in diameter, 1–4 times as long as wide; basal cell of similar width but much longer, 5–9 mm in length. Basal cell usually with annular constrictions.

Fertile cells swollen and larger than vegetative cells.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, usually in shaded areas; high to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Bahía de Los Ángeles to Bahía San Carlos; Isla San Ildefonso; Cabeza Ballena to Cabo Pulmo. Pacific coast: southern California to Chiapas; Isla San Benedicto (Islas Revillagigedo); Cliperton Island; El Salvador; Panamá; Galápagos Islands; Ecuador; Peru; Chile; Hawaiian Islands; China; Japan.

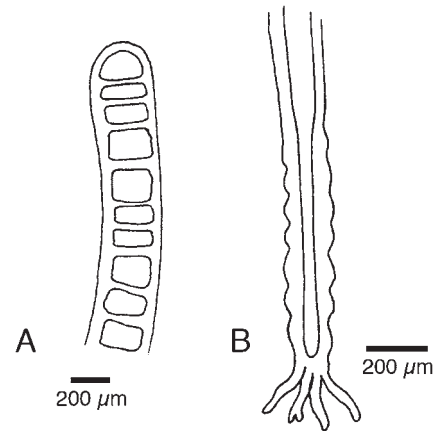
**TYPE LOCALITY.** Réunion Island (Bourbon Is.), Mascarene Islands, Indian Ocean.

### *Chaetomorpha bangioides* E. Y. Dawson

FIGURE 25A

*Chaetomorpha bangioides* E. Y. Dawson, 1950c:149, figs. 8–10; Dawson, 1959a:7, 12; Dawson, 1961b:376; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:479, 485; González-González, 1993:443; González-González et al., 1996:128; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1998:169, 180; Pedroche et al., 2005:36.

Algae tufted, up to 1 cm tall; of uniseriate more or less contorted filaments and attached by a small, conical



**FIGURE 25.** Species of *Chaetomorpha*. A. *Chaetomorpha bangioides*: Rectangular (wider than long) cells of different “*Bangia*-like” shapes in upper part of filament (after Dawson, 1950c:fig. 10). B. *Chaetomorpha antennina*: Basal cell, typically very long, with short attachment rhizoids, and cell wall with annular constrictions.

holdfast of coalesced rhizoids issued from the primary basal cell. Cells wider than long (more or less rectangular in lateral view), 250–280 µm in diameter, shorter in length (mostly 0.5–0.6 times diameter); lowermost 1–2 cells of similar diameter as upper cells, but slightly longer (up to 350 µm in length). Cell walls thick, up to 60 µm.

Reproduction unknown.

**HABITAT.** On rocks; intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Isla Patos; Puerto Escondido. Pacific coast: Nayarit to Jalisco.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Isla Patos, off Isla Tiburón, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** *Chaetomorpha bangioides* is named for the resemblance of its filament cells to those of *Bangia fuscopurpurea*. It differs from other Gulf of California species of *Chaetomorpha* in the shape of its cells, rectangular with the diameter wider than the length, and the absence of a very long or otherwise distinctive basal cell (Dawson, 1950c). This species remains poorly known and in need of further collection and study.

### *Chaetomorpha linum* (O. F. Müller) Kützing

*Conferva linum* O. F. Müller, 1778:7, pl. 771; fig. 2.

*Chaetomorpha linum* (O. F. Müller) Kützing, 1845:204; Dawson, 1949:229; Dawson, 1959a:12; Dawson, 1961b:377; Devanny, 1978:358; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1982:54, 61; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Bertsch, 1983:115, 121; Blair, 1983:178, figs. 1, 2a; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42; Mendoza-González and

Mateo-Cid, 1985:22; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruiz, 1986:77; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:419; Ortega et al., 1987:79, 90, pl. 15: fig. 68; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruiz, 1989:81; R. Aguilar-Rosas and Machado-Galindo, 1990:188; Stewart, 1991:29; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:27; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:24; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1992:24; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992:24; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:51; León-Tejera and González-González, 1993:497; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; R. Aguilar-Rosas and M. Aguilar-Rosas, 1994:517; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:34, 44; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:112; González-González et al., 1996:278; Yoshida, 1998:56; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1998:169, 177, 180; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:22; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:133, 134; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002:235; Wysor, 2004:216; Pedroche et al., 2005:38–39; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:101; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:146.

*Chaetomorpha aerea* f. *linum* (O. F. Müller) Collins, 1909b:325.

*Chaetomorpha aerea* sensu Dawson, 1944:208 [in part] [non *Chaetomorpha aerea* (Dillwyn) Kützing, 1849:379].

Algae of mostly curved to curled, uniseriate filaments, up to 5 (or more) cm long, usually entangled and unattached or occasionally found attached to substrate by an elongated, lobed basal cell. Upper cells cylindrical to barrel-shaped, (175–)200–450 µm in diameter, and not as long as wide or only slightly longer (length 0.75–1.5 times the width); basal cells, when present, 3–8 times longer than wide.

Reproductive cells barrel-shaped to subglobose, 400–600 µm in diameter.

**HABITAT.** Estuarine habitats and mangrove lagoons; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal (also dredged; Dawson, 1944).

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puertecitos to La Paz. Pacific coast: Alaska to Baja California; Sinaloa to Colima; Oaxaca; Panamá; Chile; Japan.

**SYNTYPE LOCALITIES.** Nakskov Fjord and Rødby Fjord, Denmark.

**REMARKS.** The species *Chaetomorpha linum* and *C. aerea* have long been problematic and often confused (Blair, 1983), and Gulf of California specimens referred to either of these species should be reexamined to determine if only one or both taxa occur in the northern

Gulf of California. See also comments herein on *Chaetomorpha aerea* under Remarks for that species.

### ***Cladophora* Kützing**

*Cladophora* Kützing, 1843:262

Algae consisting of uniseriate filaments, sparsely to profusely branched; usually erect and attached by rhizoids from basal cells; or sometimes free-floating, forming small to large filamentous masses. Branching is often up to several orders, most with variation in pattern of branching and in diameter (often decreasing in diameter upward). Cells are cylindrical, multinucleate, and with numerous small chloroplasts (usually form a parietal reticulum) and pyrenoids. Cell division is apical or intercalary or sometimes both.

Vegetative reproduction by fragmentation occurs in many species. Life histories are an alternation of isomorphic generations. The terminal and subterminal cells of the filaments become the reproductive cells. Sporophytic reproduction is usually by the formation of quadriflagellate or biflagellate zoospores. Gametophytes produce biflagellate isogametes.

**REMARKS.** The Gulf species of *Cladophora* are in need of critical study. Their taxonomy, based primarily on characters such as habit, cell diameter and length/width ratio, and type and degree of branching, is complicated by a high degree of variability of their relatively simple morphologies. Another character, considered to have systematic value, is the presence or absence of crystalline cell inclusions (Leliaert and Coppejans, 2004). Comparative morphological studies of Gulf specimens of *Cladophora* and type specimens (such as those of van den Hoek, 1963, 1982; Söderström, 1963; Sakai, 1964; van den Hoek and Womersley, 1984; van den Hoek and Chihara, 2000) and molecular and phylogenetic analyses are needed to test their taxonomic status.

Five taxa are recorded in the southern Gulf: *Cladophora lehmannaiana* (Lindenberg) Kützing (1843) by Dawson (1959a, as “*C. utriculosa* Kützing”), *C. glomerata* (Linnaeus) Kützing (1843) by Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González (1985), *C. glomerata* var. *crassior* (C. Agardh) van den Hoek (1963) by Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González (1985, as “*C. crispata*”), *C. rivularis* (Linnaeus) van den Hoek (1963) by Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González (1985, as “*C. insignis*”), and *C. stimpsonii* Harvey (1860; Dawson, 1959b) by Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones (1991).

A highly diverse genus, with 11 species of *Cladophora* currently recognized in the northern Gulf of California.

KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *CLADOPHORA* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Basal portion procumbent, of densely entangled horizontally low-growing filaments; upper portion of erect filaments . . .  
 . . . . . *C. columbiana*
- 1b. Basal and upper portions erect; of delicate to coarse filaments . . . . . 2
- 2a. Cells of basal region with rhizoids that have cell walls with annular constrictions (occasionally some basal cells also with annular constrictions) . . . . . *C. prolifera*
- 2b. Cells of basal region with rhizoids that lack annular constrictions or completely without rhizoids . . . . . 3
- 3a. Cell diameter of main branches over 200  $\mu\text{m}$  . . . . . 4
- 3b. Cell diameter of main branches less than 200  $\mu\text{m}$  . . . . . 7
- 4a. Basal cells without downward growing rhizoids; filaments branched mostly to one side; branchlets usually strongly incurved or curled . . . . . *C. vagabunda*
- 4b. Basal cells with downward growing rhizoids; filaments branched otherwise; branchlets not curled . . . . . 5
- 5a. Branched sparingly, dichotomous in lower portions; secund to pectinate (occasionally opposite or rarely alternate) in upper portions . . . . . *C. macdougalii*
- 5b. Branched mostly dichotomously to trichotomously throughout . . . . . 6
- 6a. Stiff tufts; filament cells much longer than wide, lower cells 300–500  $\mu\text{m}$  wide, 20–30 times longer than wide; upper cells 100–150  $\mu\text{m}$  wide, 4–10 times longer than wide . . . . . *C. graminea*
- 6b. Lax tufts (not stiff), branching divaricate; cells only 2–4 times longer than wide and smaller diameter throughout; lower cells 190–240  $\mu\text{m}$  wide; upper cells 25–40  $\mu\text{m}$  wide . . . . . *C. hesperia*
- 7a. Branching dichotomous or trichotomous, becoming irregularly alternate to pectinate above; cells 120–180(–200)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter in lower portions, narrowing above . . . . . *C. microcladioides*
- 7b. Branching subdichotomous, irregular, alternate or secund; cells of smaller diameter, 20–60(–85)  $\mu\text{m}$  . . . . . 8
- 8a. Upper main axes subdichotomously, irregularly or unilaterally branched; branches formed at distal end of cells; cells of similar diameter, 20–30(–40)  $\mu\text{m}$ , throughout . . . . . *C. albida*
- 8b. Upper axes subdichotomously and/or secondly branched; lower cells larger than 30  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter . . . . . 9
- 9a. Branched sparingly (widely spaced), subdichotomously; branches of different lengths intermixed; lower cells 50(–85)  $\mu\text{m}$  wide (5–6 times as long) . . . . . *C. sericea*
- 9b. Branched more regularly; subdichotomously below to secund above; lower cells less than 60  $\mu\text{m}$  wide (3–5 times as long) . . . . . 10
- 10a. Dense short tufts (<4mm tall) of stiff filaments; cells mostly 4–5 times longer than wide throughout (longest in lower cells) . . . . . *C. tiburonensis*
- 10b. Delicate hairlike filaments to 2 cm tall; lower cells 3–4 times longer than wide, upper cells 1–2 times longer than wide . . . . .  
 . . . . . *C. montagneana*

***Cladophora albida* (Nees) Kützing**

FIGURE 26A

*Annulina albida* Nees, 1820:Index [1] [see Silva et al., 1996a:769].

*Cladophora albida* (Nees) Kützing, 1843:267; León-Tejera et al., 1993:199; González-González, 1993:443; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:481; Silva et al., 1996a:769; González-González et al., 1996:129, 368; Yoshida, 1998:60; Nuñez-López et al., 1998:39; van den Hoek and Chihara, 2000:122, figs. 55–59, 63B,D; Pedroche et al., 2005:40.

*Conferva albida* Hudson, 1778:595, *nom. illeg.* [since it is a later homonym of *Conferva albida* Forsskål, 1775:XII].

*Cladophora albida* (Hudson) Kützing, 1843:267; Kützing, 1849:400; Kützing, 1854:pl. 15; Collins, 1909b:336; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:218; Yamada, 1928:fig. 1; Dawson, 1944:209; Söderström, 1955:275, figs. 1–6; Dawson, 1959a:12; Dawson, 1960a:31; Dawson, 1961b:377; Dawson, 1961c:403, pl. 2: figs. 1, 2; Dawson, 1962b:182, fig. 32; van den Hoek, 1963:94, pl. 20: figs. 241–243, pl. 21: figs. 244, 246–257, pl. 22: figs. 258–279, pl. 23: figs. 280–297, pl. 24: figs. 298–316; Söderström, 1963:65, figs. 55–61; Sakai, 1964:30,

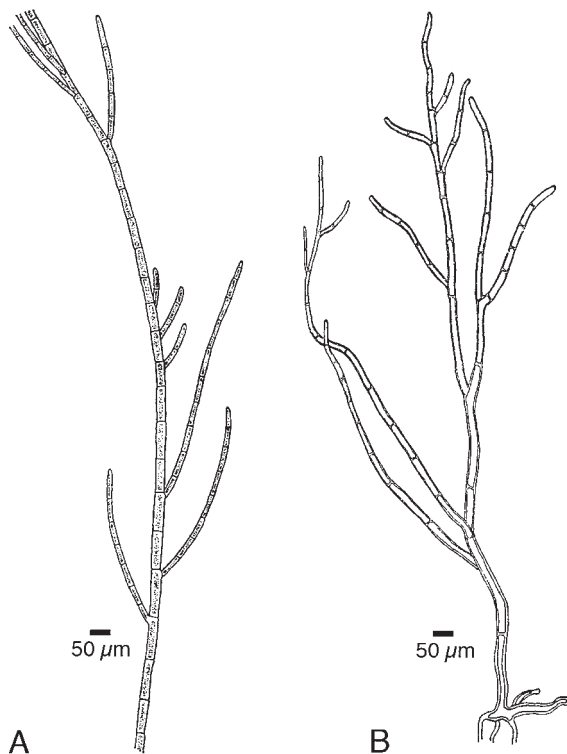


FIGURE 26. Species of *Cladophora*. A. *Cladophora albida*: Portion of a sparsely branched axis (after Dawson, 1962b:fig. 32). B. *Cladophora tiburonensis*: Habit of individual frond from short dense tuft (after Dawson, 1944: pl. 31, fig. 1).

figs. 10, 11, pl. 17: fig. 1; Söderström, 1965:173, 181; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:104, fig. 62; Deviny, 1978:358; Ortega et al., 1987:79, 90, pl. 16: figs. 72, 73; Schnetter and Bula Meyer, 1982:24, pl. 3: figs. D–F; van den Hoek, 1982:100, pl. 15: figs. 133–137, pl. 16: fig. 144; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruíz, 1986:77; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:27; Stewart, 1991:30; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1992:24; León-Tejera et al., 1993:199; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1996:75, 87, pl. 25: figs. 111–113; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; Dreckmann et al., 2006:154; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:201.

*Conferva hamosa* Kützing, 1843:267.

*Cladophora bertolonii* var. *hamosa* (Kützing) Ardisson, 1887:242; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42.

*Cladophora magdalenae* Harvey, 1851:pl. 355A; Dawson, 1949:230.

Algae small tufts up to 1 cm tall, of delicate filaments with main axes closely and pseudodichotomously branched, mostly 1–2 orders. Branches formed at distal end of cells; usually 1 per cell. Filaments thin, of similar diameter throughout; mostly 20–30(–40) µm in diameter; cells (2–)4–5 times as long as wide. Cells with a reticulate chloroplast and numerous pyrenoids.

**HABITAT.** On shaded or exposed rocks, also epiphytic on *Cladophora microcladioides* and epizoic on a parrotfish beak; intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Bahía de Los Ángeles to Bahía Kino; Puerto Escondido; Cabo San Lucas. Pacific coast: British Columbia to Chiapas; El Salvador; Colombia; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Isle of Selsey, England.

**REMARKS.** Not well known in the Gulf, *Cladophora albida* has been found epiphytic on *C. microcladioides* in the vicinity of Bahía Kino (Dawson, 1944) and Bahía de Los Ángeles (Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a) and growing on the beak of a parrotfish taken at Puerto Escondido (Dawson, 1959a). A specimen from Cabo San Lucas (EYD-3203 [HAFH now UC]) represents a southern record for the Gulf.

### *Cladophora columbiana* Collins

FIGURE 27A

*Cladophora columbiana* Collins in Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1903:226; Dawson, 1944:210 [with doubt]; Dawson, 1961b:378; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:105, fig. 63; Deviny, 1978:358; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1985:125; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:22; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruíz, 1986:77; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:419; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1990:123; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:30; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:22; R. Aguilar-Rosas and M. Aguilar-Rosas, 1994:517, 526; González-González et al., 1996:129; Mendoza-González et al., 1999:61; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146; Pedroche et al., 2005:42; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:101.

*Cladophora trichotoma* sensu Collins, 1909b:349; Howe, 1911:492; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:210, pl. 16: fig. 2; Smith, 1944:58, pl. 7: fig. 2; Dawson, 1945b:64; Dawson, 1949:219, 222, 228; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42; González-González et al., 1996:131 [non *Cladophora trichotoma* (C. Agardh) Kützing, 1849:414; basionym: *Conferva trichotoma*

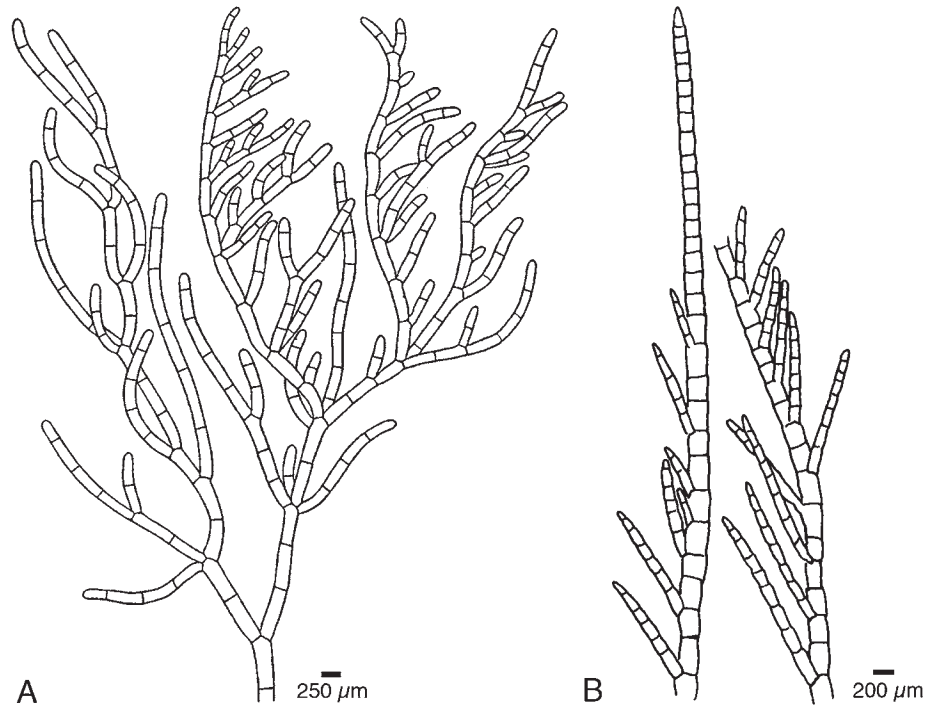


FIGURE 27. Species of *Cladophora*. A. *Cladophora columbiana*: Branching habit of a few upper branches (after Setchell and Gardner, 1920b: pl. 16, fig. 2). B. *Cladophora macdougalii*: Portion of two filaments, apical region (left) and upper portion (right) (after M. Howe, 1911: pl. 33, fig. 7).

C. Agardh, 1824:121, which is *Cladophora pellucida* (Hudson) Kützing, 1843:271; basionym: *Conferva pellucida* Hudson, 1762:483 (see van den Hoek, 1963:215)].

Algae cushionlike or forming low-growing mats of entangled filaments, 3–5 cm tall; attached by rhizoids from cells of basal filaments and from lower cells of erect filaments; lower basal filaments growing more or less horizontal; upper filaments erect, unbranched to sparsely branched in lower portion, becoming dichotomously or trichotomously to irregularly branched upward; with a blunt terminal cell. Cells cylindrical; in main axes 150–250(–300) µm in diameter, and 400–1500 µm long; apical cells narrower (90–)130–170 µm in diameter.

**HABITAT.** On rocks or other hard substratum; intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Guaymas; Bahía del Rincón to La Paz. Pacific coast: Alaska to Bahía Tortugas, Baja California Sur.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Port Renfrew, Vancouver Island, British Columbia, Canada.

### ***Cladophora graminea* Collins**

FIGURE 28A,B

*Cladophora graminea* Collins, 1909a:19, pl. 78: fig. 6; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:211; Dawson, 1944:210; Smith, 1944:59, pl. 7: fig. 1; Dawson, 1945b:64; Dawson, 1949:222, 245; Dawson, 1951:52; Dawson et al., 1960a:26, pl. 1: fig. 6; Dawson et al., 1960b:5, 7–9, 12; Dawson, 1961b:377; Dawson, 1966a:6; Dawson and Neushul, 1966:174; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:105, fig. 64; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:336; Deviny, 1978:358; Littler and Littler, 1981:151, 153; Schnetter and Bula Meyer, 1982:25, pl. 3: figs. A–C; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Bertsch, 1983:116, 121; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruíz, 1986:77; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1990:123; Stewart, 1991:31; R. Aguilar-Rosas and M. Aguilar-Rosas, 1994:517; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994a:57; González-González et al., 1996:130; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; Núñez-López et al., 1998:39; Pedroche et

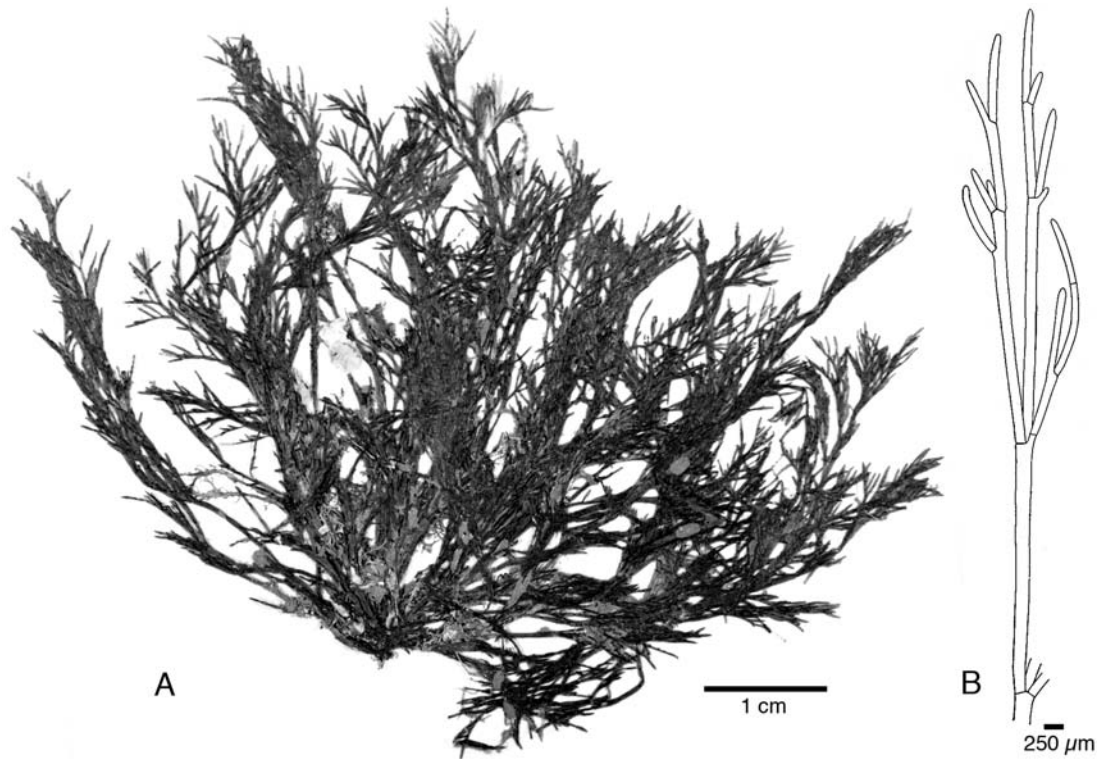


FIGURE 28. *Cladophora graminea*: A. Habit (JN-3118). B. Axis of long cells, slightly tapering in diameter to the apices (from Collins, 1909a: pl. 78, fig. 6).

al., 2005:43; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:48; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:201.

Algae in tufts, up to 8(–18) cm tall; relatively stiff, coarse, dark green to blackish-green; dichotomously or trichotomously branched, sometimes becoming alternate in upper portions. Branch divisions at more or less same angle throughout; branches usually curving in same direction. Cells very long in relation to diameter, in lower portions up to 300 μm in diameter, and 20–30 times as long as wide; in upper branches 100–150 μm in diameter, and 4–10 times as long as wide.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, in shaded areas, crevices or under other larger algae; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Guaymas. Pacific coast: Oregon to Isla Magdalena (Baja California Sur); Colombia.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Pacific Grove, Monterey County, California.

**REMARKS.** Dawson (1944, 1966a) referred his Gulf specimens to *Cladophora graminea* with doubt. However, the Gulf specimens, with their long cell length to width ratio, seem to agree with Pacific coast *C. graminea* and thus, for now, are retained under this name.

### ***Cladophora hesperia* Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURE 29A,B

*Cladophora hesperia* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:713, pl. 13: fig. 17; Dawson, 1944:211; Dawson, 1949:247; Dawson, 1952:431; Dawson, 1954e:323; Dawson, 1961b:377; Dawson, 1966a:6; Stewart, 1982:54; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:30; González-González et al., 1996:130; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:17, 22; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:133; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146; L. Aguilar-Rosas et

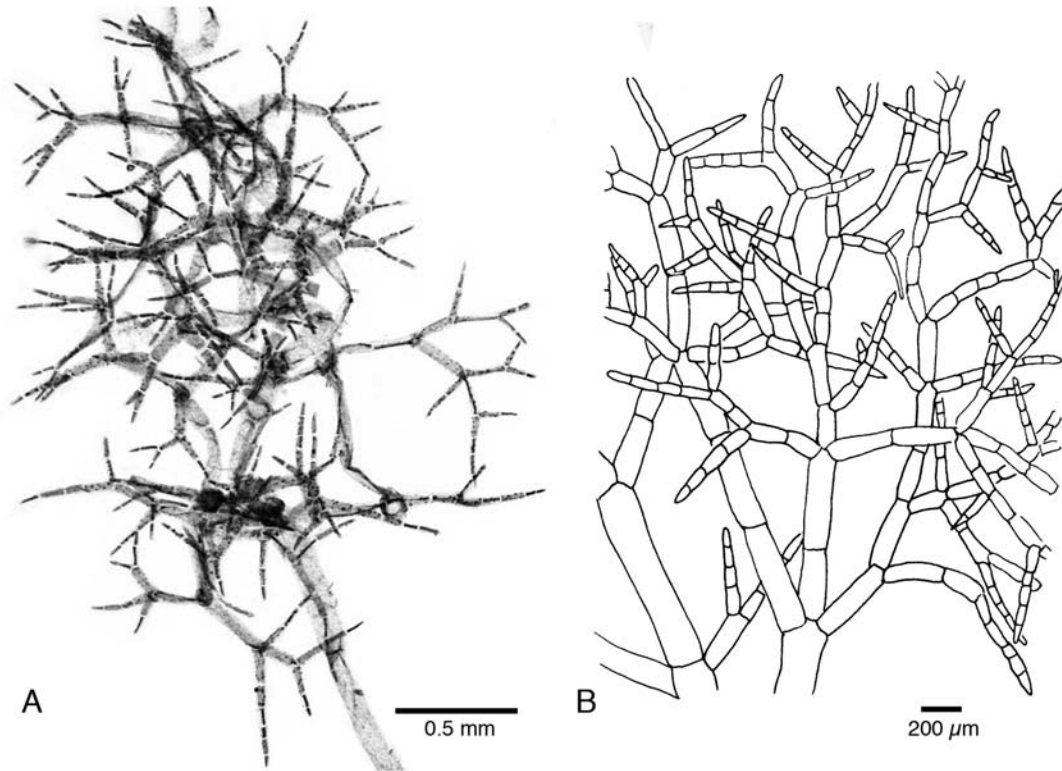


FIGURE 29. *Cladophora hesperia*: A. Branches widely divaricate and decreasing in diameter with each successive branch order (EYD-832). B. Branching habit of upper branches (after Setchell and Gardner, 1924a: pl. 13, fig. 17).

al., 2002:235; Pedroche et al., 2005:44; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:48, 58.

Algae forming dense clumps or sometimes spreading thin mats, up to 1.5 cm tall, light green, abundantly and densely dichotomously to trichotomously branched, up to 6 orders, divaricate (branching at a wide angle) from the upper end of cells. Main branches of more or less uniform width, 190–240  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; at each branch fork diameter becomes reduced upward; short branchlets of the fourth to sixth order much narrower, mostly 25–40  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; tapering to blunt apices. Cells mostly 2–4 times as long as wide (up to 1 mm in length).

**HABITAT.** On mudflats and rocks, usually among other turf-forming algae; mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Piedras de La Salina to Bahía Kino; Bahía San Gabriel, Isla Espiritu Santo to Cabo San Lucas. Pacific Mexico: Punta Norte, Isla Cedros (Baja California) to Velero Point (~10 miles [16 km] west of Punta Malarrimo), Bahía Sebastián Vizcaíno (Baja California Sur); Mazatlán (Sinaloa).

**TYPE LOCALITY:** “Muddy habitat, at the southern extremity of Lower California [Baja California Sur]” (Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:714); given as “distrito de Cabo San Lucas” by Pedroche et al. (2005:44).

**REMARKS.** Originally described from the southern Gulf of California, *Cladophora hesperia* has also been reported from Pacific Mexico (Dawson, 1954e).

### ***Cladophora macdougalii* M. Howe**

FIGURE 27B

*Cladophora macdougalii* M. Howe, 1911:491, pl. 33: fig. 7; Collins, 1912:96; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:214; Dawson, 1944:211; Dawson, 1961b:378; Hommersand, 1972:70; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; González-González et al., 1996:130; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:129, 133; Pedroche et al., 2005:45.

Algae in tufts, coarse and rigid, yellow to dark green, up to 17 cm tall; branched sparingly dichotomously

below, and in upper portions usually secund to pectinate, or occasionally opposite or rarely alternate. Cells of main filaments 135–310  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, 6–15 times as long as wide; cells of upper segments 75–110  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, 1–4 times as long as wide; apical cells subacute or blunt.

**HABITAT.** Tidal flats and rocks; probably mid tidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: El Machorro; San Felipe to Puertecitos.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** San Felipe, Baja California, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** Thus far, *Cladophora macdougalii* is only known from the type and the more recent collections of L. Aguilar-Rosas et al. (2000). Although Collins (1912) noted that *C. macdougalii* was “quite close” to California specimens identified as “*C. ovoidea*” and Setchell and Gardner (1920b) considered Californian “*C. ovoidea*” close to illustrations of Kützing (1853:pl. 92: fig. 1), Dawson (1944) later preferred to keep these two separate. Further, the type material of European *C. ovoidea* Kützing (1843) is now considered to be a synonym of *C. sericea* (Hudson) Kützing (1843; see van den Hoek, 1963, 1982), and the California “*C. ovoidea*” sensu Collins (1909b, 1912) and Smith (1944) was recognized as a separate species, *C. sakaii* I. A. Abbott (1972). (Note that this is a replacement name since the earliest name, *C. densa* W. H. Harvey (1860; Dawson, 1959b), is a later homonym of *C. densa* (Roth) Kützing, 1845.) The lowermost basal portions of *C. macdougalii* have smooth cell walls, distinguishing them from those of *C. sakaii*, which have annular constrictions (see Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:fig. 66).

For now, *C. macdougalii* is still recognized as a species, and will be until more Gulf collections have been made and morphological and molecular analyses have been completed and compared to other known species.

### ***Cladophora microcladioides* Collins**

FIGURE 30A,B

*Cladophora microcladioides* Collins, 1909a:17, pl. 78: figs. 2, 3; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:212, pl. 13: fig. 2; Dawson, 1944:209; Smith, 1944:59, pl. 7: fig. 3; Dawson, 1945b:60, 64; Doty, 1947:23; Dawson, 1949:222, 224, 225; Dawson, 1961b:378; Dawson, 1962c:278; Dawson, 1966a:6; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:106, fig. 65; Deviny, 1978:538; R. Aguilar-Rosas, 1982:84; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Bertsch, 1983:116, 121; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:140; Huerta-Múzquiz and

Mendoza-González, 1985:42; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:22; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruíz, 1986:77; Huerta Muzquiz, 1978:336; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:419; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:39; Dreckmann et al., 1990:24, 37; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:27; Stewart, 1991:31; González-González, 1993:443; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:51; León-Tejera et al., 1993:199, 204; R. Aguilar-Rosas and M. Aguilar-Rosas, 1994:517; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994a: 52, 61; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:103, 112; González-González et al., 1996:130; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; Anaya-Reyna and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 1996:862; Bucio-Pacheco and Dreckmann, 1998:43; Núñez-López et al., 1998:39; Mendoza-González et al., 1999:61; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:17, 22; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:133; León-Tejera and González-González, 2000:327; López et al., 2000:339; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002:235; Wysor, 2004:217; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2005b:36; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:146; Pedroche et al., 2005:45; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:101; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:48; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:201.

Algae loosely tufted, up to 10 cm tall or more. Lower filaments 120–170(–200)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter with cells 3–4(–5) times as long as wide; becoming narrower above, 60–120  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, with cells 2–4 times as long as wide; ultimate branchlets 30–50  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter and tapered slightly to rounded apices. Branching dichotomously or trichotomously from main axis, becoming irregularly alternate to pectinate above; lateral branches progressively shorter toward apex, with shorter secund branchlets along adaxial side; ultimate branchlets sometimes recurved.

**HABITAT.** On rocks; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal to 4(–32) m depths.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Cabeza Ballena. Pacific coast: Alaska to Michoacán; Oaxaca; Panama.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** San Pedro, Los Angeles County, California.

### ***Cladophora montagneana* Kützing**

*Cladophora montagneana* Kützing, 1849:415; van den Hoek, 1982:105, figs. 145–173; van den Hoek and Womersley, 1984:204, figs. 66B, 67E–I; Bucio-Pacheco and Dreckmann, 1998:43; Pedroche et al., 2005:46.





FIGURE 30. *Cladophora microcladioides*: A. Branching pattern of an upper branch (after Setchell and Gardner, 1920b: pl. 13, fig. 2). B. Upper lateral branches with pectinate branching pattern (EYD-2928).

*Conferva brachyclados* Montagne, 1837:349; Montagne, 1842a:13, pl. 4 [type of *Cladophora montagneana*; see van den Hoek, 1982:105].

*Cladophora brachyclados* (Montagne) Harvey, 1858:81.

*Cladophora delicatula* Montagne, 1850:302; Kützling, 1856: pl. 1: fig. 2; Dawson, 1944:210; Dawson, 1961b:377; Dawson, 1966a:5 [with a query]; González-González et al., 1996:281; Bucio-Pacheco and Dreckmann, 1998:44; Wysor, 2004:217; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:48 [with a query].

Algae delicate hair-like tufts, of narrow filaments up to 2 cm long; branching often widely spaced, pseudodichotomous to irregular, sometimes in unilateral rows; attached by branched basal rhizoids. Cells of main axis and lower branches usually 40–50  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter and 3–4(–5) times longer than wide (mostly up to 200  $\mu\text{m}$  long); upper cells shorter in length than lower cells, 18–25(–30)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, and 1–2 times longer than wide.

**HABITAT.** On rocks and tidal flats; intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco; Rio Mayo. Pacific coast: Michoacán; Panama.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Cuba.

**REMARKS.** Collections of *Cladophora montagneana* in the vicinity of Puerto Peñasco were referred to this species with a query by Dawson (1966a, as “*C. delicatula*”). Although this species has been reported as “*C. delicatula*,” on the Pacific coast from Oregon to southern California (Doty, 1947; Dawson, 1961b), Abbott and Hollenberg (1976:105) concluded that Pacific specimens identified as “*C. delicatula sensu Collins (1909b; Smith, 1944)*” were misidentified and were another species, *C. albida*. Thus, the presence of *C. montagneana* in the northern Gulf needs to be verified. Crystalline cell inclusions were found in *C. montagneana* from Tanzania (Leli-aert and Coppejans, 2004:202, fig. 48), but have not been reported in the Gulf “*C. montagneana*.”

The name *C. montagneana* given by Kützling (1849) was necessary since a new combination of the earliest name for this taxon, *Conferva brachyclados* Montagne (1837),

would have created a later homonym of *Cladophora brachyclados* (Kützinger) Kützinger (1845; basionym: *Conferva crispata* var. *brachyclados* Kützinger, 1834).

### ***Cladophora prolifera* (Roth) Kützinger**

*Conferva prolifera* Roth, 1797:182, pl. III: fig. 2.

*Cladophora prolifera* (Roth) Kützinger, 1843:271; Kützinger, 1853:24, pl. 82: fig.3; Taylor, 1945:57; Dawson, 1949:230; Dawson, 1957b:8; Dawson, 1961b:378; Chávez B., 1972:268; van den Hoek, 1963 [in part, excluding *C. rugulosa*]:208, pl. 51: figs. 677–682, pl. 52: fig. 686; van den Hoek, 1982:166, pl. 32: figs. 318–327; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:27; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:24; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1992:24; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992:24; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:51; González-González, 1993:443; Stout and Dreckmann, 1993:4; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:34; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:112; González-González et al., 1996:369; Bucio-Pacheco and Dreckmann, 1998:43; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998:25, 27; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:129, 133, 134; van den Hoek and Chihara, 2000 [excluding *C. rugulosa*]:52, fig. 22; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:61, 69; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002:235; Leliaert and Coppejans, 2003:56, figs. 6A–C, 7; Leliaert, 2004:32, figs. 6A–C, 7; Pedroche et al., 2005:47; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:58.

Algae dark green, forming dense tufts of branched filaments, up to 3 cm tall; above a distinctive stipe-like region of entangled, simple to branched, rhizoids (with annular constrictions) that descend from lower portions of basal cells, and form a rhizoidal attachment mat. Branches develop on apical end of axis and branch cells. Cells of main axes, branches, and basal cells (often with annular constrictions), 150–300 µm in diameter and 7–10 times as long as wide (1050–3000 µm in length); apical cells, 95–220 µm in diameter and 2.5–8 times as long as wide (320–1760 µm in length), with rounded tip. Rhizoids simple or branched, 40–100 µm in diameter, with characteristic annular constrictions.

**HABITAT.** On rocks and in tide pools, generally in shady areas; low intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: El Tornillal to Bahía Concepción; Cabo Pulmo. Pacific coast: Laguna Ojo de Liebre (Scammon's Lagoon), Baja California Sur to Oaxaca; Costa Rica; Ecuador; Galápagos Islands; China (Hainan Island); Taiwan; Japan; Vietnam.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** “*In mare Corsicam*” (Roth, 1797). Lectotype: Miramare, Trieste, Italy (van den Hoek, 1963).

**REMARKS.** *Cladophora prolifera* has been recently reported in the Gulf of California (Mateo-Cid et al., 1993; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000, 2002). The description follows that of van den Hoek and Chihara (2000), who noted this species was predominately subtidal and widely distributed in tropical to warm-temperate waters of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian Oceans. Leliaert and Coppejans (2004:202) have reported another taxonomic feature, crystalline cell inclusions, in *C. prolifera* from Turkey. The relationship of *C. prolifera* to a similar species, *Cladophora rugulosa* G. Martens (1868) has been uncertain, e.g., the latter was considered to be a synonym of *C. prolifera* by van den Hoek (1963). Recently, Leliaert and Coppejans (2003; see also Leliaert, 2004) provided morphological evidence that these species are distinct, thus supporting others who have kept them as separate species (e.g., Papenfuss, 1943; Sakai, 1964; Papenfuss and Chihara, 1975; Yoshida, 1998).

### ***Cladophora sericea* (Hudson) Kützinger**

*Conferva sericea* Hudson, 1762:485.

*Cladophora sericea* (Hudson) Kützinger, 1843:264; van den Hoek, 1963 [in part]:77, pl. 17: figs. 184–189, pl. 18: figs. 190–209, pl. 19: figs. 210–226, 245; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:108, fig. 67; van den Hoek, 1982:93, pl. 15: figs. 138–143; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:22; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruía, 1986:77; Dreckmann et al., 1990:24, pl. 2: fig. 4; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:27; Stewart, 1991:31; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:27; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992:24; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994a:52; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:112; González-González et al., 1996:281, 410; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1996:75, 87, pl. 26: figs. 114–118; Galindo-Villegas et al., 1997:2, 4; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1997:60, pl. 8: figs. 32, 33; Bucio-Pacheco and Dreckmann, 1998:43; Núñez-López et al., 1998:39; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998:25; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:59, 69; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:77, fig. 22E; Pedroche et al., 2005:48; Dreckmann et al., 2006:154.

*Conferva rudolphiana* C. Agardh, 1827:636.

*Cladophora rudolphiana* (C. Agardh) Kützinger, 1843:268; Collins, 1909b:336; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:218; Dawson, 1944:209; Dawson, 1957b:8; Dawson, 1961b:378; González-González et al., 1996:131.

*Cladophora gracilis* sensu Doty, 1947:23; Dawson, 1961b:377; Sakai, 1964:33–38 [non *Cladophora gracilis* Kützing, 1845:763 (note that *Cladophora gracilis* (A. W. Griffiths ex Mackay) Kützing, 1845:215 is *nom. illeg.* since the basionym *Conferva gracilis* A. W. Griffiths ex Harvey, 1835:304 is also *nom. illeg.* as it is a later homonym of *Conferva gracilis* Wulfen, 1803:21; thus, the correct new name is *Cladophora gracilis* Kützing, 1845:763, which is now a synonym of *Cladophora flexuosa* (O. F. Müller) Kützing, 1843:270; basionym: *Conferva flexuosa* O. F. Müller, 1782: 5, pl. 882 (see Söderström, 1963, 1965; Bot et al., 1989; Silva et al., 1996a; van den Hoek and Chihara, 2000:164)].

Algae up to 5 cm tall, filaments of main axis branched sparingly, widely spaced, branches of different lengths intermixed; cells of axis 50(–85)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter and 5–6 times as long as wide (250–510  $\mu\text{m}$  in length); cells of ultimate branches narrower, 20–30  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter and 5–7 times as long as wide (100–210  $\mu\text{m}$  in length).

**HABITAT.** On rocks in tidal creeks and epiphytic on drift *Gracilaria*; intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Empalme, Guaymas; Punta Arena to Cabo Pulmo. Pacific coast: Alaska to Chiapas; Costa Rica; Hawaiian Islands.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Isle of Sheppey, Kent, England.

### ***Cladophora tiburonensis* E. Y. Dawson**

FIGURE 26B

*Cladophora tiburonensis* E. Y. Dawson, 1944:211, pl. 31: figs. 1–3; Dawson, 1949:247; Dawson, 1961b:378; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; González-González et al., 1996:131; Pedroche et al., 2005:48.

Algae forming dense tufts of short stiff filaments, up to 4 mm tall, branching subdichotomous to secund; branch diameter gradually decreasing upward. Basal cells up to 60  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; upper cells about 25  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; cells mostly 4–5 times as long as wide, occasionally much longer below.

Fertile cells 40–70  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, conspicuously shorter and swollen compared to slender vegetative cells.

**HABITAT.** In tide pools; mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Isla Turners; Mazatlán, Sinaloa.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Isla Turners, off southeast end of Isla Tiburón, Las Islas de la Cintura, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** *Cladophora tiburonensis* is not well known. Dawson (1944), while noting its resemblance to *C. graminea* Collins (1909a), set it apart on the basis of its minute size and stiff habit. It is retained here to point out that its taxonomic status needs to be investigated.

### ***Cladophora vagabunda* (Linnaeus) van den Hoek**

*Conferva vagabunda* Linnaeus, 1753:1167; van den Hoek, 1963: pl. 36: figs. 470, 471 [type illustrations].

*Cladophora vagabunda* (Linnaeus) van den Hoek, 1963:144, pl. 33: figs. 434, 436–439; pl. 36: figs. 470–490, pl. 37: 491–503, pl. 39: 505–514; Schnetter and Bula Meyer, 1982:26, pl. 3: figs. H, I; van den Hoek, 1982:137, figs. 264–294; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-Gonzalez, 1991:27; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992:24; Servière-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; van den Hoek and Chihara, 2000:180, figs. 76–81; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002:235; Leliaert and Coppéjans, 2003:70, figs. 14A,B, 15; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:79, figs. 24A–D; Leliaert, 2004:47, figs. 14A,B, 15; Pedroche et al., 2005:49; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:307; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:58.

*Conferva expansa* Mertens ex Jürgens, 1817:Decade 5: [exsiccate] No. 8.

*Cladophora expansa* (Mertens ex Jürgens) Kützing, 1843:265; Chávez B., 1972:268.

*Conferva fascicularis* Mertens ex C. Agardh, 1824:114.

*Cladophora fascicularis* (Mertens ex C. Agardh) Kützing, 1843:268; Collins, 1909b:345; Chapman, 1956:447, fig. 98; Sakai, 1964:25, fig. 8A–D, pl. 4: fig. 1; Yoshida, 1998:62.

*Cladophora uncinella* Harvey, 1860:334; Dawson, 1959b:28; Sakai, 1964:60, fig. 28, pl. 11: fig. 1; Yoshida, 1998:70; van den Hoek and Chihara, 2000:182.

Algae erect tufts, up to 5 cm tall, main axes pseudodichotomously to pseudotrictotomously branched, up to 3 orders; branchlets sometimes straight filaments, but usually clusters of short, secund or recurved branchlets, with relatively straight to curled apical cell ends; attached by branched rhizoids from basal end of lower cells, which may partly coalesce. Main filaments 140–260(–300)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter and (3–)4–8 times longer than wide; apical cells much smaller, (20–)30–50  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter and 2–6(–9) times longer than wide. Cell walls of upper cells mostly 1.0–2.0  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; much thicker in lower cells, up to 20  $\mu\text{m}$  thick.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, limestone-clay ledges, and mudflats and in tide pools, lagoons, and salt marshes;

sometimes unattached and floating or may be epiphytic or entangled with other algae or aquatic plants; high to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Piedras de La Salina to Puerto Peñasco. Pacific coast: Nayarit to Guerrero; Colombia; Hawaiian Islands; Japan; Korea; China; Vietnam.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Selsey, Sussex, England (lectotype; van den Hoek, 1963).

**REMARKS.** *Cladophora vagabunda* and a few other taxa sensu van den Hoek (1963) were considered to be forms of a single species, *C. flexuosa* (O. F. Müller) Kützing (1843), by Söderström (1965). Since then, however, *C. vagabunda* has continued to be recognized as a distinct taxon (e.g., Silva et al., 1996; Leliaert, 2004). DNA-DNA hybridization experiments of Bot et al. (1990) and molecular analysis of Bakker et al. (1995) on widely geographically separated isolates of *C. vagabunda* have shown considerable divergence, with at least four cryptic species. Specimens of Gulf *C. vagabunda* need to be similarly tested to elucidate their taxonomic status.

### ***Rhizoclonium* Kützing**

*Rhizoclonium* Kützing, 1843:261.

Algae are uniseriate, slender, cylindrical filaments, up to 60 µm in diameter, that are unbranched and may lack or have one- to few-celled rhizoidal laterals. They are either attached by a lobed holdfast or lay unattached on hard substratum or, more commonly, on mud or sand

flats. Cells are mostly several times longer than wide and contain numerous nuclei and a parietal, reticulate chloroplast with pyrenoids.

Vegetative reproduction is by fragmentation of the filaments. It is also by akinetes that are formed within some of the cells as they swell and thicken. Life histories, where known, are an alternation of isomorphic generations. Asexual reproduction is by biflagellate or quadri-flagellate zoospores. Sexual reproduction is by biflagellate isogametes.

**REMARKS.** *Rhizoclonium* occurs worldwide in fresh, brackish, and marine waters. The generic distinction of *Rhizoclonium* and *Lola* A. Hamel et G. Hamel (1929) is tenuous and needs to be investigated. For example, the only character separating them is isogamous reproduction in *Rhizoclonium* and anisogamous reproduction in *Lola*. Likewise, the generic differences between *Rhizoclonium* and *Chaetomorpha*, as well as their species separation, can be difficult. The morphological characters used, i.e., filament diameter, length/width ratio of cells, the absence or presence of attachment structures, and the absence or presence and number of lateral rhizoidal filaments, have been shown to be highly variable (e.g., Koster, 1955; Nienhuis, 1975; Nienhuis and de Bree, 1981; Blair, 1983). Setchell and Gardner (1920b) concluded that the only useful taxonomic character was filament cell diameter.

One species has been reported in the southern Gulf: *Rhizoclonium hieroglyphicum* (C. Agardh) Kützing (1845) by Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González (1985).

There are two species and two varieties known in the northern Gulf of California.

#### KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *RHIZOCLONIUM* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Uniseriate filaments mostly straight; cells mostly greater than 30 µm in diameter, up to 75 µm wide; filament cells either without or with short rhizoidal proliferations of only a single cell . . . . . *R. tortuosum*
- 1b. Uniseriate filaments mostly twisted or curly; cells mostly less than 30 µm in diameter (occasionally up to 45 µm); filament cells either without or with tapering rhizoidal proliferations of 2–5 (or more) cells long . . . . . 2
- 2a. Cells mostly 20–30(–45) µm in diameter and 20–60(–90) µm long; filaments sometimes with few rhizoids . . . . . *R. riparium* var. *riparium*
- 2b. Cells smaller in diameter, usually 8–12(–20) µm, 24–50(–70) µm long; filaments rarely with rhizoids . . . . . *R. riparium* var. *implexum*

### ***Rhizoclonium riparium* (Roth) Harvey var. *riparium***

*Conferva riparia* Roth, 1806:216; Koster, 1955:336, fig. 1.  
*Rhizoclonium riparium* (Roth) Harvey, 1849:238, pl. CCXXXVIII; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:182; Smith,

1944:63, pl. 7: fig. 4; Taylor, 1945:55; Doty, 1947:27; Hollenberg, 1948:155; Dawson, 1961b:376; Scagel, 1966:74, fig. 18A–F; Nienhuis, 1975:84–88, figs. 35–60; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:92, fig. 46; Zedler, 1980:124; Nienhuis and de Bree, 1981:434; R. Aguilar-Rosas, 1982:84; Zedler, 1982:41; Schnetter and

Bula Meyer, 1982:18, pl. 1: figs. Q–S, pl. 2: figs. A, B; Blair, 1983:203; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:419; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:27; Stewart, 1991:32; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992:25; León-Tejera et al., 1993:199; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:44; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:112; Pedroche et al., 1995:112; González-González et al., 1996:289; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1996:76, 88, pl. 27: fig. 122; Sánchez-Lizaso and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 1997:56; Núñez-López et al., 1998:39; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:133; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:83, fig. 25D; Wysor, 2004:218; Pedroche et al., 2005:50; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:146; Dreckmann et al., 2006:154.

Algae unbranched, uniseriate filaments of cylindrical cells, mostly 1–2 times longer than wide (sometimes up to 6 times); (10–)15–30(–45)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter by 15–90(–270)  $\mu\text{m}$  long; without or with a few short rhizoidal proliferations of 2–5 (or more) cells; often unattached. Chloroplast reticulate, with 6 or more pyrenoids.

Vegetative reproduction by fragmentation. Reproduction not reported in Gulf specimens. Reproduction has been reported in Europe. Asexual reproduction is by biflagellate and quadriflagellate zoospores, and sexual reproduction by isogamous gametes (Nienhuis, 1975).

**HABITAT.** Entangled with other algae or aquatic plants, in tide pools, or on sand flats and mudflats of salt marshes, lagoons, and estuaries; or free-floating and unattached (also reported as epiphytic on *Gelidium johnstonii* and *Spyridia filamentosa*; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000); high to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puertecitos to Punta Arena (north of Cabo Pulmo). Pacific coast: Alaska to Chiapas; Panama; Colombia; Galápagos Islands; Chile; Hawaiian Islands; China; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Norderney, East Frisian Islands, Germany.

***Rhizoclonium riparium* var. *implexum*  
(Dillwyn) Rosenvinge**

*Conferva implexa* Dillwyn, 1809:46, (Suppl.) pl. B; Koster, 1955:336, fig. 2.

*Rhizoclonium riparium* var. *implexum* (Dillwyn) Rosenvinge, 1893:915, fig. 34; Taylor, 1945:55; Silva

et al., 1996a:786; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:69; León-Tejera and González-González, 2000:327; Pedroche et al., 2005:50; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:8.

*Rhizoclonium implexum* (Dillwyn) Kützing, 1845:206; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:183; Smith, 1944:62, pl. 8: fig. 3; Taylor, 1945:55; Koster, 1955: 344, 348; Dawson, 1961b:375; Scagel, 1966:73, pl. 33A,B; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:92, fig. 45; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:22; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:419; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994a:57; González-González et al., 1996:138; Galindo-Villegas et al., 1997:2, 4; Yoshida, 1998:72; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:82, fig. 25C.

*Lola implexa* (Dillwyn) G. Hamel, 1931a:120, fig. 37 (6–7); Ortega et al., 1987:78, pl. 14: figs. 60–62; Perrot, 1965:506; González-González et al., 1996:137.

*Rhizoclonium kernerii* Stockmayer, 1890:582; Collins, 1909b:329; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:185; Taylor, 1945:55; Dawson, 1961b:375; González-González, 1993:443; Ortega et al., 1987:77, pl. 13: figs. 58, 59; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:485; González-González et al., 1996:289; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1998:169.

*Rhizoclonium kochianum* Kützing, 1845:206; Dawson, 1959a:12; Dawson, 1960a:31; Dawson, 1961b:376; Earle, 1972:85; González-González et al., 1996:139.

Algae unbranched, uniseriate filaments of cylindrical cells, mostly 3–5 times longer than wide, (8–)10–12(–20)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter by (24–)30–50(–70)  $\mu\text{m}$  long; mostly lacking or rarely with short, rhizoidal proliferations. Chloroplasts reticulate, with numerous pyrenoids.

**HABITAT.** Epiphytic or entangled with other algae or plants, on rocks, in tide pools, or on sand and mudflats of salt marshes, lagoons, and estuaries; or unattached and free-floating; high to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Guaymas to Punta Arena (north of Cabo Pulmo). Pacific coast: Alaska to Oaxaca; Isla Clarión (Islas Revillagigedo); Panama; China; Japan; Hawaiian Islands; Galápagos Islands.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Bantry, Ireland.

**REMARKS.** The taxonomy of *Rhizoclonium implexum* has been diversely interpreted. Koster (1955) placed *R. kernerii* and *R. kochianum* in synonymy with *R. implexum* and also questioned whether *R. implexum* was distinct from *R. riparium* or if the two were one highly variable species. Since then, these latter two have been variously treated: as separate species (e.g., Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976; Womersley, 1984; Yoshida, 1998; Abbott and Huisman, 2004); as a single species with a variety,

*R. riparium* var. *implexum* (Dillwyn) Rosenvinge, 1893 (e.g., Silva et al., 1996a; Pedroche et al., 2005); and as an unnamed form of *R. riparium* (Blair, 1983). Herein, while treated as a single species following Nienhuis (1975), Nienhuis and de Bree (1981), Blair (1983), Burrows (1991), and John et al. (2004), the two varieties are recognized until further studies can be done.

### ***Rhizoclonium tortuosum* (Dillwyn) Kützing**

FIGURE 31

*Conferva tortuosa* Dillwyn, 1805:pl. 46.

*Rhizoclonium tortuosum* (Dillwyn) Kützing, 1845:205; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:185; Chapman, 1939:19; Doty, 1947:25; Dawson, 1961b:376; Blair, 1983:198, figs. 12, 13; Hoffman and Santelices, 1997:91, fig. 19; Bucio-Pacheco and Dreckmann, 1998:44; Pedroche et al., 2005:51.

*Chaetomorpha tortuosa* (Dillwyn) Kleen, 1874:45; Scagel et al., 1989:62.

*Lola tortuosa* (Dillwyn) Chapman, 1953:65; Chapman, 1956:463.

*Rhizoclonium lubricum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner in N. L. Gardner, 1919:492, pl. 42: fig. 5A,B; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:185, pl. 9: fig. 5a,b; Taylor, 1945:56; Doty, 1947:26.

*Lola lubrica* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner in N. L. Gardner) A. Hamel et G. Hamel, 1929:1094; Hamel, 1931a:118, fig. 37 (1–5); Dawson, 1944:208; Dawson, 1961b:376; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:92, fig. 47; Ortega et al., 1987:78, pl. 14: figs. 63, 64; Scagel et al., 1989:74; Stewart, 1991:32; González-González et al., 1996:137; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146; Pedroche et al., 2005:49.

*Rhizoclonium riparium* f. *validum* Foslie in Wittrock et Nordstedt, 1884:No. 624; Foslie, 1890:139.

Algae of slippery filaments, up to 40 cm long, often entangled or forming free-floating mats; composed of unbranched filaments, (25–)30–75  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; newer cells (25–)35–100  $\mu\text{m}$  long; mature cells 120–300  $\mu\text{m}$  long; attached by simple short rhizoids. Cells with a reticulate chloroplast, and numerous pyrenoids; cell wall 0.2  $\mu\text{m}$  thick.

Vegetative reproduction by fragmentation. Reproduction not observed in Gulf material. A life history involving an isomorphic alternation of generations has been reported, with asexual reproduction by quadriflagellate zoospores, and sexual reproduction that is anisogamous,

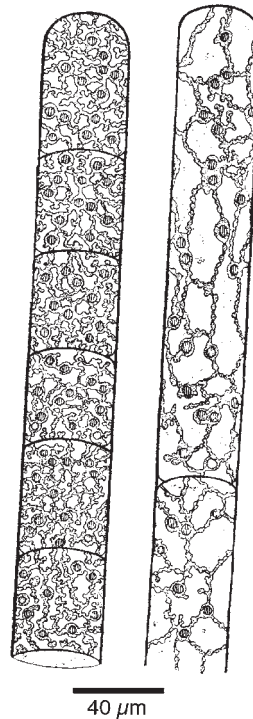


FIGURE 31. *Rhizoclonium tortuosum*: Terminal portion of young filament with short segments (left) and terminal portion of filament with long segments (right) (after Gardner, 1919: pl. 42, fig. 5A,B).

with biflagellate gametes (Hamel and Hamel, 1929; Blair, 1983).

**HABITAT.** On rocks or other hard substrata, often entangled with other algae; on mud-sand flats in lagoons and shallow bays; or sometimes unattached and free-floating; mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Guaymas; Bahía San Gabriel; Isla Espíritu Santo; Laguna de Agiabampo (Sonora). Pacific coast: Alaska to Michoacán.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Lectotype: Swansea, Glamorgan, Wales, UK (Blair, 1983:198).

**REMARKS.** *Rhizoclonium tortuosum* has been variously treated; some recognize it as a distinct species, others recognize it as part of a species complex. For example, Burrows (1991) considered *R. riparium* to be a single species conspecific with *R. tortuosum* and *R. implexum*. Herein, *R. tortuosum* is tentatively recognized as a separate species until detailed comparative morphological studies and molecular analyses have been conducted on Gulf material for comparisons to the European types of these taxa (see Silva et al., 1996a:936 for discussion of nomenclature and taxonomic problems of *R. tortuosum*).

**SIPHONOCLADALES SENSU STRICTO**

Siphonocladales (Blackman et Tansley) Oltmanns, 1904: 134.

Algae are of various forms, composed of large tubular, siphonous, or vesiculate cells that are formed by either lenticular cells, or by internal segregative cell division (not always obvious). In segregative division the protoplast cleaves into protoplasmic spheres, which, in turn, may either form new cell walls, remain in the parental cell, or be released as vegetative propagules. Endogenous expansion of these spheres within the parental vesicle results in the formation of pseudoparenchymatous tissue (e.g., *Dictyosphaeria*). Cells divide in some members by centripetal invagination of cell walls, but with new branches that remain in open connection (i.e., lack septa) at the base of the parent cell (e.g., *Cladophoropsis*). New lateral branches may also arise in some genera by expansion of lenticular cells; i.e., septa are initiated prior to elongation

of the vesicular branch on the surface of the parent vesicle (e.g., *Valonia*).

Cells are cylindrical or inflated, globose, clavate, or vesiculate. There is simultaneous formation of laterals at nodes (rather than sequential), and branching can be in three directions. Tenacular cells that are formed are one of four different kinds, and secondary anastomoses are usually formed.

**REMARKS.** The taxonomy of the families, as well as their generic composition, of the Cladophorales-Siphonocladales complex is unresolved (see Leliaert et al., 2003, 2007, and Remarks under Cladophorales herein). Although segregative cell division is a primary characteristic of the families Siphonocladaceae and the Boodleaceae, it has not been reported or described for all the genera generally considered to be members of these families.

Three of the currently accepted families in the Siphonocladales are represented in the northern Gulf of California.

**KEY TO FAMILIES OF SIPHONOCLADALES IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA**

- 1a Thalli erect, of relatively large, elongated cylindrical cells that bear irregularly to regularly, radially arranged lateral or whorled branches ..... **Siphonocladaceae**
- 1b. Thallus a large individual vesicle; or cushionlike, of simple to branched, cylindrical to clavate, siphon cells ..... 2
- 2a. Thalli variable, filamentous to netlike; of branched, cylindrical or siphon cells secondarily attached to each other; cells formed either by segregative division or by centripetal invagination of cell walls ..... **Boodleaceae**
- 2b. Thallus a single globose vesicle, or composed of elongate siphon cells, some with branches, usually entangled; main axis not distinct; growth by lenticular cells ..... **Valoniaceae**

**BOODLEACEAE**

Boodleaceae Børgesen, 1925:19, 24.

Algae are of various morphologies; mostly, they are tufts, clumps, or mats of clavate, cylindrical, or filiform cells with vesicular branches that often become constricted near their base, and are usually attached to the substratum by rhizoids. Development of new cells, forming laterals or branches, is primarily by segregative cell division, i.e., cytoplasm divides into portions that expand into protrusions before a cell wall is formed, or, in some, is by centripetal invagination of the cell walls. Some may also initiate new growth by the formation of lenticular cells. Cells are multinucleate with reticulate chloroplasts that lack pyrenoids. Crystalline cell inclusions may be present or absent.

Reproduction is poorly known. Life histories, in those studied, are an alternation of isomorphic generations.

Biflagellate and quadriflagellate zoospores have been observed in only a few of the genera. Sexual reproduction, where known, is by biflagellate isogametes.

**REMARKS.** Members of the Boodleaceae found in the Gulf of California have usually been referred to the Siphonocladaceae (e.g., Pedroche et al., 2005). However, the type genus, *Siphonocladus* F. Schmitz (1879), does not group with the other genera generally assigned to the family in molecular phylogenetic analyses (Leliaert et al., 2003; Leliaert and Coppejans, 2006). Although some genera such as *Phyllodictyon* have been included in the Anadyomenaceae Kützing (1843), there is no phylogenetic support for this, and that family is restricted to the genera *Anadyomena* J. V. Lamouroux (1812) and *Microdictyon* Decaisne (1841) as originally proposed by Kützing (Leliaert et al., 2007). Therefore, as noted by Kraft (2007) and Leliaert (University of Ghent, personal communication, 2008), the family Boodleaceae is available for the genera

other than *Siphonocladus*, *Anadyomena*, and *Microdictyon*. Herein the Boodleaceae is interpreted to include *Boodlea*, *Struvea*, *Cladophoropsis*, and *Phyllodictyon*.

Two genera of this family have been recorded for the southern Gulf: *Struvea* Sonder (1845) by Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-Gonzalez (1985, as “*Struvea* sp.”) and

*Boodlea* (Dickie) G. Murray et DeToni (in Murray, 1889) with the report of *B. composita* (Harvey) Brand (1904) by Mateo-Cid et al. (1993) and Mendoza-González et al. (1994).

Two of the genera are known in the northern Gulf of California.

#### KEY TO THE GENERA OF BOODLEACEAE IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Algae of terete, branched filaments (not netlike); branches formed singly on distal end of filament and elongate without forming a basal crosswall (septae) ..... *Cladophoropsis*  
 1b. Algae a simple or branched stalk(s) with an upper netlike portion (formed by attachment of tenacular cells of tips of apical cells of lateral branches to adjacent filaments); or the upper portion only partially netlike (reduced or incomplete or sometimes lacking) ..... *Phyllodictyon*

#### *Cladophoropsis* Børgesen

*Cladophoropsis* Børgesen, 1905:288.

Algae generally form green, cushionlike turfs or mats of interweaving filaments, usually lack a distinct axis, and attach to substratum by branched septate rhizoids, adherent cell walls, or hapteroid cells. The filaments, more or less uniform in diameter, have irregularly spaced, usually sparse, lateral branches. Laterals are produced from nonseptate protrusions at the distal end of intercalary and apical cells that elongate to various lengths and gradually taper toward the apex. Septa (crosswalls), although initially lacking, can develop secondarily at intercalary and branch points. Cells are multinucleate, with numerous discoid chloroplasts, each has a single pyrenoid; crystalline inclusions present. Cells divide by centripetal invagination of cell walls. Growth is by apical and intercalary cell division. Annular constrictions and lenticular cells are absent. Rhizoids, produced above the septum, can become well developed and produce new axes. Adventitious rhizoids develop where branches come in contact with the substratum.

Propagation is by aplanospores, probably produced by segregative division. Life histories are presumed to be a biphasic alternation of generations.

REMARKS. Generic limits of *Cladophoropsis* are unclear, and only a few of the described species are apparently distinctive. The taxonomy is complicated by having few morphological characters, two of which, growth form and branching pattern, are environmentally influenced (e.g., Leliaert et al., 2003). There has also been confusion in the interpretation of septate and nonseptate lateral branches. Further problems were found in the species sampling in phylogenetic studies (Kooistra et al., 1993). Leliaert and Coppejans (2004) noted the absence or presence of different morphological types of crystalline cell inclusions to be of systematic value at the species level.

One species, *Cladophoropsis membranacea* (Hofman Bang ex C. Agardh) Børgesen (1905; Leliaert and Coppejans, 2006), has been reported in the southern Gulf (Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985), and Pacific Mexico (Dawson, 1960a, as “*Cladophora membranacea*”; see also Dawson, 1961b; Huerta-Múzquiz and Garza-Barrientos, 1975; Pedroche et al., 2005).

Two species are known in the northern Gulf of California.

#### KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *CLADOPHOROPSIS* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Filaments relatively slender, 65–100(–125)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; cells very long, up to 15 mm, 30–100 times longer than wide ..... *C. gracillima*  
 1a. Filaments much wider, usually over 350  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; cells of main filaments not as long, 2.3–18 times longer than wide ..... *C. macromeres*



***Cladophoropsis gracillima* E. Y. Dawson**

FIGURE 32A–C

*Cladophoropsis gracillima* E. Y. Dawson, 1950c:149, 151, figs. 12, 13; Dawson, 1957b:7; Dawson, 1960a:32; Dawson, 1961b:379; Dawson, 1962b:228; Dawson, 1966a:6; González-González et al., 1996:131; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:17; Leliaert, 2004:237, figs. 77 (isotype), 78; Pedroche et al., 2005:52; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:48, 58.

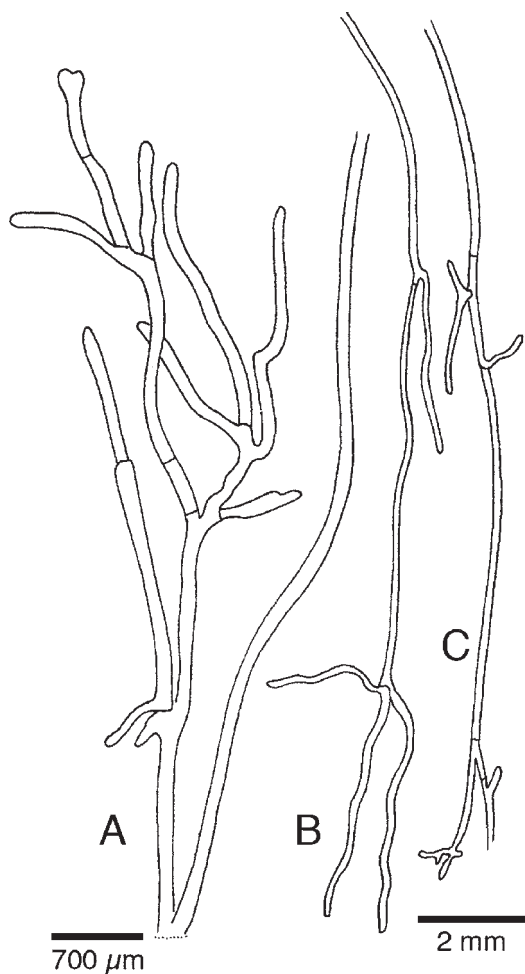


FIGURE 32. *Cladophoropsis gracillima*: A–C. Drawings of type specimen (EYD-3233; after Dawson, 1950c: figs. 12–13). A. Upper portion of a branched filament showing the manner of septation of branches. B, C. Small portions of a skein-like alga showing extremely long cells and infrequent branching.

Algae loosely filamentous tufts, of sparsely, irregularly branched, cylindrical filaments, 2–4 cm long; entangled by creeping or entwining branches to other algae and attached by rhizoids to substratum. Chloroplast a slightly open to dense, parietal reticulatum with 1–4 pyrenoids. Cells very long, (0.3–)1.0–15 mm in length (30–100 times longer than wide), with diameter in cells of main filaments (50–)65–120(–130)  $\mu\text{m}$ ; in basal cells 50–160  $\mu\text{m}$ ; and in apical cells (60–)80–120(–135)  $\mu\text{m}$ . Branches arising beneath a septum of the filament cell and usually remain in open connection between the branch cell and filament. Cell walls 2  $\mu\text{m}$  thick.

Reproduction unknown for this species.

**HABITAT.** On rocks and in tide pools, usually entangled with other small algae; mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda; Calerita (vicinity of La Paz) to Punta Palmilla. Pacific coast: Costa Rica.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Punta Palmilla, Baja California Sur.

**REMARKS.** Dawson (1950c) separated *Cladophoropsis gracillima* from the morphologically similar species on the basis of its entangled habit, slender filaments, and much longer cells (30–100 times longer than diameter). Crystalline cell inclusions were briefly noted in a list as present in *C. gracillima* (Leliaert and Coppejans, 2004:202). This apparently was an error since Leliaert (2004:239) and Leliaert and Coppejans (2006:670) considered *C. gracillima*, because of its lack of crystalline inclusions and absence of tenacular cells, to be of uncertain taxonomic affinity. When more Gulf specimens are collected, studies are needed to evaluate the distinctiveness and phylogenetics of this taxon.

***Cladophoropsis macromeres* W. R. Taylor**

*Cladophoropsis macromeres* W. R. Taylor, 1928:64, pl. 4: figs. 15, 16; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:419; González-González et al., 1996:281; Leliaert, 2004:116, figs. 3C,D, 5A,B, 8A–E; Pedroche et al., 2005:52; Leliaert and Coppejans, 2006:662, figs. 3, 4, 18–22.

Algae of cylindrical, loosely branched entangled filaments, forming mats up to 15 cm wide and 2–15 cm thick; usually found free floating or lying unattached on substratum. Main filaments (280–)350–510  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; cells 2.3–18 times longer than wide, with cells walls up to 10  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; upper filaments narrower, (140–)280–360(–400)

µm in diameter with cells up to 60 times longer than wide, and cell walls 2–4 µm thick. Branching mostly irregular, sometimes unilateral in upper portions. Chloroplasts polygonal to rounded in parietal reticulum, usually with a single large pyrenoid. Prismatic calcium oxalate crystals present in most cells.

**HABITAT.** Free-floating or cast ashore on sand flats or mudflats; sometimes entangled with other algae or aquatic plants; in protected tide pools or shallow waters; intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Guaymas.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Fort Jefferson on Garden Key, Dry Tortugas National Park, Monroe County, Florida.

**REMARKS.** *Cladophoropsis macromeres*, a western Atlantic species, is known in warm, calm, shallow waters (Taylor, 1960; Wynne, 2005); the description is based on Leliaert and Coppejans (2006). It has been recorded once in the northern Gulf from drift material (Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986), and more collections would be helpful to verify its presence in the Gulf of California.

### ***Phyllodictyon* J. E. Gray**

*Phyllodictyon* J. E. Gray, 1866:70.

Algae are erect, of one or more reticulate (netlike) blades, above a monosiphonous (rarely branched) stalk that is attached by basal rhizoids. Blades are complanate, with an apical, uniaxial orientation that is maintained throughout development with primary and secondary laterals arising from opposite, astipitate protrusions along distal sides of previously cut-off segments. The distinctive network of the blade is formed as the initial laterals and subsequent higher-order distichously arranged laterals

develop by nonsynchronous centripetal wall invaginations (*Cladophora*-type cell division). Intercalary cell divisions are common. Tenacular cells on the apices of second- and third-order (rarely more) laterals may contact and fuse with adjacent laterals to form the filament network of the blade. Cells are multinucleate and have numerous discoid chloroplasts, each with a single pyrenoid.

Life histories are not known, but zoospores have been reported.

**REMARKS.** *Phyllodictyon* and the similar-looking genus *Struvea* Sonder (1845) are differentiated from each other primarily by their mode of cell division: “*Cladophora*-type” in *Phyllodictyon* versus the segregative cell division in *Struvea* (Kraft and Wynne, 1996), a generic distinction initially supported by molecular evidence (e.g., Kooistra et al., 1993; Bakker et al., 1994). However, Leliaert and Coppejans (2007) noted that while *Phyllodictyon*, *Struvea*, *Cladophoropsis*, *Chamaedoris* Montagne (1842b), *Boodlea* G. Murray et G. B. De Toni (in Murray, 1889), and *Struveopsis* Rhyne et Robinson (1969) were all nonmonophyletic genera and their generic separation was problematic, that for now and for practical utility, they should be distinguished by their considerable and consistent habit (morphological) differences.

One species, *Phyllodictyon anastomosans* (Harvey) Kraft et M. J. Wynne (1996) has been reported in the southern Gulf (Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a; both as “*Struvea anastomosans*”), and Pacific Mexico (Dawson, 1949, 1950d, as “*S. delicatula*”; Chávez B., 1972, Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978, Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991, Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992, León-Tejera et al., 1993, and González-González, 1993, all as “*S. anastomosans*”; and Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998).

Two of the species are known in the Gulf of California.

#### KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *PHYLLODICTYON* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Algae with narrow main axes, 200–380 µm diameter, and upper netlike blades; tenacular cells at tips of apical cells and at base of main axial cells; lenticular cells absent. . . . . *P. pulcherrimum*
- 1b. Algae with broader main axes, 950–1120 µm in diameter, upper bladelike portion either lacking or reduced (partial); tenacular cells only at tips of apical cells; lenticular cells present . . . . . *P. robustum*

### ***Phyllodictyon pulcherrimum* J. E. Gray**

FIGURE 33

*Phyllodictyon pulcherrimum* J. E. Gray, 1866:70; Kraft and Wynne, 1996:131–135, 139, figs. 26–28; John et al., 2004:23; Leliaert, 2004:fig. 52 (holotype); Pedroche et al., 2005:54; Leliaert et al., 2008:8, 10, tbl. 3.

*Struvea pulcherrima* (J. E. Gray) Murray et Boodle, 1888:281; Schneider and Searles, 1991:80, fig. 70.

*Cladophoropsis pulcherrima* (J. E. Gray) Leliaert et Coppejans in Leliaert, 2004:192, *comb. nov. prov.*, figs. 5C,D, 52–55.

*Struvea ramosa* Dickie, 1874b:316; Dawson, 1966b:55, fig. 1B; González-González et al., 1996:139.

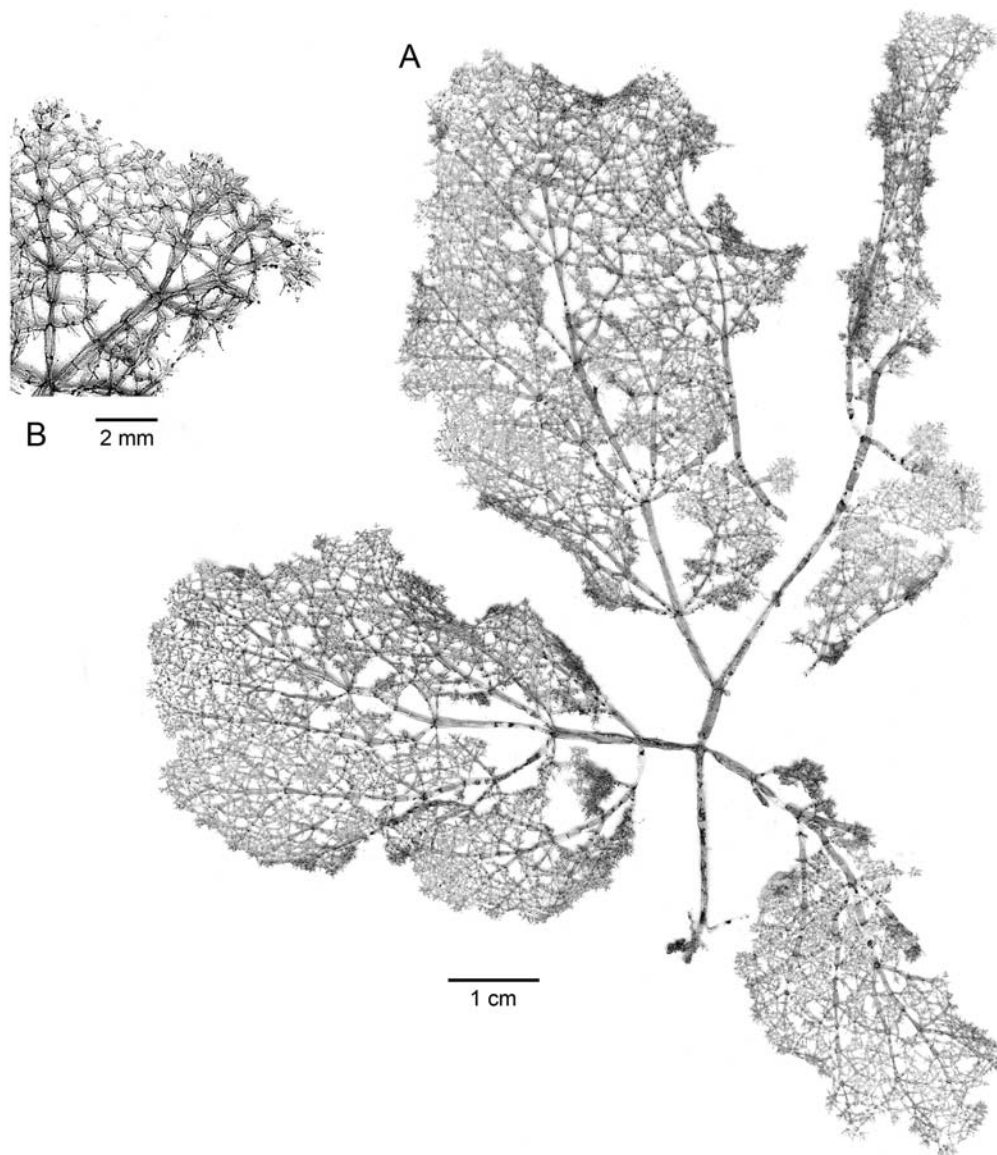


FIGURE 33. *Phyllocladion pulcherrimum*. A. Axis with several well-developed open reticulate fronds above a monosiphonous stalk (EYD-25872). B. Portion of net-like blade.

Algae erect, up to 20 cm tall, with reticulate blade(s) above a monosiphonous stalk, up to 1.5 mm in diameter, and attached below by branching, basal rhizoids. Lower portion of stalk usually unbranched; upper portion with a series of opposite branches, up to 3 orders, that form net-like blades, up to 12 cm long and up to 10 cm wide. Main axes 200–380  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Lateral branches, developed below a septum at distal end of axis cell, with up to 6 branches per cell. Tenacular cells abundant at tips of apical cells, and base of cells on main axes. Lenticular cells absent.

**HABITAT.** On rock; subtidal, 17 m depth.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Punta Concepción.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Gulf of Mexico.

**REMARKS.** The phylogenetic relationship of the western Atlantic *Phyllocladion pulcherrimum* (type locality Gulf of Mexico) to Gulf of California *P. pulcherrimum* should be tested. Calcium oxalate crystalline cell inclusions, thought to be of systematic value, have been described in *P. pulcherrimum* from other regions (Leliaert and Coppejans, 2004; Leliaert et al., 2008) but are not reported in Gulf of California *P. pulcherrimum*.

***Phyllocladon robustum***  
**(Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Leliaert et Wysor**

FIGURE 34A-E

*Cladophoropsis robusta* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:714, pl. 13: fig. 16 [holotype specimen only; see Leliaert et al., 2008:3–4, 9, figs. 2, 3, 15, 16, 23 (illustrations of holotype)]; Dawson, 1944:206; Dawson, 1957b:8; Dawson, 1961c:404, pl. 4: fig. 3, pl. 5: fig. 6; Dawson, 1962b:228; Chávez B., 1972:268; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:419; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:24; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992:24; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:51; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; González-González et al., 1996:131; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1998:168.

*Cladophoropsis?* *robusta* sensu Dawson, 1959a:9–11, fig. 3A; Dawson, 1961b:379.

*Phyllocladon robustum* Leliaert et Wysor in Leliaert et al., 2008:230, figs. 1–46.

*Struveopsis robusta* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Rhyne et H. Robinson, 1969:470; Stout and Dreckmann, 1993:6, 17; Kraft and Wynne, 1996:140; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; Bucio-Pacheco and Dreckmann, 1998:42; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:129, 133; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:69; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002:235; Wysor, 2004:219, fig. 7; Pedroche et al., 2005:54; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:58.

*Pseudostruvea robusta* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Egerod, 1975:47; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; González-González et al., 1996:138; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:22; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:202.

*Willella mexicana* E. Y. Dawson, 1950c:151, fig. 11 (holotype); Papenfuss and Egerod, 1957:83; Dawson, 1957b:8; Dawson, 1959a:11–12; González-González et al., 1996:141; Leliaert, 2004:49; Leliaert and Coppejans, 2006:673; Leliaert et al., 2008: figs. 4 (holotype), 5–7 (isotype).

*Cladophoropsis mexicana* (E. Y. Dawson) Leliaert et Coppejans in Leliaert, *comb. nov. prov.*, 2004:184, fig. 47.

Algae erect, 2–4(–5) cm tall, highly variable in morphology; usually of few to several, monosiphonous main axes, unbranched to laterally branched up to 3 orders; attached below by entangled basal rhizoids. Main axes diameter 370–900(–1300) µm, increasing upward; branch diameter mostly 600–900 µm; apical cells with rounded tips, 950–1120 µm in diameter, 1.5–3.2 mm in length.

Lower portion of main axis (stipitate), usually unbranched in first 1.0–2.5 cm; upper portion either remaining unbranched or becoming bladelike, with few, paired lateral branches, developed below a septum at distal end of axis cell, 2–4 mm in length, of (1–)3–6 cells, with up to 4 branches per cell. Septa either absent or present after growth of a few millimeters in length. Tenacular cells, apparently rare, at tips of apical cells; abundant on rhizoidal cells in culture (Leliaert et al., 2008). Lenticular cells present. Calcium oxalate crystals present in most cells; usually rectangular, polygonal or irregular, 8–40(–60) µm wide, with dentate margins; rarely octahedral.

Reproductive cells, with numerous raised pores, develop from rows of 2–4 slightly swollen apical cells (after Leliaert et al., 2008).

**HABITAT.** Growing on rocks or sometimes sponges; in tidepools and low intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Punta Gorda to Bahía La Paz; Cabo Pulmo. Pacific coast: Nayarit to Oaxaca; El Salvador; Costa Rica; Panamá.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Punta Colorado (adjacent to Bahía Bocoichibampo), vicinity of Guaymas, Sonora, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** Since its original description from the Gulf of California, *Cladophoropsis robusta* has a notable history of taxonomic changes in generic placement. Papenfuss and Egerod (1957) suggested that *C. robusta* could be a *Willella* Børgesen (1930). Dawson (1959a:12, as “*C.?* *robusta*”) disagreed and noted in the type of *C. robusta*, “lens-shaped incipient branchlets” before branch formation that were “somewhat suggestive of *Struvea*” in the similar way its branches were cut off by a “lens-like cell” (lenticular cells). Dawson questioned its generic placement and concluded that *C.?* *robusta* and *Willella mexicana* Dawson (1950c) were the same species, more closely allied with *Valoniopsis* than to *Willella*. Subsequently, *C. robusta* was transferred to other genera, *Struveopsis* by Rhyne and Robinson (1969) and then later to *Pseudostruvea* by Egerod (1975).

Leliaert (2004) and Leliaert and Coppejans (2006) initially observed the holotype of *C. robusta* (CAS now UC) was not in agreement with the original description or illustration of Setchell and Gardner (1924a:714, pl. 13: fig. 16) and noted the type to be “*Valoniopsis pachynema*.” They further suggested that most records published as “*C. robusta*” were *Willella mexicana*. Most recently, Leliaert et al. (2008) reported re-examination of the holotype of *C. robusta* showed it to have tenacular cells at tips of some branches and that the branches developed exclusively

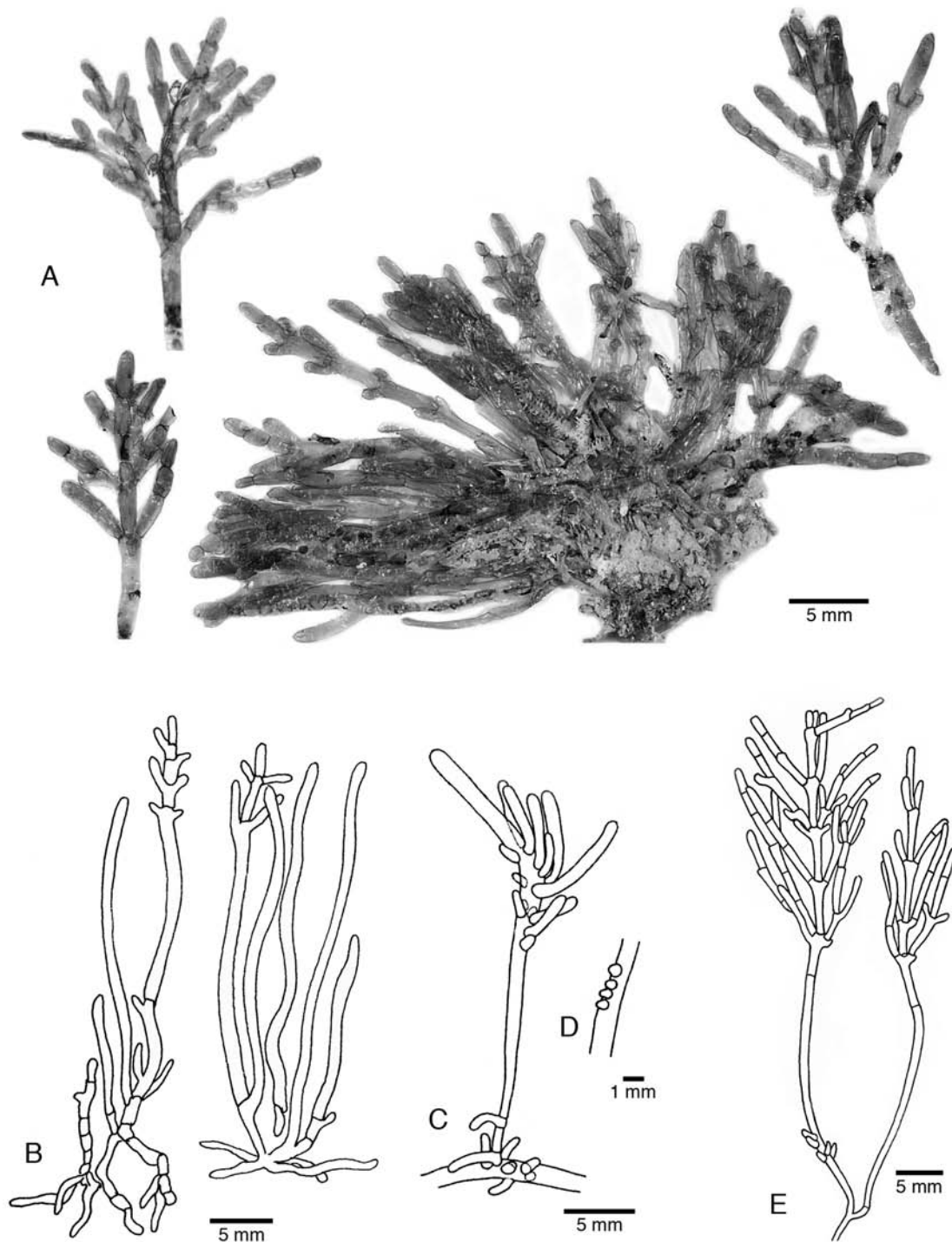


FIGURE 34. *Phyllocladon robustum*: A. Clump with some axes separated to show branching pattern (EYD-18555). B–D. Holotype of *Cladophoropsis robusta* (I. M. Johnston-135): B. Two specimens, axes with a few short, opposite branches near apices (after Setchell and Gardner 1924a: pl. 13, fig. 16). C. Prostrate and erect axes of another specimen with branches developing from lenticular cells. D. Close-up of lenticular cell buds on lower portion of an axis (C, D, after Leliaert et al., 2008:figs. 2, 3). E. Branching pattern of frond (after Dawson, 1950c:fig. 11; holotype of *Willella mexicana*, EYD-1789).

by lenticular cells, which together with its lack of “blades,” gave it a “*Valoniopsis*-like” appearance. They also found an isotype specimen of *W. mexicana* to have some branches initiated by lenticular cells and tenacular cells at tips of some apical cells. Results from their critical examination of type material, morphological and culture studies, and molecular analyses resolved the generic status of *C. robusta* as belonging to *Phyllocladon*, and supported *P. robustum* and *W. mexicana* as being a single species (Leliaert et al., 2008).

### SIPHONOCLADACEAE

Siphonocladaceae F. Schmitz, 1879:20, as “Siphonocladaceae.”

Algae are erect and either are turfs or clumps of axes with irregular to regular, radially arranged branches that are composed of relatively large, branched, elongated cylindrical to clavate, siphon cells (e.g., *Siphonocladus*). Other members are initially or may remain solid or hollow, more or less spherical thalli that often develop into irregular or lobed shapes or can become open and sheet-like and are composed of large, globose cells that produce a pseudoparenchymatous structure (e.g., *Dictyosphaeria*). Tenacular cells occur in some and may function as structural support or as adventitious rhizoids. Cell division is exclusively segregative in main axes and branches of turf-branched forms and in the spherical to lobed forms. There can also be cell division by centripetal invagination in the rhizoids. Cells are multinucleate, with a reticulate chloroplast or numerous chloroplasts that either lack pyrenoids or have one or more pyrenoids.

Vegetative reproduction in some is by fragmentation. Life histories, where known, are an isomorphic alternation of generations, involving quadriflagellate zoospores, and isogamous biflagellate gametes. (However, at least one, *Siphonocladus pusillus*, has been suggested to have a macrodiploid phase, with the gametes being the only haploid phase [Jónsson and Puiseaux-Dao, 1959].)

**REMARKS.** Which genera comprise the Siphonocladaceae, as well as the family’s relationship to other families of Cladophorales-Siphonocladales complex, is in a state of flux (Leliaert et al., 2003; Kraft, 2007). Herein the taxonomy of the family and order is based on the genus *Siphonocladus* F. Schmitz (1879; Børgesen, 1905; generic type: *Siphonocladus wilbergii* F. Schmitz (1879); now = *S. pusillus* (C. Agardh ex Kützing) Hauck, 1884; basionym: *Valonia pusilla* C. Agardh ex Kützing, 1849). The family also includes the genera *Dictyosphaeria* and *Ernodesmis*.

Although not yet reported in the northern Gulf, one genus, *Dictyosphaeria* Decaisne (1842a; Decaisne ex

Endlicher, 1843), is represented in the southern Gulf by reports of three species: *D. versluysii* Weber-van Bosse (1905) by Dawson (1944), Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones (1999), and Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez (2000); *D. australis* Setchell (1926) by Dawson (1949); and *D. cavernosa* (Forsskål) Børgesen (1932) by Anaya-Reyna and Riosmena-Rodríguez (1996) and Riosmena-Rodríguez et al. (2005).

One of the genera is found in the northern Gulf of California.

### *Ernodesmis* Børgesen

*Ernodesmis* Børgesen, 1912b:259.

Algae forming bushy clumps composed of elongate cells, with a primary upright clavate cell (or basal stalk) that is attached below by a holdfast of rhizoids and bears a distal whorl of branches. Whorl clusters are composed of 3–10 siphon branches. Each siphon branch of the whorl can initiate new branches at its apex, and in turn, each of these individual whorl branches can produce another whorl of siphon branches; this process may be repeated to produce several orders of whorled clusters. Secondary adventitious holdfasts may develop at the base of older branches, where they come in contact with the substratum. New uprights are produced from well-developed rhizoids. Tenacular cells are sparse, occurring only at junction of branch cells. Annular constrictions present on the basal stalk may also be present on the lower part of the branches. Cells are multinucleate, with numerous plate-like chloroplasts that form a reticulum, and contain 1 pyrenoid. Segments developed by lenticular cell division and sometimes also by segregative division in main stalks and by centripetal invagination in the rhizoids.

Vegetative reproduction is by fragmentation. Reproduction and life histories are poorly known.

**REMARKS.** The familial placement of *Ernodesmis* within the Cladophorales-Siphonocladales complex is uncertain. Solely on a morphological basis it would seem that *Ernodesmis* could be related to *Valonia* and *Valoniopsis* and therefore would be in the family Valoniaceae. However, the molecular analysis (Leliaert et al., 2003) supported a phylogenetic relationship of *Ernodesmis* to *Siphonocladus*, as earlier observed by Børgesen (1913). Thus, for now, *Ernodesmis* is tentatively considered a member of the Siphonocladaceae.

A monotypic genus of the Caribbean and known throughout the western Atlantic, the one species has also been reported in the Gulf of California.

***Ernodesmis verticillata* (Kützing) Børgesen**

FIGURE 35

*Valonia verticillata* Kützing, 1847:165.

*Ernodesmis verticillata* (Kützing) Børgesen, 1912b:259, figs. 10–12; Børgesen, 1913:66, figs. 52–54; Dawson, 1949:244; Dawson, 1959a:4, 8, 11; Dawson, 1961b:379; Dawson, 1966a:6; Dawson, 1966b:55; Papenfuss and Chihara, 1975:309, figs. 1–3; Huerta-Múzquiz and Garza-Barrientos, 1975:4; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:44; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:51; González-González et al., 1996:286; La Claire et al., 1997:831; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:22; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:61, 70; Pedroche et al., 2005:55; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49, 58; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:7.

Algae light green tufts, up to 2.5 cm (sometimes more) tall; thallus a single elongate, cylindrical stalk cell, 10–20 mm in length and up to 2.5 mm in diameter, that bears a whorl of cylindrical branches at its apex. Each branch of the initial whorl, in turn, bears another whorl of similar but smaller cells; and this whorl pattern may repeat itself up to 6 times.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, usually in shaded areas, in crevices, tidepools, and lagoons; mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Cabeza Ballena. Pacific coast: Isla Socorro (Islas Revillagigedo).

**TYPE LOCALITY.** St. Croix, U.S. Virgin Islands.

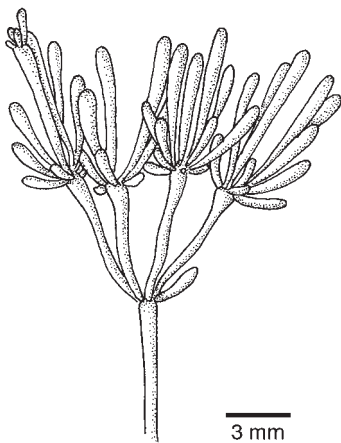


FIGURE 35. *Ernodesmis verticillata*: Upper portion showing successive series of whorled branches (after Børgesen, 1913:fig. 52).

**REMARKS.** Crystalline cell inclusions have been reported in specimens of Caribbean *Ernodesmis verticillata* from the type locality and in Gulf of California specimens from Punta Palmilla, Baja California Sur (Leliaert and Coppejans, 2004).

**VALONIACEAE**

Valoniaceae Kützing, 1849:507.

Members of this family lack a distinct central axis and are either relatively simple forms ranging from single giant vesicular cells to aggregations of vesicles, siphons, or cylindrical cells, or are more complex forms that produce clusters of elongated vesicles or cells from the primary vesicle. Growth is by lenticular cell division in which lenticular segments are formed inside the vesicles. These segments may either remain lenticular, or expand outward to develop branches (i.e., septa are initiated prior to elongation of the vesicular branch on the surface of the parent vesicle, e.g., *Valonia*) or may develop hapteroid cells that attach the alga to the substratum or adjacent vesicles.

Although biflagellate and quadriflagellate swimmers have been observed, for most species the life histories are not completely known. Sexual reproduction is only known in *Valonia macrophysa* Kützing (1843) and involves biflagellate isogametes with an isomorphic alternation of generations (Chihara, 1953, 1959).

One genus in the family, *Valonia* C. Agardh (1823), is recorded in the southern Gulf on the basis of the reports of *V. macrophysa* Kützing (1843) by Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González (1985) and Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones (1999).

One genus is known in the northern Gulf of California.

***Valoniopsis* Børgesen**

*Valoniopsis* Børgesen, 1934:10.

Algae forming cushion-like mats, composed of interwoven club-shaped, filiform, or elongated cylindrical siphons (cells) that initially grow more or less perpendicular to the substratum, then become repent and entangled, and attach by adventitious rhizoids that develop from the tips of downward arching branches that come in contact with the substratum. Branching is unilateral, pseudo-dichotomous or irregular, and obscures apical orientation. Well-developed attachment rhizoids can give rise to new erect segments. Siphons with one to several (1–)2–3 branches that are developed from cell division by lenticular cells (not from protrusions) distally and laterally on

the siphons; septa are formed only at branch base. Annular constrictions and tenacular cells are absent. Cells with numerous discoid chloroplasts, each with single pyrenoid covered with a starch sheath and bisected by traversing thylakoids. Cell division in the rhizoids is by centripetal invagination.

Reproduction is apparently unknown. Life histories are presumed to be similar to other algae of the Siphonocladales.

**REMARKS.** *Valoniopsis* can sometimes be confused with *Cladophoropsis*, but *Valoniopsis* has lenticular

cells and septa at branches, whereas *Cladophoropsis* has no lenticular cells and mostly nonseptate (occasionally septate) branches. The distinction between *Valoniopsis* and some species of *Valonia* is less certain, and the validity of their generic separation is debatable (Abbott, 1986; Kraft, 2000; Abbott and Huisman, 2004). Biochemically, both genera produce similar amino and fatty acids (Sivalingam, 1989).

There are only two known species of *Valoniopsis*, and both occur in the northern Gulf of California. One is an endemic species in the Gulf of California, and the other is a widespread tropical-subtropical species.

#### KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *VALONIOPSIS* OF THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Lateral branches of the siphons, mostly 300–400 µm in diameter, and constricted at branch junctions . . . . . *V. hancockii*  
 1b. Lateral branches of the siphons, mostly 450–1000 µm in diameter, and not constricted at branch junctions . . . . .  
 . . . . . *V. pachynema*

#### *Valoniopsis hancockii* E. Y. Dawson

FIGURE 36A

*Valoniopsis hancockii* E. Y. Dawson, 1944:207, pl. 31: fig. 9; Dawson, 1961b:379; Abbott, 1986:164; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; González-González et al., 1996:140; Pedroche et al., 2005:56; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:202.

Algae green, usually cushionlike, of small entangled masses of cylindrical, coenocytic siphons (filaments), with only occasional septa, mostly at branches. Prostrate siphons very crooked, 125–250 µm in diameter; ascending siphons straighter, 300–400 µm in diameter, with infrequent short lateral branches of about the same diameter that are sharply constricted at their base; apices broadly rounded.

**HABITAT.** On sand and rocky shores, low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda, Islas de la Cintura, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** A northern Gulf endemic, *Valoniopsis hancockii* (currently known only from the type collection) is distinguished by siphons that only occasionally have septa and has basal constrictions of the branch siphons (filaments) (Dawson, 1944; Abbott, 1986). Morphological and molecular studies on further collections of *V. hancockii*, particularly from the type locality, are necessary before this taxon can be properly understood.

#### *Valoniopsis pachynema* (G. Martens) Børgesen

FIGURE 36B,C

*Bryopsis pachynema* G. Martens, 1868:24, pl. 4: fig. 2.  
*Valoniopsis pachynema* (G. Martens) Børgesen, 1934:10, figs. 1, 2; Dawson, 1944:206; Dawson, 1949:234, 238; Dawson, 1951:54; Dawson, 1954e:324; Issac, 1957:85, pl. 28: figs. 6, 7; Papenfuss and Egerod, 1957:84; Dawson, 1959a:6, 12; Dawson, 1961b:379; Dawson, 1966a:6; Littler and Littler, 1981:151: tbl. 3, 152: fig. 4; Stewart, 1982:54; Littler and Littler, 1984:22; Abbott, 1986:163; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; González-González et al., 1996:291; La Claire et al., 1997:831; Yoshida, 1998:51; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:22; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:133; Kraft, 2000:580, fig. 27C,D; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:93, fig. 32A; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:48, 58; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:202.

*Valonia pachynema* (G. Martens) Weber-van Bosse, 1913:61.

*Cladophoropsis robusta* sensu Taylor, 1945:51 [see Dawson, 1959a:12] [non *Cladophoropsis robusta* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924b:714, which is *Phyllocladon robustum* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Leliaert et Wysor in Leliaert et al., 2008:10].

Algae dark green, forming dense cushionlike clumps, up to 3 cm high and to 7 cm in diameter, irregularly branched near segment apices with 1 or more,



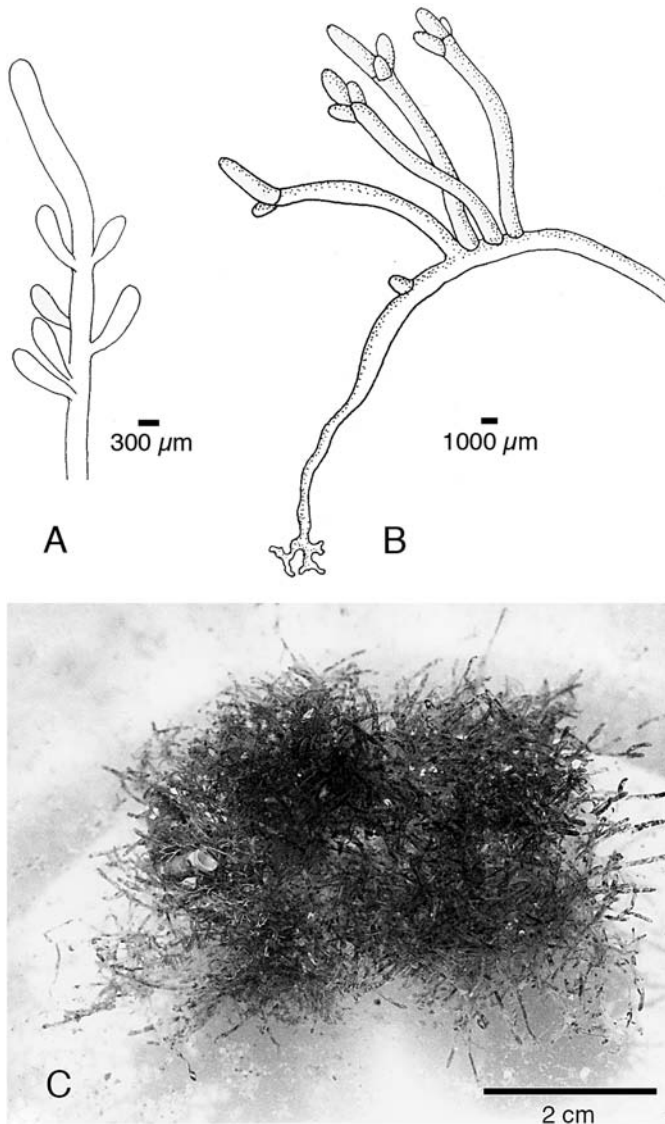


FIGURE 36. Species of *Valoniopsis*. A. *Valoniopsis hancockii*: Portion of type showing short branches with constrictions at their base (drawing of type specimen, EYD-[1940]-215, after Dawson, 1944: pl. 31, fig. 9). B. *Valoniopsis pachynema*: Portion showing branching and a branch bending downward with tip attaching to substratum by means of haptera (after Børgesen, 1934: pl. 13, fig. 1f). C. *Valoniopsis pachynema*: Clump of branched, cylindrical, siphonlike segments (photo of live specimen from Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Mexico).

usually curved, branchlets, and attached below by rhizoids. Siphons coenocytic, cylindrical, (300–)450–1000  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, interlaced and ascending. Branches with basal septa (lenticular crosswall); younger branches erect, older branches repent.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, occasionally entwined with other algae of turf communities; high to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Bahía Agua Verde; Isla Espíritu Santo to Bahía de La Paz. Pacific coast: Velero Point (south Bahía Sebastián Vizcaíno) and Punta Malarrimo, Baja California Sur; Isla Isabel, Nayarit; Hawaiian Islands; China; Japan.

**SYNTYPE LOCALITIES.** Benkulen and Pulau Tikus, near Bengkulu, Sumatra, Indonesia (*vide* Silva et al., 1996a).

**REMARKS.** Crystalline cell inclusions, considered to be of systematic value, have been reported in *Valoniopsis pachynema* from several locales in the Indian Ocean (Leliaert and Coppejans, 2004).

## BRYOPSIDOPHYCEAE

Bryopsidophyceae Bessey, 1907:287.

Algae of this class are almost all exclusively marine and vary from relatively simple forms to structurally complex forms that are siphonous or tubular and coenocytic (i.e., lack cell walls and are multinucleate), with cytoplasm also containing numerous fusiform or ellipsoidal chloroplasts and a large central vacuole. Many are homoplastidic, with only chloroplasts that may contain or lack pyrenoids; others are heteroplastidic, with both chloroplasts and amyloplasts (colorless starch storage plastids). Cytoplasmic streaming occurs in the siphons, with organelles moving with the cytoplasm. Accessory pigments are siphonoxanthin and siphonein. Cell wall constituents are mannan, xylan, and glucan (cellulose) in varying proportions; glucan is not in the crystalline form as found in members of the class Chlorophyceae Wille ex Warming (1884).

Reproduction is by biflagellate, quadriflagellate, or multiflagellate zoospores. In species that produce biflagella or quadriflagella, the flagella are in eleven and five o'clock positions, with overlapping basal bodies. Other members have stephanokont zoospores, i.e., multiple flagella arranged in whorls at the cell's anterior end. Sexual reproduction is anisogamous.

The class is usually considered to have a single order, Bryopsidales (e.g., Silva et al., 1996a; Abbott and Huisman, 2004; herein). However, some phycologists consider the class to contain two orders and include the Halimedales C. van den Hoek, D. G. Mann et H. M. Jahns (1995).

## BRYOPSIDALES

Bryopsidales J. H. Schaffner, 1922:133.

Codiales Setchell, 1929:584.  
 Caulerpales J. Feldmann, 1946:753.  
 Siphonales Warming, 1884:33, as "Siphoneae."

Algae are variable in shape and size, ranging from simple (unbranched) to branched and to complex systems of branching tubular siphons or filaments. Some form globose vesicles; others are of filaments or siphons that are freely branched or formed into thalli with distinctive morphologies. Most are attached by prostrate rhizoids. Transverse septa are generally lacking in vegetative portions but may be present at the base of reproductive sporangia or gametangia. Cells are coenocytic with numerous nuclei and chloroplasts that lack or contain pyrenoids. In some, the vegetative portion of the thallus is traversed by a system of internal strands of cell wall material (trabeculae) that form an elaborate network, thought to strengthen the outer siphon walls. All members possess two distinctive xanthophylls, siphonein and siphonoxanthein, which are not found in other members of the Chlorophyta.

Some reproduce vegetatively by rhizome-like structures, fragmentation, or propagules. Sporophytic repro-

duction is by mult flagellate zoospores or aplanospores, usually developed within morphologically differentiated sporangia. Sexual reproduction is isogamous, anisogamous, or oogamous, with gametangia producing biflagellate gametes.

**REMARKS.** Although the Bryopsidales is the more widely accepted name for this order (e.g., Silva et al., 1996a; Abbott and Huisman, 2004), the name Caulerpales has also been recently used (Graham and Wilcox, 1999; Lee, 1999). Members of this very large order are widespread in distribution and are particularly abundant in tropical to subtropical regions.

Phylogenetic analyses of the Bryopsidales suggested that the suborders Bryopsidineae Hillis-Colinvaux (1984) and Halimedineae Hillis-Colinvaux (1984) are distinct monophyletic lineages (Lam and Zechman, 2006). Family-level monophyly was supported for the Bryopsidaceae, Derbesiaceae and Codiaceae (Bryopsidineae), and the Caulerpaceae and Halimedaceae (Halimedineae), but not for the Udoteaceae (Lam and Zechman, 2006).

Five families are represented in the northern Gulf of California.

**KEY TO THE FAMILIES OF BRYOPSIDALES IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA**

- 1a. Algae differentiated into three distinct portions: an erect, cylindrical to frondose upper portion; arising from prostrate, stolonlike runners; and attached by rhizoids at various points; not calcified . . . . . **Caulerpaceae**
- 1b. Algae of various simple to structurally complex forms: filamentous or siphonous or vesiculate; not calcified or calcified. . . . . 2
- 2a. Algae of coenocytic filaments, tubular cells or siphons or vesicles; not structurally complex; not calcified . . . . . 3
- 2b. Algae multiaxial, of coenocytic filaments formed into complex thalli that are firm or spongy; calcified or not calcified . . . . . 4
- 3a. Macrothalli filamentous, of one or more percurrent or non-percurrent axes with lateral branches; gametophytes and sporophytes isomorphic in some; others heteromorphic with filamentous macro-gametophytes, and micro-sporophytes of creeping prostrate filaments (protonema) . . . . . **Bryopsidaceae**
- 3b. Heteromorphic macrothalli; sporophytes and gametophytes very different looking: sporophytes filamentous, without a percurrent axis, subdichotomously to irregularly branched; gametophytes a single vesicle . . . . . **Derbesiaceae**
- 4a. Thalli not calcified; spongy; prostrate and cushionlike or erect, terete to flattened axes and branches; without segments . . . . . **Codiaceae**
- 4b. Thalli of calcified cylindrical to flattened segments that alternate with narrow, flexible noncalcified joints . . . . . **Halimedaceae**

**BRYOPSIDINEAE**

Bryopsidineae Hillis-Colvinaux, 1984:287.

The suborder Bryopsidineae is characterized by homoplasty, the absence of a concentric lamellar system, and cell walls that are composed primarily of the polysaccharides, either mannan, or xylan and cellulose. Allelochemicals (secondary natural products) are generally absent. Reproduction is non-holocarpic. Reproductive structures usually have a septum (plug) at their base.

**REMARKS.** Species of the Bryopsidineae are tropical to subboreal in distribution. The suborder is represented by three families, Bryopsidaceae, Derbesiaceae, and Codiaceae, in the northern Gulf of California.

**BRYOPSIDACEAE**

Bryopsidaceae Bory de Saint-Vincent, 1829:203

Algae are coenocytic, siphonous filaments that are simple or sparsely to densely branched and are attached to

the substratum by a rhizoidal holdfast. Filamentous thalli lack internal trabeculae, may be with or without a distinct percurrent axis, and are branched pinnately, radially, or irregularly from a few to several orders. The main component of siphon walls is glucan (cellulose) and xylan in the gametophytes, while in the sporophytes it is mannan.

Reproduction can be by fragmentation, regeneration from extruded protoplasts, or parthenogenesis. Life histories, where known, generally involve filamentous phases: (1) an alternation of gametophytic *Bryopsis* and a sporophytic microthallus of creeping prostrate filaments (protonema), (2) an alternation of gametophytic “*Bryopsis*-like” phase with a filamentous *Derbesia* phase (i.e., *Bryopsidella* Feldmann ex H. Rietema, 1975), or (3) zygotes produced by *Bryopsis* that develop directly into another gametophyte. Stephanokont zoospores (with a ring or whorl of several flagella) are produced in differentiated sporangia with a basal septum in filamentous sporophytes. A few of the species are known to produce aplanospores.

Sexual reproduction is non-holocarpic. Gametophytic thalli can be either monoecious or dioecious. Biflagellate anisogametes are produced in the ultimate branchlets segregated from the rest of the filamentous thallus by a basal membrane.

One genus of the family, *Bryopsis*, is represented in the northern Gulf of California.

***Bryopsis* J. V. Lamouroux**

*Bryopsis* J. V. Lamouroux, 1809d:333.

Algae are erect, composed of a cylindrical, coenocytic, percurrent axial filament that is oppositely or more or less radially or irregularly branched, often appearing

featherlike, and attached below by rhizoids. Growth is indeterminate. Filaments are without septa and contain numerous disc-shaped chloroplasts, each containing 1 pyrenoid. Siphon walls of presumed sporophytes contain mannan, while those of gametophytes reportedly contain cellulose and xylan.

Asexual reproduction is by fragmentation, aplanospores, and regeneration from extruded protoplasts. Life histories generally involve an alternation of filamentous phases, with a feather-like or plumose gametophyte and either a sporophytic microthallus of creeping filaments (protonema) or an erect filamentous *Derbesia*-like phase. In some of the species cultured, filamentous or protonema sporophytes produced stephanokont zoospores that either developed into gametophytes or into a microthallus that produced anisogametes (Rietema, 1975; van den Hoek, 1981; Tanner, 1981). Sexual reproduction, with thalli being monoecious or dioecious, involves the tips of the ultimate branchlets that separate from the branch by formation of a basal septum, or plug, at maturity and develop into gametangia and produce biflagellate anisogametes.

**REMARKS.** The morphology of species of *Bryopsis* is so variable and sometimes overlapping (e.g., Womersley, 1984) that understanding the species limits will probably best be facilitated by molecular systematics. The Gulf of California species of *Bryopsis*, as well as those of the eastern Pacific, are in need of taxonomic, culture life history, molecular, and phylogenetic studies, such as the studies of Krellwitz et al. (2001).

One species, *B. muscosa* J. V. Lamouroux (1809b), has been reported in the southern Gulf by Dawson (1959a, 1961b).

Five other taxa, four species and one variety, are currently known in the northern Gulf of California.

**KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *BRYOPSIS* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA**

- 1a. Main axes radially branched (sometimes irregular) . . . . . *B. hypnoides*
- 1b. Main axes pinnately or oppositely branched in one plane or more or less in one plane (featherlike in appearance) . . . . 2
- 2a. Main axes with both determinate and longer indeterminate branchlets . . . . . *B. salvadoreana*
- 2b. Main axes with only determinate branchlets . . . . . 3
- 3a. Main axes over 400 µm in diameter (up to 1000 µm); lower portions without branches and upper portions with abundant, pinnately arranged branchlets . . . . . *B. corticulans*
- 3b. Main axes smaller in diameter, 200–400 µm; with frequent, occasional, or sparse branchlets limited to upper or terminal portions . . . . . 4
- 4a. Main axes over 250 µm in diameter, up to 400 µm in diameter; ultimate branchlets opposite along sides of branches in one plane . . . . . *B. pennata* var. *pennata*
- 4b. Main axes 210–250 µm in diameter; branchlets absent in lower portions; branchlets in upper portion usually sparse and more or less in one plane or partly radial . . . . . *B. pennata* var. *minor*

***Bryopsis corticulans* Setchell**

*Bryopsis corticulans* Setchell in Collins, Holden, and Setchell, 1899: Exsiccate No. 626; Collins, 1909b:404; Setchell and Gardner, 1903:230; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:160, pl. 15: figs. 4, 5, pl. 27; Smith, 1944:73, pl. 9: fig.3; Dawson, 1951:52; Dawson, 1961b:381; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:111, fig. 70; Deviny, 1978:358; Pedroche and González-González, 1981:64; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Bertsch, 1983:116; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:419; Stewart, 1991:33; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:481; González-González et al., 1996:126; Aguilar-Ramírez et al., 1998:511; Pedroche et al., 2005:57.

Algae tufted, up to 5–10(–20) cm tall; main axes 400–1000 µm in diameter; lower portions without branches, upper portions abundantly pinnately branched. Branches with downward growing rhizoids from their base; ultimate branchlets, 150–300 µm in diameter, abruptly constricted at base.

**HABITAT.** On rocks; mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Bahía Kino. Pacific coast: southern British Columbia to Islas San Benito, Baja California; Jalisco.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Pacific Grove, Monterey County, California (Smith, 1944).

**REMARKS.** *Bryopsis corticulans* is only known in the Gulf of California from the report of Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid (1986). The description is based on Abbott and Hollenberg (1976). The species complex, comprising three morphologically similar taxa, *B. corticulans*, *B. hypnoides*, and *B. plumosa* (Hudson) C. Agardh (1822), needs to be studied to clarify the taxonomic status and relationship of these species to each other and to the Gulf *B. corticulans*.

***Bryopsis hypnoides* J. V. Lamouroux**

*Bryopsis hypnoides* J. V. Lamouroux, 1809d:333; Lamouroux, 1809b:135, pl. 1; fig. 2a,b; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:159; Smith, 1944:73, pl. 9: fig. 2; Taylor, 1945:60 [with doubt]; Dawson, 1949:244; Dawson, 1961b:381; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:113, fig. 71; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:339; Pedroche and González-González, 1981:64; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Bertsch, 1983:116, 121; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:44; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruíz, 1986:77; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:420; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:39; Dreckmann et al., 1990:24, pl. 2: fig. 2; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:27;

Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:31; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1992:24; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992:25; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:52; González-González, 1993:443; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:481; R. Aguilar-Rosas and M. Aguilar-Rosas, 1994:517; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994a:52; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:45; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:103, 112; González-González et al., 1996:275, 365; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1996:64, 67, 76, 88, pl. 28: figs. 126–128; Bucio-Pacheco and Dreckmann, 1998:43; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998:25; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1998:168; Yoshida, 1998:139; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:133, 134, 136, 137; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:70; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:96, fig. 33A; Wysor, 2004:219; Pedroche et al., 2005:58; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:59; Dreckmann et al., 2006:154.

Algae tufted, up to 2–4 cm tall; main axes 200–250(–400) µm in diameter, branching often profuse, usually radial or sometimes irregular; branches become progressively narrower and smaller distally; ultimate branchlets up to 50 µm in diameter and up to 5 mm long, abruptly constricted at the base, and gradually tapered at upper end. Rhizoids grow downward from base of primary branches.

**HABITAT.** On rocks or shells; epiphytic on *Gelidium pusillum* (L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000); mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Guaymas; Bahía Concepción to Cabo Pulmo. Pacific coast: British Columbia to Chiapas; Panama; Chile; Hawaiian Islands; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Near Cette, Mediterranean coast of France.

**REMARKS.** Studies of *Bryopsis hypnoides* from California (Burr and West, 1970) and Europe (Rietema, 1975) showed them to be monoecious, whereas those of the northeastern United States were dioecious (Urban, 1969). *Bryopsis hypnoides* is part of a species complex that includes *B. corticulans* and *B. plumosa*; Gulf specimens need to be cultured and morphologically and molecularly analyzed in comparisons with type locality material of all three of these species to elucidate their taxonomy (see also Remarks under *B. corticulans*).

***Bryopsis pennata* J. V. Lamouroux var. *pennata***

FIGURE 37

*Bryopsis pennata* J. V. Lamouroux, 1809d:333, pl. 3, fig. 1 a,b; Egerod, 1952:370, fig.7; Dawson, 1957b:9;

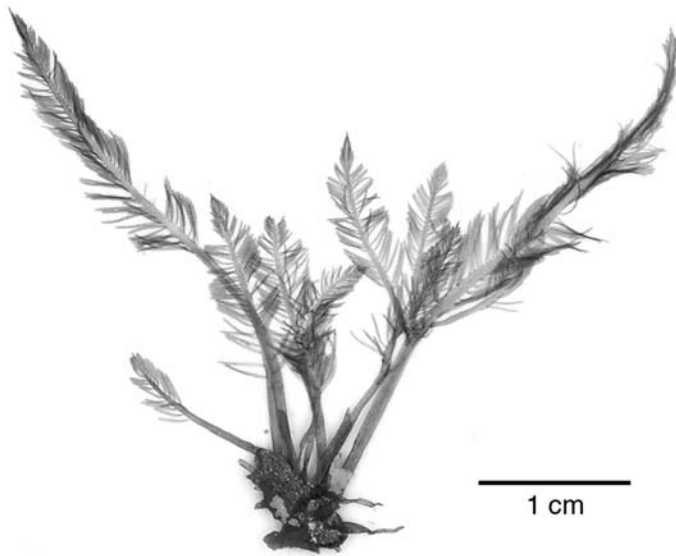


FIGURE 37. *Bryopsis pennata*: Frond with distichous branching pattern giving a featherlike appearance (EYD-27451).

Dawson, 1959a:6, 8, 12, 14; Dawson, 1961b:381; Dawson, 1961c:404, pl. 4: fig.4; Dawson, 1966a:7; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:339; González-González, 1993:443; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:481; González-González et al., 1996:275; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998:25, 27; Mendoza-González et al., 1999:61; León-Tejera and González-González, 2000:327; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:98, fig. 33B; López et al., 2004:10; Wysor, 2004:219; Pedroche et al., 2005:58; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:48, 59; Dreckmann et al., 2006:154.

*Bryopsis plumosa* var. *pennata* (J. V. Lamouroux) Børgesen, 1911:147; Dawson, 1944:212; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:31; León-Tejera and González-González, 1993:497; González-González et al., 1996:127.

Algae of 1 or more erect filaments, up to 5 cm tall; main axes and branches with more or less opposite branchlets of similar length in upper portions and in one plane (giving a lanceolate to oblong featherlike appearance); axes sometimes only sparsely branched; arising from a rhizoidal holdfast. Main axis 250–400  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; branchlets 40–75(–150)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter and up to 2.0 mm long.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, usually in shaded areas, crevices, and tide pools; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Cabeza Ballena. Pacific coast: Nayarit;

Guerrero to Oaxaca; Costa Rica; El Salvador; Panama; Chile; Hawaiian Islands.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Antilles, West Indies.

### ***Bryopsis pennata* var. *minor* J. Agardh**

*Bryopsis pennata* var. *minor* J. Agardh, 1887:23; Silva et al., 1996a: 807; Bucio-Pacheco and Dreckmann, 1998:43; López et al., 2000:338; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:70; Pedroche et al., 2005:59; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:202.

*Bryopsis pennatula* J. Agardh, 1847:6; Kützing, 1856:27, pl. 76: fig. 2; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:158; Taylor, 1945:61; Dawson, 1949:250, 251; Dawson, 1959a:12; Dawson, 1961b:381; Smith, 1969:624; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:126; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:113, fig. 72; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Bertsch, 1983:116, 121; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:140; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1985:125; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:44; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruíz, 1986:77; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:420; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:38; Dreckmann et al., 1990:24, 37; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:27; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:31; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1992:24; León-Tejera et al., 1993:199, 204; González-González, 1993:443; Stout and Dreckmann, 1993:5; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:443; R. Aguilar-Rosas and M. Aguilar-Rosas, 1994:517; González-González et al., 1996:127; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:45; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:112; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1996:77, 88, pl. 2: figs. 129–131; Anaya-Reyna and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 1996:862; Silva et al., 1996a:807; Galindo-Villegas et al., 1997:4; Aguila-Ramírez et al., 1998:511; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:22; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146; López et al., 2000:340; Carballo et al., 2002:753; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:146; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:101; Lam and Zechman, 2006:671; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:3, 7.

Algae of erect, cylindrical main axes, 210–250  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, up to 3 cm tall; branchlets absent in lower portions; branchlets in upper portion sparse (often with only a few uppermost branchlets near the terminal portion) and more or less distichously or partially radially arranged, short, less than 1 mm long, 20–30  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, strongly constricted at base, with rounded apices.

**HABITAT.** On rocks and in tide pools; high to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Punta Cheuca, Sonora; Bahía de La Paz to Cabo Pulmo, Baja California Sur; Mazatlán, Sinaloa. Pacific coast: central California to Baja California; Nayarit to Chiapas; Galápagos Islands.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** San Agustín, Oaxaca, Pacific Mexico (Setchell and Gardner [1920b:159] noted “St. Augustin” as cited by Agardh (1847) was probably in the vicinity of Pochutla and Punta de Huatulco, Oaxaca [see also Liebmann, 1869:viii]).

**REMARKS.** Agardh (1887), in describing *Bryopsis pennata* var. *minor*, cited *B. pennatula* J. Agardh (1847) in the protologue, thus apparently reducing *B. pennatula* to a variety of *B. pennata*. Therefore, as noted by Silva et al. (1996a), these two taxon names have the same type, with *B. pennatula* being a synonym of *B. pennata* var. *minor*.

Specimens identified as “*B. pennatula*” from the Gulf of California and Pacific Mexico should be reexamined to verify they belong here.

### ***Bryopsis salvadoreana* E. Y. Dawson**

*Bryopsis salvadoreana* E. Y. Dawson, 1961c:405, pl. 5: fig. 2, pl. 6; Dawson, 1962b:228; Wysor, 2004:221, figs. 11, 12.

Algae of erect dense tufts, (2–)3–5 cm tall; cylindrical main axes, 200–400 µm in diameter; with both determinate and indeterminate branchlets more or less distichously arranged; determinate branchlets constricted at base; indeterminate branchlets irregularly distichous, becoming long, 3–12 mm, and may further divide, upper portion sometimes with one or more divisions (some appearing lobed), apices rounded; attached by a dense basal mass of entangled rhizoids.

**HABITAT.** On boulders; intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Isla Raza (Las Islas de la Cintura). Pacific coast: Punta Chiriquí and Isla Meanguera, El Salvador; Panama.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Arrecife de Sacate, off Punta Chiriquí, Golfo de Fonseca, El Salvador.

**REMARKS.** Gulf of California specimens from Isla Raza (EYD-26103; US Alg. Coll.-37352) are tentatively referred to *Bryopsis salvadoreana*. Although they are similar to the type specimen of *B. salvadoreana* (EYD-21758; US Alg. Coll.-5162), the indeterminate branchlets of the Gulf material are not as abundant or apparently as well developed, and most are not as long and lack the fully developed upper divisions of the type. More Gulf collections and type locality material are needed for further

study, along with molecular analyses, to test their taxonomic and phylogenetic status.

## **DERBESACEAE**

Derbesiaceae Hauck, 1884:421.

Halicystaceae G. M. Smith, 1930:227, as “Halicystidaceae”; Smith, 1944:69; Papenfuss, 1955:129.

Algae of this family have two morphologically very different life history phases: a filamentous, siphonous sporophyte and vesiculate gametophytes. Sporangia with a basal septum are borne laterally on the sporophyte filaments and produce zoospores with numerous flagella (stephanokontic). Gametangia are formed in isolated portions of the cytoplasm inside the gametophytic vesicles and produce biflagellate anisogametes.

**REMARKS.** Although life histories for many species, including the generitype, involve an alternation of heteromorphic forms, variations in life histories of some species of *Derbesia* have also been reported: (1) macrogametes that develop new sporophytes by parthenogenesis, (2) development of vesicular phase directly from sporangia without the production of zoospores, (3) sporophytes that grow from zoospores, and (4) a haploid gametophyte that alternates with heterokaryotic sporophyte (the latter characterized by the presence of haploid nuclei from the two parents, e.g., *D. tenuissima* (Moris et De Notaris) P. Crouan et H. Crouan, 1867). Under these circumstances, nuclear fusion occurs in young sporangia shortly before meiosis and cleavage of zoospores.

One genus is known in the northern Gulf of California. A vesiculate “*Halicystis*-phase” is also reported in the northern Gulf. Its life history is unknown, but it may be involved with a *Derbesia* or possibly another genus (see below for various reported life histories).

### ***Derbesia* Solier**

*Derbesia* Solier, 1846:452; Solier, 1847:157.

*Halicystis* Areschoug, 1850:446.

Thalli are of two morphologically different forms. The sporophyte is composed of siphonous cylindrical filaments that are usually erect, and loosely unilaterally, irregularly or occasionally dichotomously branched, and attached by a prostrate system of irregularly branched rhizoidal filaments or lobed haptera. Although usually absent, simple or compound transverse septa sometimes develop in the siphonous filaments, mostly at base of branches. The

gametophytes are spherical to pyriform single-cell vesicles, “*Halicystis*-phase.” Both the filaments and vesicles are multinucleate and contain numerous disc-shaped or spindle-shaped small chloroplasts, which in some species have one to three pyrenoids, while other species are without pyrenoids.

Asexual reproduction can occur by fragmentation and proliferation of extruded protoplasts. The diploid, filamentous sporophyte, *Derbesia*-phase, produces stephanokont zoospores in modified lateral sporangia separated from the vegetative filament by a septum (or plug) or a double septum near their bases. A haploid vesicular gametophyte, *Halicystis*-phase, has been shown in the life histories for some species of *Derbesia*. A gametangium appearing as a transverse band within the vesicle develops biflagellate anisogametes that are released forcibly through papillae on the vesicle wall.

**REMARKS.** Filamentous species of *Derbesia* occur in the intertidal and down to 23 m depths of tropical to boreal seas worldwide. There are at least three types

of life histories known to involve species of *Derbesia*. Culture studies have shown life histories with a sporophytic filamentous *Derbesia*-phase and a gametophytic vesicular *Halicystis*-phase (Hollenberg, 1935, 1936; Kornmann, 1938; Drew, 1955; Page, 1970; Rietema, 1975). Sporophytic “*Derbesia*-like” phases have also been linked to the gametophytes of some species of *Bryopsis* (Hüstede, 1964; Rietema, 1975), and apparent sporangia of a New England species of *Derbesia* developed directly into vesicular gametophytes without producing any zoospores (Sears and Wilce, 1970).

Two species and one unidentified species are reported in the southern Gulf: *Derbesia turbinata* M. Howe et Hoyt (1916) by Dawson (1966b), *D. hollenbergii* W. R. Taylor (1945) by Dawson (1959a), and “*Derbesia* sp.” by Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones (1991). The Gulf species of *Derbesia* need to be investigated morphologically, with culture studies and DNA analyses.

One species and one unidentified species of filamentous *Derbesia* are reported in the northern Gulf of California.

**KEY TO THE DIFFERENT LIFE HISTORY PHASES OF *DERBESIA* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA**

- 1a. Sporophyte (*Derbesia*): cylindrical, coenocytic filaments without a distinct percurrent axis; branched sparsely to moderately, predominately unilateral or sometimes irregular . . . . . 2
- 1b. Gametophyte: a spherical vesicle (a single large cell), up to 15 mm in diameter, above a very short stalk . . . . . *Halicystis*-phase
- 2a. Filaments branched mostly unilaterally; 50–65 µm in diameter . . . . . *Derbesia marina*
- 2b. Filaments sparsely and irregularly branched; 40–70 µm in diameter . . . . . *Derbesia* sp. A

***Derbesia marina* (Lyngbye) Solier**

FIGURE 38

*Vaucheria marina* Lyngbye, 1819:79, pl. 22A (sporophyte). *Derbesia marina* (Lyngbye) Solier, 1846:453; Solier 1847:157; Collins, 1909b:407, pl. 17: fig. 152; Setchell and Gardner, 1920:164, pl. 15: fig. 3; Smith, 1944:71, pl. 8: fig. 4; Dawson, 1956:34, fig. 15; Dawson, 1961b:380; Dawson, 1962c:278; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:115, fig. 73; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:336; Devanny, 1978:538; Kobara and Chihara, 1980:214, figs. 8–12; Kobara and Chihara, 1981:2, figs. 1–3, 7–20; Pedroche and González-González, 1981:64; Lewbel et al., 1981:165; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:44; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:22; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruíz, 1986:77; Dreckmann et al., 1990:26, 37;

Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:24, 27; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992:25; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1993:9–11; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:52; Stout and Dreckmann, 1993:5; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994a:57; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:45; León-Tejera and González-González, 1994:492; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:113; González-González et al., 1996:293; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1996:76, 88, pl. 28: figs. 123–125; Bucio-Pacheco and Dreckmann, 1998:43; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998:25; Yoshida, 1998:144, fig. 1-13: E–G; Servière-Zaragoza et al., 1998:169; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:22; López et al., 2000:339; Wysor, 2004:223; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:101; Pedroche et al., 2005:60; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:59; Dreckmann et al., 2006:154.

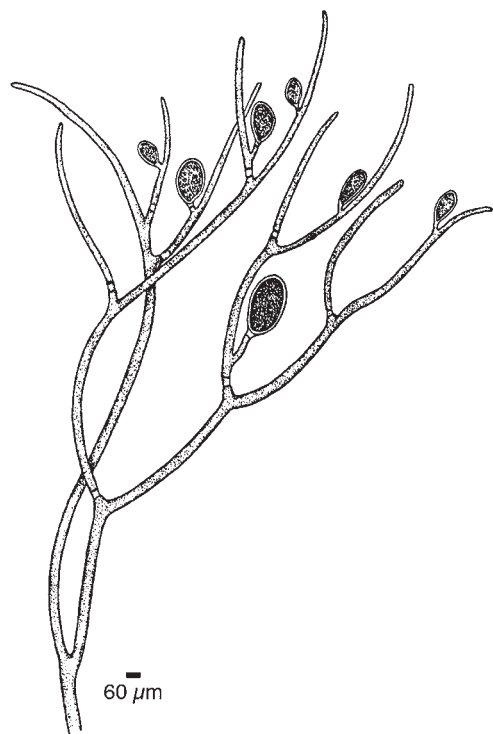


FIGURE 38. *Derbesia marina*: Sporophyte: Filaments bearing lateral sporangia, each with a single basal septum (after Collins, 1909b: pl. 17, fig. 152).

*Derbesia vaucheriaeformis* sensu Chávez B., 1972:268 [non *Derbesia vaucheriaeformis* (Harvey) J. Agardh, 1887:34].

*Gastroidium ovale* Lyngbye, 1819:72, pl. 18: fig. B (gametophyte).

*Halicystis ovalis* (Lyngbye) Areschoug, 1850:447; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:155, pl. 14: fig. 3; Hollenberg, 1935:782, pls.1–4; Smith, 1944:70, pl. 9: fig. 1; Dawson et al., 1960a:10, 14, pl. 1: fig. 5; Dawson et al., 1960b:5, 6, 8, 11, 13; Dawson, 1961b:380; Scagel, 1966:116, pl. 2: figs. A–F; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:115, fig. 75; Kobara and Chihara, 1980:214, figs. 1–7, 13; Lewbel et al., 1981:165; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Bertsch, 1983:116, 122; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1990:123; Stewart, 1991:115; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1992:24; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:52; González-González et al., 1996:137; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:133; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:202.

Sporophytes small filamentous tufts, up to 15 mm tall; filaments of long, cylindrical coenocytic cells, 50–65  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; branching mostly unilateral, with subacute

apices; attached by irregularly branched prostrate filaments. Chloroplasts without pyrenoids. Sporangia formed on ultimate branchlets, borne on a short pedicel with a crosswall at apex of pedicel; ovoid to pyriform, 150–200  $\mu\text{m}$  long and 100–160  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; producing zoospores.

Gametophytes (*Halicystis*-phase of *Derbesia marina*) erect, spherical vesicles, up to 15 mm in diameter; above a very short stalk attached to calcareous substratum by basal rhizoids that often penetrate it. Vesicle with a large vacuole, and peripheral cytoplasm containing multiple nuclei and numerous chloroplasts without pyrenoids. Vegetative reproduction by regeneration of new vesicles from apparently perennial attachment rhizoids. Sexual reproduction by biflagellate anisogametes, produced in separate gametophytic vesicles. Male vesicles develop slender gametes in brownish-green fertile areas of the cytoplasm. Female vesicles develop larger and rounder gametes in greenish-black fertile areas. Gametes forcibly released through 1 or more papillae (appearing as whitish dots) on the vesicle wall.

REMARKS. Culture life history studies have linked gametangial *Halicystis* to sporophytic *Derbesia* from the Pacific coast of North America (Hollenberg, 1935, 1936; Scagel, 1966), Japan (Kobara and Chihara, 1980, 1981), Europe (Kornmann, 1938; Feldmann, 1950; Eckhardt et al., 1986), and Bermuda (Page, 1970). Thus, species of *Halicystis* are usually referred to as the “*Halicystis*-phase of *Derbesia*.”

HABITAT. On rocks, epiphytic on crustose corallines; intertidal.

DISTRIBUTION. Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Bahía Concepción; Bahía del Rincón to San Jose del Cabo; Matzatlán, Sinaloa. Pacific coast: Alaska to Baja California; Nayarit to Chiapas; Panama; Japan.

TYPE LOCALITY. Kivig, Strømø, Faeroe Islands, Denmark.

### ***Derbesia* sp. A**

*Derbesia* sp. of Dawson, 1966a:7; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:48.

Algae forming small, filamentous tufts, up to 10 mm long, of filaments sparsely and irregularly branched, without a percurrent axis, and 40–70  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Siphonous cells with numerous chloroplasts that lack pyrenoids.

HABITAT. Growing on rocks or sometimes entangled on gorgonians; mid to low intertidal.

DISTRIBUTION. Gulf of California: Punta Pelicano, vicinity of Puerto Peñasco.

REMARKS. Although lacking a distinct main axis and reproductive structures, the material reported



as “*Derbesia* sp.” (Dawson, 1966a) somewhat resembles sparsely and irregularly branched forms of *Bryopsis pen-nata*. More collections, particularly fertile specimens, are needed to determine which species of filamentous *Derbesia* are present in the northern Gulf.

### ***Halicystis*-phase**

FIGURE 39A,B

“*Halicystis ovalis*” sensu Norris and Bucher, 1976:3, fig. 2.

Northern Gulf specimens: spherical vesicles, up to 10 mm in diameter, and dark emerald green. Vesicle above a very short stalk; lowermost portion of basal stalk attached to *Amphiroa* by rhizoidal growths.

**HABITAT.** Epiphytic on the articulated coralline, *Amphiroa*; low intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Isla Willard (Bahía San Luis Gonzaga) to Bahía Concepción.

**REMARKS.** Although similar in morphology to the Pacific coast *Halicystis ovalis*-phase, the northern Gulf material referred to as “*Halicystis*-phase” were epiphytic on the articulated coralline, *Amphiroa vanbosseae* (Norris and Bucher, 1976), whereas the Pacific coast *Halicystis ovalis*-phase of *Derbesia marina* (Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976; Scagel et al., 1989) and the Japanese *H. ovalis*-phase of *D. marina* and *H. parvula*-phase of *D. tenuissima*

(Kobara and Chihara, 1980) are only reported on crustose corallines.

The life history of Gulf of California *Halicystis*, or even if the vesicles are gametangial or sporophytic, is unknown. Thus far, known life histories that involve a “*Halicystis*” either have an alternate heteromorphic phase (which is either a *Derbesia* or an alternate that is another genus, i.e., not a *Derbesia*) or have a repeating life history of only *Halicystis*-forms (i.e., with no alternate phases). Therefore, Gulf of California *Halicystis*, including those of the southern Gulf (reported epiphytic on mangroves; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993, as “vesicular gametangium [of] *Derbesia marina*”), need to be tested for host specificity and need culture studies to elucidate their life history and reproductive condition (whether gametangial, as generally presumed, or sporophytic), and molecular analyses to determine their taxonomic status and phylogenetic relationships.

### **CODIACEAE**

Codiaceae Kützing, 1843:302, 308.

Thalli may be growing prostrate or erect, lack calcification, and are multiaxial, spongy, unbranched or branched, variable forms, that can be globose, cushion-like, cylindrical, compressed, flattened, or blade-like, and are attached by compacted masses of rhizoids. Internally the thalli are composed of branching, tubular, mostly

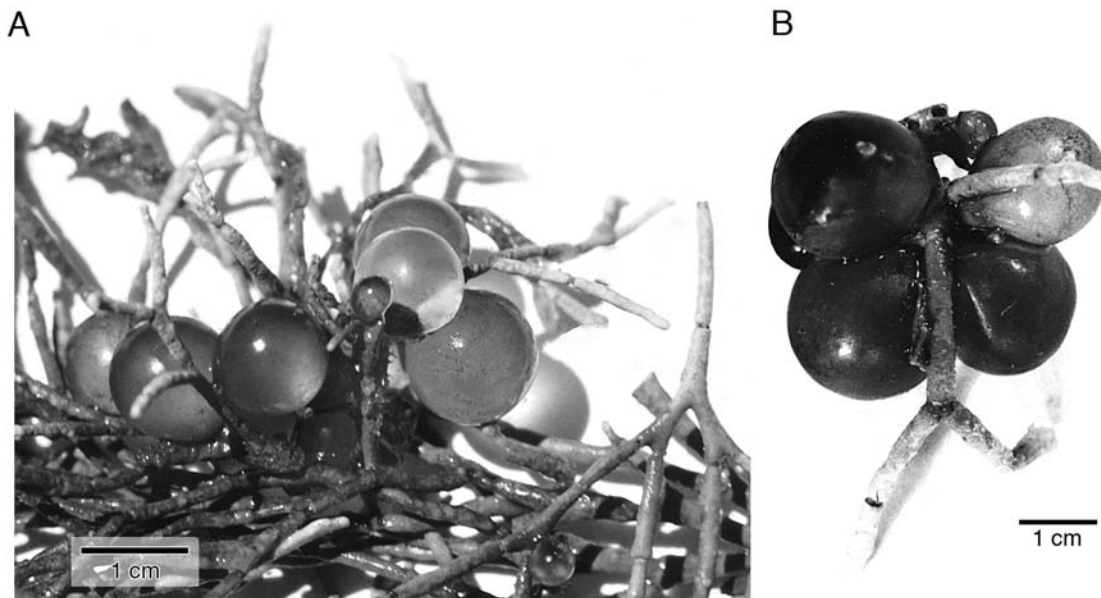


FIGURE 39. *Halicystis*-phase: A, B. Gametophytes: Globose, coenocytic thalli (JN-5732); epiphytic on the articulated coralline *Amphiroa*.

nonseptate, multinucleate filaments (siphons). Branching of the filaments (siphons) is mostly sympodial, with the outer branched filaments forming a cortical layer of utricles at the surface. Cells contain numerous small nuclei and discoid chloroplasts (without pyrenoids), and no amyloplasts, with cell walls containing mostly mannan. Accessory pigments include siphonoxanthin and siphonein.

Asexual reproduction is by fragmentation or by parthenogenesis in some. Sexual reproduction is by biflagellate anisogametes. Gametangia are developed laterally on the utricles and cut off by a basal septum.

The family consists of five genera, with the species-rich genus *Codium* represented in the northern Gulf of California.

### **Codium Stackhouse**

*Codium* Stackhouse, 1797:xvi, xxiv.

Algae are spongy, non-calcareous macrothalli of definite shapes, with species that are either prostrate or repent globose or pulvinate forms, or erect branching cylindrical, compressed, or complanate forms. Internally, the thalli are composed of branched filaments that are organized into a medulla of longitudinal, densely intertwined, colorless coenocytic filaments (medullary siphons) and an outer surface layer of inflated, cylindrical or clavate, photosynthetic utricles with an apical wall that is usually thickened and often ornamented in a characteristic pattern. Utricles are developed primarily by the enlargement of sympodial branches of medullary siphons and secondarily by budding or by production of additional utricle-forming medullary siphons from basal portion of existing utricles. Rhizoidal filaments (siphons), which grow into the medulla, are also produced from basal portion of the utricles. Colorless hairs are produced along the sides of the utricles, with a basal plug which remains as a prominent scar after the hair falls off.

Asexual reproduction is by parthenogenesis, fragmentation, or the cutting off of modified aborted gametangia. Species may be monoecious or dioecious. Gametangia are cylindrical or fusiform to ovate above a short pedicel with a basal plug and are borne laterally on the utricles. Biflagellate anisogametes are extruded in gelatinous masses upon rupture of the apices of the gametangia. Male gametes are very small, with one or two chloroplasts, and female gametes are much larger and have numerous chloroplasts. Life histories are not fully known. The zygote develops into an amorphous, prostrate vesicle that produces erect elongate vesicles; these, in turn, initiate primary utricle-producing siphons that eventually consolidate into a multiaxial thallus. Some species are known to have a filamentous derbesioid or vaucheroid (*Vaucheria*-like) stage in their life history (Fletcher et al., 1989; Yang et al., 1997).

**REMARKS.** *Codium* is a widespread genus with species occurring from the intertidal down to at least 70 m depths (Norris and Olsen, 1991). Although species are found in almost every sea (except the Arctic and Southern Ocean), the largest number of species of *Codium* are in subtropical to temperate regions.

Several species that were originally described from the Gulf of California (Setchell and Gardner, 1924a; Dawson, 1944) have been placed in synonymy with other species on the basis of comparative morphological studies (Pedroche et al., 2002). These species concepts need to be tested by molecular phylogenetic and morphological analyses. One species, *Codium picturatum* Pedroche et P. C. Silva (1996), described from Colima (Pacific Mexico), has also been reported from the southern Gulf, and includes records of "*C. setchellii*" (Pedroche et al., 2002, 2005; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005) (note "*C. setchellii*" of Dawson [1949] and Brusca and Thomson [1975] may also belong here).

Currently, there are three species known in the northern Gulf of California. Two of these are also known from the Pacific coast of Mexico, and one, *C. brandegeei*, is apparently a Gulf-endemic species.

#### KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *CODIUM* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Thalli usually very long, up to 85 cm tall; axes and branches mostly cylindrical, branches often flattened at dichotomies; very large utricles, most greater than 900  $\mu\text{m}$  in length . . . . . *C. amplivesiculatum*
- 1b. Thalli shorter in overall length; axes and branches variable, of three forms: cylindrical throughout or cylindrical but compressed at the dichotomies or compressed but with cylindrical ultimate branches; utricles less than 900  $\mu\text{m}$  (mostly 550–850  $\mu\text{m}$  long) . . . . . 2
- 2a. Utricles claviform, constricted below; utricle apices conical, hyaline, and very thick (up to 85  $\mu\text{m}$  thick) . . . . . *C. brandegeei*
- 2b. Utricles mostly cylindrical (if constricted, only slightly); utricle apices truncate or rounded (not conical), hyaline, and thinner (up to 46  $\mu\text{m}$  thick) . . . . . *C. simulans*

***Codium amplivesiculatum***  
**Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURES 40, 41A,B

- Codium amplivesiculatum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:709, pl. 15: figs. 28, 29, pl. 35; Dawson, 1944:217; Dawson, 1959a:7, 16; Dawson, 1961b:381; Norris, 1973:4, 17; Norris, 1985:208; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; González-González et al., 1996:132; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; Núñez-López et al., 1998:39; Pedroche et al., 2002:40, figs. 42–53; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2005b:36; Pedroche et al., 2005:69; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:7; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:202; Riosmena-Rodríguez and Holguín-Acosta, 2008:1, figs. 1–12.
- Codium decorticatum* sensu Howe, 1911:494; Setchell and Gardner, 1930:130; Taylor, 1939:9; Huerta-M, 1978:339; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992:25 [in part; see Pedroche et al., 2005:72]; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:52 [with a query]; González-González et al., 1996:369 [Gulf specimens only]; Silva et al., 1996b:235 [non *Codium decorticatum* (Woodward) M. Howe, 1911:494].
- Codium dichotomum* sensu Taylor, 1945:68; Dawson, 1949:229 [in part; see Pedroche et al., 2002:40] [non *Codium dichotomum* (Hudson) S. F. Gray, 1821:293].
- Codium fernandezianum* sensu Taylor, 1945:71 [in part; see Pedroche et al., 2002:40] [non *Codium fernandezianum* Setchell, 1937a:592].
- Codium longiramosum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:710, pl. 15: fig. 27, pl. 37; Taylor, 1945:70 [in part]; Dawson, 1961b:382; Dawson, 1966b:55; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:140; González-González et al., 1996:134.
- Codium magnum* E. Y. Dawson, 1950f:298, fig. 1; Dawson, 1961b:382; Dawson, 1962c:278, 280; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:336; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:44; Ibarra-Obando and R. Aguilar-Rosas, 1985:96; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:22; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:36, 38–39; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:30; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994a:52; González-González et al., 1996:134; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:22; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:101.

Algae erect, mostly cylindrical, up to 85 cm tall (largest to 10 m in length; Pedroche et al., 2002); simple or branched dichotomously to subdichotomously (or

sometimes trichotomously); branches usually flattened at dichotomies; attached below by a spongy mass of rhizoidal filaments. Lower branches (6–)13–20 mm in diameter, often with long interdichotomies, up to 40 cm in length; dichotomies flattened, up to 10 cm wide. Upward branches gradually narrowing to apices, (1–)3–10 mm in diameter. Medullary filaments, 25–110  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, with lateral cell wall thickenings (“cellulose plugs”). Utricles cylindrical to clavate, (840–)1180–1930(–3025)  $\mu\text{m}$  in length, and (140–)230–410(–655)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter in upper portions, and near the base (40–)110–235(–385)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; utricle apices truncate or rounded, 4.5–8.0  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; utricle wall sides 1.5–2.3  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; hairs and scars present, never abundant, about 220  $\mu\text{m}$  below the apices.

Gametangia elongated, fusiform to ovate, wider at their base, (160–)255–340(–430)  $\mu\text{m}$  long by (46–)90–140(–170)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; borne about (370–)450–600(–750)  $\mu\text{m}$  below the utricle apex on short pedicel, up to 15  $\mu\text{m}$  long.

**HABITAT.** Attached or free-floating in esteros or lagoons; on rocks; low intertidal to shallow subtidal, usually 0.5 to 17 m depths.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda to Punta Arena (north of Cabo Pulmo). Pacific coast: Bahía de San Quintín to Bahía Magdalena; Isla Cedros; Isla Guadalupe; Isla Clarión and Isla Socorro (Islas Revillegigdo); Nayarit to Jalisco.

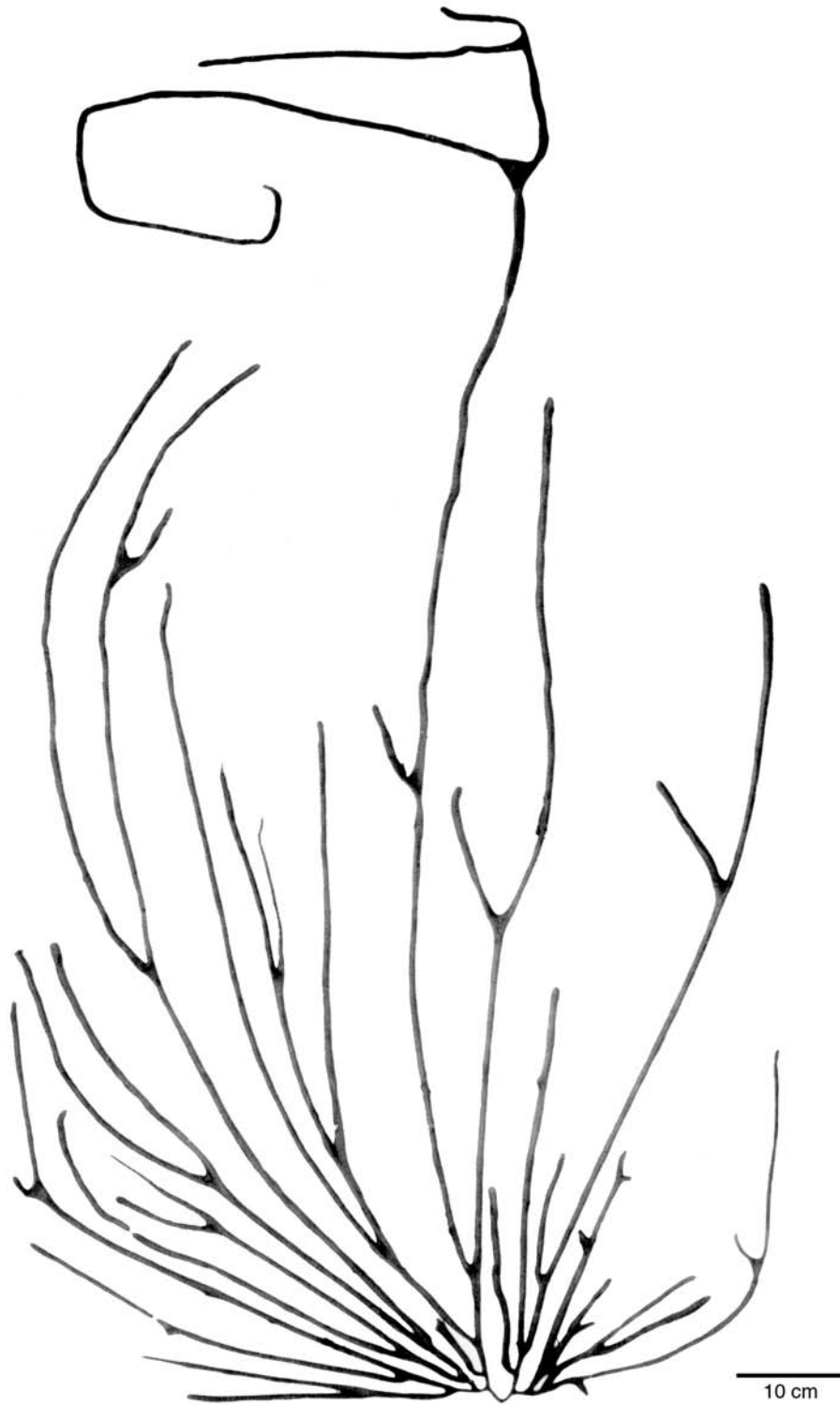
**TYPE LOCALITY.** Drift, most likely Isla Estanque (also known as Pond Island and Isla La Bibera); however, Setchell and Gardner (1924a:709) only stated “near south end of [Isla] Ángel de la Guarda, Gulf of California.”

**REMARKS.** *Codium amplivesiculatum* is the largest species of *Codium*, and may be the largest green alga in the Gulf of California. Two other species, the Gulf of California *C. longiramosa* Setchell et N. L. Gardner (1924a) and the Pacific Baja California *C. magnum* E. Y. Dawson (1950f), were recently treated as synonyms of *C. amplivesiculatum* by Pedroche et al. (2002). Hommersand (1972) and Pedroche et al. (2005:70) noted that the problematic separation of the Gulf *C. amplivesiculatum* and the Japanese *C. cylindricum* Holmes (1896; Yoshida, 1998) and their phylogenetic relationship needs to be clarified.

***Codium brandegeei* Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURES 41C–F, 42

- Codium brandegeei* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:712, pl. 14: figs. 25, 26, pl. 30; Dawson, 1944:215;



---

FIGURE 40. *Codium amplivesiculatum*: Habit of a large specimen (JN-5700).

---

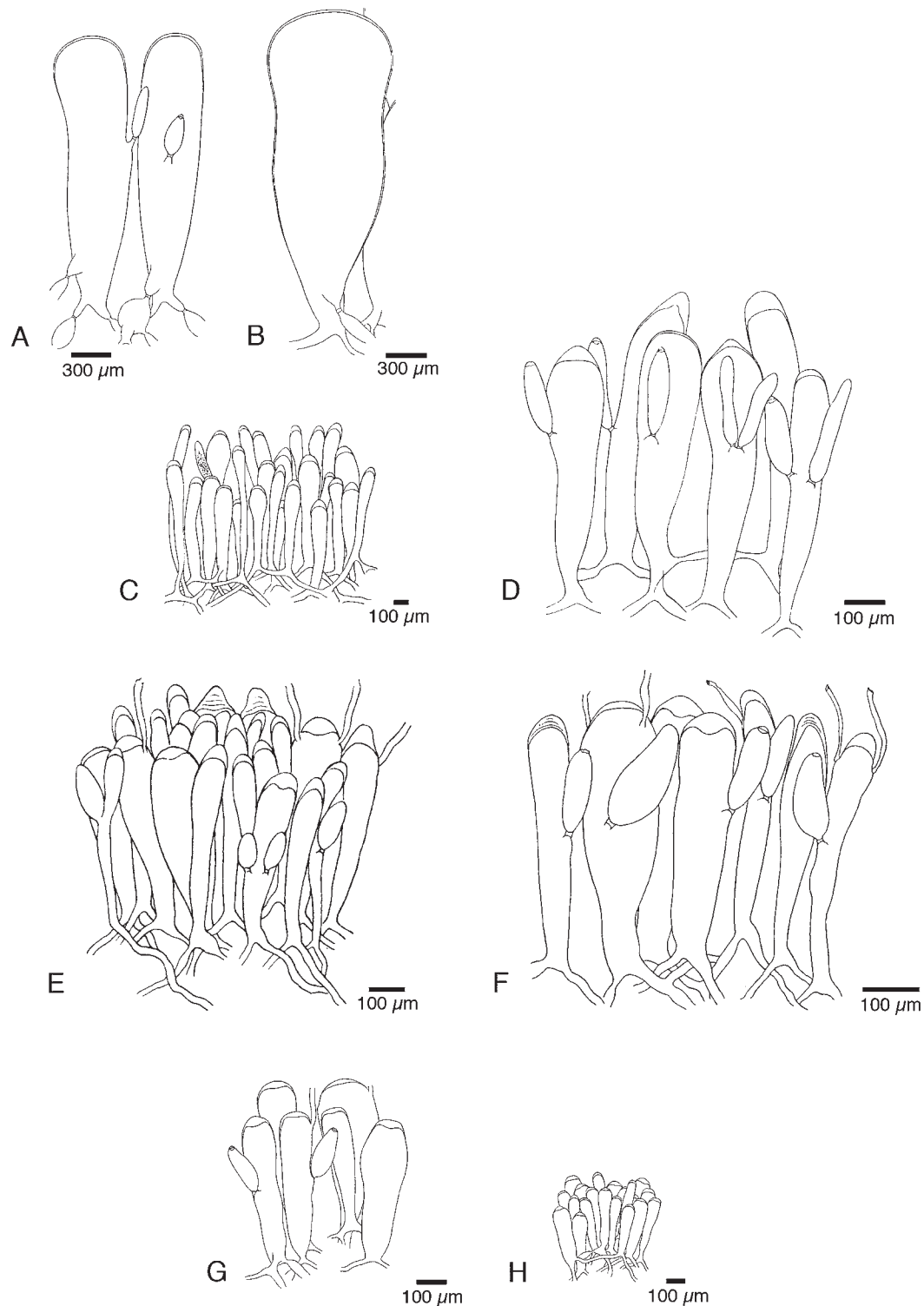


FIGURE 41. Species of *Codium*: Detail of utricles, some with gametangia and/or hairs, showing variation in shape and size. A, B. *Codium amplivesiculatum*: Large, wide utricles; (drawn from the type specimen, I. M. Johnston-74, after Setchell and Gardner, 1924a: pl. 15, figs. 28, 29). C–F. *Codium brandegeei*: Variation in utricle size: C, D. Utricles drawn from the type of the synonym *C. cervicorne* (Marchant-8, after Setchell and Gardner, 1924a: pl. 14, figs. 19, 20). E, F. Utricles of *C. brandegeei* (drawn from the type specimen, T. S. Brandegeee-28, after Setchell and Gardner, 1924a: pl. 14, figs. 25, 26). G, H. *Codium simulans*: Variation in utricles (drawn from the type specimen, I. M. Johnston-8, after Setchell and Gardner, 1924a: pl. 14, figs. 21, 22).

González-González et al., 1996:132; Pedroche et al., 2002:54–55, figs. 19, 66–80; Pedroche et al., 2005:70; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49, 59; Pacheco-Ruiz et al., 2008:202.

*Codium anastomosans* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:711, pl. 16: figs. 36, 37; Dawson, 1944:218; Dawson, 1961b:381; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:22; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; González-González et al., 1996:132.

*Codium cervicorne* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:712, pl. 14: figs. 19, 20, pl. 32b; Dawson, 1961b:381; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:22; González-González et al., 1996:132.

*Codium cuneatum* sensu Dawson, 1944:218 [non *Codium cuneatum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:708].

*Codium macdougalii* E. Y. Dawson, 1944:218, pl. 35: fig. 1; Dawson, 1961b:382; Dawson, 1966a:7; Dawson, 1966b:55; Norris, 1973:4, 17, 19; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; González-González et al., 1996:134; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:133.

*Codium reductum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:707, pl. 14: figs. 23, 24, pl. 33; González-González et al., 1996:134.

*Codium simulans* sensu Dawson, 1944:216; Dawson, 1945a:22 [non *Codium simulans* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:706].

*Codium tomentosum* sensu Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:420 [non *Codium tomentosum* Stackhouse, 1797:xxiv].

Algae erect, more or less cylindrical throughout, up to 15 cm tall; branching irregularly dichotomous; attached by discoid base of rhizoidal filaments. Branches cylindrical; in lower portions sometimes narrow and constricted at dichotomies; in midportions broadening; and in terminal portions sometimes swollen to club-shaped, up to 1.6 cm in diameter. Medulla filaments 23–45(–50)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Utricles slender, cylindrical to clavate, constricted below, giving upper portion spoon-shaped appearance, (460–)540–820(–1150)  $\mu\text{m}$  long by (70–)95–200(–290)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, and in basal portion (30–)40–70(–112)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; sometimes with secondary utricles; utricle apices blunt to dome shaped, outer end with hyaline, laminated, conical cell wall, (30–)50–85  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; hairs and scars present.

Gametangia fusiform or cylindrical, (130–)200–270(–330)  $\mu\text{m}$  long by (40–)60–90(–125)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; usually one per utricle, borne about (230–)280–390(–500)  $\mu\text{m}$  below the apices.

**HABITAT.** On rocks and tidal platforms, often exposed; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal, down to 10 m depths.

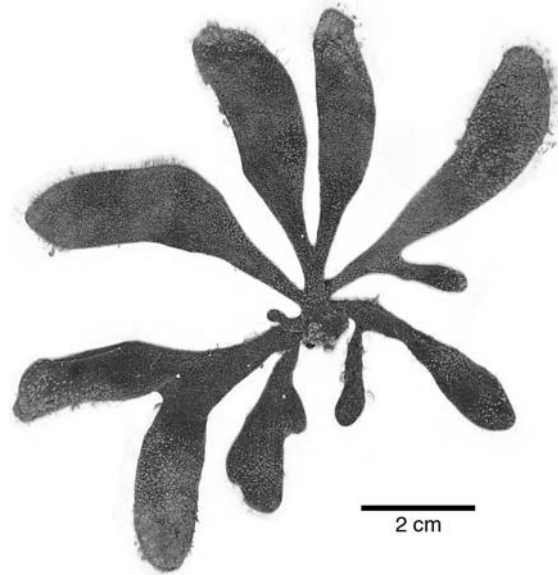


FIGURE 42. *Codium brandegeei*: Habit of “*C. macdougalii*-form” with swollen, club-shaped branches (JN-5020).

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Punta Pelicano (vicinity of Puerto Peñasco) to Guaymas; Bahía Concepción to Bahía de La Paz.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** “Probably at La Paz,” Baja California Sur, Gulf of California (Setchell and Gardner, 1924a).

**REMARKS.** *Codium brandegeei* is apparently endemic to the Gulf of California, as the Pacific Mexico reports of “*C. brandegeei*” from Nayarit and Jalisco (Servière-Zaragoza et al., 1993, as “*C. cervicorne*”) and Guerrero (Salcedo-Martínez et al., 1988, as “*C. cervicorne*”) were noted to be *C. isabelae* W. R. Taylor (1945) by Pedroche et al. (2005:71).

Although the Gulf *C. macdougalii* is now considered to be conspecific with *C. brandegeei* (Pedroche et al., 2002), in the field the “*C. macdougalii*-morph” can be distinguished from the other Gulf species of *Codium* by the broad, swollen, club-shaped upper portions of its branches (Figure 42).

### ***Codium simulans* Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURES 5B, 41G,H, 43

*Codium simulans* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:706, pl. 14: figs. 21, 22, pl. 31; Setchell and Gardner, 1930:133; Dawson, 1944:216; Dawson, 1949:233–234, 237, 242; Dawson, 1959a:18; Dawson, 1961b:382; Norris,

- 1973:4, 17, 19; Brusca and Thomson, 1975:42; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:338; Littler and Littler, 1981:151, 153; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:140; Littler and Littler, 1984:15, 23, 25; Norris, 1985:209, fig. 16.2; Salcedo-Martínez et al., 1988:82; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:30; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:22; González-González et al., 1996:135; Anaya-Reyna and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 1996:862; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:133; Pedroche et al., 2002:61, figs. 65, 81–89; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2005b:36; Pedroche et al., 2005:77; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:146; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:101; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49, 59; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:7; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:191, 202.
- Codium anastomosans* sensu Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:22 [non *Codium anastomosans* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:711; which is now *C. brandegeei* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:712 (see Pedroche et al., 2005:780)].
- Codium cervicorne* sensu Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:22; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1998:168 [non *Codium cervicorne* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:712 (see Pedroche et al., 2005:780)].
- Codium conjunctum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:706, pl. 15: figs. 32, 33, pl. 32a; Dawson, 1949:236, 238; Dawson, 1944:217; Sánchez-Vargas and Hendrickx, 1987:161; Salcedo-Martínez et al., 1988:82; González-González et al., 1996:132.
- Codium cuneatum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:708, pl. 16: figs. 34–35, pl. 34; Setchell and Gardner, 1930:133; Dawson, 1944:218; Dawson, 1945a:22; Dawson, 1949:227; Silva, 1951:99, pls. 3–6, figs. 23–32; Dawson et al., 1960a:10, 26, pl. 5: fig. 2; Dawson et al., 1960b:6–14; Dawson, 1961b:382; Dawson, 1966a:7; Dawson and Neushul, 1966:174; Chávez B., 1972:268; Guzmán del Prío et al., 1972:260; Norris, 1973:4, 18; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:116, fig. 76; Lewbel et al., 1981:165; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Bertsch, 1983:116, 122; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:140; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:22; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:44; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:420; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:38, 39; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1990:123; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:27–28; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:18, 30; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:22; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1992:24, 25; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992:25; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:52; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994a:52; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:34; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:113; González-González et al., 1996:132; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996a:432; Núñez-López et al., 1998:39; Cruz-Ayala et al., 1998:194; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:22; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 2001:148; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:191.
- Codium dichotomum* sensu Taylor, 1945:68 [in part; see Pedroche et al., 2002:78] [non *Codium dichotomum* (Hudson) S. F. Gray, 1821:293].
- Codium latum* subsp. *palmeri* sensu Pedroche et al., 2002:34, figs. 33, 34, 37 [non *Codium latum* subsp. *palmeri* (E. Y. Dawson) P. C. Silva, 1962:208; basionym: *Codium palmeri* E. Y. Dawson, 1945a:23 (see Pedroche et al., 2005:76, 77)].
- Codium tomentosum* sensu Howe, 1911:493 [non *Codium tomentosum* (Hudson) Stackhouse, 1797:xxvii].
- Codium unilaterale* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:710, pl. 15: figs. 30–31, pl. 36; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:22; González-González et al., 1996:135.
- Algae erect, up to 35 cm tall; branching dichotomous to subdichotomous; branches 4–15 mm in diameter and variable in shape, either cylindrical throughout; cylindrical, and only slightly flattened to cuneate at branch dichotomies (2.0–25 mm broad); or compressed, with only stipe and branch tips cylindrical; and attached by a disc of rhizoidal filaments. Medullary filaments 19–77 µm in diameter. Utricles cylindrical, subcylindrical to slightly claviform, (330–)450–800(–1300) µm long by (70–)200–250(–440) µm in diameter in upper portions and (30–)40–120(–385) µm in diameter near the base; apices of utricle smooth, mostly rounded, with hyaline, apical cell wall, 20–46 µm thick. Hairs or scars present, single to numerous, about 120 µm below the thickened distal end of the utricle.
- Gametangia, 1 or 2 per utricle, mostly subfusiform to fusiform, (130–)180–290(–330) µm long by (50–)60–110(–162) µm in diameter and usually narrowed at the base; borne on a short pedicel (up to 10 µm in length), (90–)230–350(–670) µm below utricle tip.
- HABITAT.** On rocks and tidal platforms, usually exposed; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal, down to 20 m depths.
- DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Cabeza Ballena. Pacific coast: Santa Cruz Island (California Channel Islands) to Guerrero; Isla Guadalupe; Isla Clarión (Islas Revillagigedo).
- TYPE LOCALITY.** Isla San Marcos, off the Baja California Sur coast between Caleta de San Lucas and Punta Chivato (separated by Canal de San Marcos [Craig Channel]), Gulf of California.

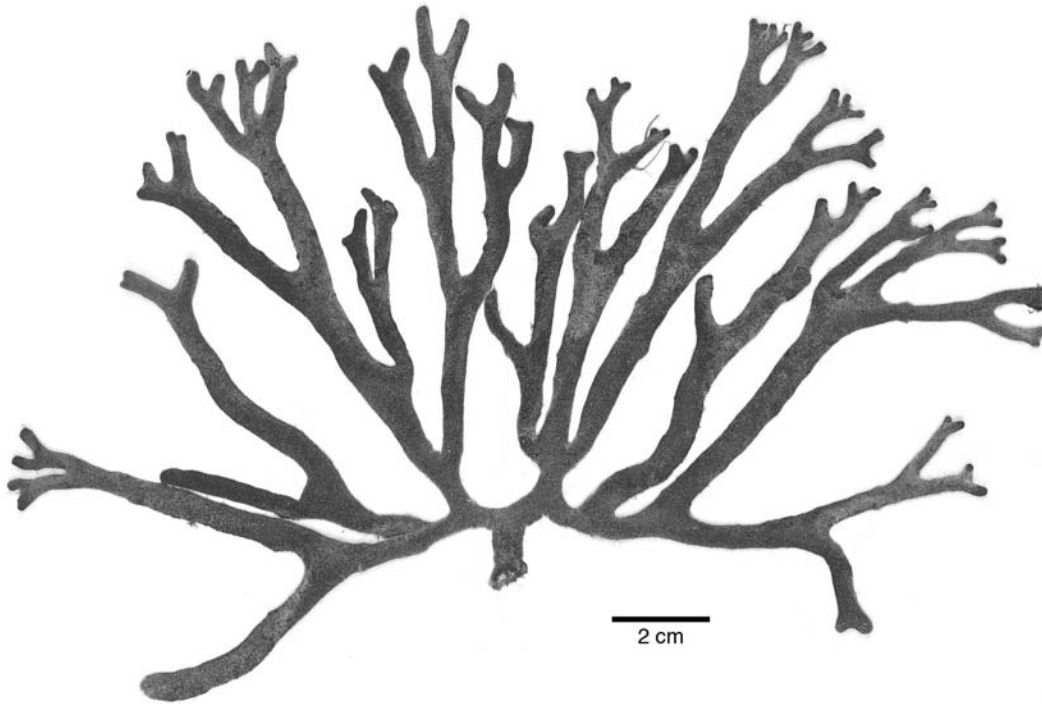


FIGURE 43. *Codium simulans*: Habit, with terete to slightly compressed axis and branches, flattened at dichotomies (JN-5713).

**REMARKS.** The most common species of *Codium* in the northern Gulf, *C. simulans* is found from February to September. Silva (1951:101, as "*C. cuneatum*") noted it "to be a unique species whose young stages are more or less repent, intricate, and basally anastomosing, but whose adult thalli are erect and openly branched... [and] degree and incidence of flattening are variable." As currently understood (Pedroche et al., 2002), *C. simulans* comprises a wide variety of different morphologies (many of which were previously separate species) that may be cylindrical throughout or mostly cylindrical but compressed at the dichotomies or mostly compressed with only the stipe and ultimate branches cylindrical.

Subtidal specimens of *Codium* sp. A (Figure 44; JN-5286) from Puerto Refugio (Isla Ángel de la Guarda) are somewhat similar to "*C. cuneatum*-form" of *C. simulans* but are much larger, wider and flattened throughout. While they are tentatively referred to this species, they should be further studied to see if they represent a new taxon.

**Uncertain Record:  
*Codium fragile* (Suringar) Hariot**

*Acanthocodium fragile* Suringar, 1868:258.  
*Codium fragile* (Suringar) Hariot, 1889:32.

**REMARKS.** Although *Codium fragile* is widely reported on the Pacific coast from Alaska to Baja California (e.g., Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976; González-González et al., 1996; Scagel et al., 1989; Pedroche et al., 2005), its reported presence in the northern Gulf (Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991) needs to be verified.

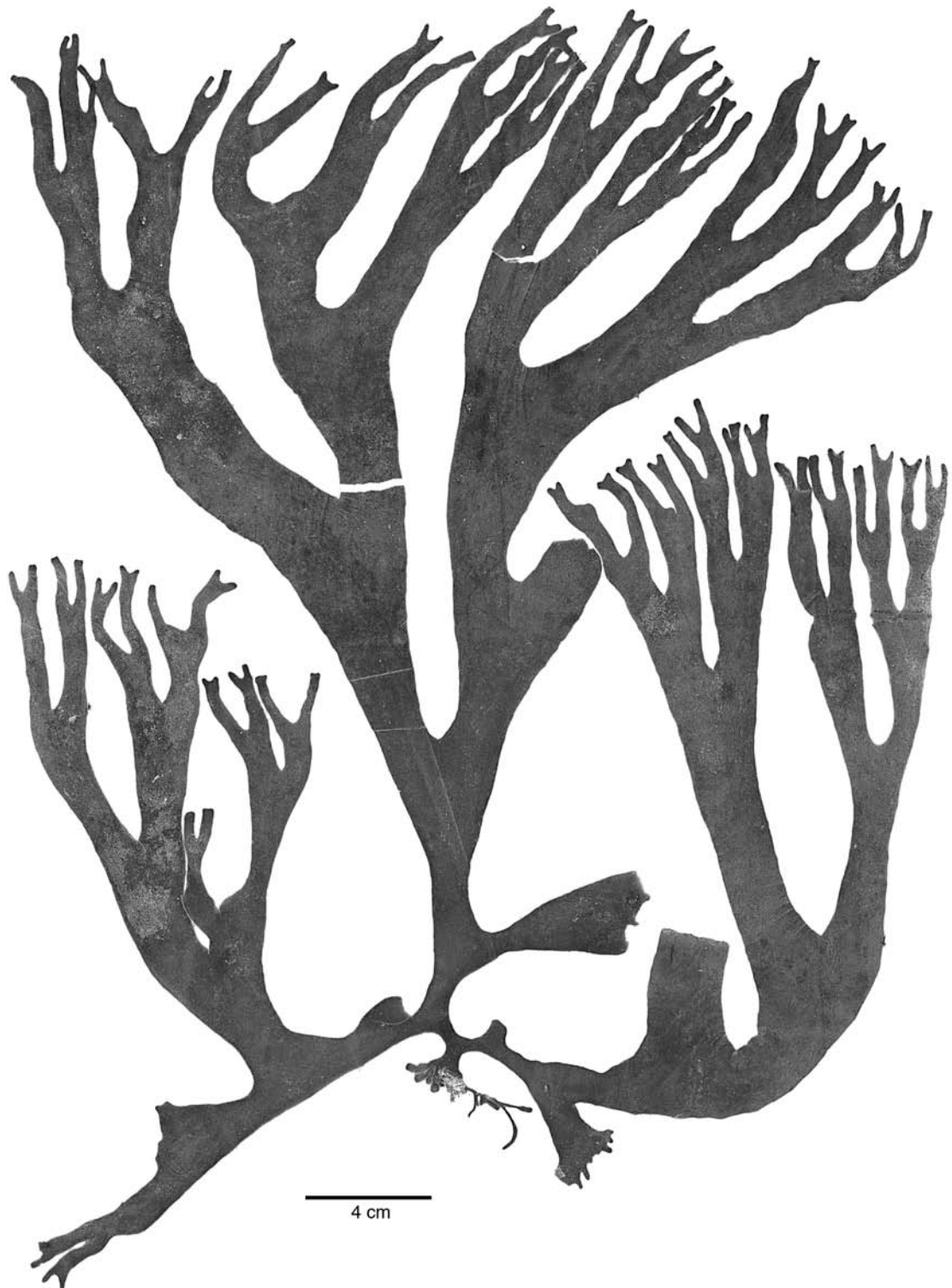
### HALIMEDINEAE

Halimedineae Hillis-Colvinaux, 1984:287.

The suborder Halimedineae is characterized by heteroplasty, presence of a concentric lamellar system, and cell walls that are composed primarily of xylan, with cellulose absent (or only barely present). Allelochemicals (secondary natural products) are usually present. Reproduction is mostly holocarpic (i.e., entire cytoplasm of the coenocytic thallus is transformed into gametes). Reproductive structures are usually without septa.

**REMARKS.** Species of the suborder Halimedineae are mostly tropical to subtropical, with a few temperate, in distribution. Many members are known to produce unique natural products, diterpenoid metabolites (Paul and Fenical, 1985, 1986).





---

FIGURE 44. *Codium* sp. A: Specimen somewhat similar to “*Codium cuneatum*-form” of *C. simulans*: Flat, with exceptionally broad axes, possibly a new species (JN-5286).

---

One of its families, the Udoteaceae J. Agardh (1887), is represented in the southern Gulf by two species *Chlorodesmis hildebrandtii* A. et E. S. Gepp (1911; see Dawson, 1959a, 1961b; González-González et al., 1996; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a) and *Geppella decussata* E. Y. Dawson (1959a) described from Isla San Francisco (off south end of Isla San José, Baja California Sur). There is a problem with the generic placement of *G. decussata*, as the generitype of *Geppella* Børgesen (1940), *G. mortensenii* Børgesen, is now conspecific with *Rhipiliopsis mortensenii* (Børgesen) Fraghaly et Denizot (1979). Therefore, the generic status of the Gulf *G.?* *decussata* is uncertain (see also Tanaka and Itono, 1977; Dong and Tseng, 1983) and in need of reinvestigation.

Two families of the suborder Halimedineae, the Caulerpaceae and Halimedaceae, are represented in the northern as well as the southern Gulf of California.

### CAULERPACEAE

Caulerpaceae Kützing, 1843:302, 307.

Algae are differentiated into distinct erect portions and prostrate, creeping stolon-like runners, that issue rhizoids that attach it to sand or hard substratum. The erect portions exhibit a great variety of forms and sizes, from tubular to foliose, and can be simple to much branched. The vegetative portions of these algae are coenocytic, multinucleate, and with two types of plastids, chloroplasts and amyloplasts. Structurally, there is an internal web or network of trabeculae that originate from the interior walls of the thallus and are unique to this family.

Asexual reproduction is by fragmentation and also by vegetative propagation of the stolons. Zooidangia are apparently known only in the non-holocarpic *Caulerpella*. Its reproductive structures are in external stalked-whorls, developed from the basal portion of a fertile branch that is separated from the lateral branch by a septum (crosswall). Spores are released via a discharge tube at apex of fertile branch. Sexual reproduction has been reported in a few species of holocarpic *Caulerpa* (e.g., Clifton and Clifton, 1999). The species of *Caulerpa* thus far studied are diploid, forming biflagellate anisogametes within the contents of the branches by the separation of the cytoplasm without development of septa (crosswalls). Anisogametes are released through superficial papillae.

**REMARKS.** The Caulerpaceae is composed of two genera. *Caulerpa* is found in tropical to subtropical seas worldwide and in temperate waters of the Southern Hemisphere, and *Caulerpella* Prud'homme van Reine et Lokhorst (1992) is found in tropical and subtropical seas.

One genus, *Caulerpa*, is known in the Gulf of California.

### *Caulerpa* J. V. Lamouroux

*Caulerpa* J. V. Lamouroux, 1809d:332.

Algae included in *Caulerpa* are easily recognized by their differentiated fronds: erect upper branches of diverse morphologies that arise from prostrate, creeping stolons (rhizome-like runners), which are attached to the substratum at various points by groups of colorless rhizoids. The erect axes and branches are cylindrical to blade-like and simple or pinnately, radially, or bilaterally branched; their shape and pattern are species specific and may be elaborate and variable. The thallus is coenocytic throughout, i.e., multinucleate, with numerous chloroplasts and amyloplasts (specialized for starch accumulation), a cell wall principally of xylan, and an elaborate internal network of trabeculae (slender internal strands of cell wall material) that traverses the cytoplasm throughout the thallus, presumably structurally bracing the cell wall. Growth is apical and indeterminate.

Asexual reproduction is by fragmentation. Sexual reproduction, where known, is holocarpic (i.e., the entire cytoplasm is transformed into gametes), and the thallus remains unmodified, and no crosswalls are formed. Both dioecious and monoecious species are reported, with anisogametes extruded in gelatinous strands through papillae on the siphon wall.

**REMARKS.** Members of *Caulerpa* grow from the intertidal down to depths of at least 81 m (Littler et al., 1985, 1986; Norris and Olsen 1991). Exhibiting extreme morphological plasticity, their habit is influenced by both biotic and physical factors of their environment, e.g., light and water motion, which has resulted in numerous described subspecies, varieties, forms, or ecads. When wounded or grazed by herbivorous fish or invertebrates (e.g., sacoglossan molluscs) the thallus responds by extruding a yellowish gelatinous mass that hardens in a few minutes to form a wound plug (Dreher et al., 1978; Dawes and Goddard, 1978; Menzel, 1980, 1988). Several species produce secondary metabolites, caulerpin (Santos and Doty, 1968; Maiti et al., 1978) and caulerpicin (Doty and Aguilar-Santos, 1966; Mahendran et al., 1979; Nielsen et al., 1982; Vest et al., 1983) or caulerpenyne (Amico et al., 1978; Faulkner, 1984; Amade and Lemée, 1998), that serve as a chemical defense, making them unpalatable or even toxic to certain herbivores (e.g., Norris and Fenical, 1982; Paul and Fenical, 1986, 1987). Some species of sacoglossan mollusks, specialist herbivores, ingest,

transfer and store the natural products, along with the chloroplasts, of *Caulerpa*, in their tissues (e.g., Doty and Aguilar-Santos, 1970; Trench, 1973).

Three species and one variety are reported in the southern Gulf: *C. antoensis* Yamada (1940; = *C. arenicola* W. R. Taylor, 1950) by Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González (1985) and Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones (1991); *C. peltata* J. V. Lamouroux (1809c) by Dawson (1959a), Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González (1985), Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones (1991), and Mateo-Cid et al. (2000a); and *C. racemosa* (Forsskål) J. Agardh (1873) by Dawson (1944), Huerta-Múzquiz (1978),

Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid (1986), Anaya-Reyna and Riosmena-Rodríguez (1996), Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones (1999, as “*C. racemosa* var. *uvifera*”), Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez (2000), and Riosmena-Rodríguez et al. (2005); and *C. racemosa* var. *turbinata* (J. Agardh) Eubank (1946) by Dawson (1944, as “*C. racemosa* var. *chemnitzia*”), Dawson (1949, 1959a), Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González (1985, as “*C. racemosa* var. *chemnitzia*”), Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones (1991), and Mateo-Cid et al. (2000a).

Three species are present in the northern Gulf of California.

KEY TO THE SPECIES OF CAULERPA IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Axes and branches flattened throughout, with primary branches and numerous pinnate (oppositely branched) branchlets. . . . . *C. mexicana* f. *pectinata*
- 1b. Axes, primary branches and branchlets cylindrical throughout . . . . . 2
- 2a. Cylindrical erect axes with oppositely branched branchlets (featherlike appearance); branchlet apices acute, with pointed tip . . . . . *C. sertularioides*
- 2b. Cylindrical erect axes simple and unbranched or sparsely and irregularly branched; 500–1000 µm in diameter; apices rounded or more or less clavate . . . . . *C. vanbosseae*

***Caulerpa mexicana* f. *pectinata* (Kützling) W. R. Taylor**

FIGURE 45

*Caulerpa pectinata* Kützling, 1849:495.  
*Caulerpa mexicana* Sonder ex Kützling f. *pectinata* (Kützling) W. R. Taylor, 1960:141; Apartado et al., 2002:99, figs. 2, 5; Pedroche et al., 2005:64.  
*Caulerpa pinnata* C. Agardh f. *pectinata* (Kützling) Weber-van Bosse, 1898:291, pl. 24: fig. 3; Dawson, 1944:213; Dawson, 1961b:380; Dawson, 1966a:7; Dawson, 1966b:55, fig. 1A; González-González et al., 1996:127; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:48; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:202.  
*Caulerpa crassifolia* (C. Agardh) J. Agardh f. *pectinata* (Kützling) Collins, 1909b:414.

Algae erect, with flat, fronds of pinnate branches, up to 5 cm tall, arising from a short stalk above the spreading stolon; attached below by rhizoids issued from stolons. Fronds simple or forked; branches lanceolate to oblong in shape, 2–5 cm long and narrow, up to 5 mm wide; composed of a flattened main axes and closely set, opposite flat short branchlets in one plane; branchlets not contracted at base, not closely adjacent, and curved slightly upward with acuminate tips.

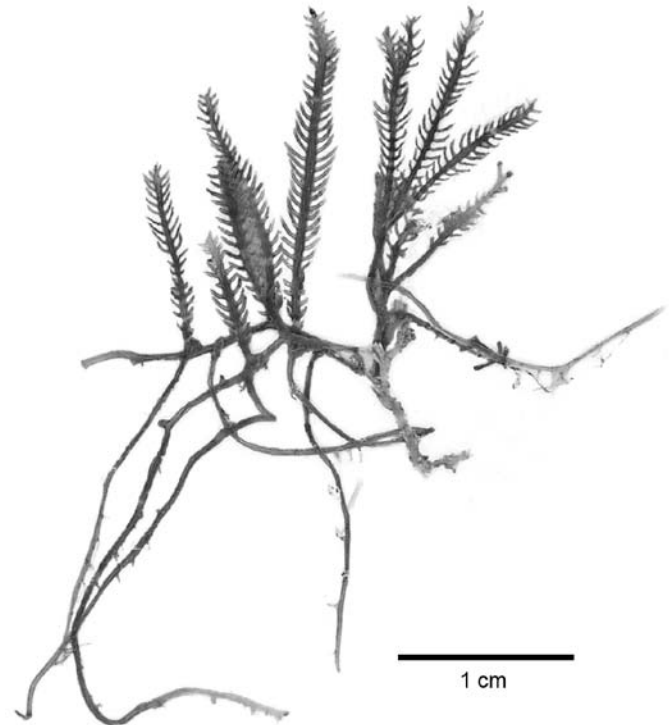


FIGURE 45. *Caulerpa mexicana* f. *pectinata*: Habit, narrow pinnate fronds; axes and branchlets are flattened (JN-5861).

**HABITAT.** On sand covered rock, tidal platforms and in tide pools; often under larger algae such as *Sargassum*; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal (also dredged in 12–22 m depths; Dawson, 1944).

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco; Puerto Refugio, in shallows of channel between Isla Mejía and Isla División (northwest end of Isla Ángel de la Guarda).

**TYPE LOCALITY.** La Guaira (La Guayra), seaport town for Caracas, Federal District, northern Venezuela.

**REMARKS.** Generally considered a tropical western Atlantic taxon (Taylor, 1960; Apartado et al., 2002), *Caulerpa mexicana* f. *pectinata* has also been reported in the northern Gulf by Dawson (1944, 1966a, 1966b, as “*C. pinnata* f. *pectinata*”). Gulf specimens need to be morphologically and molecularly compared with those of the western Atlantic, particularly with those from the type locality, to test their phylogenetic relationship.

### ***Caulerpa sertularioides* (S. G. Gmelin) M. Howe**

FIGURE 46A,B

*Fucus sertularioides* S. G. Gmelin, 1768:151, pl. 15: fig. 4. *Caulerpa sertularioides* (S. G. Gmelin) M. Howe, 1905:576; Dawson, 1944:213; Taylor, 1945:63; Dawson, 1949:244–245; Dawson, 1959a:4, 6, 7, 14; Dawson, 1961b: 381; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:126; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:121–122, 127, 131, 134, 136; Chávez B., 1972:268; Earle, 1972:85; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:338, 340; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:44; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:420; Ortega et al., 1987:80; Sánchez-Vargas and Hendrickx, 1987:161; Salcedo-Martínez et al., 1988:82; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:39; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:24; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:28; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:23; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992:25; León-Tejera and González-González, 1993:497; León-Tejera et al., 1993:199, 204; González-González, 1993:443; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:52; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:113; González-González et al., 1996:277, 366–367; Anaya-Reyna and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 1996:862, 863; Galindo-Villegas et al., 1997:4; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998:25, 27–28; Yoshida, 1998:103; Cruz-Ayala et al., 1998:192; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:22; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146;

López et al., 2000:339; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:60, 70; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Scrosati, 2001:722; Beltrán-Magallanes, 2002:44; Carballo et al., 2002:753; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:124, fig. 45B,C; Hodgson et al., 2004:32; López et al., 2004:10; Wysor, 2004:224; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:101; Pedroche et al., 2005:67; Servière-Zaragoza et al., 2007:3, 7.

Algae with erect (feather-like) fronds, in the northern Gulf mostly less than 7.0 cm tall, arising from a short cylindrical stalk above the horizontal stolon, attached below by rhizoids. Fronds 2–7(–11) cm long and up to 1 cm wide, most simple and unbranched or occasionally branched; with a terete main axes bearing opposite cylindrical branchlets; branchlets not constricted at base, usually closely adjacent, and curved upward, with pointed tips.

**HABITAT.** In sandy habitats and in crevices and tide pools; attached to sand, on rocks or broken shells; low intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Bahía San Carlos; Bahía Concepción to Punta Los Frailes; Mazatlán (Bahía de Altata to Estero del Urías), Sinaloa. Pacific coast: Bahía Magdalena, Baja California Sur; Islas Revilagigedo; Nayarit to Chiapas; Panama; Hawaiian Islands; China; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** “. . . *nonnisi* [only] in *coralliis americanis*” (Gmelin, 1768:151); “no definite locality is given” (Howe, 1905:576); “possibly tropical Atlantic America” (Hodgson et al., 2004:32).

**REMARKS.** Collections (US Alg. Coll.) from Bahía San Carlos (north of Guaymas, Sonora) establish *Caulerpa sertularioides* in the northern Gulf. Two forms of this species have been previously recorded in the southern Gulf *Caulerpa sertularioides* f. *brevipes* (J. Agardh) Svedelius (1906) has been reported in Laguna de Agiabampo, southern Sonora (Ortega et al. 1987), and *C. sertularioides* f. *longiseta* (Bory de Saint-Vincent) Svedelius (1906) from La Paz by Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González (1985) and Cruz-Ayala et al. (2001).

Ecological monitoring of *Caulerpa sertularioides* over 2 years in Bahía Balandra (vicinity of La Paz) by Scrosati (2001) showed a high population abundance during the relatively high temperatures of El Niño conditions and, in contrast, an absence during the relatively low temperatures of La Niña. Scrosati (2001) suggested that quantitative monitoring of Gulf of California seaweeds could be useful in predicting long-term effects of El Niño and La Niña on changes of marine algal distribution and abundance.

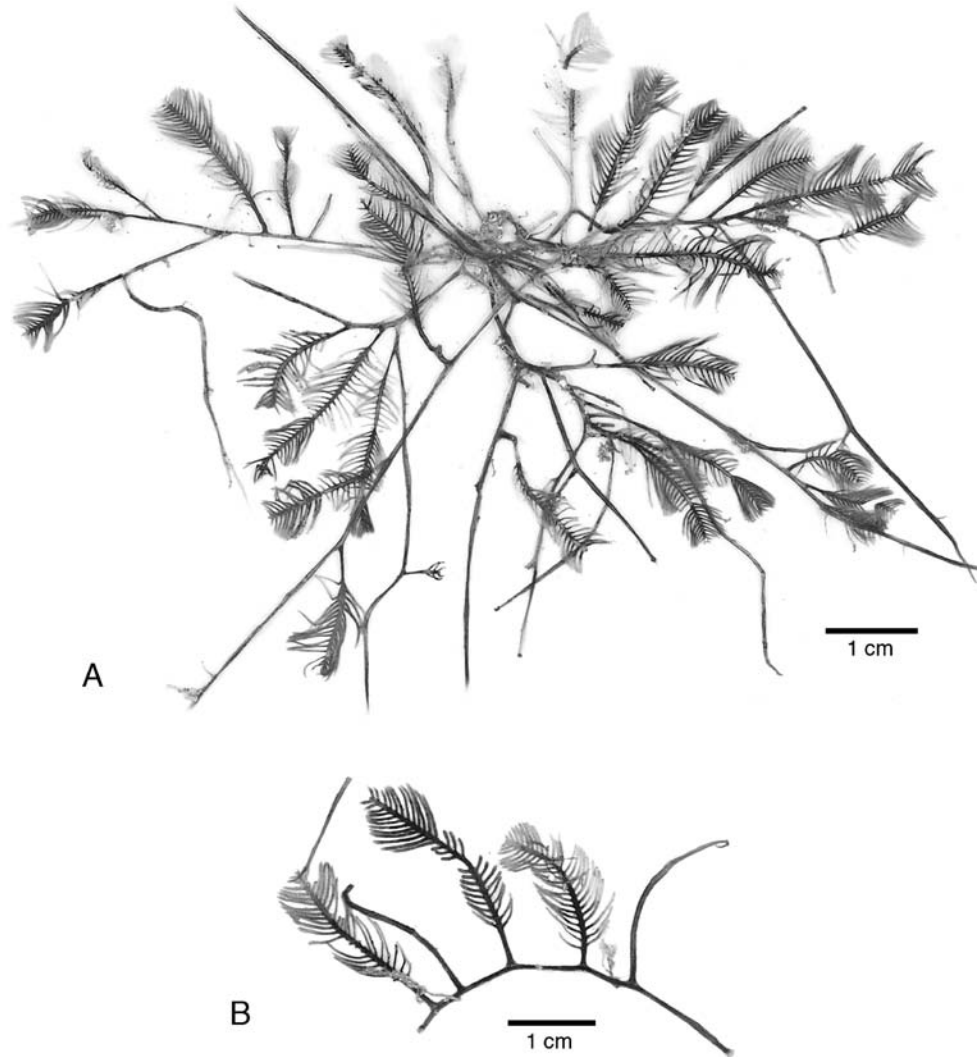


FIGURE 46. *Caulerpa sertularioides*: A. Habit (JN-4471). B. Prostrate stolons bearing erect axes with distichously arranged branchlets; both axes and branchlets are cylindrical (JN-4277).

### ***Caulerpa vanbosseae* Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURE 47A,B

*Caulerpa vanbosseae* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:704, pl. 13: figs. 13–15; Dawson, 1944:212; Dawson, 1949:234; Dawson, 1959a:8–10, 14; Dawson et al., 1960b:13; Dawson, 1961b:381; Dawson, 1966a:7; Littler and Littler, 1984:15, 23; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:38, 39; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:52; González-González et al., 1996:127; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Pe-

droche et al., 2005:69; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:48, 59; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:202.

Algae cylindrical throughout, erect portions simple and unbranched or irregularly branched (sometimes more or less alternately or oppositely branched); forming loosely entangled, sometimes spreading, clumps up to 6 cm tall; attached below by rhizoids issued from creeping stolons. Erect axes and branches, and horizontal stolons of more or less similar diameter, (400–)500–1000  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Terminal portions of axes and branches often more or less clavate or rounded. Reproduction not known.

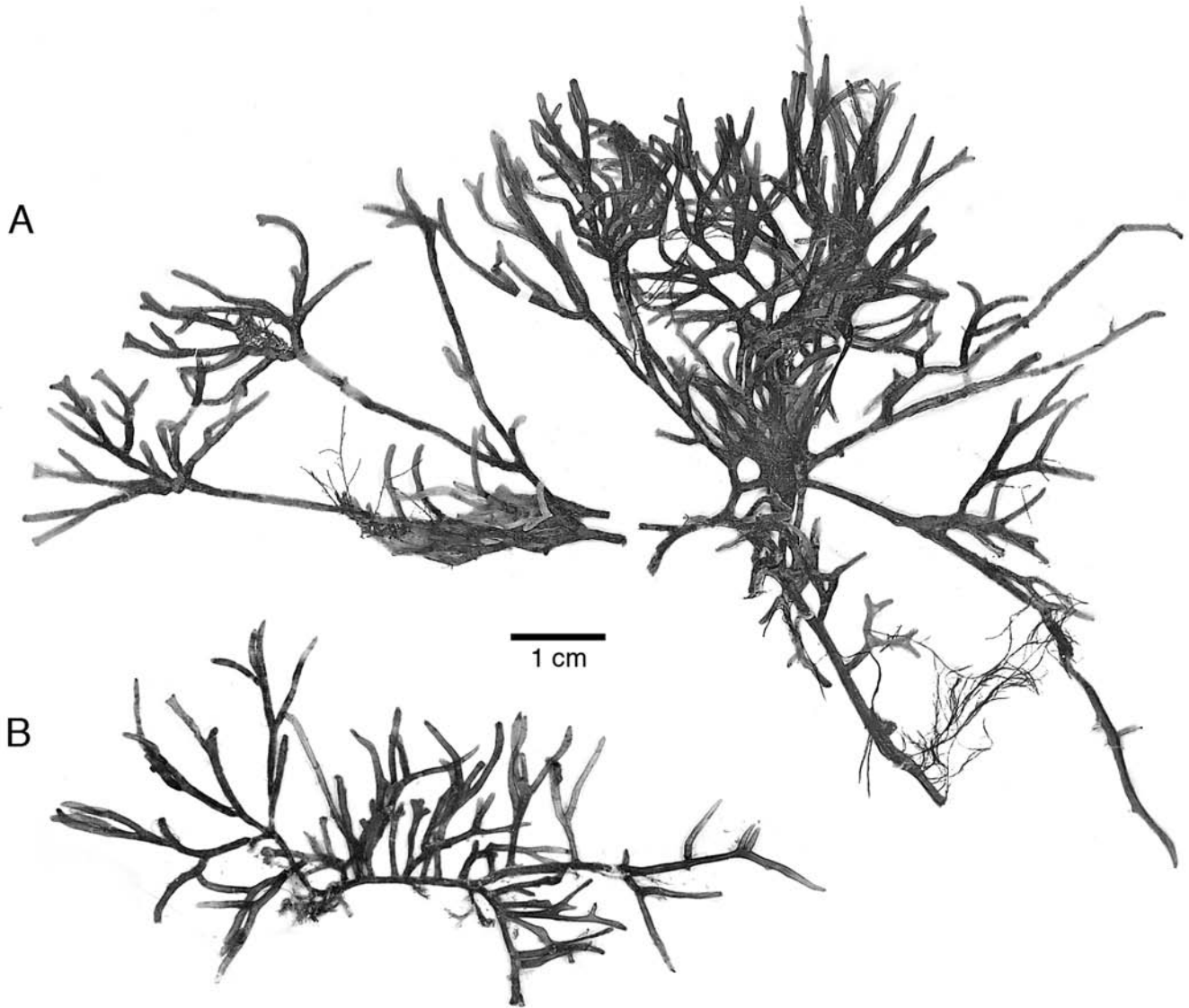


FIGURE 47. *Caulerpa vanbosseae*: Erect upper portions of simple to irregularly branched cylindrical axes, above horizontal, cylindrical, stolon-like rhizomes. A. Habit (JN-6562). B. Habit (JN-4981).

**HABITAT.** On rocks or broken shells, in crevices and tide pools; low intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Bahía La Paz. Pacific coast: Punta Entrada (Bahía Magdalena) and Isla Santa Margarita (Bahía Las Almejas), Baja California Sur.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Vicinity of La Paz, Baja California Sur, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** *Caulerpa vanbosseae* is apparently known only in the Gulf of California and Pacific Baja California Sur. A few specimens of Gulf *C. vanbosseae*

bear a morphological resemblance to some of the cylindrical, sparsely, irregularly branched forms of deep-water *C. ashmeadii* Harvey (1858) from the eastern Gulf of Mexico (US Alg. Coll.).

#### HALIMEDACEAE

Halimedaceae Link, 1832:115.

Most members of this family have a multiaxial construction, and most are calcified (aragonite mineral form

of calcium carbonate). Development is initially uniaxial; as more siphonous filaments are formed, they become consolidated into a multiaxial thallus, with a filamentous medulla and a cortex of utricles. Cells have numerous chloroplasts and leucoplasts, with xylan as a principal cell wall constituent.

Sexual reproduction is holocarpic. Biflagellate anisogametes are formed in differentiated gametangia that develop above the surface layer of the segments. Anisogametes are discharged through papillae.

A monotypic family; the single genus *Halimeda* is represented in the northern Gulf of California.

### ***Halimeda* J. V. Lamouroux**

*Halimeda* J. V. Lamouroux, 1812:186, as "*Halimedeae*."

Algae are erect or spreading and variously branched and are composed of articulated sequences of calcified segments that alternate with narrow, flexible noncalcified joints. Attachment to the substratum is by either a large, dense fibrous holdfast; a small holdfast of rhizoidal filaments; or by several rhizoidal masses developed from the segments or nodes. Calcified (aragonite) segments may be cylindrical, compressed or flat, or spherical, simple or lobed. Segments are internally composed of a multiaxial (rarely uniaxial), filamentous medulla that branches outward to form 2–6 layers of subsurface utricles and a surface layer of utricles. Outer surface utricles may be loosely to closely adherent. Growth is indeterminate. The flexible joints are composed of coenocytic medullary filaments that are closely parallel and remain separate or are fused in pairs, in small groups, or into a single group. Filaments contain numerous nuclei, chloroplasts and amyloplasts, and have cell walls primarily composed of xylan. Accessory pigments are siphonoxanthin and siphonein.

Asexual reproduction is by fragmentation. New thalli can also develop at ends of filaments that grow out of segments, as well as from filaments of basal stolons. Sexual reproduction, where known, is holocarpic. Biflagellate anisogametes are formed in gametangia on branched stalks grouped together on the surface of the calcified segments.

**REMARKS.** *Halimeda* is widely distributed in tropical to subtropical seas, from intertidal to depths of at least 150 m (Littler et al. 1985, 1986). *Halimeda* has long been known to play a critical role in the formation of tropical beach sands (van Overbeek and Crist, 1947). Growth patterns, calcification, and defense chemicals are synchronized on a daily cycle to maximize growth by avoiding some daytime herbivores (Hay, 1988, 1997b). Holocarpic

sexual reproduction of *Halimeda* also follows a diel pattern (Clifton, 1997; Hay, 1997a; Clifton and Clifton, 1999). Initiated after sunset, it is a brief phenomenon, with almost all of the alga's protoplasm put into gamete production. Overnight, the green calcified segments become white, with stalked green gametangia on their surface and edges, and right before dawn, the gametes are released, leaving behind the dead calcified structure.

Currently there is one species, *H. discoidea*, known in the northern Gulf of California.

One additional species, *Halimeda opuntia* (Linnaeus) J. V. Lamouroux (1816), is recorded in the southern Gulf (Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991).

### ***Halimeda discoidea* Decaisne**

FIGURE 48A–C

*Halimeda discoidea* Decaisne, 1842b:102; Collins, 1909b:400; Howe, 1911:492; Setchell and Gardner, 1920b:177, pl. 13: fig. 3; Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:704; Dawson, 1944:214; Taylor, 1945:73; Dawson, 1949:244, 245; Taylor, 1950:85, pl. 45: fig. 1; Dawson, 1957b:9; Dawson, 1959a:4, 6, 8, 18; Hillis, 1959:352, pl. 2: fig. 5, pl. 5: fig. 11, pl. 6: fig. 11, pl. 7: figs. 9, 10, pl. 8: figs. 5–8, pl. 11; Dawson, 1960c:97; Dawson et al., 1960b:13, 14; Dawson, 1961b:382; Dawson, 1961c:406, pl. 7: fig. 1; Dawson, 1962b:177, 229, fig. 22; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:338; Hillis-Colinvaux, 1980:136, fig. 41; Pedroche and González-González, 1981:64; González-González, 1993:443; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:44; Salcedo-Martínez et al., 1988:82; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:39; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:25; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:24; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:22; Tsuda and Kamura, 1991:69, pl. 4: fig. 1; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1992:25; León-Tejera et al., 1993:199, 202; Servière-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:45; León-Tejera and González-González, 1994:26; González-González et al., 1996:287; Bucio-Pacheco and Dreckmann, 1998:43, 45; Yoshida, 1998:114; Hillis et al., 1998:671; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1998:26; Servière-Zaragoza et al., 1998:169, 179; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:22; López et al., 2000:339; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:131, fig. 49B–E; López et al., 2004:10; Wysor, 2004:225; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:146; Pedroche et al., 2005:80; Riosmena-

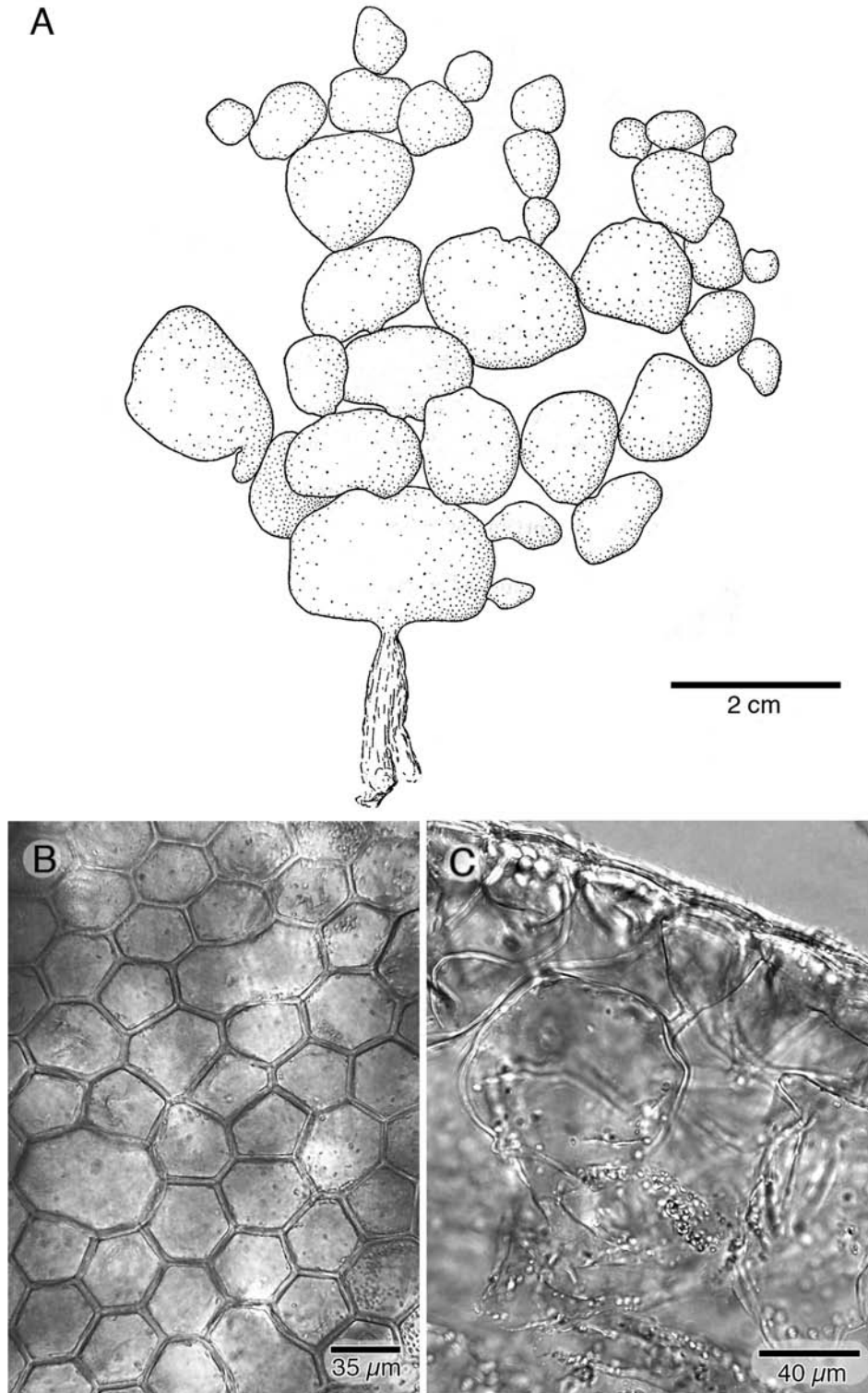


FIGURE 48. *Halimeda discoidea*: A. Habit (after Setchell and Gardner, 1920b: pl. 13, fig. 3). B. Surface view of decalcified segment with hexagonal pattern formed by abutting surface utricles; occasionally, two adjacent utricles merge across one of their facets, consequently forming polygons (EYD-25921). C. Section of segment showing large secondary utricule bearing smaller cup-shaped peripheral utricles (EYD-25921).



Rodríguez et al., 2005:101; Servièze-Zaragoza et al., 2007:7; Pacheco-Ruiz et al., 2008:202.

Algae forming small clumps of subdichotomously to trichotomously branched fronds (branching in several planes), up to 10 cm high; of lightly to moderately calcified flat segments that alternate with very short noncalcified joints of entangled medullary filaments fused in pairs (rarely 3); attached below by a single, relatively small, mass of rhizoidal filaments. Flat segments variable in shape, mostly obovate to reniform, and 1.0–2.5 cm wide; upper segments usually flexible, leathery. Surface utricles forming hexagonal pattern in surface view; cup-shaped in transection, 25–45 µm in diameter; laterally adherent to adjacent surface utricles (even after decalcification) along their distal margins for 15–20 µm; borne on notably larger, inflated secondary internal utricles, 60–175 µm in diameter.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, and in crevices and tide pools; low intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda; Isla Partida; Guaymas to San Jose del Cabo. Pacific coast: Isla Socorro and Isla Clarion (Islas Revillagigedo); Isla Magdalena (southwest of Punta Entrada, Bahía Magdalena, Baja California) to Costa Rica; Panama; Hawaiian Islands; Bikini Island; China; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** “Not certain” (Silva et al., 1996a). Although the herbarium label (PC) indicates it was collected “Kamtschatka” (Russia) during the voyage of the exploring ship *Venus* (Decaisne, 1842b:102), Hillis (1959:352; see also Hillis-Colvinaux, 1980) noted that “at least the locality [is] incorrect,” as waters of the Kamchatka Peninsula are far too cold for this tropical to subtropical species.

**REMARKS.** In the Gulf of California, *Halimeda discoidea* is usually found in the warmer waters of the southern Gulf, but it is also known from a few collections in the northern Gulf.

## DASYCLADOPHYCEAE

Dasycladophyceae C. van den Hoek, D. G. Mann et Jahns, 1995:436, *nom. invalid.* [see McNeill et al., 2006:Art. 36.2; Pröschold and Leliaert, 2007:130].

Algae of this class are exclusively marine, siphonous, and composed of a primary main axis or stalk that bears whorls of simple or branched laterals that are either free or joined distally to form a cortex. Each thallus is a single

coenocytic cell with a parietal layer of cytoplasm and a large central vacuole. Many are slightly to moderately calcified. Siphons contain numerous nuclei and fusiform to ellipsoid chloroplasts that do not have pyrenoids but, instead, often have storage grains of fructan and starch. These grains may also be found in the cytoplasm. Cytoplasmic streaming of the organelles, including chloroplasts, grains, and nuclei, occurs along numerous “lanes” (striae) that run parallel to the longitudinal axis of the cell. The cell wall of the vegetative thallus is composed of mannan, and the wall of the gametangial cyst is predominantly cellulose.

Life histories, where known, involve a haploid gametophytic stage, the macrothallus, that alternates with a zygote stage containing a giant diploid nucleus (the only diploid nucleus in the life history). Sexual reproduction is by fusion of biflagellated gametes. Gametes may be formed in gametangial cysts of lateral branches or in disc rays.

There is one order represented in the northern Gulf of California.

## DASYCLADALES

Dasycladales Pascher, 1931:328.

Dasycladales Bessey, 1907: 287.

Structurally composed of coenocytic cells, these algae have radial symmetry and are often calcified and attached below by rhizoids. The siphonous main axis or stalk bears whorls of simple or divided laterals that can be free or united and are sometimes branched to several orders.

Reproduction is by operculate cysts that function as gametangia and are developed from a nucleus that has divided into numerous small secondary nuclei and presumably undergoes meiosis to produce gametes. These cysts release biflagellate isogametes, which upon fusion, form a quadriflagellate zygote. This zygote settles and develops into a siphonous system from which the primary axis develops.

**REMARKS.** The extensive fossil record of the Dasycladales is unique among the Chlorophyta. Most of the 150 genera of Dasycladales are fossils, extending back to the Ordovician (e.g., Pia, 1927; Nitecki, 1970). Currently, there are only 11 known living genera, of which three extend from the Cretaceous.

In the southern Gulf, one of its two families, the Dasycladaceae Kützing (1843), is represented by two genera, *Batophora* J. Agardh (1854) and *Neomeris* Lamouroux (1816), with records of *Batophora oerstedii* J. Agardh (1854; Ortega et al., 1987) and *Neomeris annulata* Dickie (1874a; Dawson, 1959a; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:70; Hinojosa-Arango and

Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2001; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005).

The Polyphysaceae of the Dasycladales is represented throughout the Gulf of California.

### POLYPHYSACEAE

Polyphysaceae Kützing, 1843:302, 311.

Acetabulariaceae Nägeli, 1847:158, 252.

Algae a unicell, with a stalk bearing two kinds of whorled laterals that can be arranged in two different ways: (1) numerous whorls of hyaline branched laterals (may be pale green when immature) and a subterminal or terminal disc or cap of a whorl of gametangial rays (which may be lost after reproductive maturity and later replaced) or (2) alternating whorls of hyaline (or pale green) laterals and green discs or caps of gametangial rays. Gametangial rays with a circle of short protuberances (superior corona) on the upper side that bear hairs and/or scars after hairs are shed; rays may or may not have a ring of additional segments beneath (inferior corona), which if present, lacks hairs.

Reproduction is by gametes that develop in cysts within the gametangial rays of the cap or disc.

**REMARKS.** The Polyphysaceae was shown to be a monophyletic group distinct from the family Dasycladaeae (Olsen et al., 1994).

One of the genera, *Parvocaulis* S. Berger, Fettweiss, Gleissberg, Liddle, U. Richter, Sawitsky et Zuccarello (2003), has been reported in the southern Gulf with records of two species *Parvocaulis pusilla* (M. Howe) S. Berger et al. (2003) by Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González (1985), Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones (1991), and Baynes (1999) (all as “*Acetabularia pusilla* (M. Howe) Collins, 1909b”) and *Parvocaulis parvulus* (Solms-Laubach) S. Berger et al. (2003) by Mateo-Cid et al. (2000a, as “*Acetabularia parvula* Solms-Laubach, 1895”).

One genus, *Acetabularia*, is known in the northern Gulf of California.

### *Acetabularia* J. V. Lamouroux

*Acetabularia* J. V. Lamouroux, 1812:185.

Algae are light to moderately calcified and are composed of an erect, siphonous stalk (up to 1 mm in diameter) above a lobed, rhizoidal base attached to solid substratum. The cylindrical stalk bears successive whorls of deciduous, branched sterile laterals (hairs) in its upper

portions that can leave scars, and at its upper end it bears, terminally or subterminally, one or more caps or discs of laterally joined rays. Near the base of each ray are borne small projections on the upper and lower surfaces: the projections form a whorl, the superior (apical) corona with colorless hairs and the inferior corona without hairs. Cytoplasm is peripheral and contains numerous discoid plastids and lacks pyrenoids and surrounds a large central vacuole. Chloroplast ultrastructure is variable and with or without stacked grana. Starch grains are in both the chloroplast and cytoplasm, but they are not membrane-bound in the latter. Vegetative cells have a single, diploid, primary nucleus in a branch of the rhizoid. Primary nuclear division is meiotic, followed by a series of mitotic divisions that form secondary nuclei that migrate up the stalk and establish themselves in the rays of the cap.

Asexual reproduction is by fragmentation or growth of new thalli from basal rhizoids or regeneration after wounding from grazing herbivores or physical force, such as wave action. Gametangial rays develop thick-walled, operculate cysts by uninucleate aggregations of cytoplasm, and subsequent division of the nuclei produces biflagellate isogametes. The thick-walled cysts are released from the rays and can survive for some time on their own. When conditions are suitable, an ostiole opens in the cyst, and the gametes swim out. Two gametes fuse to form the diploid zygote that settles and develops into a new thallus.

**REMARKS.** Species of *Acetabularia* are quite distinctive with a narrow stalk that bears a beautiful, delicate, parasol-like, discoid, or cup-shaped cap. They are found in tropical to subtropical seas, often in brackish to hypersaline shallow waters. On the basis of the pioneering studies of Woronine (1862) and De Bary and Strasburger (1877) the life history of *Acetabularia* has long been reported to be three years before the reproductive caps with cysts were formed, but more recently, Berger and Liddle (2003) showed the life history can be completed in one growing season.

Three western Atlantic species have also been reported in the southern Gulf of California: *Acetabularia farlowii* Solms-Laubach (1895) and *A. crenulata* J. V. Lamouroux (1816) were reported by Ortega et al. (1987) and Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones (1991). More recently, L. Aguilar-Rosas et al. (2006) added another species, *Acetabularia schenckii* K. Möbius (1889), to Bahía de La Paz and Sinaloa and also added new distribution records of *A. farlowii* to Sinaloa and Pacific Baja California.

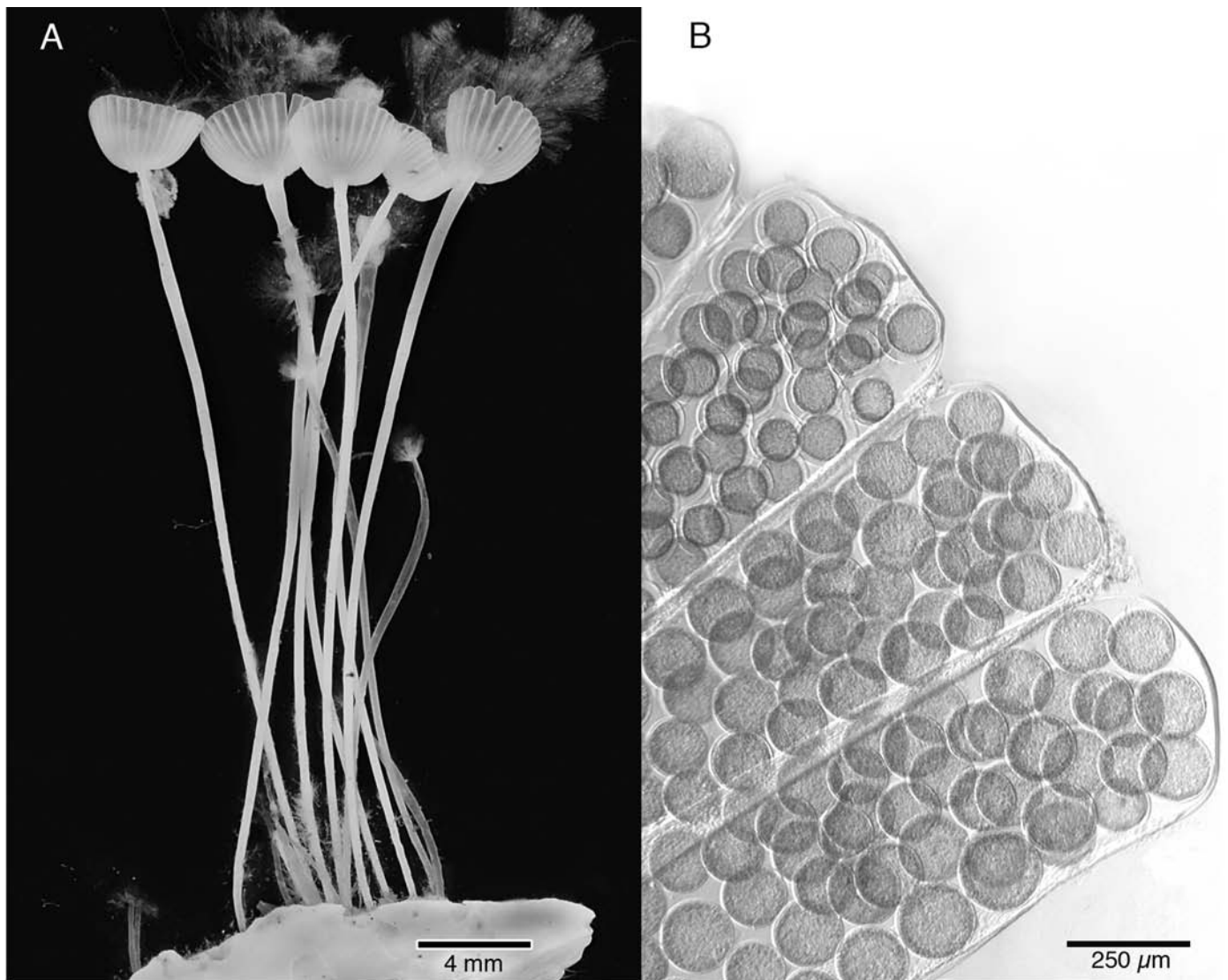
One species is recorded in the upper Gulf of California.

***Acetabularia caliculus* J. V. Lamouroux in Quoy  
et Gaimard**

FIGURE 49A,B

*Acetabularia caliculus* J. V. Lamouroux in Quoy et Gaimard, 1824:621, pl. 90: figs. 6, 7; Yoshida, 1998:154; Berger et al., 2003:527, figs. 8, 31. As *Acetabularia* “*calyculus*”: Dawson, 1954d:396, fig. 13h; Dawson, 1966a:8;

Dawson, 1966b:55; Valet, 1969:617, pl. 44: figs. 7–9; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:127, 132, 136; Womersley, 1971:119, fig. 15; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:340; Womersley, 1984:295, figs. 101B, 102B–D; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:42; González-González et al., 1996:126; Anaya-Reyna and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 1996:862; Núñez-López et al., 1998:39; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:22; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez,



**FIGURE 49.** *Acetabularia caliculus*: A. Cluster of several mature thalli, with calcified stalk and cup-shaped disc of laterally adhering gametangial rays; some discs with central tuft of deciduous hairs (issued from the corona superior) still intact (liquid preserved; EYD-27569). B. Numerous spherical reproductive cysts enclosed in gametangial rays of mature disc; note smooth, truncate outer margin of each ray and faint seam of calcium carbonate along ray lateral margins (US Alg. Coll. slide 5533).

2000:146; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:101; Pedroche et al., 2005:84; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:48; Dreckmann et al., 2006:154.

Alga erect, usually growing in clusters, up to 3 cm tall; a rigid, thin cylindrical calcified stalk with several whorls of ephemeral branched laterals (green when young, later colorless) in upper portion and a subterminal, cup-shaped disc, 3–5(–7) mm in diameter; attached below by a rhizoidal base. Disc solitary of (20–)22–30 laterally adjoined rays; outer margin of rays truncate in most discs or knobbed in some discs. Corona superior with short blunt lobes that each bear 2–3(–4) branched colorless hairs or hair scars; inferior corona inconspicuous, each segment a single blunt lobe beneath the ray at the place of attachment.

When reproductive, each gametangial ray filled with 45–75 spherical cysts containing gametes; each cyst 100–150(–175)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter (US Alg. Coll.-95320, slide 5533).

**HABITAT.** Growing on shells in shell/sand and sand/mud bottoms of rapid flowing tidal channels; mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Bahía Cholla (Choya), vicinity of Puerto Peñasco; Bahía La Paz. Pacific coast: Baja California Sur; Oaxaca to Chiapas; China; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Baie des Chiens-Marins (Shark Bay), Western Australia.

**REMARKS.** *Acetabularia caliculus* is apparently known only from shallow bays in the Gulf of California. The outer margins of the disc rays in the northern Gulf specimens of *A. caliculus* (Figure 49B) are both truncate (in agreement with those reported by Berger and Kaever, 1992) and sometimes knobbed (as observed in *A. caliculus* of Lord Howe Island, Australia; Kraft, 2008: fig. 104C,D). Morphological and molecular studies, such as those of Olsen et al. (1994) and Berger et al. (2003), are needed to test the taxonomy and phylogenetics of Gulf *A. caliculus* in relation to those from the Western Australian type locality.

The original spelling of the species name, *caliculus* (Lamouroux in Quoy and Gaimard, 1824), agrees with the Latin usage (*calix* (L.), a small cup [Brown, 1956]); thus, it is not necessary to change the original spelling to Greek usage, i.e., *calyculus* (*calyx*, *kalyx* [Gr.]).

# PART II: BROWN ALGAE

---

## STRAMENOPILES

Stramenopiles D. J. Patterson, 1989:372.

Stramenopiles are a very large, extremely diverse, group of eukaryotes that range from the microscopic to the largest of all marine plants, and include autotrophs, heterotrophs, and mixotrophs. Most are planktonic or benthic and are found in terrestrial, freshwater, and marine environments, although a few are aerial and some are endosymbionts. The discovery that heterokont algae are related to some nonheterokont algae and to various nonphotosynthetic organisms (including some previously thought to be fungi or protozoa, such as protozoan-like unicells or loosely associated colonies, hypochytrids, water molds, and downy mildews) has led to their being grouped together. The ancestor of the basal Stramenopiles may have been an alga, and then some groups could have arisen through plastid loss or, possibly, branched off before the appearance of plastids within the group. Plastid reduction as well as reacquisition has also occurred in some lineages. Stramenopiles are grouped together on the basis of their cytology and ultrastructure, supported by biochemical and molecular studies (e.g., Moestrup and Andersen, 1991; Williams, 1991a, 1991b; Leipe et al., 1994; Reith, 1995; Medlin et al., 1995, 1997; Saunders et al., 1997; Daughjerg and Andersen, 1997; Delwiche, 1999; Patterson, 1989, 1999; Goertzen and Theriot, 2003; Andersen, 2004a, 2004b; Adl et al., 2005).

Members include both unicellular motile flagellates and multicellular organisms; typically, all members have cells or produce cells with heterokont flagella (two dissimilar flagella) at some point in their life history, e.g., zoospores or gametes. One of the flagella is an anterior tinsel flagellum with mastigonemes (unique three-parted, tubular hair-like structures) in two opposite rows. This feature, together with the flagella typically being supported by four microtubule roots in a distinctive pattern, and mitochondria with tubular cristae are defining characteristics of the Stramenopiles. Most members either have this tinsel flagellum or were derived from organisms that had this type of flagellum. The other flagellum is reverse-directed, smooth, and usually shorter or is reduced to a basal body in some. A few Stramenopiles do not produce cells with the typical

heterokont flagella, and the flagella have been altogether lost in a few lines, most notably the diatoms.

Photosynthetic Stramenopiles include microscopic biflagellated or nonflagellated unicellular, colonial, and loosely filamentous algae (e.g., chrysophytes, diatoms) and multicellular algae that range from siphonous filaments (e.g., *Vaucheria*) to the structurally complex kelps (e.g., *Macrocystis*, *Laminaria*). Some have siliceous scales and spines or silicate skeletons, and their species may also be found in the fossil record; others are without cell walls or scales, and a few may be amoeboid. Cells of stramenopile algae have chloroplasts containing chlorophyll *a* and chlorophylls *c*1 and *c*2 (some may also have *c*3) and, usually, the accessory pigments fucoxanthin, heteroxanthin, vaucheriaxanthin, or violaxanthin. Plastids have three thylakoids per lamellae, lack nucleomorphs, and are surrounded by four membranes; the outermost is continuous with the endoplasmic reticulum. Reserve polysaccharides include chrysolaminarin or laminarin, formed in vesicles outside of the plastid.

**REMARKS.** Classification systems have not always grouped the currently accepted members of the Stramenopiles together (for a review, see Hausmann et al., 2003), and they have been variously placed in the Chromista Cavalier-Smith (1981), Heterokonta Cavalier-Smith (1986), Heterokontophyta Ø. Moestrup (1992), and Protista or Protoctista (e.g., Whittaker, 1969; Margulis et al., 1990; Corliss, 1994; Cavalier-Smith, 1986, 1998; Margulis and Schwartz, 1998). Recently, Adl et al. (2005) recognized the Stramenopiles (Patterson, 1989, 1999) to comprise 20 groups within the Chromalveolata Adl et al. (2005), one of seven clusters of eukaryotes that represent the basic groups (or traditional kingdoms) in their nameless ranked higher-level classification.

One very large multicellular group of Stramenopiles, the Phaeophyceae, is well represented in the Gulf of California.

## PHAEOPHYCEAE

Phaeophyceae Kjellman, 1891:176.

Melanophyceae Rabenhorst, 1863:274.

Fucophyceae Warming, 1884:38, as "Fucoideae."

Phaeophyceae Hansgirg, 1886:17, 27.

The Phaeophyceae (brown algae) are multicellular and exceptionally variable in form and size, ranging from microscopic to macroscopic, and include filamentous, crustose, tubular, globose, and foliose forms and very

large, structurally complex species. The 266 genera comprising the brown algae are almost all marine; only four to five genera occur in freshwater (Wehr and Sheath, 2003). The Phaeophyceae vary in color from light yellow-brown to dark blackish-brown, with a few that are chalky or whitish due to their surface calcification (e.g., some species of *Padina* and *Newhousia* [Kraft et al., 2004]). The class contains the largest of all the algae, with some species of the "giant kelp," *Macrocystis* C. Agardh (1820), up to 70(–100) m long (Foster and Schiel, 1985; Womersley, 1987). Most of the marine brown algae are benthic, often dominating intertidal and subtidal communities, and are found in depths down to 88 m (Littler et al., 1985, 1986); a few apparently live as free-floating forms, e.g., species of *Sargassum* in the Sargasso Sea.

Growth may be apical, intercalary, trichothallic, or diffuse. Phaeophycean hairs are often present. Cells are uninucleate, with the photosynthetic pigments in plastids containing thylakoids in groups of three and with or without a pyrenoid. Plastids are singular or present in various numbers and may be parietal, ribbonlike, or discoid; physodes (vesicles produced within the plastids) are usually present. The photosynthetic pigments, chlorophylls *a*, *c*1, and *c*2, are masked by the accessory pigments  $\beta$  carotene and the xanthophylls (particularly, fucoxanthin, violaxanthin, and diathoxanthin), thus giving the characteristic brown color to the group. Photosynthetic reserves include the soluble carbohydrates laminarin (a beta-linked polymer of glucose) and mannitol. Cell walls are firm and composed of two layers, the inner of cellulose microfibrils and a gelatinous outer layer that contains alginic acid and fucinic acid.

Life histories are either isomorphic, heteromorphic (usually with a larger sporophyte), or diplontic (meiosis to form gametes, e.g., *Fucus*). Sporophytes develop unilocular or plurilocular sporangia; the latter produce more than one spore. Sexual reproduction is isogamous, anisogamous, or oogamous, with parthenogenesis known in some species. Gametangia are typically plurilocular, with the exception being oogamous females. Motile cells (i.e., zoospores and gametes) have two laterally inserted, unequal-length flagella: the larger is anterior tinsel type, and the smaller is posterior whiplash type. However, in the Fucales, the flagella are more or less of equal length, and at least one group, the Dictyotales, produce nonmotile aplanospores and uniflagellate sperm that lack a posterior flagellum.

**REMARKS.** In the northern Gulf of California, the Phaeophyceae have about the same numbers of species as the green algae, but both have fewer species than the red algae. Ecologically, the brown algae generally comprise

the bulk of the northern Gulf's algal biomass, and seasonally, there is greater abundance and more species of brown algae during the winter and spring (see also McCourt, 1984a, 1984b; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b). Three northern Gulf regions that have high brown algal species richness are Puerto Peñasco (Norris, 1975), Bahía de Los Ángeles (Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008), and Bahía de La Paz (L. Aguilar-Rosas and R. Aguilar-Rosas, 1993).

In recent years, the presumed relationships among the brown algae have been somewhat uncertain (e.g., Saunders et al., 1992). The traditional concept, based on morphology and life histories, that the Ectocarpales are basal to the other brown algal orders (e.g., Kylin, 1933;

Papenfuss, 1951, 1955; van den Hoek et al., 1995) has not been supported by molecular analyses, and new systematic relationships have been proposed (e.g., de Reviers and Rousseau, 1999; Rousseau et al., 2001; Draisma et al., 2001, 2002, 2003). The Phaeophyceae, as presented herein, has several subdivisions to reflect the most recent contributions by Cho et al. (2006) and Phillips et al. (2008), which elucidate the evolutionary relationships among the brown algae. These subdivisions are grouped as orders, primarily on the basis of life histories and gene sequence data (see synopsis of ordinal characters given by Adl et al., 2005).

Members of nine of the orders of Phaeophyceae are represented in the northern Gulf of California.

KEY TO THE ORDERS OF THE PHAEOPHYCEAE FOR MEMBERS OCCURRING  
IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Algae crustose (in at least one of its life history phases); plastids without pyrenoids . . . . . 2
- 1b. Algae not crustose; erect, filamentous, or cylindrical, compressed or flattened; plastids with or without pyrenoids . . . . 3
- 2a. Crusts discoid to spreading or initial crustose stage that develops into low-growing clumps of mostly horizontal, short branches; filamentous structure of 2–3 distinct layers; growth by terminal cells of horizontal and erect filaments or intercalary from basal meristems of cortical filaments . . . . . **Ralfsiales**
- 2b. Crusts prostrate, encrusting, multilobed; thin; parenchymatous structure; growth by marginal row of apical cells (sporophyte) . . . . . **Cutleriales, in part**
- 3a. Algae usually small tufts of uniseriate or multiseriate, unbranched to branched free filaments . . . . . 4
- 3b. Algae not tufted; usually moderate to large size and various forms: cylindrical, compressed or flattened; simple to branched; or saccate, subglobose, or foliose; or frondose; some parenchymatous, others of loosely to densely compacted filaments . . . . . 5
- 4a. Uniseriate filaments, simple to branched; growth apical or intercalary, localized or diffuse; ribbon-shaped or discoid plastids with pyrenoid . . . . . **Ectocarpales, in part**
- 4b. Multiseriate branched filaments; growth by single conspicuous apical cell, initially divides transversely, followed by transverse division of subapical cells, then longitudinal divisions, and, in some, secondary transverse divisions; plastids discoid and no pyrenoids. . . . . **Sphacelariales**
- 5a. Growth trichothallic (apical meristem surmounted by filament or tuft of filaments) . . . . . 6
- 5b. Growth not trichothallic; either intercalary, or by a single apical cell, or group or marginal row of apical cells . . . . . 8
- 6a. Algae erect, flat, fan-shaped; growing margin fringed with trichothallic filaments (gametophytes) . . . . **Cutleriales, in part**
- 6b. Algae not fan-shaped; axes and branches either compressed to flat, narrow to broad, apical and lateral meristems with single trichothallic filament or terete (wiry) with apical tufts of trichothallic filaments and determinate branchlets with terminal tufts of filaments . . . . . 7
- 7a. Algae wide, flat blades, simple to sparsely branched blades, or narrow, compressed axes and branches (>1.5 mm wide); growth from apical and lateral meristems with single terminal trichothallic filament . . . . . **Desmarestiales**
- 7b. Algae thin, wiry, terete to subcylindrical axes and branches (<1 mm wide) with terminal tufts of trichothallic filaments and distinctive determinate branchlets with sporangial sori surrounding portion of branchlet below terminal tuft of hairs . . . . . **Sporochnales**
- 8a. Growth intercalary; ribbon-shaped plastids with pyrenoid; internally centrally solid or hollow; medulla filamentous, surrounding a core of uniaxial or multiaxial filaments or of large parenchymatous cells . . . . . **Ectocarpales, in part**
- 8b. Growth by conspicuous or inconspicuous apical cell or a group or row of apical cells; discoid plastids without pyrenoids; internally solid either, parenchymatous with medulla, cortex, and surface meristoderm, or medulla of filament-like hyphae cells and cortical assimilatory filaments, or large squarish to rectangular medullary cells and small cuboidal cortical cells . . . . . 9

- 9a. Algae (Gulf members) of terete axes and branches, leaflike blades, and buoyant vesicles; internally with medulla, cortex, and surface meristoderm; apical cell sunken in terminal pit; gametangia in pitlike conceptacles within receptacles (reproductive branchlets); oogamous reproduction (sporangia lacking) . . . . . **Fucales**
- 9b. Algae not differentiated as above; thallus flat, strap-shaped to bladelike; reproductive structures, including sporangia, on thallus surface (not in pitlike conceptacles) . . . . . 10
- 10a. Algae with a single apical cell or group or marginal row of apical cells; medulla 1 or more layers of large cells, cortex of 1 or more layers of small cells; oogamous reproduction . . . . . **Dictyotales**
- 10b. Algae with an inconspicuous apical cell; medulla of hyphael cells (filament-like), cortex of anticlinal rows of cuboidal cells; isogamous reproduction . . . . . **Ishigeales**

### **ISHIGEALES**

Ishigeales G. Y. Cho et S. M. Boo in G. Y. Cho et al., 2004:934.

Algae are terete, compressed, or foliose branched fronds that arise from a small holdfast or expanded crustose base. Growth is from a small inconspicuous meristematic apical cell. Anatomically, there is a distinct medulla of hyphael cells that connect to adjacent hyphael cells or to the inner cortical cells. The cortex is pseudoparenchymatous, composed of cells of assimilatory filaments. Cortical cells have several discoid plastids but lack pyrenoids (note that although rare, a “rudimentary pyrenoid” has been reported in *I. okamurae* [Cho et al., 2004:921, fig. 5d]). Phaeophycean colorless hairs, originating from the outer medullary cells, are clustered within pits (cryptostomata) on the thallus surface and project above it.

Members have an isomorphic life history. Terminal unilocular sporangia are developed by transformation of cells of the outermost cortical layer and produce spores. Uniseriate plurilocular sporangia (gametangia) that lack sterile terminal cells originate from the assimilatory filaments and produce isogametes.

**REMARKS.** Species of *Ishige* may grow attached to hard substrate or be epiphytic on other algae. The life history is presumed to be isomorphic (Tanaka, 1993; Hori, 1993; Cho et al., 2004; Kawai et al., 2005). In culture studies of *I. okamurae* from Japan, Ajisaka (1989) reported biflagellated spores, produced from plurilocular structures on the macrothalli, that developed into discs. The discs grew profusely branched filaments that later developed into the erect, dichotomously branched macrothalli. In contrast, Arasaki (1943, as “*I. foliaceae*”) reported a heteromorphic life history in the culture study of Japanese *I. sinicola*; however, the culture may have been contaminated, making the results doubtful (see Kawai et al., 2005).

Currently, the Ishigeales contains one family. Recent molecular phylogenetic studies of Lim et al. (2007) showed

another genus, *Diplura* Hollenberg (1969; Tanaka and Chihara, 1981b), was also close to the Ishigeales and suggested that the genus be removed from the Ralfsiaceae (Ralfsiales) and placed in a new family within the Ishigeales.

The single family is represented in the northern Gulf of California.

### **ISHIGEACEAE**

Ishigeaceae Okamura in Segawa, 1935:65.

Ishigeaceae is a monotypic family that has the characteristics of its only genus, *Ishige*.

**REMARKS.** Although the Ishigeaceae has been usually placed in the Chordariales (e.g., Yoshida, 1998), the family was shown to have a distant phylogenetic relationship with the Chordariales (or Ectocarpales sensu lato) and to have diverged early in the phaeophycean lineage (Kawai et al., 2005), basal to the other brown algal orders (Cho et al., 2004, 2006; Phillips et al., 2008). On the basis of its unique morphological, molecular, and ultrastructural features, Cho et al. (2004) established an order for the family.

The family is represented in the northern Gulf of California by one species of *Ishige*.

### ***Ishige* Yendo**

*Ishige* Yendo, 1907:154.

Algae are erect, filiform, or compressed to complanate, dichotomously to subdichotomously branched fronds above a short stipe that is attached below by a discoid holdfast. Small hair pits (cryptostomata) are present on thallus surfaces, with phaeophycean hairs developing from the cells of the medulla, or lowermost cortical cells. Internally, the medulla is composed of intertwined, usually dense, colorless, hyphael cells (appearing filament-like), a subcortical layer of pseudoparenchymatous cells, and an



outer cortex of assimilatory filaments (rows of anticlinally arranged small pigmented cells). Pyrenoids are absent in *I. sinicola*, and in *I. okamurae* they are “rudimentary” (Cho et al., 2004) and very rarely observed (Hori, 1971).

Unilocular sporangia and uniseriate plurilocular sporangia are either on the same thallus or on separate thalli. Both structures are found in the upper portions of branch segments. The unilocular sporangia are terminal, developing from the outermost cells of assimilatory filaments. Plurilocular sporangia originate from the assimilatory filaments, lack any sterile terminal cells, and are in uniseriate rows within sori (reported from Japanese *I. foliacea* [Lee et al., 2003])

**REMARKS.** Although the external habit of *Ishige* is somewhat similar to some members of the Dictyotaceae, they are easily separated by their internal vegetative anatomy. Species of *Ishige* have a medulla of entangled hyphael cells (appearing filamentous) and a cortex of assimilatory filaments, whereas the medulla of members of the Dictyotaceae is composed of one or more layers of large cells and a cortical layer of one to several small cells.

Interestingly, of the three known species, the northern Gulf *I. sinicola* is found on hard substratum, whereas *I. foliacea* of eastern Asia (Japan, China, Taiwan and Korea), may be either epilithic or epiphytic on *I. okamurae* (Cho et al., 2004).

There is one species, apparently endemic, described from the northern Gulf of California.

### ***Ishige sinicola* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Chihara**

FIGURE 50A,B

*Polyopes sinicola* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:784, pl. 28: fig. 61, pl. 42b; Dawson, 1954c:267.

*Ishige sinicola* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Chihara, 1969:3, fig. 2; Hommersand, 1972:70; Littler and Littler, 1981:151, tbl. 3, figs. 4–6; González-González et al., 1996:153; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:132; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49, 58; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:203; Pedroche et al. 2008:59; K. M. Lee et al. 2009: [in press], fig. 3 A–E.

*Carpopeltis sinicola* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Kylin, 1956:221.

*Ishige foliacea* sensu Dawson, 1944:234, pl. 53: fig. 2; Dawson, 1954c:267; Dawson, 1960c:98; Dawson, 1961b:394; Dawson, 1966a:10; Norris, 1973:6 [non *Ishige foliacea* Okamura in Segawa, 1935:65; Okamura, 1936:239, figs. 130: 1, 2, 5, fig. 131; which is

*Ishige okamurae* sensu Yendo, 1907 (in part; only the foliose type):155, pl. II: figs. 1–3, 5, 6, 8; and non *Ishige okamurae* Yendo, 1907, as “*I. okamurai*” (only the filiform type):154].

Algae erect, dark brown to blackish-brown, with flat, straplike, regularly to irregularly dichotomously branched fronds, up to 10 cm tall and up to 6 mm wide; arising from a crustose holdfast. Branch segments, after the dichotomy either more or less same length or one longer than the other; branches becoming narrower in width upwards. Medulla dense; of colorless, entangled hyphael cells. Cortex of filaments of up to 10–13 small cuboidal cells in anticlinal rows; in transection, cortical filaments shorter near thallus apices, up to 50 µm thick, becoming thicker and of more cells below, 70–140 µm in middle portion and 120–165 µm thick near stipe. Cryptostomata are rare; they contain only a few phaeophycean hairs (produced from lowermost cortical cells), a small number of which may project above thallus surface. Pyrenoids absent.

Unilocular sporangia terminal on cortical filament (Dawson, 1944). Plurilocular sporangia unknown in northern Gulf material.

**HABITAT.** On rocks; midtidal to lowermost intertidal; occasionally in the shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Ensenada Bocochoibampo (northeast of Guaymas).

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Isla Partida, Las Islas de la Cintura, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** In Mexico, the distribution of *Ishige sinicola* is apparently restricted to the northern Gulf. According to Pedroche et al. (2008) the southern Gulf record from La Paz was erroneously attributed to Dawson (1960c) by Riosmena-Rodriguez and Paul-Chávez (1997). A perennial species, it is most abundant, with the broadest fronds, during the winter and least abundant, with the narrowest fronds, in summer (Dawson, 1941, 1944).

Dawson (1944, as “*I. foliacea*”) noted that northern Gulf and Japanese specimens were similar in habit, and later that another species, *Polyopes sinicola* Setchell et N.L. Gardner (1924a), was incorrectly described as a red alga and was actually the same as the Gulf *I. foliacea* (Dawson 1954c). Later Chihara (1969) made the combination *I. sinicola* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Chihara and considered it to be conspecific with *I. foliacea*.

*Ishige sinicola* was one of the Gulf species thought to have a disjunct distribution, known only in the Gulf of California and Japan/eastern Asia (Dawson, 1960c; Yoshida, 1998; Kitayama, 2006; Pedroche et al., 2008).

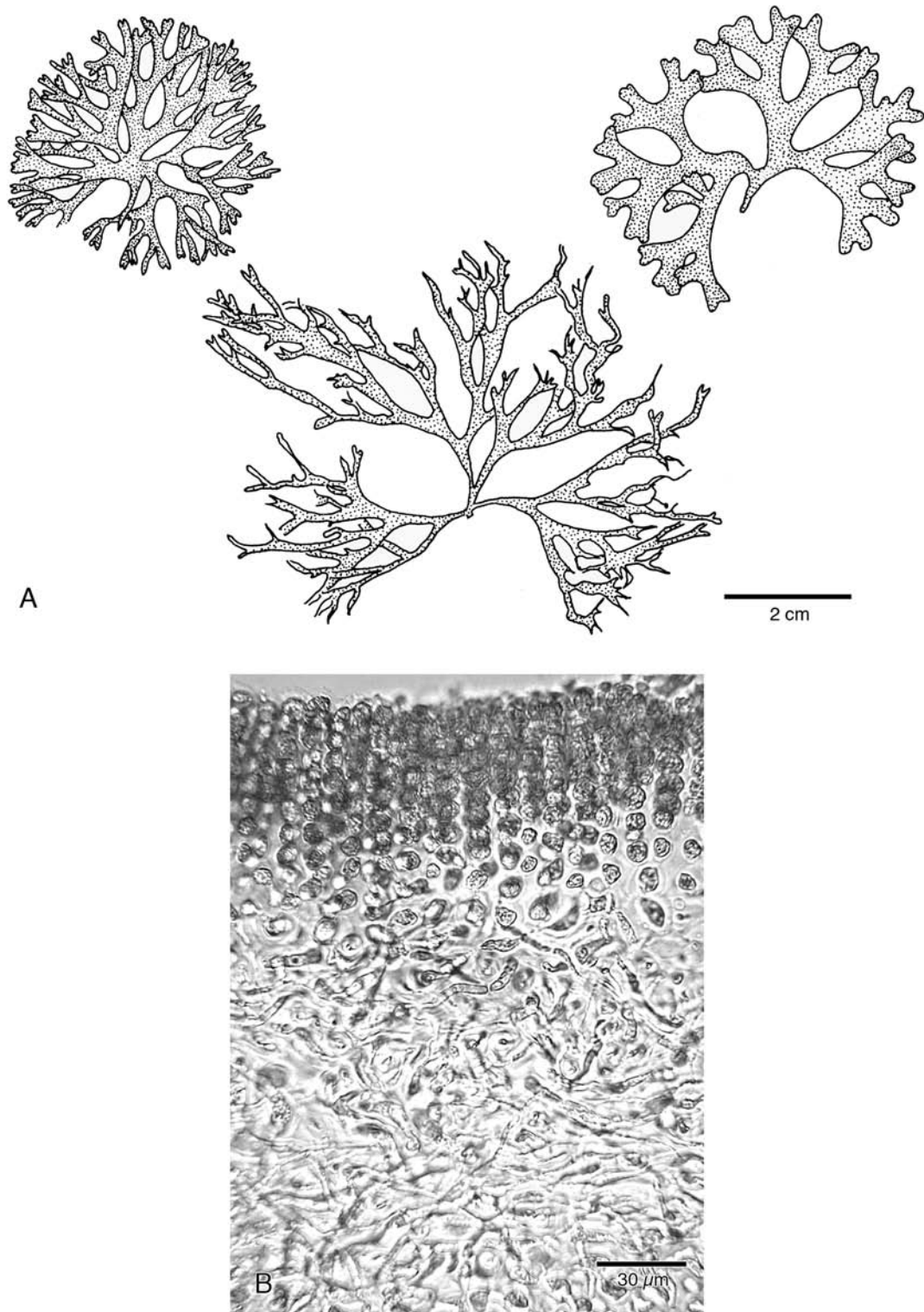


FIGURE 50. *Ishige sinicola*: A. Specimens illustrating variation in morphology (JN-2980, JN-4621, and JN-4166). B. Portion of a transection from lower part of frond; note medulla of entangled hyphae cells and anticlinal rows of cortical filaments (JN-5824).

Collections from Japan, Korea and the northern Gulf were recently studied by K. M. Lee et al. (2009). Their molecular analyses showed the northern Gulf *I. sinicola* to be distinct from *I. okamurae*, and those reported as “*I. sinicola*” from Japan (e.g., Yoshida, 1998) and Korea (E.-Y. Lee et al., 2003; Kawai et al. 2005) for which they reinstated *I. foliacea* (K. M. Lee et al. 2009). Other east Asian (western Pacific) records of “*I. sinicola*,” such as those reported from China (Tseng, 1983) and Taiwan (Lewis and Norris, 1987) need to be investigated, and are probably *I. foliacea* as well.

### SPHACELARIALES SENSU STRICTO

Sphacelariales Migula, 1908:173, 237.

Sphacelariales Oltmanns, 1922:83.

Algae are erect, terete, unbranched or branched filaments that are attached by a mono- or polystromatic discoid holdfast or creeping basal filaments (rhizoids or stolons) or aggregated cells endophytic in a host. Filaments are uncorticated in some species or corticated by rhizoidal growth in others. In the species that branch, there are few to many determinate or indeterminate branches. Growth is by a prominent apical cell that, at first, divides transversely to form a short apical region; below this region the cells longitudinally divide (except in *Sphacella*) to develop the characteristic pseudoparenchymatous filament. In some taxa these longitudinal segments may also undergo secondary transverse divisions and either do not enlarge or may continue to grow in length and width. Hairs are known in some. Cells contain several discoid chloroplasts without pyrenoids.

Vegetative reproduction can be by fragmentation or by propagules (specialized branchlets). Life histories, where known, are isomorphic or slightly heteromorphic. Sporophytic and gametophytic thalli are similar in appearance. Unilocular sporangia (zoidangia) produce zoospores, and neutral plurilocular sporangia produce neutral spores. Sexual reproduction is isogamous, anisogamous, or oogamous. Plurilocular gametangia produce isogametes or anisogametes. Unilocular oogonia develop an oogonium.

**REMARKS.** Most of the species are marine, with only one known from freshwater (Prud'homme van Reine, 1993). Three families are usually recognized in the Sphacelariales. On the basis of molecular and morphological analyses of members from these three families, Draisma et al. (2002) found problems in resolving their phylogenetic relationships and discussed alternative circumscriptions.

There is one family represented in the Gulf of California.

### SPHACELARIACEAE

Sphacelariaceae Decaisne, 1842a:329, 341.

Algae are small to medium sized, usually erect, and filamentous, and may either be solitary individuals or form tufts or mats. Thalli arise from a rhizoidal or stoloniferous base or a mono- or polystromatic discoid holdfast. The filament-like main axes and branches are similar and either uncorticated or corticated. The cortication may be formed by rhizoids or by short branchlets growing from the axis. Growth of the erect filaments is by transverse division of the single apical cell, and in most genera, subsequent segments are formed by longitudinal divisions below the apical region in a regular and characteristic fashion. This produces few to many longitudinal cell walls in regular transverse tiers. Secondary transverse divisions occur in the longitudinal segments of some species. There is no secondary growth in the secondary segments.

Life histories, where known, are isomorphic or slightly heteromorphic. Reproduction is by unilocular and plurilocular sporangia, which are apparently rare. There is also vegetative reproduction by propagules (e.g., *Sphacelaria* subgen. *Propagulifera*) or fragmentation, and parthenogenesis has been reported from “neutral” plurilocular and unilocular gametangia. Species are dioecious (some probably are monoecious), with plurilocular gametangia that produce isogametes or anisogametes.

**REMARKS.** In contrast to *Sphacelaria*, the only other genus in the Sphacelariaceae, *Sphacella* Reinke (1890), is composed of only monosiphonous filaments (lacking longitudinal divided segments or secondary transverse divisions), but this genus has not been found in the Gulf of California.

One genus is represented in the northern Gulf of California.

### *Sphacelaria* Lyngbye in Hornemann

*Sphacelaria* Lyngbye in Hornemann, 1818:pl. 1600.

*Sphacelaria* Lyngbye, 1819:xxxii, 103.

Algae are erect, terete filaments that form small, sometimes bushy, tufts that grow on rocks attached by small discoid holdfasts or are epiphytic and attached by spreading or penetrating rhizoids. Filaments may be unbranched or sparsely to densely branched with determinate or indeterminate branches and with or without corticating rhizoids. Phaeophycean hairs are commonly found on some species but are absent on others. Growth is by a usually

conspicuous meristematic apical cell on the axes and lateral branches that at first divides transversely and later divides below the initial apical segments by longitudinal divisions that produce more and smaller cells in the tiers without increasing the filament diameter. Additionally, secondary transverse divisions may occur in the longitudinal segment cells of some species. Cells have numerous discoid plastids and are without pyrenoids.

Vegetative reproduction by propagules is common in some of the species (i.e., *S.* subgen. *Propagulifera*). The features of the propagules (e.g., various sizes, shapes, and numbers of the lateral apical cells and central apical cell) are important characters for discriminating the taxa and are generally species specific. Sporophytic and gametophytic algae are nearly identical in vegetative structure. Unilocular sporangia (zoidangia), neutral plurilocular sporangia, and plurilocular gametangia are on separate individuals, or several kinds may occur together on the same alga.

**REMARKS.** Three species are reported in the southern Gulf. *Sphacelaria brevicornis* Setchell et N. L. Gardner (1924a, as "*Sphacelaria brevicorne*") was described from La Paz and has again been reported from there (Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985). Dawson (1944), in agreement with Setchell and Gardner (1924a), noted *S. brevicornis* from Isla Espiritu Santo was similar to *S. cornuta* Sauvageau (1901). However, Prud'homme van Reine (1982) thought *S. brevicornis* was probably the same as *S. tribuloides* but later considered *S. brevicornis* to be of uncertain taxonomic position (Prud'homme van Reine, 1993). The others were *S. divaricata* Montagne (1849; Riosmena-Rodríguez and Paul-Chávez, 1997, as "*S. didichotoma*"), and an unidentified species, reported by Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones (1991, as "*Sphacelaria* sp.>").

There are four species known in the northern Gulf of California.

#### KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *SPHACELARIA* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Propagules slender (Y-shaped), the upper end with 2(–3) projecting, long, thin, cylindrical unbranched arms (*S.* subgen. *Propagulifera* sect. *Furcigeræ*) ..... *S. rigidula*
- 1b. Propagules without projecting arms; stout, tribuliform (more or less triangular), broader at upper end with 1 central and 2–3 lateral rounded to pointed apical cells (*S.* subgen. *Propagulifera* sect. *Tribuloides*) ..... 2
- 2a. Axes unbranched or sparsely branched; secondary transverse walls absent within longitudinal segment cells; mature propagules with protruding, relatively pointed lateral apical cells (conical horns) ..... *S. tribuloides*
- 2b. Axes branched, often densely, in either the upper or lower portions; secondary transverse walls absent or present within longitudinal segment cells; propagules with nonprotruding to slightly protruding lateral apical cells ..... 3
- 3a. Main axes usually without branches in lower portions, often dense with laterals above; secondary transverse cell walls occasional within longitudinal segments; propagules with round, conical, slightly protruding lateral apical cells [Figure 52A] ..... *S. californica*
- 3b. Main axes densely branched from base, only sparsely branched above; secondary transverse cell walls absent; propagules with 2 rectangular, nonprotruding (to barely) protruding lateral apical cells [Figure 52B] ..... *S. hancockii*

#### ***Sphacelaria* subgen. *Propagulifera* sect. *Furcigeræ* Prud'homme van Reine**

*Sphacelaria* subgen. *Propagulifera* sect. *Furcigeræ*  
Prud'homme van Reine, 1982:203.

Erect filaments are irregularly branched and arise above a monostromatic discoid base or stolons or rhizoids. Lateral branches are of similar morphology to the axes and have indeterminate growth. Propagules are cylindrical with long arms. The subapical cell is divided unequally and diagonally.

#### ***Sphacelaria rigidula* Kützing**

FIGURE 51A–C

*Sphacelaria rigidula* Kützing, 1843:292; Kützing, 1855:25, pl. 86: fig. 1; De Toni, 1895a:50; Prud'homme van Reine, 1982:203, figs. 508–554; R. Aguilar-Rosas and Machado Galindo, 1990:188; Yoshida et al., 1990:281; Stewart, 1991:51; González-González, 1993:443; León-Tejera and González-González, 1993:498; León-Tejera et al., 1993:200; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:50; Prud'homme van Reine, 1993:149; Servièrre-Zaragoza

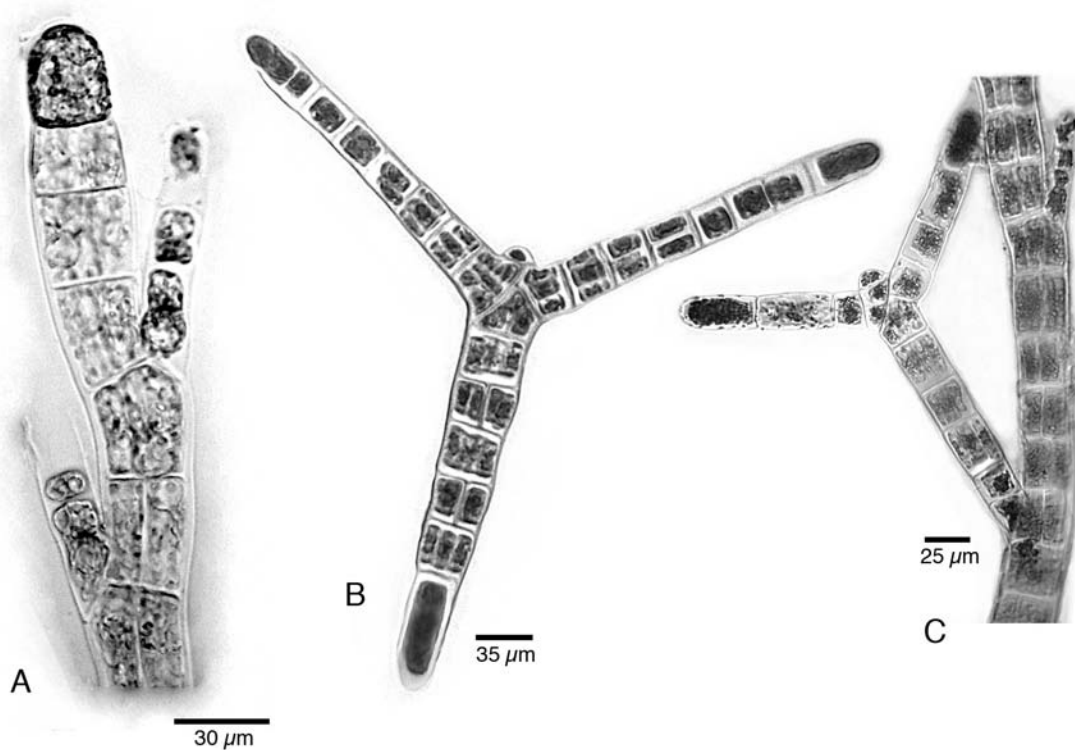


FIGURE 51. *Sphacelaria rigidula*: A. Upper part of filament with prominent apical cell, below the secondary segments with longitudinal walls, and two phaeophyceyan hairs (JN-4041). B. Y-shaped mature propagule (JN-3271). C. Erect filament with young propagule and a phaeophyceyan hair (JN-3715).

et al., 1993:482; Kitayama, 1994:72, figs. 22–28; González-González et al., 1996:300; Yoshida, 1998:200, fig. 2-3 D; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:132; Mendoza-González et al., 2000:27, figs. 34–37; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002:235; Lipkin and Silva, 2002:41; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:190, fig. 72C; López et al., 2004:10; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2005b:35; Keum et al., 2005:4, figs. 1–12; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:101; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49, 57; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:8; Pedroche et al., 2008:33.

*Sphacelaria furcigera* Kützing, 1855:27, pl. 90: fig. 2; Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:724, pl. 19: fig. 58; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:396, pl. 37: fig. 29; Setchell and Gardner, 1930:138; Dawson, 1944:224; Dawson, 1951:52; Dawson, 1954d:400, fig. 14h; Dawson, 1957b:9; Dawson, 1959a:18; Dawson, 1959c:4; Dawson et al., 1960a:10; Dawson, 1966a:10; Dawson and Neushul, 1966:174; van den Hoek and Flinterman, 1968:193; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:218, fig. 181; Pacheco-Ruíz, 1982:70; Stewart, 1982:54; Schnetter and Bula Meyer, 1982:59, pl. 8: fig. I; Stewart and

Stewart, 1984:141; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:44; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:41; González-González et al., 1996:299; Hoffmann and Santelices, 1997:138, fig. 34.

Algae small filamentous tufts, up to 1 cm tall; axes and branches uniseriate near tips, each with a conspicuous apical cell; cells below multiseriate with 1–7 longitudinal walls per segment in side view; attached by rhizoidal filaments or discoid base. Axes sparsely, irregularly branched; axes and branches of similar diameter, (16–)25–45  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; segments as long as or longer than wide. Secondary transverse cell walls occasional within longitudinal sections of segments. Phaeophyceyan hairs present.

Propagules Y-shaped; stalk basally narrowed, terminally with a slightly protruding central apical cell, and 2(–3) lateral, long, slender, cylindrical arms of more or less the same length (170–400  $\mu\text{m}$ ) and diameter (20–25  $\mu\text{m}$ ); each arm with a conspicuous apical cell. Unilocular sporangia on 1-cell pedicel, mostly spherical, 55–80  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Plurilocular sporangia on 1-cell pedicel,

elongate-ovoid, 55–63  $\mu\text{m}$  long and 40–50  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; two kinds, one with numerous small locules, another with fewer and larger locules (“male and female gametangia” of Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:pl. 19, fig. 58).

**HABITAT.** Partially endophytic within host cells and epiphytic above host surface; on various algae, notably on *Sargassum* and *Padina*, and epizoic on a parrotfish “beak” (Dawson, 1959a); mid intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: El Colorado to Ensenada de San Francisco (vicinity of Guaymas); La Paz to Punta Palmilla (vicinity of San José del Cabo). Pacific coast: Alaska to southern California; Isla Guadalupe; Punta de la Asunción, Baja California Sur to Oaxaca; Isla San Benedicto (Islas Revillagigedo); Clipperton Island; Costa Rica; Colombia; Chile; Hawaiian Islands; Korea; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** On *Cystoseira triquetra*, Nuweiba, Sinai, on the Gulf of Aqaba, Red Sea, Egypt.

**REMARKS.** *Sphacelaria rigidula* is a relatively common epiphyte during the spring in the Gulf. It has been widely reported in temperate to tropical waters as “*S. furcigera*” (Prud’homme van Reine, 1982). A Pacific coast species, *S. subfusca* Setchell et N. L. Gardner (1924b) from southern California, is morphologically close to *S. rigidula*. Although *S. subfusca* was considered to be a synonym of *S. rigidula* (Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976; Kitayama, 1994), it was kept as a separate species by Prud’homme van Reine (1982).

***Sphacelaria* subgen. *Propagulifera*  
sect. *Tribuloides* Prud’homme van Reine**

*Sphacelaria* subgen. *Propagulifera* sect. *Tribuloides*  
Prud’homme van Reine, 1982:178.

Algae erect filaments, composed of axes that are more or less pinnately to irregularly branched, arising above a monostromatic or polystromatic discoid base, or stolons or rhizoids. Propagules are tribuliform (i.e., more or less triangular-shaped), broader at upper end, with 1 central and 2 lateral apical cells.

**REMARKS.** Keum et al. (1999) found two types of division sequences of the upper lateral apical cells of the propagule that produced their shape and number of cell segments below the propagule waist: (1) round, produced by oblique divisions to form round, conical protruding (horned) apical cells (i.e., Asian *S. californica*; see Keum et al., 1999: figs. 33–36; Figure 52A herein), and (2) rectangular, developed by an initial longitudinal and then a transverse division to form rectangular, nonprotruding

(flat) apical cells (for examples, see Keum et al., 1999: fig. 37 of Asian *S. californica* and also figs. 51–53 of Asian *S. novae-hollandica*; see also *S. hancockii* in Figure 52B herein). The number of segments under the waist of propagule (cf. Keum et al., 1999:fig. 33 versus Figure 52 herein) also affects the shape of the propagule.

Specimens of species recorded from the Gulf of California, along with type and type locality specimens of European *S. tribuloides*, southern California *S. californica*, and Gulf *S. hancockii*, need critical comparative morphological, molecular, and phylogenetic analyses to resolve their taxonomic status.

Three species are currently known in the northern Gulf of California.

***Sphacelaria californica* (Sauvageau)  
Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURE 52A

*Sphacelaria plumula* var. *californica* Sauvageau, 1901:108, fig. 21.

*Sphacelaria californica* (Sauvageau) Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1925:395, pl. 37: figs. 23–27; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:216, fig. 179; Boo and Chou, 1986:99, figs. 16–22; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:41; Yoshida et al., 1990:281; Kitayama et al., 1991:189–193, figs. 1–22; Stewart, 1991:51; Prud’homme van Reine, 1993:150; Kitayama, 1994:52, figs. 7–11, 56G; González-González et al., 1996:164; Yoshida, 1998:197, fig. 2-3 G; Draisma et al., 1998:186–187, tbl. 2; Keum et al., 1999:24, figs. 1–41; Mendoza-González et al., 2000:25, figs. 12–15; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002:132; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:101; Servière-Zaragoza et al., 2007:8; Pedroche et al. 2008 (in part; *S. californica* only):31.

*Sphacelaria tribuloides* sensu De A. Saunders, 1898:158, pl. 26: figs. 1–8 [non *Sphacelaria tribuloides* Meneghini, 1840:[2]].

Algae filamentous tufts, relatively stiff, up to 2.0 cm tall; main axes 25–50  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter in lower portion, widening to 60–95  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter in midportions; lower portion without laterals or only very few; attached by small polystromatic disc or, if epiphytic, by rhizoids. Upper portions of axes irregularly branched (sometimes more or less pinnate) with primary and secondary lateral branches; laterals narrowed at base. Apical cell prominent, 40–60  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, 90–200  $\mu\text{m}$  long; uppermost segments of uniseriate cells; segments below multiseriate, longitudinally divided by 1–5 walls; occasionally, longitudinal divided

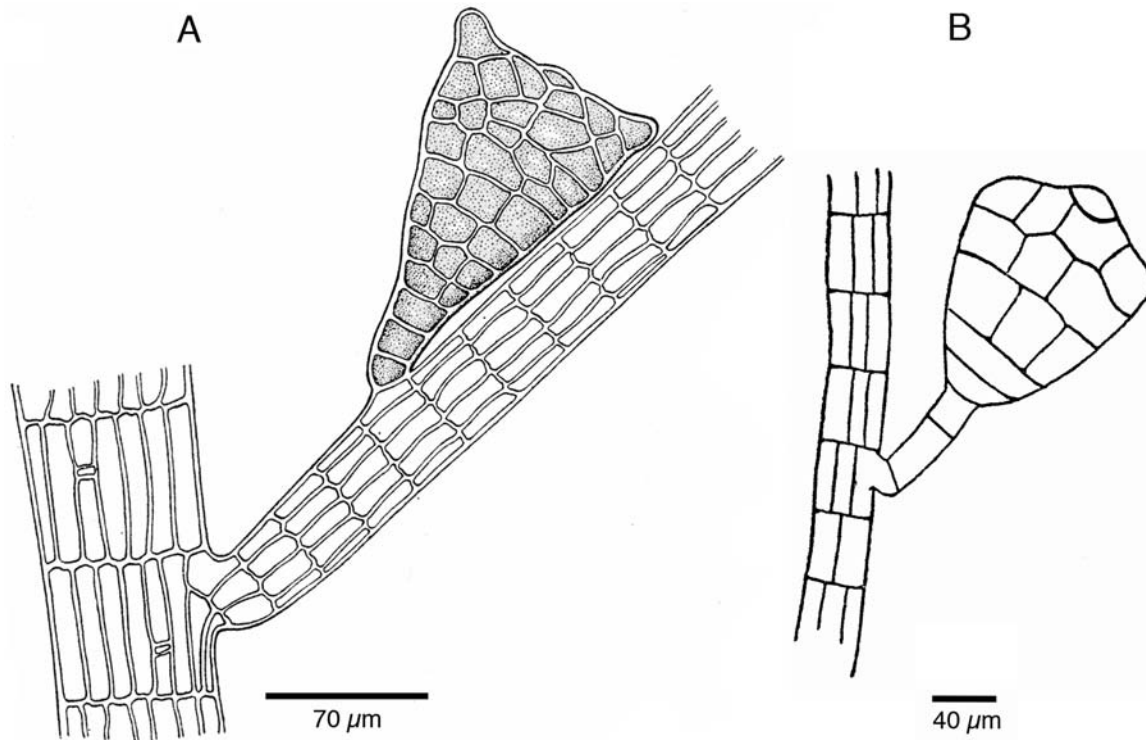


FIGURE 52. Two species of *Sphacelaria*. A. *Sphacelaria californica*: Propagule with lateral, rounded, slightly protruding apical cells and filament with both longitudinal divisions and two secondary transverse divisions in surface view (after Setchell and Gardner, 1925: pl. 37, fig. 7). B. *Sphacelaria hancockii*: Propagule with two lateral, rectangular, nonprotruding apical cells and filament without secondary transverse divisions (drawn from type specimen, EYD-[1940]-643, after Dawson, 1944: pl. 31, fig. 8).

cells with a few secondary transverse walls. Phaeophycean hairs may be absent or sparse to abundant.

Propagules ellipsoidal when young, tribuliform when mature, 140–170  $\mu\text{m}$  long, 80–105  $\mu\text{m}$  wide; with 1 central and 2 lateral, slightly protruding, round, conical apical cells (Figure 52A). Unilocular sporangia, spherical to oval, 40–50  $\mu\text{m}$  long, 30–50  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Plurilocular sporangia obovate, borne on a 1-celled pedicel, 30–40  $\mu\text{m}$  by 50–70  $\mu\text{m}$ .

**HABITAT.** On rocks and in tide pools; high to mid intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puertecitos to San José del Cabo. Pacific coast: Isla Guadalupe; southern California to southernmost Baja California Sur; Islas Revillagigedo; Jalisco to Colima; China; Korea; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** San Diego, San Diego County, California.

**REMARKS.** Gulf records of *Sphacelaria californica* (L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005) were not seen by the author; the description is based on Setchell and Gardner (1925), and the sporangia

are based on Kitayama (1994). Although Kitayama et al. (1991) referred to this taxon as “*S. californica* Sauvageau ex Setchell et Gardner,” Sauvageau (1901:108) validly published this taxon as a variety, *S. plumula* var. *californica*. However, in the same publication, Sauvageau (1901:109), as “*Sphacelaria californica*?” also suggested it was possibly a species by referring to it with a taxonomic query, but the first valid combination of the taxon as a species was made by Setchell and Gardner (1925).

### ***Sphacelaria hancockii* E. Y. Dawson**

FIGURE 52B

*Sphacelaria hancockii* E. Y. Dawson, 1944:225, pl. 31: fig. 8; Dawson, 1954e:325; Dawson, 1959a:8, 18; Dawson et al., 1960a:12; Dawson, 1961b:387; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:135; Huerta-Múzquiz and GarzaBarrientos, 1975:7; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:141; González-González et al., 1996:164; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:132.

*Sphacelaria mexicana* W. R. Taylor, 1945:86, pl. 3: figs. 1–8; Dawson, 1954e:325; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:8.

*Sphacelaria californica* sensu [in part, with reference Gulf of California *S. hancockii* specimens only] Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:216; Mendoza-González et al., 2000:25; Pedroche et al., 2008:31 [non *Sphacelaria californica* (Sauvageau) Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1925:395].

Small filamentous tufts, up to 12 mm tall, densely branched from base and sparsely, irregularly branched above; attached to rock by dense mat of entangled rhizoids. Erect filaments (30–)40–50(–60)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; segments about as long as wide, with 1–3(–4) longitudinal divisions in side view, secondary transverse cell walls not seen. Phaeophycean hairs abundant, up to 10 cells long; 0.5–1.0 mm long and to 15  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter.

Propagules bibuliform (as seen from below or the top) and tribuliform (triangular-shaped, as seen in side view), borne on pedicels of 2–3 cells, 100–110  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 75–90  $\mu\text{m}$  wide; upper end with 1 central and 2 lateral rectangular, flat apical cells, either not protruding (Figure 52B) or only barely protruding.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, sometimes entangled with other turf algae, such as *Cladophora*, *Ectocarpus*, or *Ceramium*; mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puertecitos to Isla Turners (off southern end of Isla Tiburón); Isla Carmén; San José del Cabo; Mazatlán, Sinaloa. Pacific coast: Isla Guadalupe; Bahía Sebastián Vizcaíno to Punta Abrejos, Baja California; Isla San Benedicto and Isla Socorro (Islas Revillagigedo); Colima to Oaxaca.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** San José del Cabo, Baja California Sur.

**REMARKS.** Dawson (1954e), in reporting *S. hancockii* from Baja California, noted that it and *S. mexicana* W. R. Taylor from Pacific Mexico both had bibuliform propagules (cf. Taylor, 1945:pl. 3: fig. 7) and considered the latter to be a synonym.

*Sphacelaria hancockii* may be related to *S. californica* and has been considered to be a synonym (Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976; Mendoza-González et al., 2000). However, the two differ morphologically: *S. hancockii* is densely branched basally and sparsely above; has narrower filaments, 30–60  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; and has smaller propagules, 100–110  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 75–90  $\mu\text{m}$  wide. *S. californica* usually has no branches below and is densely branched above; has mostly larger diameter filaments, 40–95  $\mu\text{m}$ ; and has longer propagules, 140–170  $\mu\text{m}$  by 80–105  $\mu\text{m}$ . Detailed studies of propagule development, along with vegetative

differences of Gulf *S. hancockii*, Gulf *S. californica*, and the type of *S. californica*, are required to determine if the characteristics differ consistently enough to be considered separate species (see Remarks under *Sphacelaria* subgen. *Propagulifera* sect. *Tribuloides*).

For now, it seems best to recognize them as different species, until more collections are made, especially of reproductive material, to facilitate detailed studies, including molecular and phylogenetic analyses to test the status of the Gulf taxon.

### *Sphacelaria tribuloides* Meneghini

FIGURE 53A–C

*Sphacelaria tribuloides* Meneghini, 1840:[2]; Dawson, 1959a:5, 18; Dawson, 1961b:387; Huerta-Muzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:127, 130; Prud'homme van Reine, 1982:179, figs. 422–454; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:44; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:50; Yoshida et al., 1990:28; Prud'homme van Reine, 1993:149; González-González, 1993:443; León-Tejera et al., 1993:204; León-Tejera and González-González, 1993:498; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Kitayama, 1994:59, figs. 12–15; González-González et al., 1996:300, 381; Yoshida, 1998:202, fig. 2-3 E; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:132; Mendoza-González et al., 2000:28, figs. 38–41; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:190, fig. 72D,E; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49, 57; Pedroche et al., 2008:34.

Algae forming tufts of relatively stiff filaments; axes mostly unbranched or only sparsely, irregularly branched; axes and branches 25–50(–70)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; attached below by discoid or stoloniferous base. Segments of axes and branches 25–60  $\mu\text{m}$  in length; segments below uppermost uniseriate segments with 1–3(–5) longitudinal divisions in side view, each section 5–12  $\mu\text{m}$  wide. Secondary transverse cell walls within longitudinal divided sections not present. Phaeophycean hairs often present.

Propagules tribuliform, borne on pedicels of 1–3 cells, 90–130  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 80–110  $\mu\text{m}$  wide, upper end with 1 central apical cell and 2 large lateral apical cells, slightly protruding to somewhat apparent conical horns.

**HABITAT.** On rocks or epiphytic; intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Playa Santa Teresa to Puerto Peñasco; Bahía Concepción to Isla San Diego. Pacific coast: Guerrero to Oaxaca; Isla Socorro (Islas Revillagigedo); Hawaiian Islands; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** La Spezia (Spèsa), on the Ligurian Sea, northern Italy.



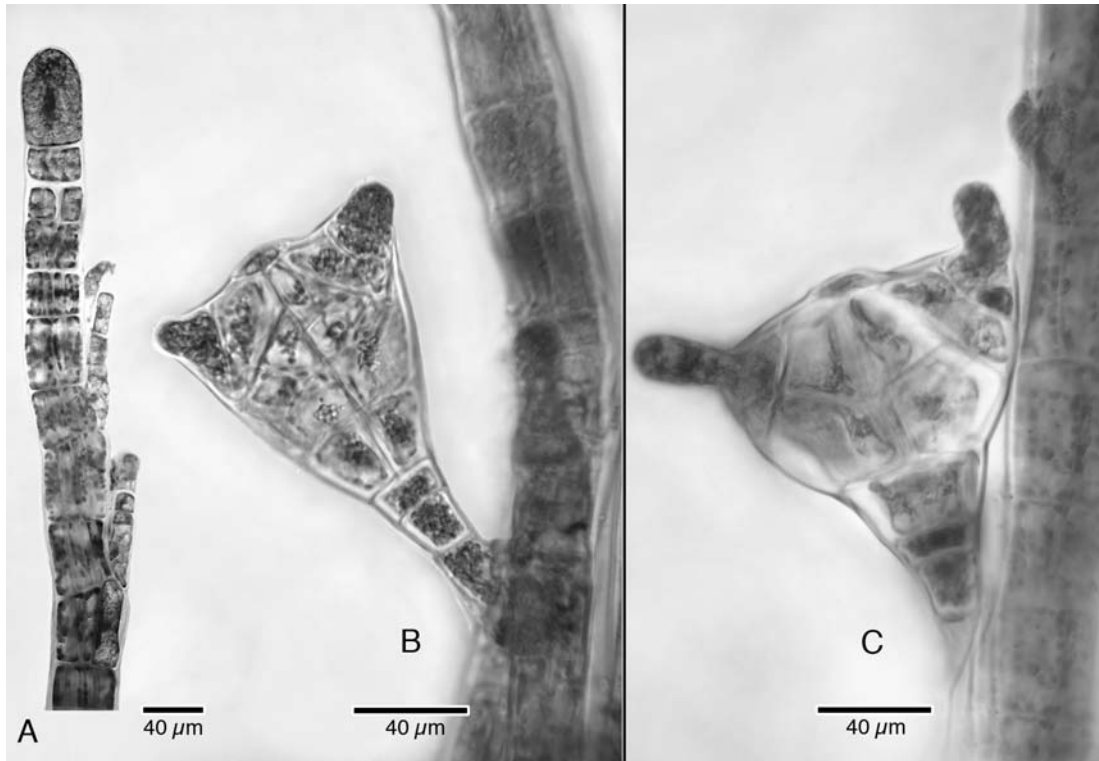


FIGURE 53. *Sphacelaria tribuloides*: A. Prominent apical cell of erect filament and secondary segments with longitudinal walls. B. Propagule with two lateral rounded protruding apical cells. C. Mature propagule with lateral apical cells elongated to conical horns. A–C. JN-4038.

**REMARKS.** The description of *Sphacelaria tribuloides* is based on specimens from Puerto Peñasco and on Prud'homme van Reine (1982) and Kitayama (1994).

### DICTYOTALES

Dictyotales Bory de Saint-Vincent, 1828:142.

Dictyotales Kjellman, 1896:291.

Algae are erect, flattened and membranous, branched in one plane, and variously attached by a holdfast of rhizoidal filaments or by rhizoids along lower blade margin or, in a few species, by stoloniferous attachments. Growth is by an apical meristem, either a single cell, a group of apical cells, or an apical row of marginal cells. Sporophytes and gametophytes are parenchymatous in structure, with a medulla of one or more layers of large colorless cells and a single- to multiple-layer cortex of small cells with discoid plastids without pyrenoids. Phaeophyceyan hairs are either absent or present in bands or scattered tufts.

The life history phases, where known, are isomorphic. Sporophytes produce unilocular sporangia that are scattered or in rows or groups and with or without an

indusium or paraphyses. Each sporangium develops one, four, or eight nonmotile spores. Sexual reproduction is oogamous. Gametophytes are usually dioecious, with oogonia and antheridia usually in sori. There is one egg produced per oogonium. Antheridia are plurilocular, and each of the motile antherozoids have a single flagellum.

**REMARKS.** Members of this order are of widespread occurrence in tropical and subtropical seas. However, some are found in temperate seas and are particularly well developed in temperate South Australia (Womersley, 1987). On the basis of nrDNA sequences, the phylogeny of Rousseau et al. (2001) concluded the Dictyotales were the earliest lineage to diverge during the evolution of the Phaeophyceae.

The one family of the order is well represented throughout the Gulf of California.

### DICTYOTACEAE

Dictyotaceae J. V. Lamouroux ex Dumortier, 1822:72, 101.

Algae are simple or branched in one plane. They can be straplike (e.g., *Dictyota*) or fanlike or bladelike (e.g.,

*Padina*). Structurally, they are composed of a medulla of large colorless cells in one or more layers and a cortical layer of one to several rows of small pigmented cells. Growth is by a single apical cell, group of apical cells, or marginal row of apical cells. Phaeophycean hairs are present in tufts or zones and are simple, delicate, colorless, and mostly deciduous.

Reproductive structures are superficial on the thallus. Sporophytic reproduction is by nonmotile aplanospores, formed by sporangia that are isolated or in sori. Sporangia are mostly divided into a group of four (tetraspores) or eight (octospores) aplanospores. Oogonia are solitary or grouped in sori. Each oogonium forms a nonmotile single egg (ova). Plurilocular antheridia are grouped in sori and produce motile antherozoids.

**REMARKS.** Genera of the Dictyotaceae have traditionally been grouped into two taxonomic tribes, following, but not named by, Kjellman (1896): (1) the Dictyoteae Lamouroux (1809a) for genera characterized by growth from a single apical cell and (2) the Zonarieae Lamouroux (1809a) for genera with a group or marginal row of apical cells. However not all the species fit into these tribes. For example, some species of *Padina* exhibit both kinds of growth, with a “*Vaughaniella*-form” that has growth by a single apical cell and can undergo a morphogenetic change to growth by a marginal row of apical cells (Lewis et al., 1987). Sulfuric acid accumulation has been reported in some species of *Dictyopteris*, *Spatoglossum*, and *Zonaria* C. Agardh (1817) (Sasaki et al., 1999), and its presence or absence has been suggested to be an informative taxonomic character (Sasaki et al., 2004, 2005).

The genera *Dictyota*, *Dilophus* and *Rugulopteryx* are morphologically similar, separated primarily on the basis of their vegetative anatomy. *Dictyota* sensu stricto is distinguished by both a single-layered medulla and cortex throughout (Figure 54B). *Dilophus* sensu stricto has a medulla of two or more layers and a cortex of one cell layer. *Rugulopteryx* has a one cell layer medulla centrally and two or more layers in the margins, and a cortex of one-cell layer (Figure 54D).

More recent phylogenetic analysis has shown *Glossophora*, *Glossophorella* and *Pachydictyon* to be congeneric

with *Dictyota*, and revealed two genera, *Canistrocarpus* and *Rugulopteryx*, that could be distinguished from *Dictyota* (De Clerck et al., 2006; Hwang et al., 2009). However, the taxonomic status of *Dilophus* J. Agardh (1882) remains problematic. Setchell and Gardner (1925) and Hörnig et al. (1992a, 1992b, 1993) concluded that the medulla character alone was not enough to separate *Dilophus* and included it in *Dictyota*. Others have retained *Dilophus* (e.g., Dawson, 1950a; Womersley, 1987; Phillips, 1992; Huisman, 2000). Phillips (1992) recognized that the number of cells in the stalk that bears a sporangium (one or two-cells) in Australian *Dilophus* was of taxonomic importance, and some molecular phylogenies have supported their generic separation (e.g., Hoshina et al., 2004; Kraft et al., 2004). De Clerck et al. (2006) kept the two genera separate, noting this cannot be resolved until the generitype, *Dilophus gunnianus* J. Agardh (1882), has been studied.

Next to *Sargassum*, species of the Dictyotaceae, notably *Dictyota* and *Padina* are among the most abundant brown algae in the Gulf. In addition to the genera known in the northern Gulf, there are three others known in the southern Gulf: *Lobophora* J. Agardh (1894), with the report of *L. variegata* (J. V. Lamouroux) Womersley ex E. C. Oliveira (1977) by Dawson (1959a, as “*Pocockiella variegata*”) and Mateo-Cid et al. (2000b); *Taonia* J. Agardh (1848) with the record of *T. lennebackerae* Farlow ex J. Agardh (1894) by Mateo-Cid et al. (2002b); and *Dilophus* J. Agardh (1882) with the report *Dilophus pinnatus* E. Y. Dawson (1950a; = *Dictyota pinnata* (E. Y. Dawson) Hörnig, Schnetter et Prud’homme von Reine, 1993) (Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a, 2000b), and elsewhere in Pacific Mexico from Nayarit (León-Tejera et al., 1993; González-González, 1993), Jalisco (Pedroche and González-González, 1981; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993) and Michoacán (Stout and Dreckmann, 1993), and in South America from Pacific Colombia (Schnetter and Bula Meyer, 1982). In West Africa, material identified as *Dilophus pinnatus* was noted to be a growth form of *Padina durvillei* (Lawson and John, 1987).

There are five genera of Dictyotaceae represented in the northern Gulf of California.

#### KEY TO THE GENERA OF DICTYOTACEAE IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

FIGURE 54A-I

- 1a. Thallus of flat, repeatedly branched straplike segments; growth from a single apical cell [Figure 54A] . . . . . 2
- 1b. Thallus of flat, broad unbranched to branched fronds or blades; growth from a single clustered group of apical cells [Figure 54E] or separate groups of clustered apical cells [Figure 54G] or a continuous marginal row of apical cells [Figure 54I] . . . . 3

- 2a. Medulla usually a single cell layer with cortex of 1–2 cell layers [Figure 54B] or a medulla of 2–4 cell layers with cortex of 2–5 cell layers [Figure 54C] ..... *Dictyota*
- 2b. Medulla 1 cell layer in central portion and 2–8 cell layers at the branch margins; cortex of 1 cell layer throughout [Figure 54D] ..... *Rugulopteryx*
- 3a. Fronds with conspicuous midrib [Figure 54E]; internally of 1 or more cell layers at margins, increasing number of cell layers toward center of blade (midrib) [Figure 54F] ..... *Dictyopteris*
- 3b. Fronds without midribs; internally, cell layers not increasing in number toward center of blade ..... 4
- 4a. Fan-shaped or cup-shaped blades, sometimes lobed or torn; with distinctive inrolled margins [Figure 54I]; noncalcified or slightly to heavily calcified ..... *Padina*
- 4b. Fronds irregularly divided or branched, narrow to broadly lanceolate; without inrolled margins [Figure 54G]; not calcified ..... *Spatoglossum*

**Dictyopteris J. V. Lamouroux**

FIGURE 54E,F

*Dictyopteris* J. V. Lamouroux, 1809d:332.

Algae are erect or prostrate and are generally clumped and composed of flat fronds in one plane or twisting and attached by a thickened, discoid to conical holdfast of compacted rhizoids. Branching pattern is subdichotomous to irregular. Fronds and branches are generally straplike, up to 25 mm wide, and have a pronounced midrib, up to 30 cells thick. Lateral veins are present in some but are lacking in the northern Gulf species. Growth is by an apical group of up to 15 cells. There is a single layer of small cortical cells, each with several chloroplasts, and a multilayered medulla of larger cells. The midrib is conspicuous and much thicker, of 8–30 cells. The thallus wings (on each side of the midrib) are multilayered in most species (Figure 54F) and only 2 cell layers in a few of the species. Phaeophyceyan hairs are mostly scattered in groups over the surfaces.

Reproductive structures are solitary, in groups, or in sori and either embedded or projecting above both sides of the thallus surface. Sporophytes have subspherical to ovoid sporangia that are solitary or borne in sori that are scattered over the branches or near the midrib, are without a stalk or on one- to two-celled stalks, and produce a tetrad of spores. Gametophytes are dioecious. Oogonia are solitary or in small groups. Antheridia are composed of many tiered locules in large, whitish sori and are surrounded by one to three layers of sterile cells.

**REMARKS.** Among the Gulf’s brown algae, *Dictyopteris* is most easily recognized by its straplike, subdichotomously branched fronds with conspicuous midribs. Sasaki et al. (1999) used presence or absence of sulfuric acid to separate morphologically similar species

of *Dictyopteris* and suggested it was a useful taxonomic character (Sasaki et al., 2004, 2005).

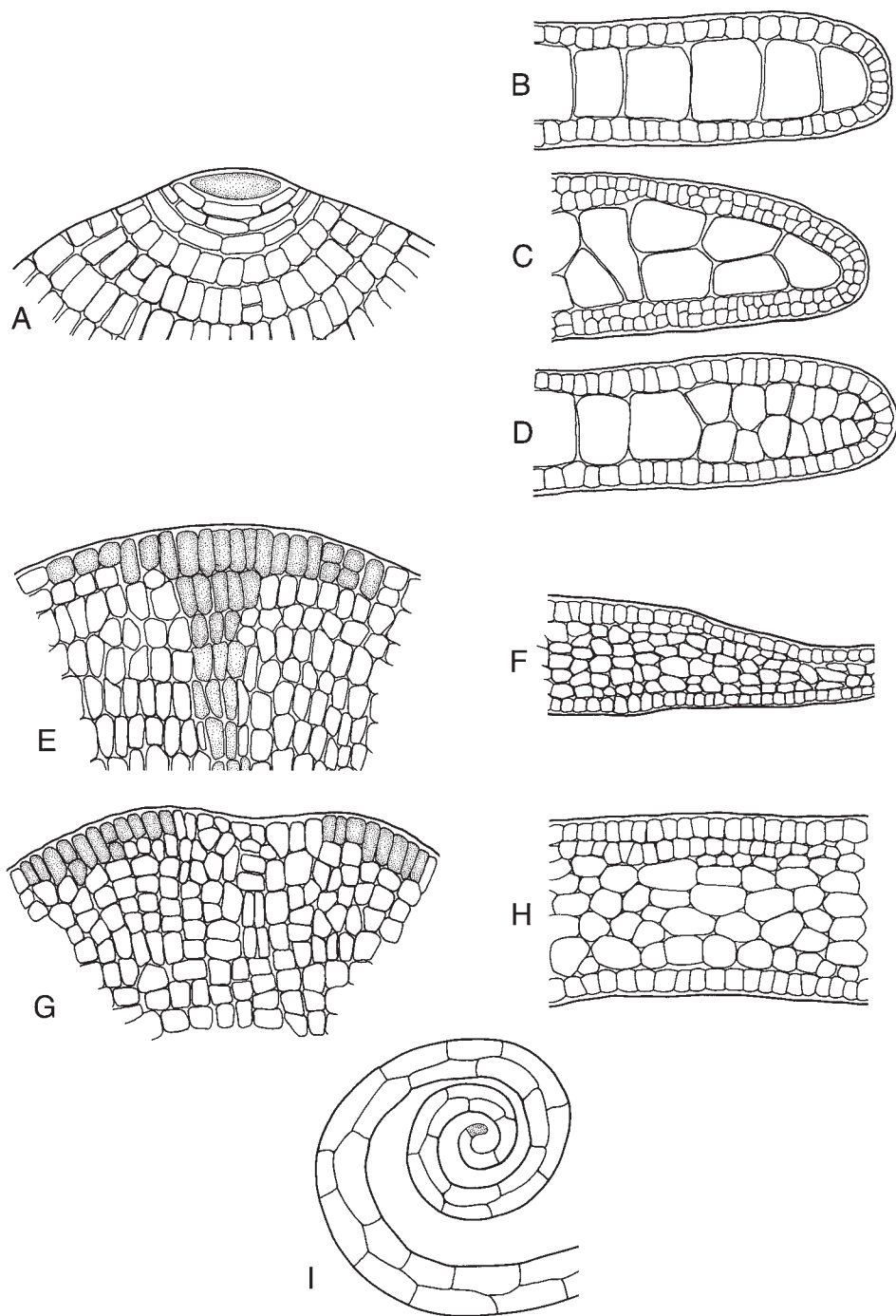
Two of the smaller, distromatic species have been reported in the southern Gulf: *Dictyopteris delicatula* J. V. Lamouroux (1809d), (Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000b; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 2005); and *D. repens* (Okamura) Børgesen (1924) by Dawson (1959b). Another, *D. polypodioides* (de Candolle) J. V. Lamouroux (1809b; see Silva et al. 1987), has been reported from Isla Guadeloupe and Pacific Baja California (Dawson, 1950d; Stewart and Stewart, 1984, both as *D. membranacea* (Stackhouse) Batters 1902).

One species is known in the northern Gulf of California.

**Dictyopteris undulata Holmes**

FIGURE 55

*Dictyopteris undulata* Holmes, 1896:251, pl. 8: fig. 1; Abbott, 1972:260, fig. 1; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:212, fig. 176; Deviny, 1978:358; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:336; Lewbel et al., 1981:165; L. Aguilar-Rosas, 1982:31; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:141; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:24; Benson, 1986:448; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:40; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1990:123; Stewart, 1991:48; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:32; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:23; Lluch-Cota et al., 1993:336; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994a:50; Kajimura, 1995:89; González-González et al., 1996:145; Pacheco-Ruiz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; Tanaka, 1998:75, figs. 1–15; Yoshida, 1998:211; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000b:196, figs. 13, 14, 64, 65, 94; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 2005:57, figs. 60–69; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49,



**FIGURE 54.** Northern Gulf of California genera of Dictyotaceae: Comparative diagrammatic illustrations of the apical growth region (meristematic cells stippled) and transections of internal anatomy. A. *Dictyota* and *Rugulopteryx*: Growth from single apical cell. B. *Dictyota* transection: Most species have single medullary layer surrounded by single layer of pigmented cortical cells. C. *Dictyota* transection: A few species (e.g., *D. coriacea*) may have more than one medullary cell layer at margins and more than one cortical cell layer. D. *Rugulopteryx* transection: One medullary cell layer centrally and more than one medullary cell layer at the margins, and a single cortical cell layer. E. *Dictyopteris*: Growth from a group of apical cells at center of distal blade margin. F. *Dictyopteris* transection: With thicker medulla at center midrib and progressively fewer cell layers outward toward the margins. G. *Spatoglossum*: Growth from separate groups of apical cells along distal margin of blade. H. *Spatoglossum* transection: Medullary layers of irregularly arranged cells and single cortical cell layer. I. *Padina*: Longitudinal section of inrolled margin: Growth from an apical row of meristematic cells along entire distal edge of blade, which is enclosed within the inrolled margin. Number of cell layers below single apical row is initially one and then becomes two (as shown); in Gulf species, the medullary cell layers increase in number toward the central portions and basal region of the blade (drawn by Alice R. Tangerini).

57; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:203; Pedroche et al., 2008:36.

*Haliseris undulata* (Holmes) Okamura, 1899b: Exsiccate No. 41; Okamura, 1902a:110; Okamura, 1907:51, pl. XI: figs. 1–10.

*Neurocarpus undulata* (Holmes) Okamura, 1928:190 [Corrigenda]; Okamura, 1936:172, fig. 88 (1–5).

*Dictyopteris polypodioides* sensu Hariot, 1891:217 [non *Dictyopteris polypodioides* (de Candolle) J. V. Lamouroux, 1809d:332].

*Haliseris polypodioides* sensu McClatchie, 1897:354 [non *Haliseris polypodioides* (de Candolle) C. Agardh, 1820:142; = *Dictyopteris polypodioides* (de Candolle) J. V. Lamouroux, 1809d:332].

*Dictyopteris zonarioides* Farlow, 1899:73; Dawson, 1951:52; Dawson, 1952:431; Dawson, 1959a:18; Dawson et al., 1960a:34, pl. 3: fig. 4, pl. 4: fig. 2; Dawson et al., 1960b:11; Dawson, 1961b:388; Dawson,

1966a:11; Guzmán del Prío et al., 1972:260; Norris, 1973:4; Fenical et al., 1973:2383; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:332; González-González et al., 1996:145.

*Neurocarpus zonarioides* (Farlow) M. Howe, 1914:69; Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:728; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:656, pl. 34: fig. 4, pl. 35: fig. 11, pl. 36: fig. 21, pl. 38: fig. 39, pl. 95; Dawson, 1944:229.

Algae erect, flat, irregularly dichotomously branched fronds, up to 35 cm tall, (3–)10–20 mm wide, with a prominent percurrent midrib and lacking any veins, often with undulate margins; ultimate branches shorter than lower segments; with rounded apices; arising from a more or less conical holdfast. In lower portions the wider blade may be worn away, leaving the midribs. Midribs may be tomentose. Thallus in transverse section up to 12 layers of cells and up to 400 µm thick. Growth from an apical group of meristematic cells.



FIGURE 55. *Dictyopteris undulata*: Habit; note the prominent midrib (JN-5801).

Sporangia grouped in sori, 750–1000  $\mu\text{m}$  long, along both sides of the midrib. Oogonial and antheridial sori scattered over frond. Oogonium 95–150  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 95–125  $\mu\text{m}$  wide.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, usually in shaded areas and tide pools; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to San José del Cabo. Pacific coast: southern California to Baja California Sur; Japan; China; Taiwan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Misaki, Kanagawa Prefecture, central Japan.

**REMARKS.** A seasonal species, *Dictyopteris undulata* occurs in the northern Gulf from February to August and appears to reach its peak in size as well as in numbers of individuals in late spring. Although previously collected during 1972–1975 at Punta la Gringa (vicinity of Bahía de los Ángeles), *D. undulata* was not encountered during the 1985–1986 surveys of Pacheco-Ruiz and Zertuche-González (1996b).

Some of the Gulf specimens with narrow fronds resemble *Dictyopteris johnstonei* N. L. Gardner (1940), a species described from Santa Cruz Island (California Channel Islands) and reported southward to Bahía de Todos Santos, Pacific Baja California (Silva, 1957; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000b; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 2005; Pedroche et al., 2008), and Isla San Benito (Dawson, 1961b; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976). Silva (1957) has suggested the taxonomic status of California *D. johnstonei* Gardner (1940) needs to be resolved. Reinvestigations should include Gulf specimens morphologically similar to Pacific coast *D. johnstonei* (including its type locality) in comparative morphological studies and molecular analyses, to each other, and to the distinctive *D. undulata* of the Gulf, Japan (type locality), and Pacific coast (including type locality specimens of *Neurocarpus zonarioides*, considered a synonym of *D. undulata*).

### ***Dictyota* J. V. Lamouroux**

FIGURE 54A–C

*Dictyota* J. V. Lamouroux, 1809a:38.

*Dictyota* J. V. Lamouroux, 1809d:331.

*Glossophora* J. Agardh, 1882:108.

*Glossophorella* Nizamuddin et Campbell, 1995:258.

*Pachydictyon* J. Agardh, 1894:81.

Algae are erect or repent (prostrate), composed of flat ribbonlike fronds that are clumped or bushy in

appearance, and yellow- to dark brown, and some are iridescent. Branching may be regularly or irregularly dichotomous or alternate throughout; branches are up to 20 mm wide, with smooth, dentate, crenulate, or ciliate margins and usually obtuse apices. Most species are attached by a single, or several rhizoidal holdfasts, although a few species are attached by stoloniferous holdfasts. Secondary attachments may occur in some when thallus or its branches come in contact with the substratum. Phaeophycean hairs and surface proliferations may be present in tufts scattered over the thallus. Growth is by a single apical cell at the tip of each rounded or acute branch apex. The medulla of one or more layers of large colorless cuboidal cells is easily differentiated from the cortex of one or more layers of small pigmented cells, each with numerous discoid chloroplasts.

Reproductive structures are mostly in sori (some with solitary sporangia), scattered and protruding from both sides of the thallus surface. Sporangia, borne on a single stalk cell, are divided into four aplanospores and may be solitary, grouped in sori, or around hair tufts, over the upper portions of the frond. Gametangia are grouped in sori. Oogonia are in rows within sori, with each oogonium on a single stalk cell. Antheridia are produced in whitish, antheridial sori. Each antheridium, also on a single stalk cell, is composed of many tiers of locules and is surrounded by hyaline, elongated sterile cells.

**REMARKS.** Some members of *Dictyota* exhibit wide morphological variation, and this phenotypic plasticity and few taxonomic characters have resulted in confusion regarding discrete differences among many of the species. The taxonomic limits of Gulf species are poorly known, but “typical” forms of each can be recognized in the field. Detailed observations, temporal and spatial, on field populations will be helpful in understanding the morphological variation. Culture and life history studies and molecular analyses will aid in understanding species and phylogenetic relationships. Monographic studies of the genus in the Gulf and Pacific Mexico, such as those of De Clerck (1999, 2003) for the Indian Ocean and De Clerck et al. (2006), are critically needed.

Three species, all originally described from the western Atlantic, are recorded in the southern Gulf: *D. bartayresiana* J. V. Lamouroux (1809a) reported by Mateo-Cid et al. (2000b) and L. Aguilar-Rosas et al. (2000); “*D. cervicornis*” reported by Mateo-Cid et al. (1993, 2000b) and Cruz-Ayala et al. (2001) (note that *D. cervicornis* Kützinger (1859) is now *Canistrocarpus crispatus* (J. V. Lamouroux) De Paula et De Clerck in De Clerck et al., 2006); and “*D.*

*volubilis*” reported by Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González (1985), Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones (1991), Cruz-Ayala et al. (2001), and Riosmena-Rodríguez et al. (2005) (note that *D. volubilis* Kützing (1849)

is now *D. dichotoma* (Hudson) J. V. Lamouroux, 1809a; see De Clerck, 2003).

Currently seven species, including one variety, are recognized in the northern Gulf.

#### KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *DICTYOTA* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Medulla of 2–4 (or more) cell layers; cortex of (1–)2–5 cell layers [Figure 54C] ..... *D. coriacea*  
 1b. Medulla usually 1 cell layer; cortex of only 1(–2) cell layer(s) [Figure 54B] ..... 2  
 2a. Thalli decumbent overlapping fronds; of short, relatively broad segments. .... *D. conrescens*  
 2b. Thalli erect, fronds of strap-shaped segments ..... 3  
 3a. Frond margins with minute denticulations ..... *D. crenulata*  
 3b. Frond margins smooth or sometimes with marginal proliferations ..... 4  
 4a. Attached by spreading, simple to divided, terete, stoloniferous growths, up to 500 µm in diameter ..... *D. stolonifera*  
 4b. Attached by filamentous rhizoids, sometimes compacted into a holdfast ..... 5  
 5a. Fronds irregularly dichotomously branched (resulting from some branch segments growing longer than others) .....  
 ..... *D. flabellata*  
 5b. Fronds dichotomously branched throughout (more or less even in lengths) ..... 6  
 6a. Fronds usually more than 5 mm wide; branched at angles usually less than 45°; margins entire or sometimes with marginal proliferations ..... *D. vivesii*  
 6b. Fronds narrower, less than 4 mm wide; branched at wide angles (mostly 90°–120°); margins entire .....  
 ..... *D. dichotoma* var. *intricata*

#### *Dictyota conrescens* W. R. Taylor

FIGURE 56A,B

*Dictyota conrescens* W. R. Taylor, 1945:89, pl. 10: fig. 2; Dawson, 1950a:92; Dawson, 1961b:388; Salcedo-Martínez et al., 1988:82; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:24; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:101; Pedroche et al., 2008:38.

*Dictyota friabilis* sensu Dawson, 1954d:401, fig. 16a,b; Dawson et al., 1960b:6, 14; Dawson, 1961b:388; Dawson, 1962b:190, fig. 50; Dawson, 1966a:12; Dawson, 1966b:56; Stout and Dreckmann, 1993:7; González-González et al., 1996:146; Silva et al., 1996b:234; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:68; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000b:203, figs. 31–34, 100; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49; Pedroche et al., 2008 (in part):43 [non *Dictyota friabilis* Setchell, 1926:91 (see De Clerck and Coppejans, 1999:tbl. 1; De Clerck, 2003:89)].

Algae decumbent, often forming low-growing mats of overlapping, delicate, short, and broad blades, up to 5 cm long and 6 mm wide; subdichotomously branched, with one segment of the dichotomy usually larger and

longer than the other; blades occasionally attached to each other by, usually marginal, rhizoids; base attached to substratum by masses of rhizoids. Transection 90–110 µm thick. Cortex a single layer of cortical cells, 5–18 µm tall by 10–14 µm in diameter. Medulla a single layer of large cells, 48–50 µm tall by 60–80 µm in diameter.

Sporangia globose, up to 160 µm in diameter, scattered over thallus. Oogonia scattered on surface in upper portions of branches; 90–110 µm tall by 80–85 µm in diameter.

**HABITAT.** Creeping, low growing, and loosely attached; often overgrowing other turf algae; mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Bahía de La Paz; Punta Arena to Cabo Pulmo. Pacific coast: Islas San Benito (off Baja California) to Bahía Magdalena (Baja California Sur); Rocas Alijos (west of Baja California Sur); Michoacán to Oaxaca.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Punta Hughes (vicinity of Bahía Magdalena), about 5.6 km (3.5 miles) southeast of Cabo San Lázaro, Baja California Sur, Mexico.

**REMARKS.** Gulf specimens are in general agreement with Pacific Mexico *Dictyota conrescens* (Taylor, 1945); thus, for now, they are referred to this taxon. However, it has been noted that the type specimen of

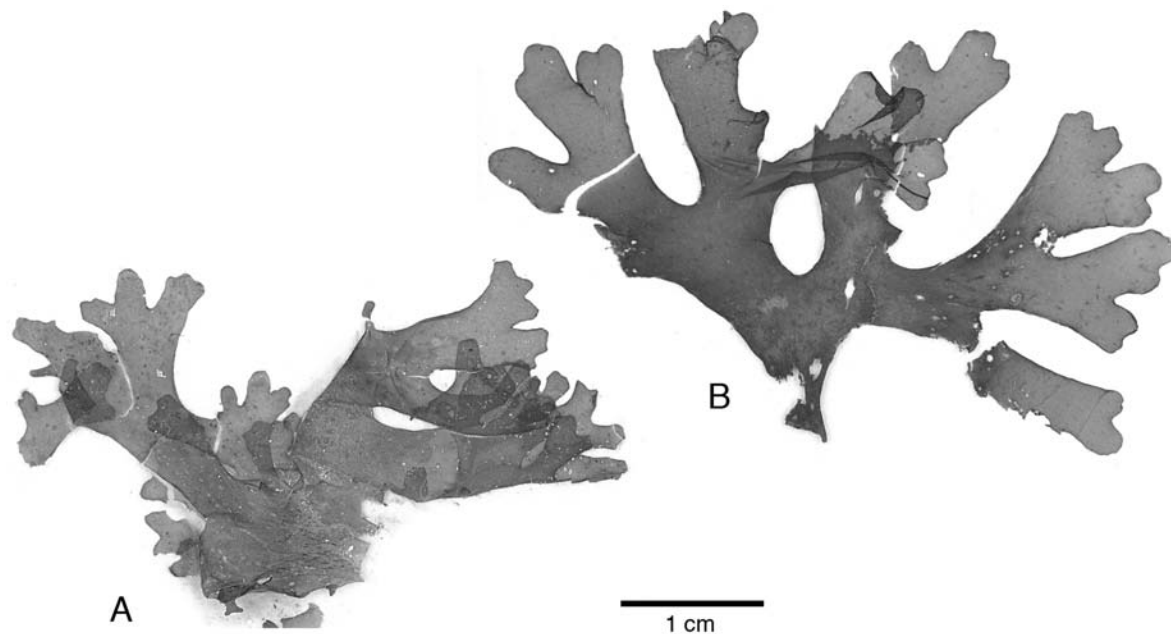


FIGURE 56. *Dictyota concrescens*: Low-growing, relatively broad, subdichotomously branched to subpalmate thalli. A. Isotype specimen (W. R. Taylor 34-598). B. Habit (JN-4695).

*D. concrescens* may be inadequate for clear interpretation (Dawson, 1950a). Although Cribb (1954) observed *D. concrescens* to be similar to another low-growing species, *D. friabilis* Setchell (1926), the northern Gulf *D. concrescens* differs in the field from *D. friabilis*, primarily in lacking its pale-bluish iridescent color (often with non-iridescent longitudinal stripes and/or noniridescent broad transverse bands; see De Clerck, 2003:89; De Clerck et al., 2005:104, fig. 75). Comparative morphological studies and molecular and phylogenetic analyses that include type locality *D. concrescens* and Gulf of California specimens are needed to clarify its taxonomic status.

***Dictyota coriacea* (Holmes)  
Hwang, H. S. Kim et W. J. Lee**

FIGURE 57

*Glossophora coriacea* Holmes, 1896:251.

*Dictyota coriacea* (Holmes) Hwang, H. S. Kim et W. J. Lee, 2004:189; De Clerck et al., 2006:1285.

*Pachydictyon coriaceum* (Holmes) Okamura, 1899a:39, pl.1: figs. 31–34; Okamura, 1907:105, pl. 23: figs. 1–6, pl. 24: figs. 1–18; Okamura, 1936:165, fig. 84 (1–5);

Dawson, 1950a:85–86; Dawson, 1950b:67; Dawson, 1950e:268; Dawson, 1951:52; Dawson, 1959a:18; Dawson et al., 1960a:38, pl. 3: figs. 1–2; Dawson et al., 1960b:8–11; Kumagae, 1969:91, text figs. 1–4, pl. [1]: figs. 1–15; Norris, 1973:5; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:209, fig. 173; Norris and Bucher, 1976:4; Devlinny, 1978:358; Littler and Littler, 1981:149, fig. 2; L. Aguilar-Rosas, 1982:31; Lewbel et al., 1981:162; Pacheco-Ruíz, 1982:70; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:24; L. Aguilar-Rosas and Pacheco-Ruíz, 1989:81; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:40; R. Aguilar-Rosas and Machado-Galindo, 1990:188; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1990:123; Stewart, 1991:49; R. Aguilar-Rosas and M. Aguilar-Rosas, 1994:518; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994a:50; González-González et al., 1996:155; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; Yoshida, 1998:223, pl. 2–4: fig. D, pl. 2–9: fig. C; Mendoza-González et al., 1999:59; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000b:205, figs. 41–44, 78, 101; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:203; Pedroche et al., 2008:46.

*Glossophorella coriacea* (Holmes) Nizamuddin in Nizamuddin and Campbell, 1995:259, fig. 3.

*Dictyota johnstonii* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:730, pl. 18: figs. 54–56, pl. 39; Setchell and Gardner,



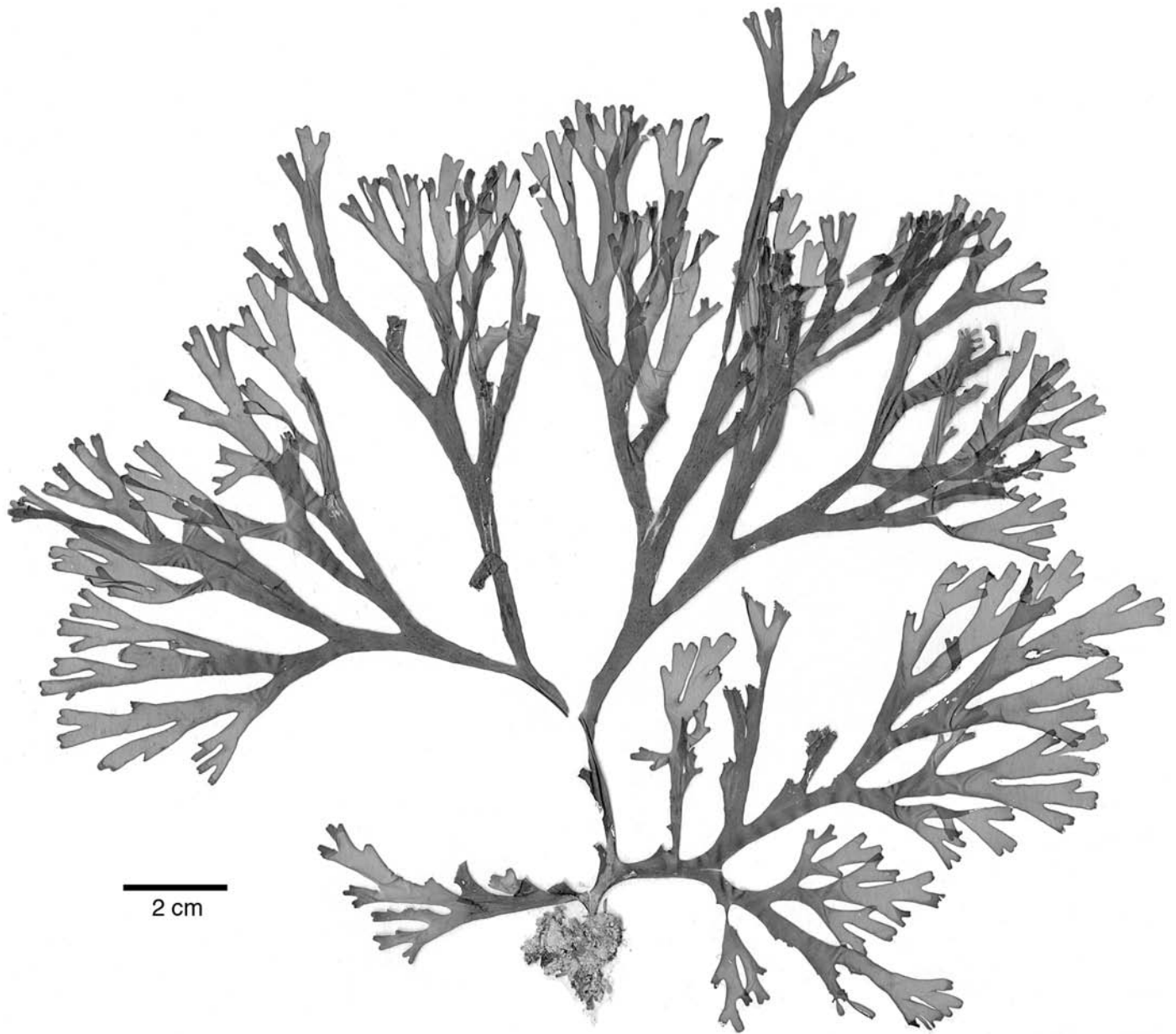


FIGURE 57. *Dictyota coriacea*: Habit (JN-5522).

1925:653; Dawson, 1944:228 [in part]; Norris, 1973:5; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:203.

*Pachydictyon binghamiae* (J. Agardh) E. Y. Dawson, 1950a:84; León-Tejera and González-González, 1993:497; González-González et al., 1996:155 [non *Dictyota binghamiae* J. Agardh, 1894:72 (see Dawson, 1950e:267–268; Hollenberg and Abbott, 1966:19[629];

Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:209, fig. 173; De Clerck, 2003:164, 182)].

Algae erect, olive-brown to dark brown, coriaceous, of flat, straplike, subdichotomously branched fronds, up to 25 cm tall and to 13 mm wide; multilayered medulla and cortex, 400–500  $\mu\text{m}$  thick (in transection); attached

by a fibrous holdfast of rhizoidal cells developed from lower portion of the main axes. Branches mostly with one of the branch segments longer than the other above the dichotomous division (occasionally of more or less uniform length); margins smooth; branch apices rounded, with a conspicuous single large apical cell. Cortical cells 15–24 µm tall by 30–45 µm wide; 1–2 cortical cell layers toward the center of blade; 2–4 (or more) cell layers in blade margins of mid to upper portions of the thallus, often with more cortical cell layers in blade margins of the lower portion. Medulla of large cells, 75–145 µm tall by 140–195 µm wide: 1–2(–3) cell layers toward the center and 2–4 (or more) cell layers near blade margins.

Reproductive structures scattered on both surfaces of the upper branches. Sporangia solitary or in groups; 62–70 µm tall by 45–60 µm in diameter. Dioecious (where known). Oogonia aggregated in elliptical to elongate, dark-brown to “blackish” sori; 85–117 µm tall by 77–94 µm in diameter. Antheridia unknown in Gulf material (as reported in Japan: in numerous oval, whitish sori).

**HABITAT.** On rocks; mid intertidal to 10 m depths.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Bahía de Los Ángeles to Isla San Ildefonso; Cabo San Lucas. Pacific coast: Oregon; central California to Bahía Magdalena, Baja California Sur; Oaxaca; Panama; China; Taiwan; Korea; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Enoura, “neighborhood of Tokio [Tokyo]” (Holmes, 1896:149), Kanagawa, Honshū, Japan.

**REMARKS.** Gulf *Dictyota coriacea* may be separated in the field from other Gulf *Dictyota* species by its larger size, thicker fronds, darker color, and relatively coarser texture. Its Gulf distribution appears to be restricted to the central Gulf, Las Islas de la Cintura (Midriff Islands), and a few of the southern islands.

There has been some taxonomic confusion regarding the name of the Gulf specimens. Initially Dawson (1950a) concluded that the Japanese *Pachydictyon coriaceum* (Holmes) Okamura was a synonym of Californian *P. binghamiae* (J. Agardh) Dawson, but he later (Dawson, 1950e) discovered that the type of *Dictyota binghamiae* J. Agardh was a different taxon and those he previously identified as “*P. binghamiae*,” including Gulf material, were *P. coriaceum*. Since then, this interpretation has been followed (e.g., Hollenberg and Abbott, 1966; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976).

De Clerck (2003) noted that additional research on taxa of Dictyotaceae with a multilayered cortex, such as *Pachydictyon* J. Agardh (1894), was needed to clarify their relationship with *Dictyota*. Hwang et al. (2004) studied

both Japanese and Korean *P. coriaceum* and, on the basis of molecular analyses, concluded them to be a species of *Dictyota* and restricted the distribution of *D. coriacea* to the western Pacific. Therefore the Gulf of California *D. coriacea* and the eastern Pacific *D. coriacea* (southern California; Pacific Mexico) need to be comparatively tested with the western Pacific (eastern Asia) *D. coriacea* (type locality: Japan) to see if they are the same species as currently understood. These studies should include type material of *Dictyota johnstonii* Setchell et N. L. Gardner (1924a), currently considered a synonym of *D. coriacea*. If Gulf specimens are found to be a species separate from the Japanese type locality *D. coriacea*, *D. johnstonii* would be the earliest valid name for the Gulf taxon.

### ***Dictyota crenulata* J. Agardh**

FIGURE 58A,B

*Dictyota crenulata* J. Agardh, 1847:7; Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:730, pl. 18: figs. 50, 51; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:655; Taylor, 1939:8; Dawson, 1944:228; Taylor, 1945:90, pl. 10: fig. 1; Dawson, 1950a:88; Dawson, 1954a:3; Dawson, 1959a:5, 18; Dawson, 1961b:388; Brusca and Thomson, 1975:42; McEnroe et al., 1977:184; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:46; Salcedo-Martínez et al., 1988:82; Santelices, 1989:289, pl. GG: fig. 7; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:31; Lluch-Cota et al., 1993:366; León-Tejera and González-González, 1993:497; Servière-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:43; González-González et al., 1996:294, fig. 16; Anaya-Reyna and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 1996:383; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:68; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000b:199, figs. 20, 21, 71, 96; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; De Clerck, 2003:145, 166; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:101; Altamirano-Cerecedo and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2007:575, figs. 1–6; Servière-Zaragoza et al., 2007:8; Pedroche et al., 2008:39.

*Dilophus crenulatus* (J. Agardh) Nizamuddin et Gerloff, 1979:867, pl. 1: figs. 1, 2, pl. 2: figs. 1, 2, pl. 7: figs. 1, 2 [note: lectotype (LD, Herb. Agardh-49042A) is illustrated in pls. 1, 2, 7].

Algae up to 15(–25) cm tall, of flat, dichotomously branched straplike fronds, (1)–2–4(–5.5) mm wide; margins with characteristic, conspicuous minute dentation; attached by multicellular rhizoids. Branching usually at wide angles; sometimes becoming subdichotomous;

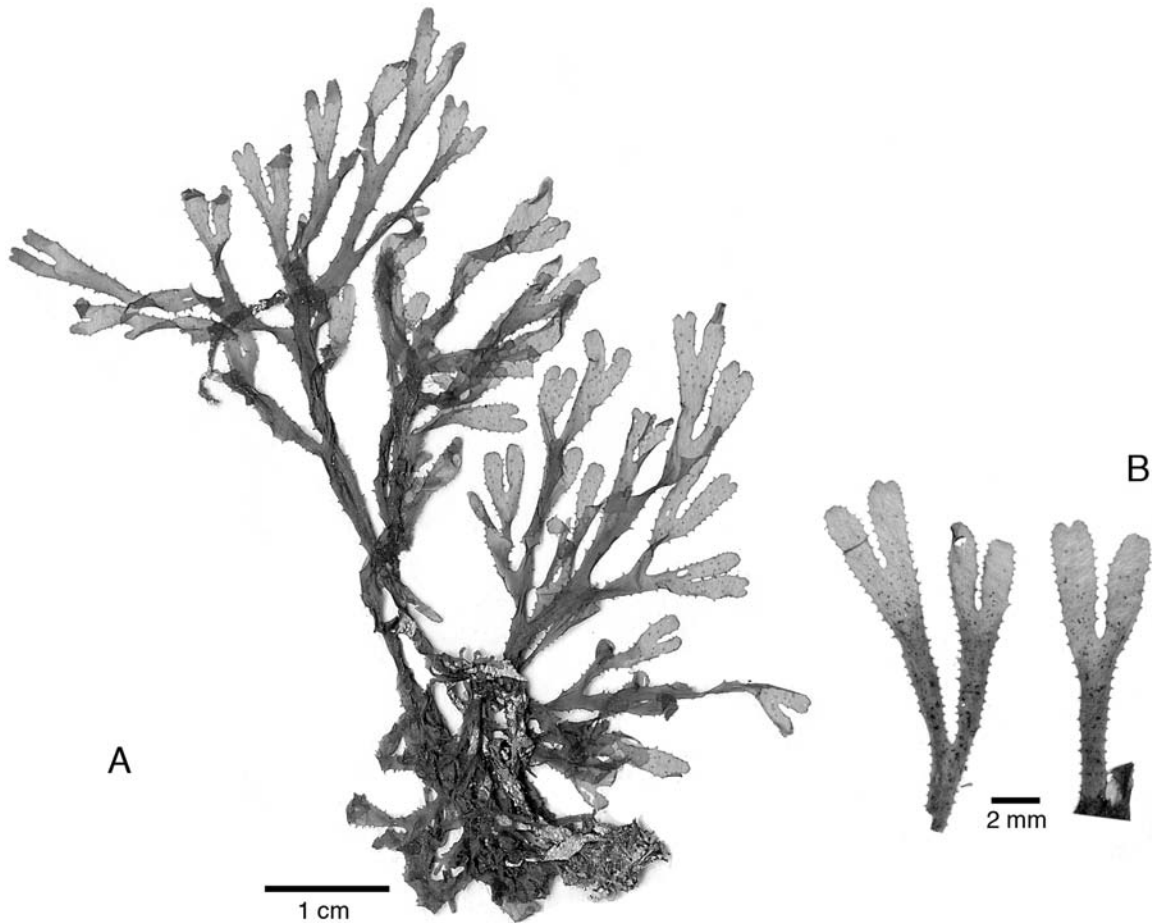


FIGURE 58. *Dictyota crenulata*: A. Habit (JN-4091a). B. Close-up of blades with characteristic dentate margins (JN-4114).

branches narrower below and widening upward; surface sometimes with numerous proliferations. Transection of 3–6 cell layers (1–4 medulla: 2 cortical), 90–150  $\mu\text{m}$  thick, up to 500  $\mu\text{m}$  thick near base. Cortex a single layer; cortical cells rounded, 20–50  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Medulla single layer to multilayered (latter evident in basal portion); medullary cells 55–100  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 35–50  $\mu\text{m}$  wide.

Reproductive structures mostly in sori, scattered over branch surface, mostly in upper portions. Sporangia may be singular or a few in sorus, rounded, 75–90  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Oogonia in groups of 30–45 (in surface view), 4–6 (in transection view) in sori; 75–80  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 66–70  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter.

**HABITAT.** On rocks; low intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Bahía Concepción to Cabo San Lucas. Pacific coast: Bahía Vizcaíno

to Todos Santos, Baja California Sur; Islas Revillagigedo; Jalisco to Oaxaca; Costa Rica; Chile.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** San Agustín, Oaxaca, Mexico (Agardh, 1847, “St. Augustin, Stilla Oceanen [Pacific Ocean]”).

**REMARKS.** Described from southern Pacific Mexico, *Dictyota crenulata* may reach its northern distribution limit in the central Gulf of California (Dawson, 1950a, 1961b). Altamirano-Cerecedo and Riosmena-Rodríguez (2007) found that thalli of Gulf *D. crenulata* near its northern limit (central Gulf) were shorter and wider than those of the southern Gulf, which were longer and narrower. Setchell and Gardner (1924a:730, pl. 18: fig. 50) and Dawson (1944) observed numerous small surface proliferations on specimens of Gulf *D. crenulata* that were developing in situ sporelings, apparently from germination of their spores. More recently, Altamirano-Cerecedo

and Riosmena-Rodríguez (2007) quantified surface and marginal proliferations.

***Dictyota dichotoma* var. *intricata*  
(C. Agardh) Greville**

FIGURE 59A–C

*Zonaria dichotoma* var. *intricata* C. Agardh, 1820:134.

*Dictyota dichotoma* var. *intricata* (C. Agardh) Greville, 1830:58; Schnetter et al., 1987:193, figs. 2, 3; De Clerck, 1999:176, figs. 23A–C, 24A–E, ApI–12; De Clerck, 2003:76, figs. 23A–C [23B, holotype of *D. divaricata*], 24A–E; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:8.

*Dictyota divaricata* J. V. Lamouroux, 1809b:43; Taylor, 1945:90 (as “*D. divaricata*, *prox.*”); Dawson, 1950a:91; Dawson, 1959a:18; Dawson, 1961b:388; Dawson, 1961c:407, pl. 11: fig. 2; Dawson, 1966a:12; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:127; Chávez B., 1972:268; Pedroche and González-González, 1981:67; Schnetter and Bula Meyer, 1982:65, pl. 9: figs. E–G; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:141; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:46; Salcedo-Martínez et al., 1988:82; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:40; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:31; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:50; González-González, 1993:443; León-Tejera and González-González, 1993:497; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:34; González-González et al., 1996:294; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; León-Tejera and González-González, 2000:328; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:68; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000b:201, figs. 25–27, 98; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002:235; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:146; Dreckmann et al., 2006:154; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:203; Pedroche et al., 2008:41.

Algae of erect, flat, dichotomously branched fronds, up to 4(–8) cm tall and 1.5–3(–4) mm wide; attached by rhizoids. Fronds branched with long and narrow dichotomies, often at wide angles; more or less uniform width throughout or narrower at each dichotomy upward and narrowest at apices. Transection 90–100 µm thick. Medulla and cortex, each a single layer of cells. Cortical cells 15–18 µm tall by 12–16 µm wide; medullary cells 60–75 µm tall by 54–56 µm wide.

Sporangia single on a stalk cell, scattered on both surfaces of frond. Oogonia 90–95 µm tall by 82–86 µm in

diameter; in sori without an indusium, scattered on upper portions of both surfaces. Antheridia unknown in Gulf specimens.

**HABITAT.** On rocks or occasionally entangled with other algae; low intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Cabo San Lucas. Pacific coast: Isla Guadalupe; Punta Pequeña, Baja California Sur to Islas Revillagigedo; Jalisco to Chipas; Colombia.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Cádiz, Spain.

**REMARKS.** Northern Gulf specimens previously called “*Dictyota divaricata*” are for now referred to *D. dichotoma* var. *intricata* on the basis of their morphological similarity, until needed comparative culture and molecular studies can be done to elucidate their taxonomic status. There still is much taxonomic and nomenclatural confusion regarding the “*Dictyota dichotoma* complex,” including *D. divaricata*. Hörnig and Schnetter (1988) concluded western Atlantic “*D. divaricata*” differed from those of the European Atlantic *Dictyota dichotoma*-complex and described them as a separate species, *D. pulchella* Hörnig et Schnetter. Further, there is some evidence that *D. dichotoma* (Hudson) J. V. Lamouroux (1809a) is restricted to warm-temperate and cold-temperate waters of the eastern Atlantic Ocean and Mediterranean Sea (Schnetter et al., 1987; De Clerck, 2003) and subtropical waters of the Canary Islands (Tronholm et al., 2008), and *D. dichotoma* var. *intricata* could be restricted to warm-temperate and subtropical regions of the Indian Ocean (De Clerck, 2003: 81).

Although some Gulf of California specimens are somewhat morphologically similar to *D. ceylanica* Kützinger (1859), that species is apparently restricted to the tropical to subtropical Pacific and Indian oceans (De Clerck, 2003). Further, De Clerck (2003) has shown *D. dichotoma* var. *intricata* can be separated from *D. ceylanica* by its surface proliferations, size of thallus, and size of medullary and cortical cells; this separation is confirmed by molecular studies of De Clerck et al. (2001).

***Dictyota flabellata* (Collins)  
Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURE 60

*Dilophus flabellatus* Collins in Collins, Holden and Setchell, 1901a:No. 834.

*Dictyota flabellata* (Collins) Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924b:12 [in part, excluding Monterey, California,

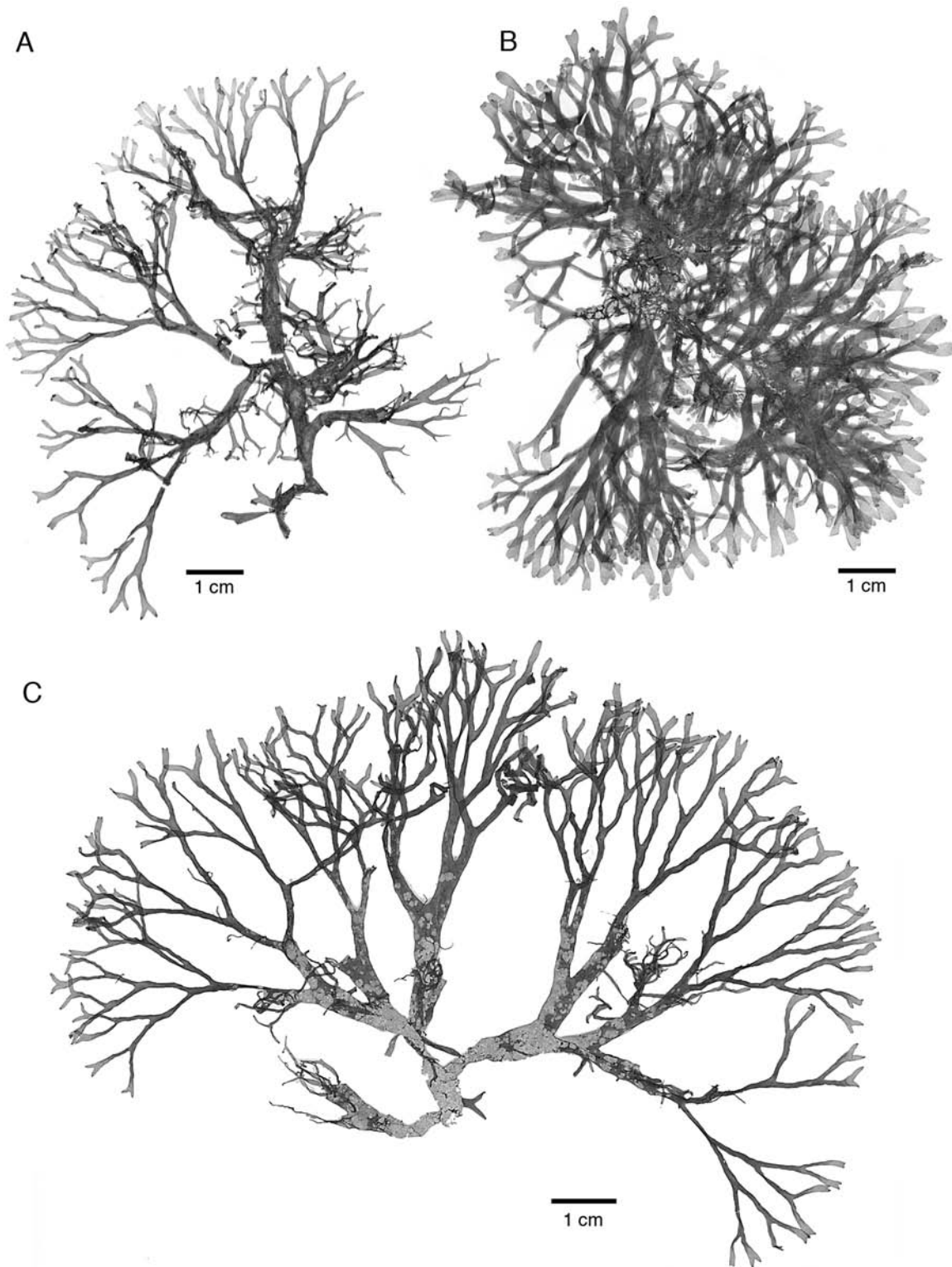


FIGURE 59. *Dictyota dichotoma* var. *intricata*: Specimens representing variation in morphology. A, C. Blade width distinctly narrows at dichotomies upward toward apices (A, JN-4087; C, JN-4094). B. Blade width with more gradual narrowing toward apices (JN-5630).

specimens]; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:652 [in part, excluding Monterey, California, specimens], pl. 34: fig. 3, pl. 35: fig. 7, pl. 36: figs. 13–17; Dawson, 1950a:89; Dawson, 1952:431; Dawson, 1959a:10, 18; Dawson et al., 1960a:34, pl. 3: fig.3; Dawson, 1961b:388; Dawson, 1966a:12; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:127; Earle, 1972:85; Norris, 1973:5; Brusca and Thomson, 1975:42; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:207, fig. 172; Robertson and Fenical, 1977:1071; McEnroe et al., 1977:182; Deviny, 1978:385; Littler and Littler, 1981:151, tbl. 3; figs. 4, 7; Lewbel et al., 1981:165; L. Aguilar-Rosas, 1982:31; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1982:54; R. Aguilar-Rosas, 1982:84; Littler and Arnold, 1982:309; Pacheco-Ruíz, 1982:70; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:141; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:46; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:24; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:421; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:40; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:31; Stewart, 1991:48; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:23; León-Tejera and González-González, 1993:497; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:50; Lluch-Cota et al., 1993:366; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994a:50; González-González et al., 1996:146; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; Anaya-Reyna and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 1996:862; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 1998:25; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:132; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000b:202, figs. 28–30, 74, 75; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002:235; De Clerck, 2003:150; Abbott and Huisman, 2003b:182, figs. 21, 22; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:204, fig. 77D; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:101; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49, 57; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:203; Pedroche et al., 2008:42.

*Dictyota hesperia* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:731, pl. 18: figs. 52, 53; Dawson, 1944:228; Dawson, 1950a:85, 89.

*Dictyota johnstonii* sensu Dawson, 1944:228 [in part]; Dawson, 1950e:268 [non *Dictyota johnstonii* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:730, which is *Dictyota coriacea* (Holmes) Hwang, H. S. Kim et W. J. Lee, 2004].

Algae of one to several erect, straplike fronds, dichotomously branched up to 7 orders; up to 15 cm tall and 4–10(–15) mm wide; 120–135  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; with smooth surfaces, entire margins, and rounded branch apices; attached by discoid holdfast of densely compacted rhizoids. Cortex and medulla each a single cell layer. Cortical cells 12–15  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 18–20  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; medulla cells 60–90  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 75–76  $\mu\text{m}$  wide.

Reproductive structures in sori, scattered on both surfaces of mid to upper portions of fronds. Dioecious.

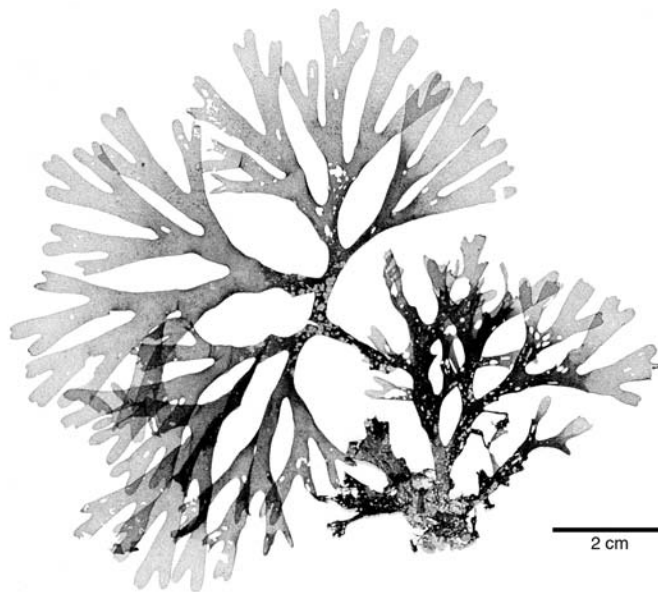


FIGURE 60. *Dictyota flabellata*: Habit (JN-3474).

Oogonia 90–96  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 85–90  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; in groups of up to 30 in sori with indusium. Antheridial sori, 63–65  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 250–360  $\mu\text{m}$  wide; antheridia 57–60  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 18–20  $\mu\text{m}$  wide.

**HABITAT.** On rocks or rarely epiphytic on other algae; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: El Tornillal to Cabo Pulmo. Pacific coast: central California to southern Baja California Sur; Jalisco; Oaxaca; Panama; Hawaiian Islands.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** La Jolla, San Diego County, California.

**REMARKS.** The most common species of *Dictyota* in the northern Gulf of California, *D. flabellata* has been found growing from January to August. Individual fronds apparently do not persist throughout the entire season, but rather, successive generations continue to replace one another. Dawson (1950a) noted Taylor's (1945) specimens of "*D. flabellata*" from Costa Rica were probably "*D. dichotoma*" and "*D. flabellata*" from Pacific Panama were *D. coriacea*.

### *Dictyota stolonifera* E. Y. Dawson

FIGURE 61A–C

*Dictyota stolonifera* E. Y. Dawson, 1962d:392, pl. 5: fig. A; González-González et al., 1996:147; De Clerck,

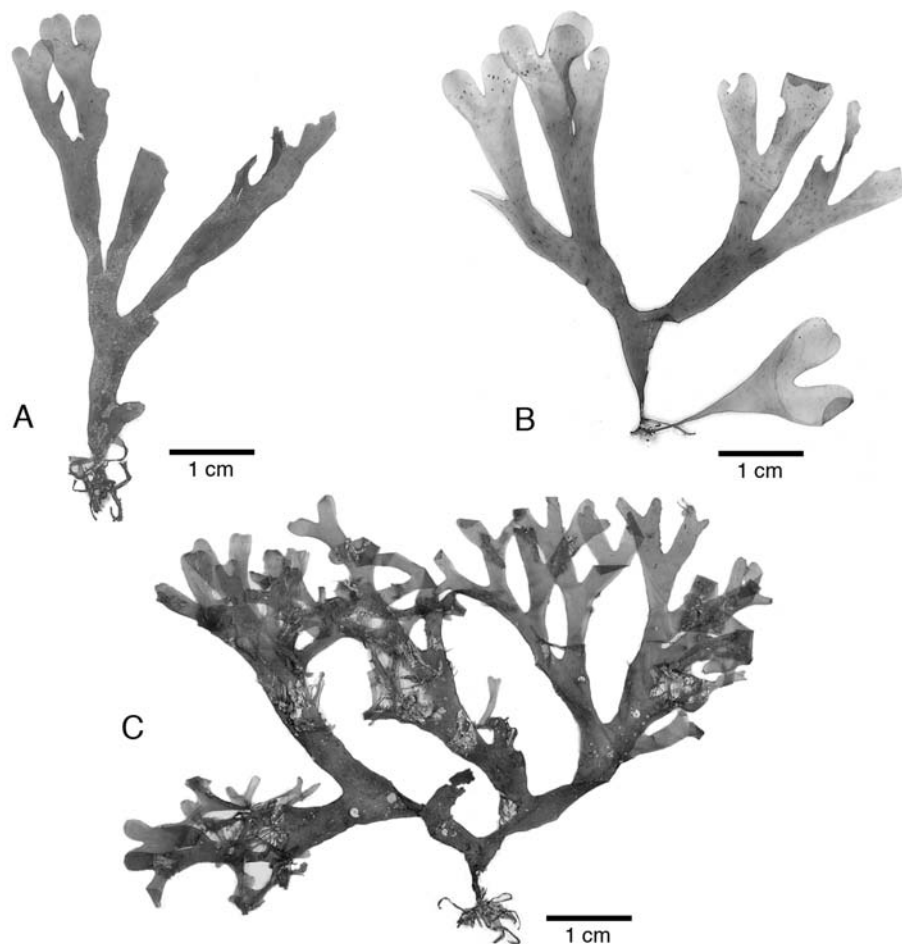


FIGURE 61. *Dictyota stolonifera*: Several thalli, each with basal stolons. A. JN-3865a. B. JN-4113a. C. EYD-27409.

2003:136, figs. 51A–E, 52A–E; Abbott and Huisman, 2003b:182; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:206, fig. 78C. *Dilophus stoloniferus* (E. Y. Dawson) Schnetter et Bula Meyer, 1982:62, pl. 9: figs. H–O.

Algae of 1 to several, subdichotomously branched, flat straplike fronds, up to 6 cm tall and 3–4 mm wide, above a short compressed stipe, and attached to substratum by distinctive multilayered, stoloniferous growths, up to 500  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Branches lack proliferations, with smooth surface and hair tufts; margins entire; terminal portions of similar width as rest of frond (not reduced); rounded apices with concentric growth bands (not always evident), 600–1200  $\mu\text{m}$  wide. Medulla a single cell layer, and 2 or more cell layers at margins; some medullary cell walls with secondary thickenings. Cortex a single cell layer of small pigmented cells.

Reproductive structures apparently scattered. Sporangia 70–100  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, solitary or in small groups; each borne on a single stalk cell. Oogonia in scattered sori, up to 200  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Antheridia not seen.

**HABITAT.** On rocks and tidal platforms and in tide pools; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco. Pacific coast: Costa Rica; Nicaragua; Isla Gorgona Parque Nacional, Colombia; Hawaiian Islands.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Intertidal; volcanic reef, Masachapa, Pacific Nicaragua.

**REMARKS.** *Dictyota stolonifera* can be distinguished in the field from other species of Gulf *Dictyota*, primarily by its simple to divided stoloniferous attachment growths. An eastern Pacific species, it has also been reported in the Indian Ocean (Coppejans et al., 2000; De Clerck, 2003). Species limits of *D. stolonifera* need to

be tested, as it may include more than one taxon. Also, the generic status of *D. stolonifera* needs to be reinvestigated as the species had also been placed in *Dilophus*. Although it is very similar to *Rugulopteryx*, its sporangia are on two-celled stalks, whereas those of *D. stolonifera* are reported to be on one-celled stalks.

***Dictyota vivesii* M. Howe**

FIGURE 62

*Dictyota vivesii* M. Howe, 1911:497, pl. 27; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:654; Dawson, 1944:229; Taylor, 1945:89; Salcedo-Martínez et al., 1988:82; Stout and Dreckmann, 1993:7; González-González et al., 1996:147.

*Dictyota dichotoma* sensu Dawson, 1950a:90; Dawson, 1954d:401, fig. 15; Dawson, 1959a:18; Dawson,

1961b:388 [in part]; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:23; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000b:200, figs. 22–24, 72; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49; Pedroche et al., 2008 (in part):39 [non *Dictyota dichotoma* (Hudson) J. V. Lamouroux, 1809d:331; basionym: *Ulva dichotoma* Hudson, 1762:476].

Algae of 1 or more erect, straplike to oblong fronds, up to 15 cm tall and 5–8 mm wide; branching up to 10 orders, mostly dichotomously branched in lower portions, becoming mostly subdichotomous upward; attached by a fibrous holdfast. Branches in mid to upper portions 135–160  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; basal portion up to 240  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; mostly with entire margins; apices mostly 1–2 mm wide. Medulla cells thin walled, 95–250  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 55–115  $\mu\text{m}$  wide. Cortical cells elongated, 19–65  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 10–30  $\mu\text{m}$  wide.

Sporangia in sori, scattered over frond surfaces. Gametangial structures not described by Howe (1911)

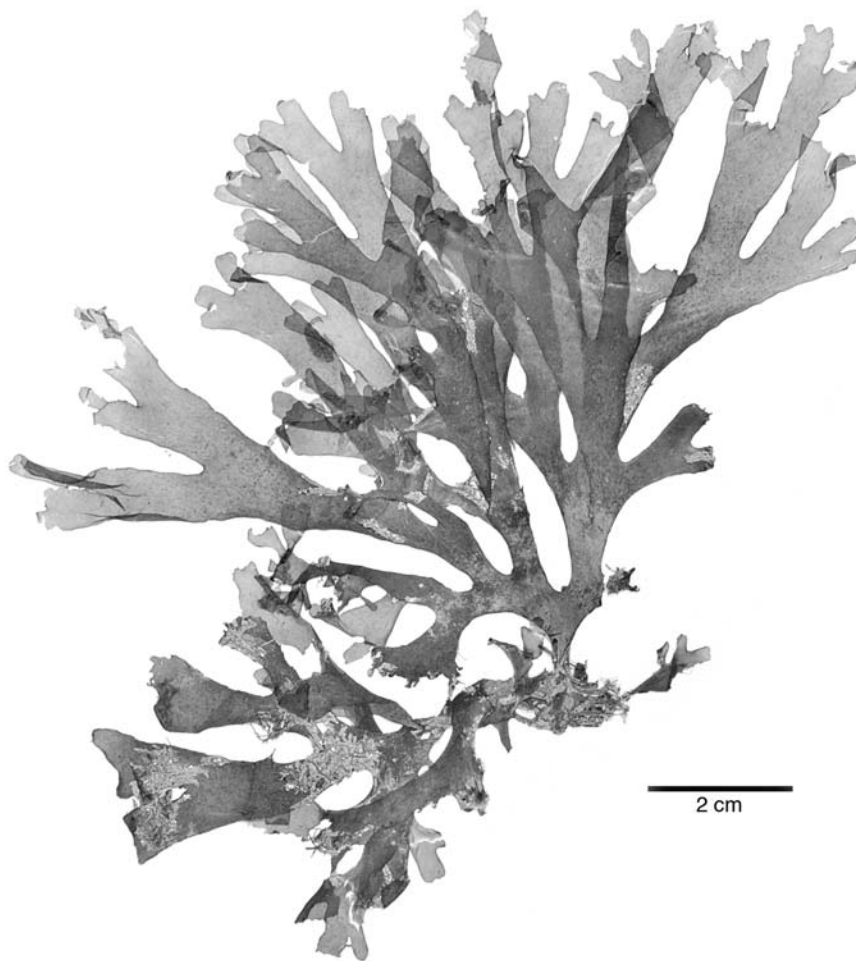


FIGURE 62. *Dictyota vivesii*: Habit (EYD-10938).



(Oogonia without indusium, in small groups on surface among hairs; oogonium pyriform, 80–93 µm tall and 60–75 µm in diameter. Antheridial sori 340–360 µm wide, antheridia 36–55 µm tall and 18–25 µm in diameter [after Mateo-Cid et al., 2000b, as “*D. dichotoma*”]).

**HABITAT.** On rocks and occasionally in tide pools; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Bahía de La Paz; San José del Cabo. Pacific coast: Baja California; Islas Revillagigedo; Michoacán.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** La Paz, Baja California Sur, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** Described from the southern Gulf, *Dictyota vivesii* has been confused with “*D. dichotoma*” (e.g., Dawson, 1944, 1950a). Although *D. dichotoma* has been extensively reported worldwide in tropical and subtropical areas, *D. dichotoma* sensu stricto is probably restricted to the northeast Atlantic and Mediterranean Sea (De Clerck, 1999, 2003).

While large specimens of *Dictyota vivesii* are readily recognized, smaller forms can be difficult to separate from some specimens of *D. flabellata* (Dawson, 1950a, as “*D. dichotoma*”). In the northern Gulf, *D. vivesii* is less frequent in occurrence than *D. flabellata*, and as with other *Dictyota* taxa of the Gulf, it is in need of critical study, including molecular and phylogenetic analyses, to elucidate its taxonomic status. Some “*Dictyota dichotoma*” specimens of Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones (1991), Servièrre-Zaragoza et al. (1993), Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González (1996b), L. Aguilar-Rosas et al. (2000), and Pacheco-Ruíz et al. (2008) may also belong here.

***Padina* Adanson**

FIGURE 54I

*Padina* Adanson, 1763:13, 586; Silva, 1952:298–299; Papenfuss, 1977:275.

Algae are composed of one to several flat, fanlike or cup-shaped blades that sometimes are clumped together, basally attached by branched rhizoids compacted into a conical holdfast or rhizoids along lower blade margins. Blades may be entire, split, or eroded, with conspicuous (rarely faint) concentric lines or bands of phaeophycean

hairs on one or both sides of the blade. Growth is by a continuous row of apical cells within an inrolled margin along the terminal edge of blade (herein the upper [dorsal] side of the blade is defined as the side that the inrolled margin is curled toward, and the back of the roll [opposite side] is referred to as the lower [ventral] side). Depending on the species, blades are two to many cell layers thick, and some vary from few near the inrolled margin to more numerous cell layers toward their base. Species may be uncalcified or lightly to moderately calcified on one or both sides of the blade. Internally, there is a medulla of one to several layers of large colorless cells and a cortex of a single cortical layer of pigmented cells on each side of the blade.

Sporangia are scattered in patches or in sori in concentric zones between the concentric bands of hairs. Gametophytes are usually dioecious. Oogonia are in sori between the hair lines. Antheridia are in sori, across from the oogonial sori in monoecious species, and in between the concentric zones of hairs in dioecious species.

**REMARKS.** Lewis et al. (1987) found two distinct morphologies in a species of *Padina*. In experimental field studies, small, turf-forming, narrow *Vaughaniella* Børgesen (1950; see Cribb, 1951) (= *Dictyterpa* Collins, 1901; = “*Dilophus*-like”) thalli were found in the presence of fish herbivory. However, in the absence of herbivory the *Vaughaniella*-form of the same individual thallus, through a morphogenetic change, rapidly developed directly into the fan-shaped *Padina*. Allender and Kraft (1983) noted creeping “*Vaughaniella* stages” in some of the Australian species of *Padina*. Culture studies of vegetative propagation in a Japanese *Padina* similarly showed a growth form that initially developed from a single apical cell and then developed meristems along its margin (Kajimura, 1993). Thus, some species of *Padina*, but apparently not all, have a morphologically different “*Vaughaniella*” form in their development, and the presence or absence of this morphogenetic growth form may prove helpful in the taxonomy of *Padina*.

Three species are recorded in the southern Gulf (Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005; Ortuño-Aguirre and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2007); *Padina concrescens* Thivy (in Taylor, 1945), *P. sanctae-crucis* Børgesen (1914), and *P. ramonribae* Ávila-Ortiz et Pedroche (2005).

Six taxa, five species and one variety, are known in the northern Gulf of California.

**KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *PADINA* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA**

- 1a. Blades forming low-growing clustered rosettes; calcified, often overlapping and attached to each other and to substratum by rhizoids (without a stipe or holdfast) . . . . . *P. mexicana* var. *mexicana*
- 1b. Blades erect, calcified or noncalcified, with a stipe and holdfast . . . . . 2

- 2a. Blades 4–8 cell layers thick in mid to lower portions (2–6 medullary; 2 cortical) . . . . . 3  
 2b. Blades 8 or more cell layers thick in lower portions (6–16 medullary; 2 cortical) . . . . . 4  
 3a. Blades up to 15 cm tall, usually as wide as or wider than tall; slightly calcified; lower portion of 6–8 cell layers (4–6 medullary; 2 cortical) . . . . . *P. gymmospora*  
 3b. Blades up to 5 cm tall, torn or with divisions narrower than tall; noncalcified to lightly calcified (mostly on upper side); mid to lower portion of 4–6 cell layers (2–4 medullary; 2 cortical); short stipe up to 5 mm long . . . . . *P. mexicana* var. *erecta*  
 4a. Blades thick (300–450  $\mu\text{m}$  thick), noncalcified, dark-brown; somewhat leathery; lower portion of 8–18 cell layers (6–16 medullary; 2 cortical) . . . . . *P. durvillei*  
 4b. Blades thinner (130–250  $\mu\text{m}$  thick), noncalcified to lightly calcified; light-brown to olive-green; lower portion of 7–12 cell layers (5–10 medullary; 2 cortical) . . . . . 5  
 5a. Blades calcified on lower side near margins (noncalcified on upper side); with a stipe up to 5 mm long; lower portion of blade of 8–10 cell layers (6–8 medullary; 2 cortical); 130–200  $\mu\text{m}$  thick . . . . . *P. crispata*  
 5b. Blades noncalcified to lightly calcified on both sides; with a long, conspicuous stipe, up to 2 cm long; lower portion of blade 9–12 cell layers (7–10 medullary; 2 cortical); 220–250  $\mu\text{m}$  thick . . . . . *P. caulescens*

### ***Padina caulescens* Thivy**

FIGURE 63A,B

*Padina caulescens* Thivy in W. R. Taylor, 1945:99; Dawson, 1957b:11, fig. 3 (type specimen); Dawson, 1959a:5, 18; Dawson, 1961b:389; Dawson, 1961c:407, pl. 7: fig. 2; Dawson, 1962b:200, fig. 82; Chávez B., 1980:48; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:421; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:50; León-Tejera et al., 1993:200; González-González, 1993:443; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:110; González-González et al., 1996:155, fig. 18; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:132; Ávila-Ortiz and Pedroche, 2005:143, figs. 1 (isotype), 2–5; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:146; Pedroche et al., 2008:48.

*Padina durvillei* sensu Mateo-Cid et al., 2000b:208 [in part] [non *Padina durvillei* Bory de Saint-Vincent, 1827a:591].

Algae of 1 to several, entire to much divided, noncalcified to lightly calcified flabellate blades; up to 20 cm tall and to 15 cm wide; arising from a conspicuous flattened stipe, up to 2 cm long and to 1.5 mm thick (at lowermost portion), above a stupose rhizoidal holdfast. Blades often divided by repeated splitting; subdivisions up to 8 cm long and 0.5–1.5 cm wide; with zones of hairs about 1 mm apart (when present) on lower surface and opposed to hair lines on upper surface. Near inrolled margins, blades of 2 cell layers, up to 45  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; midportions of 6–8 cell layers; lower portion of blade (7–)9–12 cell layers; 220–250  $\mu\text{m}$  thick at base. Cortical cells 20–25  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 20–40  $\mu\text{m}$  wide. Medullary cells in midportion up to 20–30  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 40–64  $\mu\text{m}$  wide; in lowermost portion (16–)20–30  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 50–75(–100)  $\mu\text{m}$  wide.

Gametophytes dioecious. Oogonia single or paired in sori, up to 250  $\mu\text{m}$  wide; in more or less continuous or broken bands between hair lines on blade surface. Antheridia in sori; patchy, more or less scattered on blade surface.

**HABITAT.** Low intertidal to shallow subtidal, down to 7(–9) m depths.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Playa El Coloradito to Bahía Agua Verde. Pacific coast: Isla María Magdalena (Islas Tres Marías), Nayarit; El Salvador; Costa Rica.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Isla María Magdalena, Islas Tres Marías, Nayarit, Pacific Mexico.

**REMARKS.** Mateo-Cid et al. (2000b), without comment, listed *Padina caulescens* as a synonym of *P. durvillei*. Ávila-Ortiz and Pedroche (2005) recognized *P. caulescens* as a distinct species but restricted its distribution to Isla María Magdalena, noting other Pacific coast herbarium specimens, previously identified as “*P. caulescens*,” belonged to other species.

While in general agreement with tropical Pacific Mexico *P. caulescens* sensu stricto, the northern Gulf specimens herein referred to *P. caulescens* have shorter stipe-like regions, up to 2 cm in length versus 5–6 cm lengths reported by Ávila-Ortiz and Pedroche (2005). Gulf of California *P. caulescens* needs to be further studied and molecularly and phylogenetically compared to type locality *P. caulescens* to test their taxonomic status.

### ***Padina crispata* Thivy**

FIGURE 64A–C

*Padina crispata* Thivy in W. R. Taylor, 1945:100; Dawson, 1957b:10, fig. 2 (type specimens); Dawson, 1959a:4–6; Dawson, 1961b:389; Dawson, 1962b:200, fig. 82;

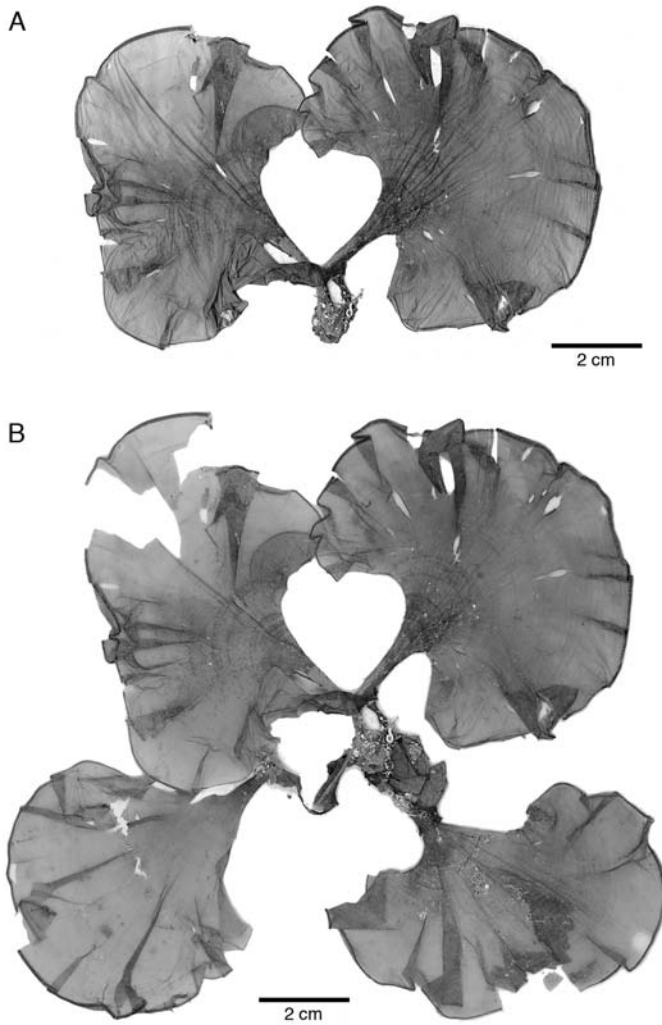


FIGURE 63. *Padina caulescens*: A. Habit (JN-4748). B. Clump of four blades; note the flattened, relatively long stipe of each blade (JN-4748).

Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:127; Chávez B., 1972:268; Huerta-Múzquiz and Garza-Barrientos, 1975:7; Chávez B., 1980:47; Schnetter and Bula Meyer, 1982:64, pl. 10: fig. H; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:46; L. Aguilar-Rosas and R. Aguilar-Rosas, 1993:202; González-González, 1993:443; León-Tejera and González-González, 1993:497; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:50; Stout and Dreckmann, 1993:7; Ávila-Ortiz and Pedroche, 1999:357, figs. 1–5; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:132; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000b:207, figs. 45, 46, 79, 103; López et al., 2004:10; Ávila-Ortiz and Pedroche, 2005:146, figs. 6 (isotype), 7–23; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:8; Pedroche et al., 2008:48.

*Padina tetrastromatica* sensu Setchell and Gardner, 1930:149 [with a query], pl. 8: fig. 41; Chávez B., 1980:49; Dawson, 1961b:389 [with a query]; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; González-González et al., 1996:156; Ávila-Ortiz and Pedroche, 1999:355 [non *Padina tetrastromatica* Hauck, 1887:43, which is *Padina antillarum* (Kützting) Piccone, 1886:36 (see Wynne, 1998b:271; Wynne and De Clerck, 1999:286, figs. 1–10)].

Algae flat, erect flabellate blades, up to 6.0 cm tall and to 6 cm wide; uncalcified on upper side of blade, calcified on upper portion of lower side of blade; blade margins entire to divided or torn, into narrow crispate lobed blades, 1–4 cm wide; with a distinct stipe 0.5(–1.0) cm long and up to 1.0 mm thick; attached by stupose rhizoidal holdfast. Hair lines in zones 0.75 to 3.0 mm apart, either opposite on both sides of blade or only on upper surface. Outer margin near inrolled margins of 2 cell layers, 30–48  $\mu\text{m}$  thick, shortly becoming 2–4 cell layers, 65–120  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; midportion of 4–6 cell layers, 120–130  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; lower portion of 6–8(–9) layers, 160–220  $\mu\text{m}$  thick. Cortical cells: upper side 15–25  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 10–20  $\mu\text{m}$  wide; lower side (12.5–)17–25  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 20–30  $\mu\text{m}$  wide. Medullary cells 20–50(–65)  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 45–75(–105)  $\mu\text{m}$  wide.

Sporangia 116–160  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 63–75  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; in sori without an indusium; on lower surface of blade; in irregular rows or scattered between hair zones. Oogonial sori, linear to round, up to 250  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, with an complete indusium when immature, later indusium only partially covering or absent; oogonia up to 69  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 33–58  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Antheridial sori up to 690  $\mu\text{m}$ , with an indusium; on lower surface in lines or patches; antheridia 50–67  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 19–30  $\mu\text{m}$  wide (after Ávila-Ortiz and Pedroche, 1999, 2005).

**HABITAT.** Intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Playa El Coloradito; Bahía Concepción to Cabeza Ballena. Pacific coast: Punta Banda (Baja California) to Laguna San Ignacio (Baja California Sur); Isla Socorro (Islas Revillagigedo); Isla María Madre (Islas Tres Marias); Nayarit to Oaxaca; El Salvador; Costa Rica; Panama; Colombia.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Gulfo Dulce, Pacific Costa Rica.

**REMARKS.** Ávila-Ortiz and Pedroche (1999) found Pacific Mexico specimens that had been identified as “*Padina tetrastromatica*” were actually *P. crispata*. Their Pacific Mexico specimens were calcified along the inner side of the inrolled margins, whereas Dawson (1957b) noted that the blades of Costa Rican *Padina crispata* had noncalcified upper surfaces and chalky, relatively

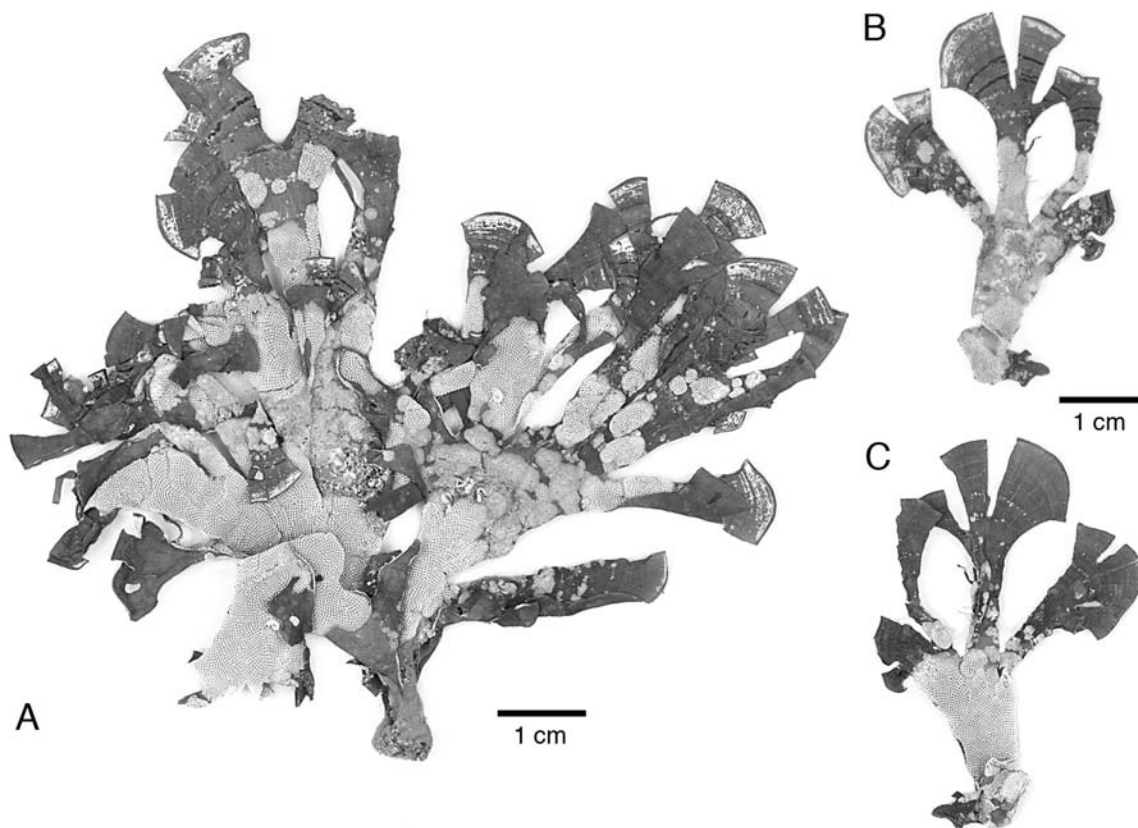


FIGURE 64. *Padina crispata* (EYD-20957): A. Habit, showing typically divided, narrow crispate lobes. B. Upper portion of blade calcified on the lower side. C. Noncalcified upper side of blade.

heavy calcified lower (inner side) surfaces. The taxonomic or ecological significance of this difference in calcification needs to be investigated. Although Thivy (in Taylor, 1945) originally described oogonia with an indusium, Mateo-Cid et al. (2000b) noted their specimens were without an indusium, and illustrations of Ávila-Ortiz and Pedroche (2005:figs. 20, 21) showed oogonial sori without and with partial and complete indusia. A Gulf specimen, noted as not being in good condition (Chávez B., 1980, as “*P. tetrastromatica*”), may also belong here.

### ***Padina durvillei* Bory de Saint-Vincent**

FIGURE 65

*Padina durvillei* Bory de Saint-Vincent, 1827a:591, as “*P. durvillaei*”; Bory de Saint-Vincent, 1827b: *Atlas*, pl. 21: fig. 1A–C; Bory de Saint-Vincent, 1828:147; Farrow, 1902:91; Howe, 1911:497; Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:729; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:661, pl. 93;

Setchell and Gardner, 1930:150; Dawson, 1944:230; Taylor, 1945:101; Dawson, 1951:52; Dawson, 1952:431; Dawson, 1957b:11; Dawson, 1959a:19; Dawson et al., 1960a:38, pl. 5: fig. 3; Dawson, 1961b:389; Dawson et al., 1964:22, pl. 18: fig. A; Dawson, 1966a:11; Chávez B., 1972:268; Hommersand, 1972:70; Norris, 1973:5; Brusca and Thomson, 1975:42; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:337; Chávez-B., 1980:47; Pedroche and González-González, 1981:65; Littler and Littler, 1981:151; Schnetter and Bula Meyer, 1982:65, pl. 10: fig. I; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:141; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:46; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:24; Norris, 1985:213, fig. 16.6; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:421; Salcedo-Martínez et al., 1988:82; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:41; Dreckmann et al., 1990:27; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:31; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:23; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:24; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:50; León-Tejera et al., 1993:200; González-González, 1993:443; Stout

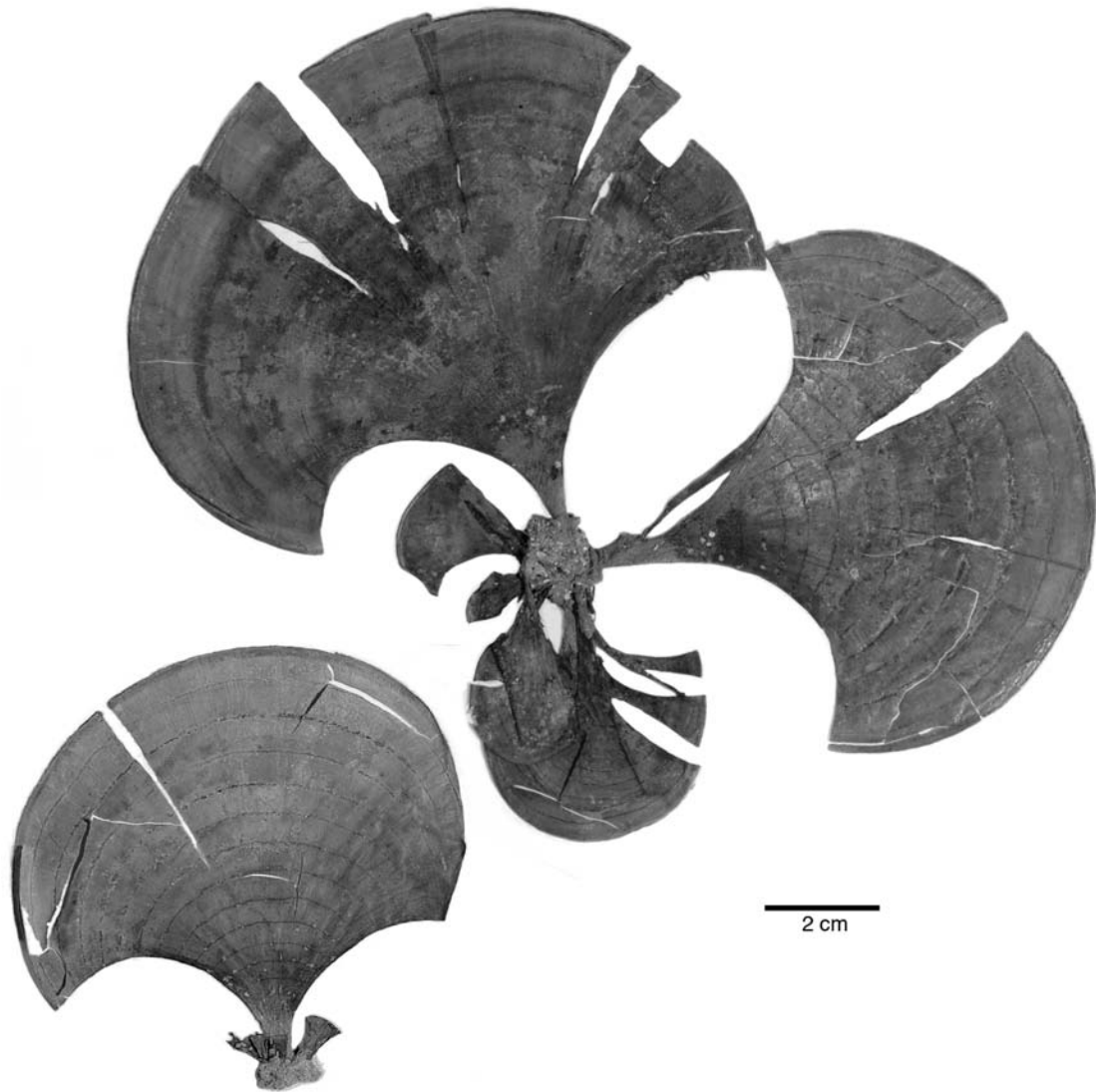


FIGURE 65. *Padina durvillei*: Leathery, flabellate blades with alternating concentric bands of hairs and reproductive structures (US Alg. Coll.-163415).

and Dreckmann, 1993:8; León-Tejera and González-González, 1993:497; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994a:50; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:110; González-González et al., 1996:156; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; Anaya-Reyna and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 1996:862; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 1998:45; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:132; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:68; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000b:208 [in part, not including *P. caulescens*], figs. 48–50, 80, 81, 104; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002:235; López et al., 2004:10; Ávila-Ortiz and Pedroche, 2005:152, figs. 24 [watercolored illustration

of type], 25–36; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:146; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:102; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49, 58; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:8; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:203; Pedroche et al., 2008:50.

Algae of 1 to several, flabellate (fanlike) blades, up to 25(–40) cm tall and to 20 cm wide, dark-brown, coriaceous; above a short stipe, up to 1.0 cm long and 0.1–0.8 mm wide, arising from stupose rhizoidal holdfast. Blades not calcified; margins entire or divided, with divisions becoming laciniate, reniform, or flabellate; surface with conspicuous concentric hair zones. Inrolled margins of

blades of 2 cell layers, below becoming 6–7 cell layers and up to 100–180(–230)  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; midportion of 8(–10) cell layers, (160–)230–290  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; lower portion of 10–18 layers, 300–450  $\mu\text{m}$  thick. Cortical cells (12–)15–30  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 15–37  $\mu\text{m}$  wide. Medullary cells 21–40  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 100–180  $\mu\text{m}$  wide.

Sporangia ovoid, 100–135(–150)  $\mu\text{m}$  long and (45–)70–90  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; sori with indusium (when immature) in irregular lines near margins, becoming scattered and in patches in mid to lower portions of blade on both sides. Oogonia 140  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 90  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, with wall to 12  $\mu\text{m}$  thick, in sori with or without indusium. Antheridia 50  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 17.5  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; in sori in irregular lines and patches on both surfaces (Ávila-Ortiz and Pedroche, 2005).

**HABITAT.** On rocks; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal, to 7.5 m depths.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Cabo San Lucas; Mazatlán, Sinaloa. Pacific coast: Isla Guadalupe; Isla Cedros; Isla Socorro (Islas Revillagigedo); Punta Rosalía, Baja California to Oaxaca; Costa Rica; Panama; Colombia; Galápagos Islands; Ecuador; Peru.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Concepción, Chile (Bory de Saint-Vincent, 1827a) (note that Dawson et al. [1964:22] suspected this locality may be incorrect, stating that “from the present known distribution of the species it is questionable whether the alga was taken from such cool southern waters”).

**REMARKS.** *Padina durvillei* is generally considered a eastern Pacific species, but it has also been reported in Africa (Price et al., 1978; Lawson and John, 1987; Stegenga et al., 1997). Although the species name has been traditionally spelled “*durvillaei*,” the spelling was corrected to “*durvillei*” by Price et al. (1978:139) in accordance with the Botanical Code (see McNeill et al., 2006:Art. 60.11, Rec. 60C.1). Oogonial sori in *Padina durvillei* have been reported with an indusium (e.g., Mateo-Cid et al., 2000b) and without an indusium (Ávila-Ortiz and Pedroche, 2005).

In terms of algal biomass, *Padina durvillei* is second only to species of *Sargassum* as the most abundant brown alga in the northern Gulf. In winter, as observed in Puerto Peñasco, there is new settlement and rapid development of new recruits of *P. durvillei*. It also appears there is annual formation of new blades from a perennial base. Development of new blades begins in late fall and is most apparent in December, and maximum size is reached in January and February. During the spring and into the summer, the blades become split and divided, and epiphytes begin colonizing them. From July to October the blades show signs

of senescence, becoming deeply split, often eroded, and with the densest growth of epiphytes.

### *Padina gymnospora* (Kützinger) Sonder

FIGURE 66

*Zonaria gymnospora* Kützinger, 1859:29, pl. 71: fig. 2 [see Allender and Kraft, 1983:86, fig. 7E (holotype picture)]. *Padina gymnospora* (Kützinger) Sonder, 1871:47; Allender and Kraft, 1983:89; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:421; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:50; González-González, 1993:443; León-Tejera and González-González, 1993:498; León-Tejera et al., 1993:200; Servière-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; González-González et al., 1996:297, 340: fig. 19, 378; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:132; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:68; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000b:210, figs. 51–53, 82, 107; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:215, fig. 82A–D; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:146 [non *Padina gymnospora* sensu Vickers, 1905:58; Børgesen, 1914:46, fig. 155; Taylor, 1960:237; Earle, 1969:165; which is *Padina boergesenii* Allender et Kraft, 1983:87]. *Padina vickersiae* Hoyt in Howe, 1920:595; Taylor, 1960:236, pl. 34: fig. 1 [see Allender and Kraft, 1983:89].

Algae fanlike blades, up to 15 cm tall and 5–15 cm wide, usually as wide as or wider than long, yellowish-brown, simple with entire margins, ruffled; sometimes divided or torn into several lobes; calcified on both surfaces; above a short, stupose holdfast. Blades near inrolled margins of 2 cell layers, 30–50  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; midportion of 4–6 cell layers, 75–80  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; lower portion of 6–8 cell layers, 180–200  $\mu\text{m}$  thick. Cortical cells 18–30  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 18–30  $\mu\text{m}$  wide. Medullary cells 21–39  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by (75–)100–180  $\mu\text{m}$  wide. Hairs in concentric lines on both sides of blades.

Sporangia in sori with an indusium; sporangium up to 90  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; solitary or grouped in noncontinuous bands between hair lines on both blade surfaces. Oogonia in sori; oogonium 80–100  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 65–90  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Antheridia in sori up 240  $\mu\text{m}$  wide.

**HABITAT.** Mid intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Playa El Coloradito to Estero Tastiota; Bahía Concepción to Cabo Pulmo. Pacific coast: Nayarit to Jalisco; Oaxaca; Hawaiian Islands; China; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** St. Thomas, West Indies (U.S. Virgin Islands).

**REMARKS.** The Gulf of California specimens are tentatively referred to *Padina gymnospora*.

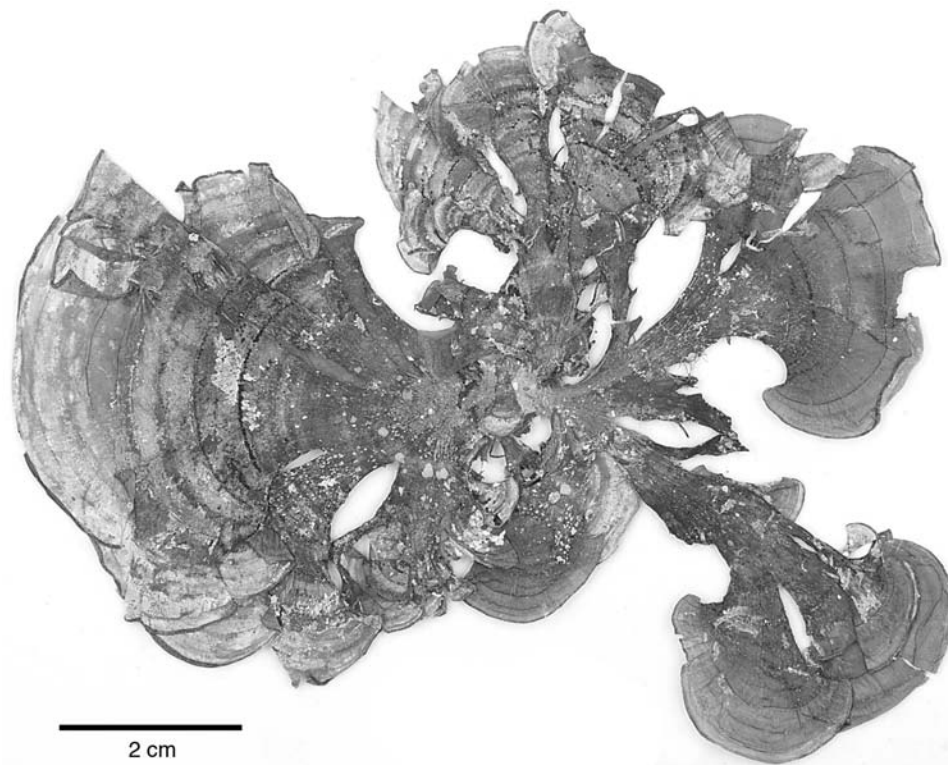


FIGURE 66. *Padina gymnospora*: Blades with ruffled margins and concentric bands of hairs between light calcification (JN-3425b).

Ávila-Ortiz and Pedroche (2005) found that herbarium specimens of tropical Pacific Mexico “*P. gymnospora*” they examined were either *P. crispata* or *P. mexicana* and noted that *P. gymnospora* should be applied to only material from the Atlantic. Thus, the Gulf of California “*P. gymnospora*” is in need of critical comparative studies, including molecular analyses with Caribbean *P. gymnospora* (type locality), to test their taxonomic and phylogenetic relationships.

***Padina mexicana* E. Y. Dawson var. *mexicana***

FIGURE 67

*Padina mexicana* E. Y. Dawson, 1944:231, pl. 52: fig. 2; Dawson, 1959a:19; Dawson, 1961b:389; Dawson, 1966a:11; Chávez B., 1980:48; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:46; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:24; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:31; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:50; Servière-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:110; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:43; González-González et al., 1996:156; Pa-

checo-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; Anaya-Reyna and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 1996:862; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 1998:45; Ávila-Ortiz and Pedroche, 1999:357; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:132; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:68; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000b:211, figs. 54–56, 83–86, 106; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Ávila-Ortiz, 2003:70, figs. 1–9; López et al., 2004:10; Ávila-Ortiz and Pedroche, 2005:158, figs. 37 (isotype), 38–41; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2005:102; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:203; Pedroche et al., 2008:54.

Algae low-growing, more or less prostrate, fan-shaped blades, light chalky whitish to grey-brown; blades often overlapping, forming clustered rosettes, attached to each other and to substratum by multicellular rhizoids along the lower portions of blades (without a stipe). Blades mostly entire, 1.5–3(–5) cm tall and 1.5–5.0 cm wide; moderately calcified (mostly on lower surface); concentric bands of hairs alternate with calcification. Blades near inrolled margin of 2 cell layers, 35–80(–100)  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; midportion of 4 cell layers, 90–170  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; lower portions of 5–6 cell layers, 150–200(–280)  $\mu\text{m}$  thick. Cortical cells 17–33  $\mu\text{m}$

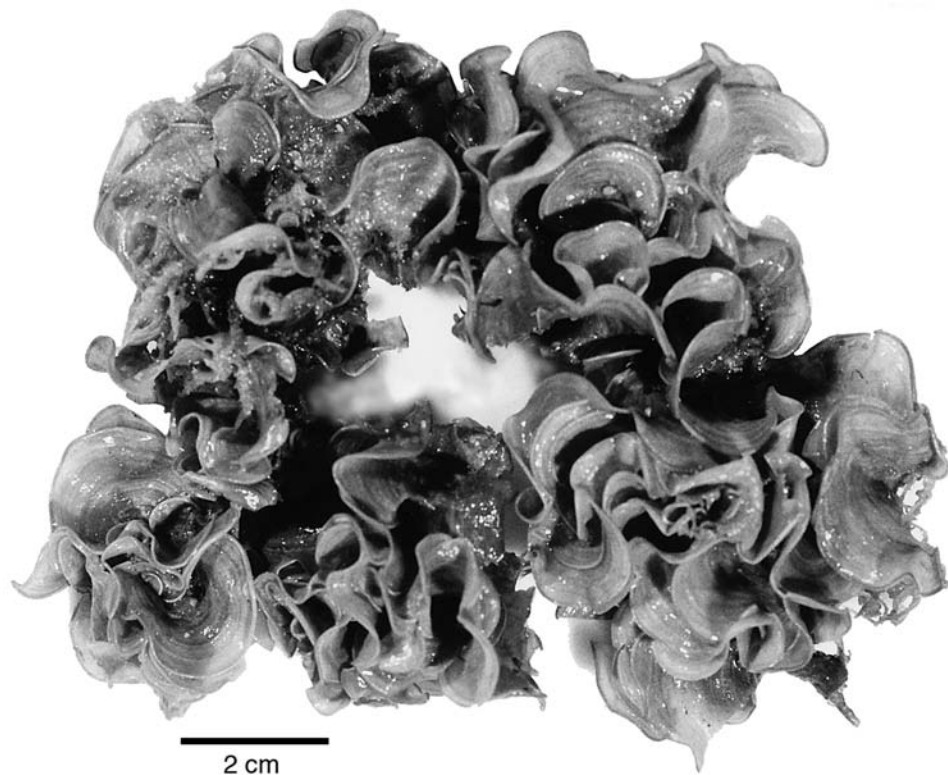


FIGURE 67. *Padina mexicana* var. *mexicana*: Blades adhering to each other to form rosettelike clusters (photo of living specimen viewed from above, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Mexico).

tall by 22–36  $\mu\text{m}$  wide; medullary cells 19–37  $\mu\text{m}$  by 24–48(–56)  $\mu\text{m}$  wide.

Sporangia in sori covered with a thin indusium; 90–120  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 50–90  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; patchy or discontinuous in irregular lines between the concentric bands of calcium carbonate only on the upper side. Oogonia 92–96  $\mu\text{m}$  tall (Mateo-Cid et al., 2000b) by 73  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; in sori with indusium (when immature), in concentric lines (Ávila-Ortiz and Pedroche, 2005). Antheridia not known.

**HABITAT.** On sand-covered rocks and tidal platforms; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal, to 3.3 m depth.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Cabo Pulmo. Pacific coast: Todos Santos, Baja California Sur; Sinaloa to Oaxaca.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Isla Turners, off southeast Isla Tiburón, Las Islas de la Cintura, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** *Padina mexicana*, apparently an annual species, appears in spring (beginning of the warm-water season) and is found through summer, usually until

August. It is distinguished from other Gulf species of *Padina* by its smaller size, more or less prostrate, open-rosette clusters of chalky calcified fronds that are attached by rhizoids along the base of blade (i.e., lacks a stipe or holdfast). Although generally considered a Gulf of California to tropical Pacific Mexico species, it has also been reported from West Africa (Price et al., 1978; John et al., 2003, 2004).

#### ***Padina mexicana* var. *erecta* Ávila-Ortiz**

*Padina mexicana* var. *erecta* Ávila-Ortiz, 2003:70, figs. 10–16; Ávila-Ortiz and Pedroche, 2005:161, figs. 42–45; Pedroche et al., 2008:55.

Algae erect, up 5 cm tall, with flat blades usually divided, uncalcified on both surfaces or calcified on lower surface; with a distinct stipe about 5 mm in length. Blade near inrolled margin of 2 cell layers, 40–80  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; mid to low portions of blade of 4–6 cell layers, 80–120  $\mu\text{m}$  thick in middle, and 130–220  $\mu\text{m}$  thick in lower to basal



portions. Cortical cells 16–25 tall by 24–36  $\mu\text{m}$  wide on upper surface and 24–30  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 24–36  $\mu\text{m}$  wide on lower surface.

Sporangial sori with indusium; mostly on lower surface in continuous bands, occasionally on upper surface in irregular lines, alternating with zones of calcium carbonate, and occasionally in patches or discontinuous in irregular lines on lower surface; sporangia 80–130  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 50–80  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Gametangial thalli dioecious. Oogonial sori with an indusium; in regular, discontinuous, or irregular bands on both surfaces; oogonia 120  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 50  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Antheridial sori with indusium; on lower surface in discontinuous lines; antheridia 52  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 27  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter.

**HABITAT.** On rocks; intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco; Bahía Concepción; Bahía de La Paz to Cabo San Lucas. Pacific coast: Todos Santos, Baja California Sur; Sinaloa to Oaxaca.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Puerto Vicente Guerrero, Guerrero, Pacific Mexico.

**REMARKS.** In the field, *Padina mexicana* var. *erecta* is distinguished from *P. mexicana* var. *mexicana* by its erect habit, evident stipe, sporangia on both sides of blade, and blades that are with or without calcification (Ávila-Ortiz, 2003).

### ***Rugulopteryx* De Clerck et Coppejans**

FIGURE 54A, D

*Rugulopteryx* De Clerck et Coppejans in De Clerck, Leli-aert, Verbruggen, Lane, De Paula, Payo, and Coppejans 2006:1286.

Algae are erect, of strap-like flattened fronds that are dichotomously to irregularly branched, and attached by rhizoids restricted to basal portions of thallus, some with basal stoloniferous holdfasts. Fronds have entire margins and rounded apices, with surfaces that may be undulate or rugose, or flat and smooth; surface proliferations are found in some species. Medulla is composed of large cubical to rectangular, colorless cells. Central portions of the medulla are one cell layer thick, and two to eight cell layers at the branch margins and stoloniferous holdfasts. Cortex is composed of a single cell layer (occasionally two-cell layers in basal portion) of small cells. Each cortical cell with numerous discoid chloroplasts. Growth is by a single, protruding or emarginate, apical cell. Phaeophycean hairs are scattered in tufts.

Reproductive structures are scattered, and either within concavities of the frond surfaces, or protruding from the frond surface. Sporangia are ovoid to pyriform and may be solitary, in groups, or in sori. Borne on two-celled basal stalks, the sporangia are surrounded by an inconspicuous involucre, and produce four aplanospores (tetraspores). Oogonia are borne on a single stalk cell, in sori or small groups. Antheridia borne in many tiered locules that are in whitish sori, surrounded by 3–5 rows of pigmented multicellular paraphyses.

One species of *Rugulopteryx* is recognized in the northern Gulf of California.

### ***Rugulopteryx okamurae* (E. Y. Dawson) I.-K. Hwang, W. J. Lee et H.-S. Kim**

FIGURE 68

*Dilophus okamurae* E. Y. Dawson, 1950a:86, as “*D. okamurai*”; Dawson, 1961b:388; Hommersand, 1972:70; Tseng, 1983:196. pl. 99: fig. 1; Kajimura, 1992:95–97, figs. 1–17; González-González et al., 1996:147; Yoshida, 1998:220, pl. 2-8: fig. B, pl. 2-9: figs. A, B; De Clerck, 2003:180

*Rugulopteryx okamurae* (E. Y. Dawson) I.-K. Hwang, W. J. Lee et H.-S. Kim in Hwang, Lee, Kim and De Clerck 2009:5, figs. 1–49.

*Dictyota okamurae* (E. Y. Dawson) Hörnig, Schnetter et Prud’homme van Reine, 1992a:54; Hörnig et al., 1993:170; De Clerck, 2003:174; Pedroche et al., 2008:44.

*Dictyota marginata* Okamura, 1913:33, pl. 108: fig. 9, pl. 109: figs. 1–8, *nom. illeg.*, i.e., a later homonym of *Dictyota marginata* (C. Agardh) Greville, 1830:xlili, which = *Stoecho spermum polypodioides* (J. V. Lamouroux) J. Agardh, 1848:100 (see De Clerck, 2003:173)].

*Dilophus marginatus* (Okamura) Okamura, 1915:154 [Corrigenda], *nom. illeg.*; Okamura, 1936:167, fig. 85 (1–3) [a later homonym of *Dilophus marginatus* J. Agardh, 1894:91, which is now *Rugulopteryx marginata* (J. Agardh) De Clerck et Coppejans in De Clerck et al., 2006:1286].

Algae of flattened, straplike fronds, up to 5 cm tall, and dichotomously to subdichotomously branched; attached below by rhizoids. Branches up to 5 mm wide, with segments of equal length, or with one segment of a pair frequently longer than the other; apices are rounded. Medulla of large colorless cells; one-cell layer thick toward center (seen in transection) and 2 or more cell

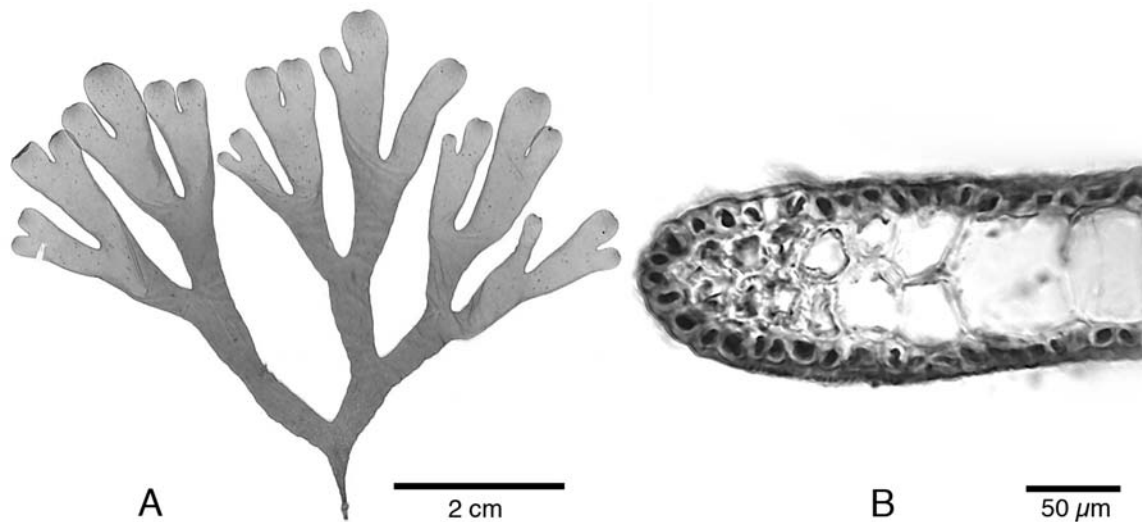


FIGURE 68. *Rugulopteryx okamurae*: A. Habit (JN-4086). B. Transection; note cortex of a single cell layer and medulla of more than one cell layer near margin (JN-3724).

layers in the margins. Cortex of small cells, of one-cell layer, throughout.

Reproduction not seen in Gulf material.

**HABITAT.** On rocks or occasionally entangled with other algae; low intertidal to shallow subtidal; also dredged from 19 m depths.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco; Cabeza Ballena to Bahía de San Lucas. Western Pacific coast: China (Tseng, 1983); Taiwan (Lewis and Norris, 1987); Japan (Yoshida, 1998); Korea (Lee and Kang, 2001).

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Enoshima, Kanagawa Prefecture (formerly Sagami Province), Honshū, Japan.

**REMARKS.** On the basis of their habit and morphological similarities, the northern Gulf specimens are referred to *Rugulopteryx okamurae*. The specific and generic status of the northern Gulf material of *R. okamurae* needs to be verified. Hwang et al. (2009) noted *R. okamurae* to be a subtropical to temperate western Pacific species, and did not include Gulf of California material, or the type (*Dictyota marginata* Okamura, 1913) or type locality material of *Dilophus okamurae* in their analyses. It would be interesting to study the life history of Gulf *R. okamurae* in culture and using molecular analyses to compare them to Japanese *R. okamurae* (type locality) and south Korean *R. okamurae* (Hwang et al., 2009) to test their phylogenetic relationships.

Although the species epithet has been spelled with different endings, the correct ending is *-e* (McNeill et al., 2006:Art. 60, Rec. 60C.1a), thus *R. okamurae*. A novel

form of vegetative propagation by the development of proliferous initials along the surface and margins of its fronds was shown in *R. okamurae* from Japan (Kajimura, 1992, as *Dilophus okamurae*).

### ***Spatoglossum* Kützing**

FIGURE 54G,H

*Spatoglossum* Kützing, 1843:339.

Algae are erect, flattened fronds, up to 5 cm wide, that are subdichotomously to subpalmately divided and attached by a fibrous holdfast. The flat fronds are often expanded upward and are irregularly to more or less laterally branched up to four orders, with entire, undulate, or slightly dentate margins. A midrib is entirely lacking in most or only partly extended from the holdfast into the lower basal portion. Growth is from marginal meristems of small groups of apical cells. Thalli are multilayered, up to 10 cell layers in transection, with a medulla and cortex, not clearly demarcated. Medulla is composed of two to several rows of colorless large cells that become progressively smaller outward to a cortical layer of smaller pigmented cells. Hair tufts arise from depressions that are scattered on both surfaces.

Sporangia are scattered over both surfaces of the thallus; borne either completely above or partially embedded and partly protruding, or entirely embedded on the surface and, produce four aplanospores (tetraspores). Oogonia

are solitary or in groups and are usually raised and spread over the thallus surfaces. Antheridia are borne in small, partially or entirely embedded sori that are scattered over both surfaces.

**REMARKS.** Sasaki et al. (1999) used presence or absence of sulfuric acid to separate morphologically

similar species of *Spatoglossum* and suggested this was a useful taxonomic character (Sasaki et al., 2004, 2005).

One species, *Spatoglossum howellii* Setchell et N. L. Gardner (1937), has been reported in the southern Gulf of California (Hommersand, 1972). Two species are currently known in the northern Gulf of California.

#### KEY TO THE SPECIES OF SPATOGLOSSUM IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Narrow lanceolate blades, up to 17 mm wide, with sparsely dentate margins; surface cells irregularly arranged; oogonia and antheridia embedded in cortical layer . . . . . *S. lanceolatum*  
 1b. Narrow blades expanding to 2(-3.5) cm wide, with entire margins; surface cells arranged in longitudinal rows; oogonia and antheridia projecting above surface . . . . . *S. subflabellatum*

### *Spatoglossum lanceolatum* E. Y. Dawson

FIGURE 69

*Spatoglossum lanceolatum* E. Y. Dawson, 1954e:328, pl. 1: figs. 1, 2, pl. 6; Dawson, 1961b:389; González-González et al., 1996:164; Pedroche et al., 2008:56.

Algae of few to several flat, 3–4 times irregularly, subdichotomously to subpalmately divided fronds, up to 28 cm tall, above a narrow slightly stipose stipe, up to 10 mm long and 1.0–2.0 mm wide; attached below by a discoid stipose cushion. Branches narrower near dichotomies, widening upward, becoming more or less lanceolate, to (3–)5–10(–17) mm broad; margins with irregularly spaced dentations; blades 200–250  $\mu\text{m}$  thick. Medulla of (3–)5–7 irregular layers of large cells, 40–65  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; sub-cortex of partial layers of similarly shaped smaller cells. Cortex of quadrangular cells, not projecting, outer walls forming a smooth surface; in surface view, cells of irregular shape and irregularly arranged (not in longitudinal rows).

Apparently monoecious. Oogonia ovate to hemispherical (or sometimes more or less angular), up to about 70  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; either solitary, in pairs, or in groups of 3–4; embedded within cortical layer (barely projecting above its surface). Antheridia in sori, 100–200  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, embedded in cortical layer and not projecting above surface; composed of densely packed cells, most 8–9  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; formed by periclinal cell divisions into irregular tiers within vertical columns, 30–40  $\mu\text{m}$  tall.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, in tide pools, and on tidal platforms; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Ensenada de San Francisco.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** North shore of Ensenada de San Francisco, near Punta de Las Cuevas, Sonora, Gulf of California.

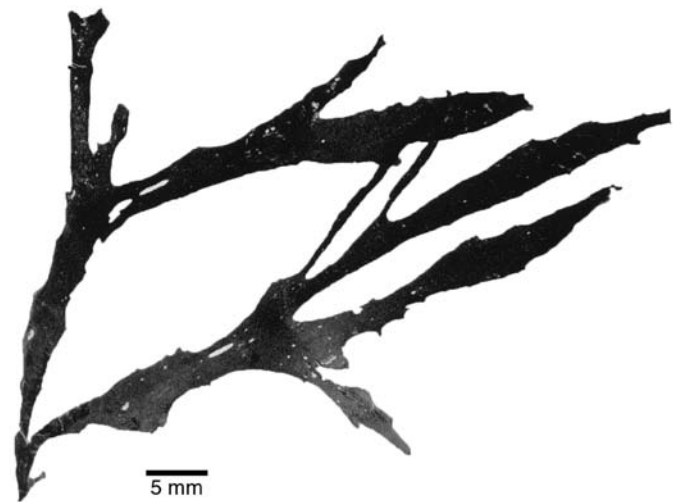


FIGURE 69. *Spatoglossum lanceolatum*: Part of the type specimen; note the irregularly and distantly spaced dentations (EYD-1966, after Dawson, 1954e: pl. 6).

**REMARKS.** *Spatoglossum lanceolatum*, a Gulf endemic species, is distinguished from other species of *Spatoglossum* by its narrower fronds with sparsely dentate margins, irregularly arranged surface cells, and the embedded (not projecting above blade surface) reproductive structures.

### *Spatoglossum subflabellatum* E. Y. Dawson

FIGURE 70

*Spatoglossum subflabellatum* E. Y. Dawson, 1954e:326, pl. 1: figs. 3–5, pl. 5: fig. 2; Dawson, 1961b:389; Dawson, 1966a:11; Dawson, 1966b:56; Hommersand, 1972:70; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; González-González et al.,

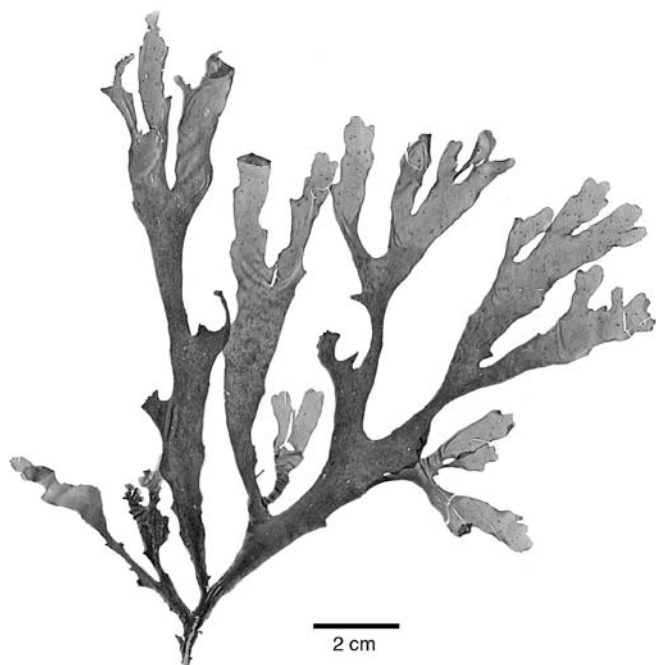


FIGURE 70. *Spatoglossum subflabellatum*: Habit (JN-5902).

1996:164; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49; Pedroche et al., 2008:56.

*Spatoglossum* cf. *schroederi* sensu Dawson, 1959a:19, fig.1; Dawson, 1961b:389 [non *Spatoglossum schroederi* (C. Agardh) Kützing, 1859:21, pl. 51].

Algae of few to several flat, narrow, irregularly divided or deeply split subflabellate to subpalmate fronds, up to 25 cm tall, arising from a stupose basal cushion (up to 2 cm tall). Fronds cuneate and narrow at base, becoming wider distally to 2(–3.5) cm broad and up to 180  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; with entire margins. Medulla of 2 irregular layers of large thin-walled cells, 40–70  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; subcortex of partial layers of smaller, similarly shaped cells. Cortex a single layer of pigmented cells, 20–30  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, with projecting rounded outer walls; in surface view, cells arranged in longitudinal rows and about twice as long as wide.

Sporangia unknown. Dioecious. Oogonia either solitary or in rows of 2–4 elevated on thallus surface; ovate, up to 70  $\mu\text{m}$  long, borne on a modified cortical cell. Antheridia elevated in sori, 150–400  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, scattered on thallus surface in groups; about 50  $\mu\text{m}$  tall by 25  $\mu\text{m}$  wide; each antheridium about 2.5  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter in vertical and horizontal rows.

**HABITAT.** On rocks and in crevices and tide pools; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal, down to 6 m depths.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Punta Los Frailes.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Dredged 11–18 m depths, near Punta de Las Cuevas, Ensenada de San Francisco, Sonora, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** *Spatoglossum subflabellatum* is a Gulf endemic. The more recent collections of Dawson (1966a, 1966b) that he identified as *S. subflabellatum* included specimens that were much broader than those originally described (Dawson, 1954e). Thus, this broadly defined species concept is in need of critical study and may include more than one species. Further, Dawson (1966b:56) observed that the Isla San Pedro Nolasco specimens were intermediate morphologies between *S. subflabellatum* and *S. howellii* Setchell et N. L. Gardner (1937) and suggested that *S. subflabellatum* probably reflects “progressive speciation in the specialized environment of the northern Gulf of California.”

## DESMARESTIALES

Desmarestiales Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1925:554.

Algae are heteromorphic, with large sporophytes that are cylindrical, compressed, flattened, or bladelike, and may be entire or branched. Growth is trichothallic-like and initiated by individual filaments with bidirectional intercalary divisions. The resulting structure is pseudoparenchymatous, with a cortex developed from the descending rhizoidal filaments growing from the bases of lateral hairs. Cells have several discoid plastids and no pyrenoids.

Life histories, where known, are heteromorphic. The large sporophytes develop unilocular sporangia that produce zoospores. The gametophytes are microscopic filaments, and sexual reproduction is oogamous.

There is one family represented in the northern Gulf of California.

## DESMARESTIACEAE

Desmarestiaceae (Thuret) Kjellman, 1880:10.

Sporophytes are erect cylindrical to flattened thalli, which are sparingly to abundantly branched or rarely entire and attached to the substratum by a discoid holdfast. Branching is opposite or alternate and generally pinnate. A pseudoparenchymatous cortex surrounds a single

filament, which initiates axial trichothallic-like growth of the bidirectional intercalary meristem. Some species have persistent or deciduous hairs on their margins that are irregularly scattered or in transverse whorls.

Unilocular sporangia are solitary or grouped in sori and produced by transformation of superficial cells of the thallus or of assimilatory filaments. Gametophytes are monoecious or dioecious, microscopic filamentous algae. Oogonia are usually produced on the filaments of a separate thallus, and each produces a single egg. Antheridia develop on filaments, and each antheridium produces a single biflagellate antherozoid.

One genus occurs in the northern Gulf of California, with its species apparently restricted to the Islas de la Cintura.

### ***Desmarestia* J. V. Lamouroux**

*Desmarestia* J. V. Lamouroux, 1813:43.

Sporophytic thalli are macroscopic, erect, with a single cylindrical or compressed main axis that is ligulate to broadly bladelike and usually pinnately or oppositely branched in most species or are simple and unbranched in a few, and attached below by a discoid holdfast. If the thallus is branched, the branches are cylindrical, compressed or flat, with opposite or alternate branchlets. Trichothallic growth occurs at the apices of the axis and branches. The main axial filament is surrounded by a thick medulla of large, colorless cells developed by downward growing hyphae. The cortical layer is composed of small cells that become progressively smaller toward the thallus surface. Cells have lenticulate plastids and vacuoles (in many species these contain sulfuric acid) and lack pyrenoids. Phaeophyceal hairs are absent.

Unilocular sporangia are isolated and scattered over the surface cells, developing from the transformation of cortical cells, or on stalk cells in small sori along with one- to two-celled paraphyses. Gametophytic thalli, little known in nature, are microscopic, irregularly branched filaments, and endozooic or endophytic. Gametophytes may be monoecious or dioecious, and are dimorphic in cell size of the filaments. Elongated oogonia develop on the cells of filamentous thalli of larger diameter; each oogonium produces a single oocyte. Antheridia develop on cells of filamentous thalli of narrower diameter, are usually borne in clusters, and produce motile spermatozooids.

**REMARKS.** In collecting species of *Desmarestia*, care should be taken in placing it with other specimens. Many species of *Desmarestia* are known to contain sulfuric

acid in their cell vacuoles (Blinks, 1951; Eppley and Bovell, 1958; Sasaki et al., 2004), which is probably a herbivore deterrent (Anderson and Velimirov, 1982). The vacuolar sap, with a pH 0.44 to 2.0 (Schiff, 1962), will discolor or damage your other collections. McClintock et al. (1982) showed the acidic or nonacidic condition to be species specific, and the analyses of Peters et al. (1997) revealed that sulfuric acid vacuoles were strong phylogenetic characters.

Carbohydrates were elucidated in some species of *Desmarestia* (Carlberg et al., 1978). The sexual hormone desmarestene and its role in sperm release and sperm attraction in the sexual reproduction of *Desmarestia* has been described by Müller and Lütke (1981) and Müller et al. (1982). Filamentous gametophytes of *Desmarestia*, although known from culture studies (e.g., Kornmann, 1962; Nakahara, 1984; Peters and Müller, 1986b), are apparently rare in nature and have not been found in the Gulf. Filamentous gametophytes have been found in the tissue of a Pacific Northwest sea pen, *Ptilosarcus gurneyi* (Anthozoa; Pennatulacea), and were cultured and grew to be sporophytes of *Desmarestia* (Dube and Ball, 1971). In the Antarctic, endophytic, monoecious filamentous gametophytes of *Desmarestia* were identified in the red alga *Curdiea racovitzae* Hariot (Moe and Silva, 1989).

Solely on the basis of vegetative morphology, the Gulf-endemic species *D. mexicana* and *D. filamentosa* were placed in synonymy with *D. ligulata* and *D. viridis*, respectively (Chapman, 1972b). Noting that vegetative characters may be of secondary importance and that reproductive structures are known for only a few of the species, Moe and Silva (1977) have questioned the conclusions of Chapman (1972a, 1972b).

Comparative morphological studies of vegetative characters and reproductive structures and life history culture studies, such as those of Peters and Müller (1986b) and Anderson and Bolton (1989), are needed for the northern Gulf taxa. These studies could test another morphological feature; e.g., Garbary (1978) suggested the surface characteristics of macroalgae may also be of taxonomic value, and Oates and Cole (1990b) found distinctive cell wall ornamentation on two species of *Desmarestia* from the northeast Pacific. Critical studies should also include DNA investigations to clarify the taxonomic status and phylogenetic relationships of the Gulf taxa.

Two taxa, apparently endemic, are known in the northern Gulf of California, and both contain sulfuric acid. While acknowledging the northern Gulf specimens are vegetatively similar to some species from the Pacific coast, they are ecologically and geographically isolated, with a restricted distribution to the cooler, subtidal waters

in the vicinity of Isla Ángel de la Guarda and adjacent areas and Isla San Esteban. Therefore, for now, two species are

recognized, one of these as a subspecies to reflect its possible relationship to a Pacific coast species.

#### KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *DESMARESTIA* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Thalli cylindrical to subcylindrical and narrow, less than 3 mm wide; oppositely branched to 3–5 orders ..... *D. filamentosa*  
 1b. Thallus flat, of large, broad blades, greater than 10 mm wide; either unbranched or sparsely, oppositely branched to 1–2 orders ..... *D. munda* subsp. *mexicana*

### *Desmarestia filamentosa* E. Y. Dawson

FIGURES 71, 72

*Desmarestia filamentosa* E. Y. Dawson, 1944:236, pl. 76; Dawson, 1961b:392; González-González et al., 1996:144.

*Desmarestia viridis* sensu Chapman, 1972b:225, fig. 9 [in part, with reference to Gulf *Desmarestia filamentosa* only]; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:225, fig. 187; Norris and Bucher, 1976:6; González-González et al., 1996:145; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:204; Pedroche et al., 2008:78 [non *Desmarestia viridis* (O. F. Müller) J. V. Lamouroux, 1813:45; basionym: *Fucus viridis* O. F. Müller, 1782:5].

Algae yellow-brown when fresh, pale green on drying, up to 92 cm tall; main axis cylindrical to subcylindrical, (1–)2–3 mm in diameter, percurrent and oppositely branched to 3–4(–5) orders; arising above a stipe, up to 5 cm long by 1–2 mm in diameter, and attached below by a small discoid holdfast. Branches mostly cylindrical and gradually reduced in size upward; ultimate branchlets 80–110 µm in diameter; apices with trichothallic filament with cortication below the meristematic zone (Figure 72A).

Reproduction not seen in Gulf of California specimens.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, sand/shell bottom; subtidal, (3–)10–23 m depths.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Isla Mejía and Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda to Bahía de Los Ángeles; Isla San Esteban.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda, Las Islas de la Cintura, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** Apparently a northern Gulf endemic, *Desmarestia filamentosa* is easily distinguished from the very large, flat, Gulf *D. munda* subsp. *mexicana* by its much smaller, narrower subcylindrical axes and

branches. Originally known only from the dredged type specimen (Dawson, 1944), numerous specimens of *D. filamentosa* were found in our diving off Roca Blanca, Puerto Refugio (Norris and Bucher, 1976, as “*D. viridis*”).

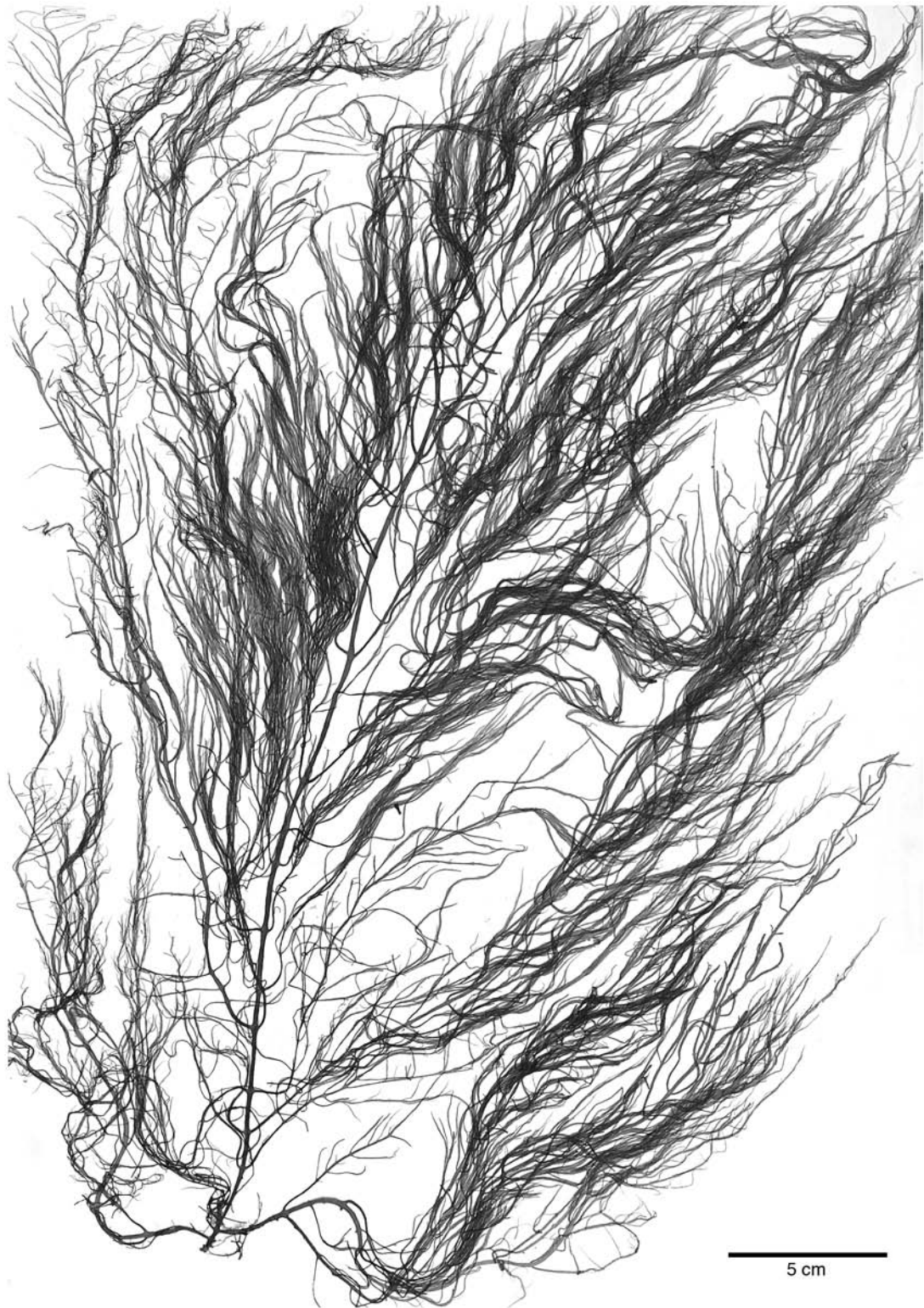
Dawson (1944) noted *D. filamentosa* was close to *D. media* (cf. Setchell and Gardner, 1925) and maybe to *D. pacifica* Setchell et N. L. Gardner (1924b, 1925). Chapman (1972b) considered *D. filamentosa* to be a synonym of *D. viridis*, a North Atlantic species that was subsequently reported on the Pacific coast from Alaska to Baja California (cf. Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976; Scagel et al., 1989). However, Abbott and Hollenberg (1976:222) suggested that most central California specimens identified as “*D. viridis*” were probably *D. kurilensis* Yamada (1935). Given the questionable taxonomic status of some species of *Desmarestia* in general (see “Remarks” under *Desmarestia*) and the ecological and geographical isolation of the Gulf taxon, it seems best to consider it a separate species, as *D. filamentosa*, until it can be further evaluated and its systematic status and phylogenetic relationships can be tested.

### *Desmarestia munda* Setchell et N. L. Gardner subsp. *mexicana* (E. Y. Dawson) J. N. Norris, *comb. nov.*

FIGURE 73

*Desmarestia mexicana* E. Y. Dawson, 1944:236, pl. 77; Dawson, 1961b:393; González-González et al., 1996:145; Pedroche et al., 2008:78.

*Desmarestia ligulata* sensu Chapman, 1972a:2, 17 [in part, with reference to Gulf *Desmarestia mexicana* only]; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:222; Norris and Bucher, 1976:6; González-González et al., 1996:144; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:204 [non *Desmarestia ligulata* (Lightfoot) J. V. Lamouroux, 1813:25; *Fucus ligulatus* Lightfoot, 1777b:946].



---

FIGURE 71. *Desmarestia filamentosa*: Habit, specimen from the type locality (JN-5271).

---



FIGURE 72. *Desmarestia filamentosa*: A. Apex of a branch showing single trichothallic filament above the meristematic zone (arrow), below which the cortical envelope develops. B. Upper portion of a branch with opposite initials of lateral branches developing (JN-5271).

Algae large, up to 150 cm in length; of 1 or more thin, flat blades, up to 85 cm long and widening gradually upward from its basal stipitate region, to 8–20 cm in width. Thalli arising from a small, conical holdfast with a slender, compressed stipe, (2–)3–4 mm wide, that extends into main axis, 3–4 mm wide, bearing a terminal primary blade. Main axis may remain unbranched or with opposite lateral blades. Primary and lateral blades broadly lanceolate and unbranched or may become sparsely and oppositely branched with secondary blades formed on the margin of its lower portion. Blades with a slender, visible midrib and faint opposite lateral veins that gradually disappear or occasionally continue to become midrib of marginal blades. Blade margins coarsely serrate; spine-like outgrowth tapering gradually, with a terminal tooth pointed upward.

Reproduction not observed in Gulf of California specimens.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, sand/shell bottom; subtidal, 9–23 m depths.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda to Isla Estanque; Punta la Gringa, Bahía de Los Ángeles.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda, Las Islas de la Cintura, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** *Desmarestia munda* subsp. *mexicana* was originally known from a single dredged collection in the northern Gulf (Dawson, 1944, as “*D. mexicana*”). *Desmarestia munda* subsp. *mexicana* is easily recognized by its very large size and flat, long, and broad, thin blades; diving surveys at its type locality showed it to be rather abundant at 15–23 m depths (Norris and Bucher, 1976).

Although *Desmarestia mexicana* was considered by Chapman (1972a) to be one of the synonyms of a broadly redefined *D. ligulata*, Silva (1979:336) noted that taxonomic treatment is not convincing. The northern Gulf specimens show some similarities with larger specimens of the Pacific coast *D. munda* Setchell et N. L. Gardner (1924b; Dawson, 1945c), a species recorded from Alaska to central Baja California (Setchell and Gardner, 1925:567, pl. 89; Smith, 1944:121, pl. 17: fig. 1; Dawson, 1951:52; Dawson et al., 1960a:30, pl. 7: fig. 1). However, Gulf specimens of *D. munda* subsp. *mexicana* differ from *D. munda* subsp. *munda* in having much broader, longer blades (up to 20 cm wide and to 85 cm long) that either lack secondary blades or have secondary blades that are sparse and opposite off the margins of the primary blade (Figure 73) or lateral blades. Therefore, it seems best to recognize the Gulf taxon as a subspecies to reflect its possible relationship to the Pacific *D. munda*, until its systematic and phylogenetic status can be tested.

### SPOROCHNALES

Sporochnales Sauvageau, 1926:364.

The sporophyte of these algae is a large erect macrophyte. Members usually have prominent, slender, terete or compressed main axes that are moderately to densely branched. The axes and branches are pseudoparenchymatous in structure and have characteristic terminal and/or lateral tufts of simple filaments. Growth occurs in the meristematic zone in apices of the axes and branches and in the intercalary meristem of each trichothallic filament of the terminal tufts. The cortical layer is composed of pigmented cells with discoid plastids and no pyrenoids. In contrast, the gametophytes, where known, are microscopic filamentous algae.





FIGURE 73. *Desmarestia munda* subsp. *mexicana*: Portion of thallus showing main axis with opposite lateral blades and primary blade with secondary blades developed oppositely along its margin (JN-5283).

Life histories are heteromorphic. Reproduction in the sporophytes is by meiospores produced in unilocular meiosporangia. The gametophytes are monoecious or dioecious, and reproduction is oogamous (Caram, 1965; Müller et al., 1985).

The order is represented by one family in the northern Gulf of California.

### SPOROCHNACEAE

Sporochnaceae Greville, 1830:36.

Members of this family have a branched main axis that is usually very distinct. The axis and branches bear short, usually stalked, determinate branchlets that bear a conspicuous terminal tuft of filaments. Growth is trichothallic in the axis and branches from an apical meristem located below the tuft of filaments, and in each of these filaments, growth is from an intercalary meristem just above their base. Anatomical structure is initially uniaxial in the youngest growing portions, which soon become surrounded by developing cells to form a pseudoparenchymatous medulla of large colorless cells and an outer cortex of small pigmented cells.

Unilocular sporangia produced by the macroscopic sporophyte are superficial on the cortex or borne laterally off clustered paraphyses. These produce meiospores that when released, germinate and develop into gametophytes. Sexual reproduction is oogamous. Gametophytes are microscopic, branched uniseriate filaments that produce oogonia and antheridia.

One genus of the family is found in the northern Gulf of California.

### *Sporochnus* C. Agardh

*Sporochnus* C. Agardh, 1817:xii.

Algae (sporophyte) have an erect cylindrical axis with few to many lateral branches, branched up to several orders and attached below by a fibrous holdfast. The main axis and branches are slender, threadlike to wiry, more or less indeterminate in growth, and terminate in a tuft of trichothallic filaments. Numerous determinate tufted branchlets, of more or less similar length, are borne on the axis and all orders of branches. These determinate branchlets in most species are stalked (pedicel) below a thicker fertile portion (sporangial receptacle) with a terminal tuft of trichothallic filaments, although in a few species they are without stalks (non-pedicellate).

The large sporophytes produce unilocular sporangia in a layer encircling the fertile portion of determinate branchlets below their terminal tuft (see, e.g., Womersley, 1987:fig. 103G). Unilocular sporangia are borne laterally on unbranched or branched paraphyses that have an enlarged spherical to subspherical terminal cell. Gametophytic thalli are microscopic branched filaments and are monoecious or dioecious. Sexual reproduction is oogamous.

**REMARKS.** Caribbean species of *Sporochnus* have been shown to produce some bioactive secondary metabolites, sporochnols A, B, and C (Shen et al., 1993). The natural products of the Gulf of California species should also be investigated.

Two species are found with a restricted distribution in the northern Gulf of California.

#### KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *SPOROCHNUS* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Ultimate tufted branchlets long, up to 9.0 mm long; sporangial receptacles with stalks 1.0–3.0(–4.0) mm in length . . . . . *S. anomalus*  
 1b. Ultimate tufted branchlets much shorter, mostly 0.5–1.0 mm long; sporangial receptacles mostly lacking stalks or, if present, minute, less than 240 µm in length . . . . . *S. neushulii*

### *Sporochnus anomalus* (Pallas) M. J. Wynne

FIGURES 74, 75A,B

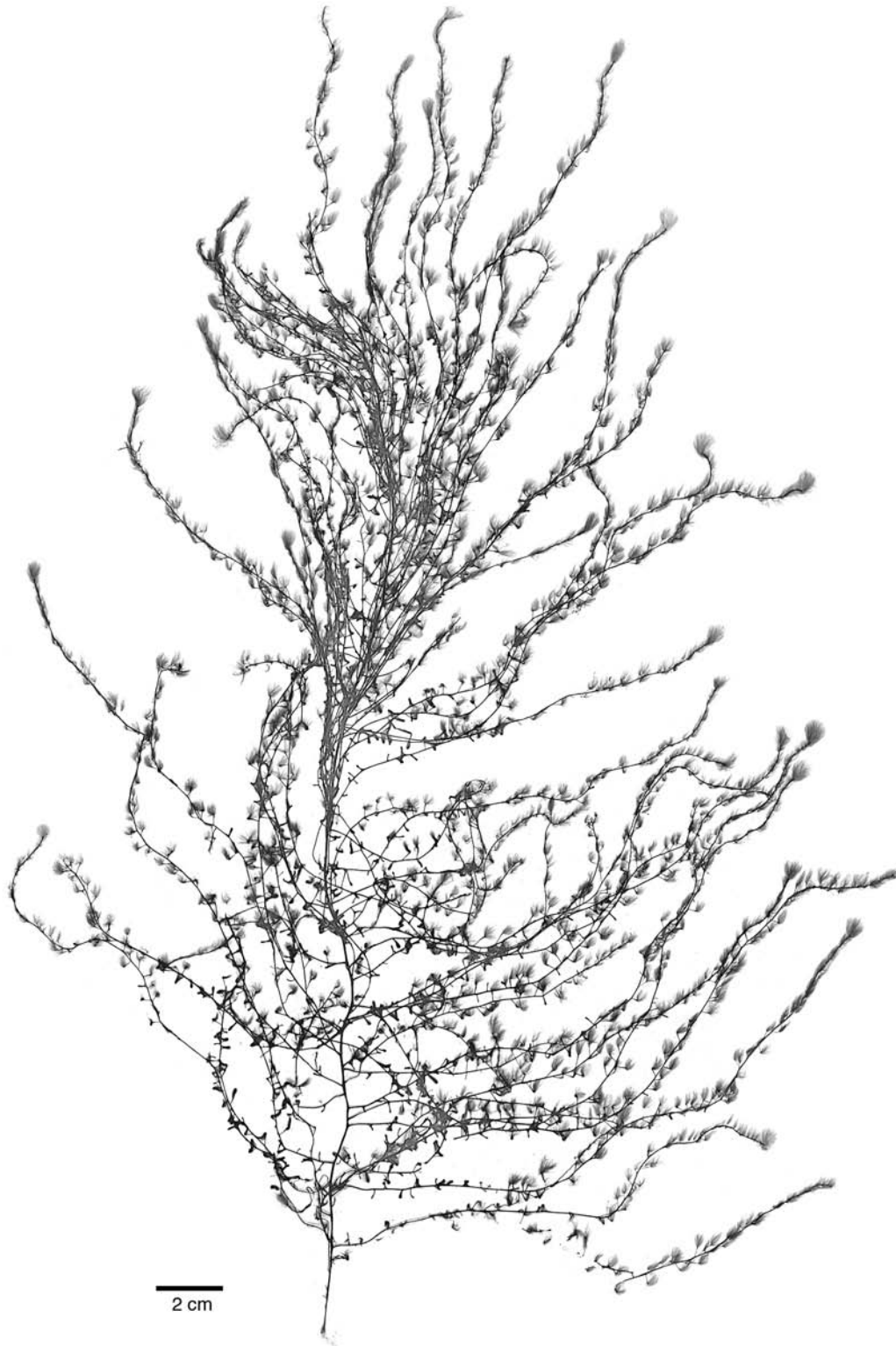
*Fucus anomalus* Pallas, 1766:199, pl. 14: figs. 24, 24\*[sic].  
*Sporochnus anomalus* (Pallas) M. J. Wynne, 2003:78, fig. 1.

*Sporochnus gaertnera* C. Agardh, 1820:150; C. Agardh, 1824:259; Montagne, 1846:27.

*Fucus gaertnera* Gmelin, *nom. illeg.*, 1768:164, pl. XIX: figs. 1, 1a.

*Sporochnus pedunculatus* sensu Dawson, 1951:56 [non *Sporochnus pedunculatus* (Hudson) C. Agardh, 1820:149; basionym: *Fucus pedunculatus* Hudson, 1778: 587].

*Sporochnus bolleanus* sensu Dawson et al., 1960b:14; Dawson, 1961b:392; Norris and Bucher, 1976:4, figs. 3, 4; González-González et al., 1996:165; Pacheco-Ruiz



---

FIGURE 74. *Sporochnus anomalus*: Habit, branches with numerous stalked, tufted branchlets (JN-5264).

---

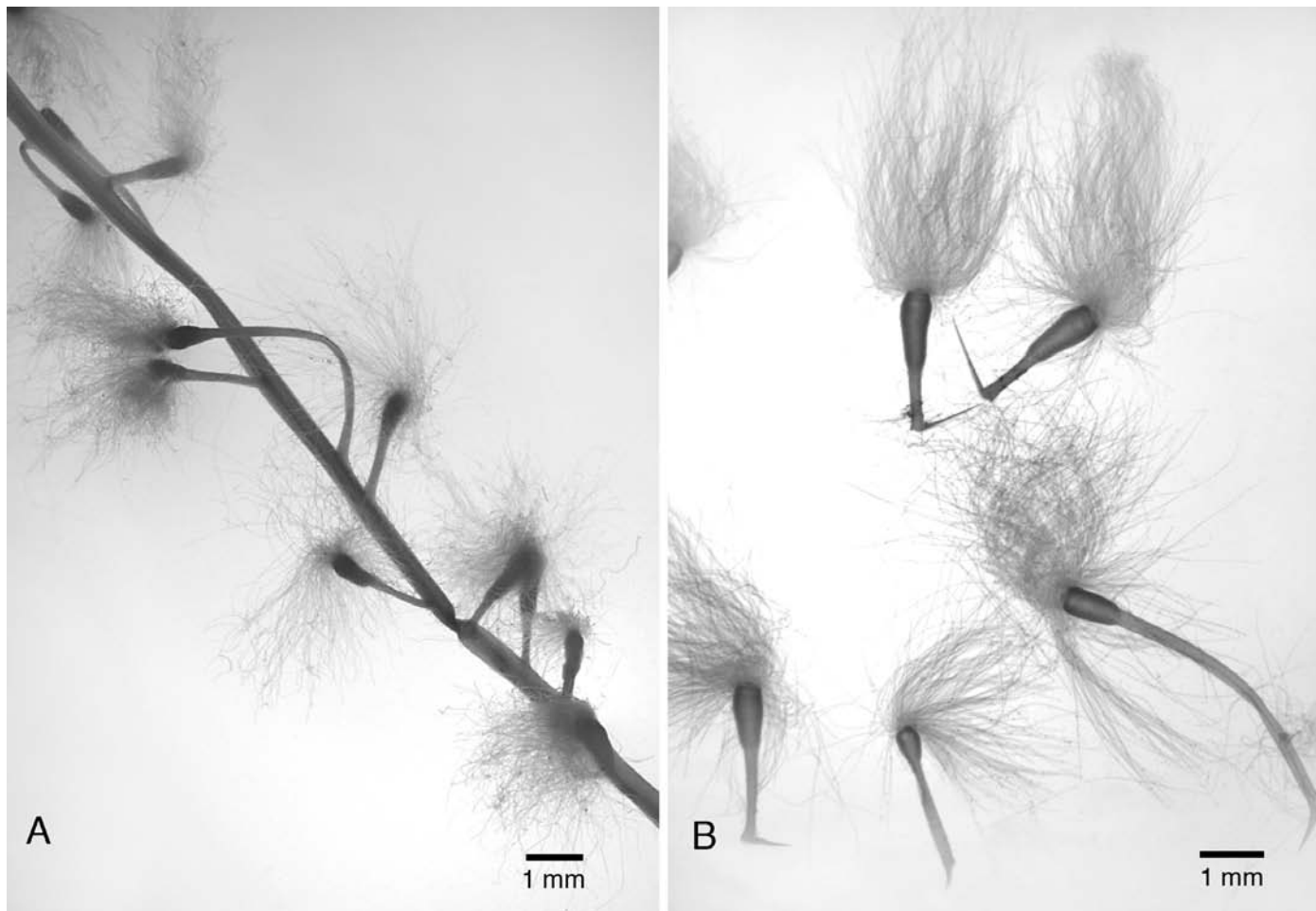


FIGURE 75. *Sporochnus anomalus*: A. Portion of a branch with determinate branchlets, each showing the sterile, long stalk, a wider fertile portion (receptacle), and an apical tuft of filaments (JN-5264). B. Overall length variations of determinate lateral branchlets, with stalk, receptacle (sporangial sori surrounding branch), and terminal tuft of assimilatory filaments (JN-5264).

and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:204; Pedroche et al., 2008(in part; Gulf of California records only):76 [non *Sporochnus bolleanus* Montagne, 1856:393].

Algae (sporophyte) erect, up to 44 cm tall, of terete branched axes; lateral branches up to 38 cm long. Determinate tufted branchlets on axes and branches usually numerous and up to 9.0 mm in length; composed of a long stalk, (1.0–)2.0–3.0(–5.0) mm long and up to 200  $\mu$ m in diameter, elongated cylindrical receptacle, 1.0–2.25 mm long, and a terminal cluster of filaments, 3.0–5.0(–6.0) mm long, extending from an apical pit.

**HABITAT.** On rocks and shells; subtidal, 20–30 m depths.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Roca Blanca, Puerto Refugio (Isla Ángel de la Guarda) to Bahía de Los Ángeles. Pacific coast: Isla Guadalupe; Punta Abreojos to Punta Pequeña, Baja California Sur.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Not given by Pallas (1766); Mediterranean was listed by Gmelin (1768).

**REMARKS.** The northern Gulf of California specimens of *Sporochnus anomalus* have measurements intermediate between two other species: larger than those of *S. pedunculatus* (Hudson) C. Agardh (1820) and smaller than those of *S. bolleanus* Montagne (1856) (cf. Taylor, 1960; Earle, 1969). Earle (1969) has noted that in the northeastern Gulf of Mexico certain forms of *S. bolleanus* have branchlets shorter than usual for this species, making it sometimes difficult to separate from *S. pedunculatus*

where the two occur together. The northern Gulf *Sporochnus* is tentatively referred to *S. anomalus*, until critical studies of northern Gulf specimens can be made to determine their taxonomic status and phylogenetic relationships.

***Sporochnus neushulii* J. N. Norris, sp. nov.**

FIGURE 76A-E

**LATIN DESCRIPTION.** Algae usque ad 31 cm longae, maiores teretes axes cum ramis plerumque alternis et lateralibus, usque ad 2.5 cm longis; ab imo affixae cum parvo discoidi hapterone. Axes et rami ferentes parvos et numerosos (plerumque denses) ramulos, radialiter dispositos, breves, determinatos, caespitosos, (0.25–)0.5–1.0(–2.0) mm longos, 200–600(–750)  $\mu$ m in diametro, plerumque non-pedicellatos praecipue in altis partibus thalli, vel, quamvis rarum (ut videtur), si pedicelli adsunt, maxime minuti tantum usque ad 80(–240)  $\mu$ m longi et usque ad 125  $\mu$ m in diametro. Sporangialia receptacula cylindricalia, magis vel minus ovoidea, cum terminalibus caespitibus pilorum. Uniloculares sporangiae, elongatae, latae lateraliter super paraphyses, quorum terminales cellulae largae et sphaericae usque sub-sphaericae sunt.

Algae (sporophyte) up to 31 cm tall, main terete axes with usually alternate, lateral branches, up to 12.5 cm long; attached below by a small discoid holdfast. Axes and branches bearing numerous (often dense), radially arranged, short, determinate, tufted branchlets, (0.25–)0.5–1.0(–2.0) mm in length, 200–600(–750)  $\mu$ m in diameter; mostly without a stalk (pedicel), especially in upper portions of thallus, or, although apparently rare, with very minute stalks, only up to 80(–240)  $\mu$ m long and up to 125  $\mu$ m in diameter.

Sporangial receptacles cylindrical, sometimes more or less ovoid, with terminal tuft of filaments from apical pit. Unilocular sporangia, clavate, 14–22  $\mu$ m in length and 3–4  $\mu$ m in diameter, borne laterally on paraphyses, with enlarged, spherical to subspherical terminal cell, 12–15 (–18)  $\mu$ m in diameter.

Gametophytes unknown.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, subtidal; 20–30 m depths.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda.

**HOLOTYPE.** US Alg. Coll.-158492, 21 Apr 1974, coll. J. N. Norris & K. E. Bucher, JN-5262; isotypes: MICH; US Alg. Coll.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Off west side of Roca Blanca, Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda, Las Islas de la Cintura, Gulf of California.

**ETYMOLOGY.** The species is named in honor of the late Michael Neushul Jr. (University of California, Santa Barbara), professor, mentor, and friend, in recognition of his numerous contributions to marine botany (Lewis et al., 1994; Reed et al., 1994), for his teaching and encouragement to students, and particularly for his support of my Gulf of California research. He was inspired early on by E. Yale Dawson to study marine algae and become a scuba diver, and he also collected and published papers with Dawson on algae of southern California and Pacific Mexico.

**REMARKS.** *Sporochnus neushulii* is an endemic species, thus far only known from Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda. The northern Gulf specimens somewhat resemble *S. apodus* Harvey (1859) in habit (cf. Womersley, 1967, 1987). The two differ in the nature of their sporangial receptacles. There is a complete absence of pedicels for the receptacles of *S. apodus* (Harvey, 1859: pl. XCII; Womersley, 1987: 278, fig. 101C–E; Brostoff, 1984, tbl. 1), whereas not all the receptacles of *S. neushulii* are nonpedicellate because some are on very minute pedicels. Their receptacles also differ in size and shape: in *S. apodus* they are 0.3–2.0(–4.0) mm in length and 200–300  $\mu$ m in diameter, broadest at their base, and slightly tapered upward; in contrast, they are mostly shorter in *S. neushulii*, 0.5–1.0(–2.0) mm in length and usually wider in diameter, 200–600(–750)  $\mu$ m, and cylindrical (sometimes ovoid) and of similar diameter throughout. These two are also widely geographically separated from each other. *Sporochnus neushulii* is apparently restricted to the north end of Isla Ángel de la Guarda (29°32'N, 113°33'W), and *S. apodus* is known from Tasmania (type locality: George Town) and southern Australia (South Australia to Victoria; Womersley, 1987) (range approximately 33°–38.4°S, 134°–147°E). Thus, for now, they are recognized as different species.

*Sporochnus neushulii* also superficially resembles some *S. pedunculatus* (Hudson) C. Agardh (1820; type locality: England). However, *S. neushulii* differs from *S. pedunculatus* primarily by its sporangial receptacles, which usually lack stalks or have stalks, when present, that are very minute (less than 240  $\mu$ m long), and its sporangial receptacles are of similar or longer length, up to 2.0 mm. *Sporochnus pedunculatus*, from England (Fletcher, 1987) and the Mediterranean Sea, has sporangial receptacles that are slightly shorter in length, 0.5–1.0 mm, and borne on distinctive long stalks, up to 1 mm in length (Wynne, 2003).

*Sporochnus pedunculatus* has been reported on the Pacific coast from Santa Catalina Island, California Channel Islands (Mower and Widdowson, 1969, as “S.

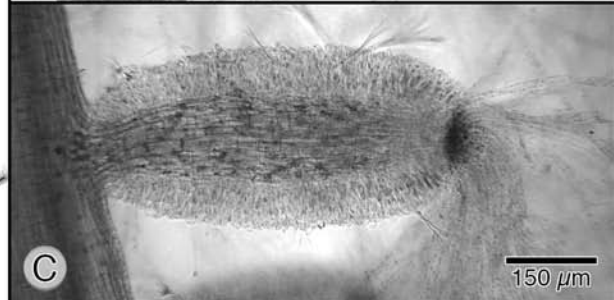
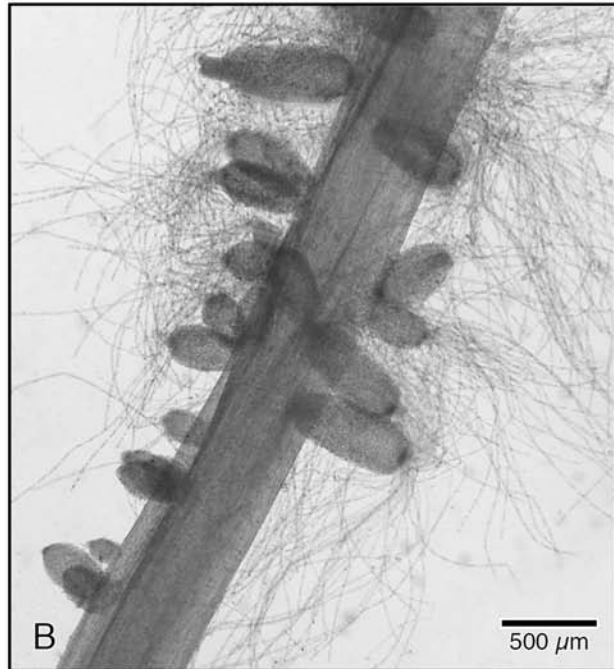
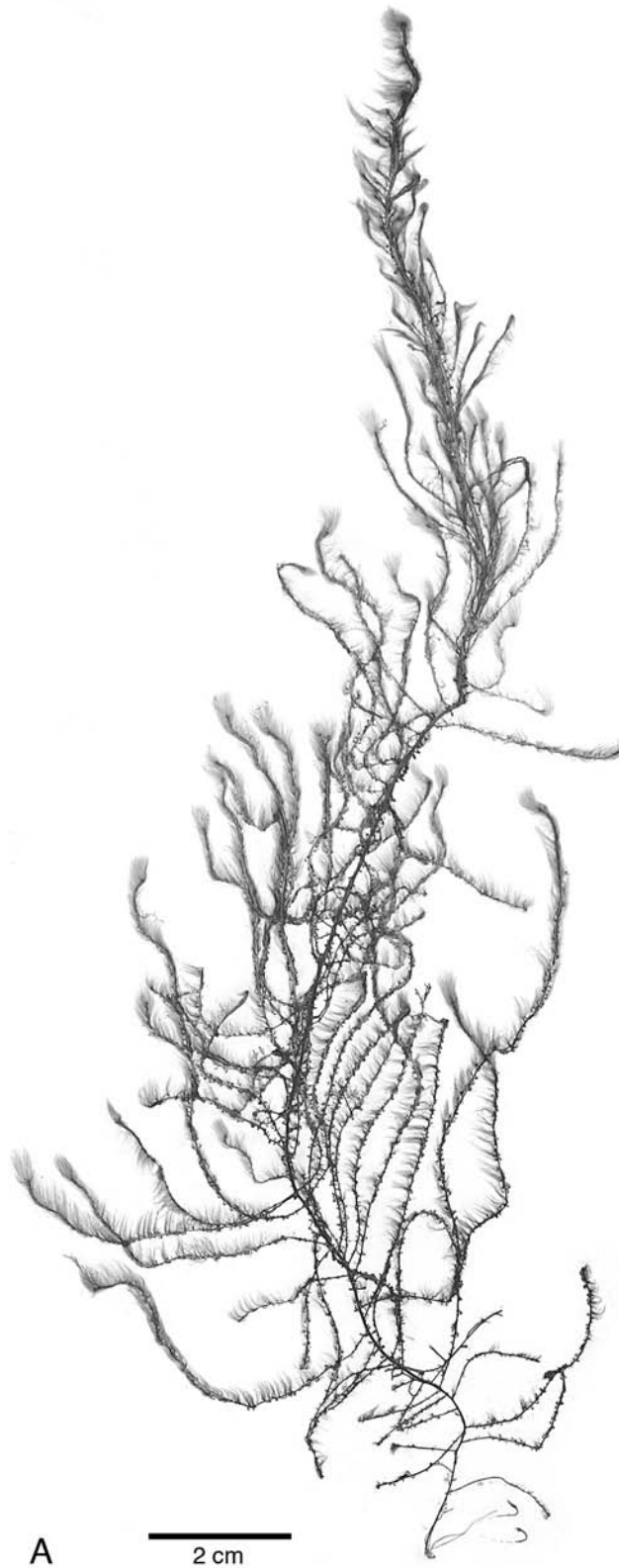


FIGURE 76. *Sporochmus neushulii* sp. nov., holotype (JN-5262; US Alg. Coll.-158492). A. Habit of holotype specimen. B. Portion of a branch with short, radially arranged, determinate, tufted branchlets. C. Example of a typical non-pedicellate determinate branchlet, completely covered by sporangial paraphyses from apical tuft to parent branch. D. Very minute, sterile stalk, as found on only a few of the determinate tufted branchlets. E. Portion of a receptacle showing a group of paraphyses, each with terminal subspherical cell (arrowhead), and developing laterally borne, unilocular sporangia (arrow).

*apodus*”), to Laguna Ojo de Liebre (Scammon’s Lagoon), Baja California Sur (Dawson et al., 1960b), and Isla Guadalupe (Setchell and Gardner, 1930; Stewart and Stewart, 1984). In contrast to *S. neushulii*, southern California *S. pedunculatus* (Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976) has much longer stalks (0.75–2.5 mm long) and longer (up to 2 mm long) and slightly narrower (up to 500 µm in diameter) sporangial receptacles. Finally, *S. pedunculatus* as reported in the western Atlantic (Taylor, 1960) and Gulf of Mexico (Earle, 1969) also has longer stalks (1–2 mm long) and generally smaller (0.75–1.25 mm; rarely to 2.0 mm long) and somewhat narrower (up to 500 µm in diameter) sporangial receptacles. Further studies and molecular analyses will be helpful in testing the taxonomic status and phylogenetics of the northern Gulf *S. neushulii* and California and Pacific Baja California *S. pedunculatus*.

### RALFSIALES\*

Ralfsiales Nakamura ex Lim et Kawai in Lim et al., 2007:464.

Ralfsiales Nakamura, 1972:152, *nom. invalid.*

Algae are crustose in at least one stage of their life history or have a crustose form only in the early stages of development (i.e., *Analipus* Kjellman, 1889; Wynne, 1971). The initial development of the thallus is disc-shaped in all members. Cells have one to several chloroplasts without pyrenoids.

Unilocular sporangia (zoidangia) are terminal or lateral and either with or without paraphyses. Plurilocular sporangia (zoidangia) are intercalary with terminal sterile cells. The Rubisco large subunit gene sequence is distinctive (Lim et al., 2007).

\* Contributed by Daniel León-Álvarez and James N. Norris; D. León-Álvarez: Sección de algas del Herbario de la Facultad de Ciencias, Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México, Apartado Postal 70–592, 04510 Mexico D.F., Mexico.

REMARKS. Although the Ralfsiales was first proposed by Nakamura (1972), the name lacked the required Latin description (see McNeill et al., 2006:Art. 36.2). Silva and de Reviers (2000) and León-Álvarez and Norris (2004) noted that since then, the name, although not validly published, had been used in the literature by many phycologists. The ordinal name was only recently validly published as Ralfsiales Nakamura ex Lim et Kawai (in Lim et al., 2007).

Originally, Nakamura (1972) proposed the order to include three families: Ralfsiaceae Farlow (1881), Lithodermataceae Hauck (1884), and Nemodermataceae J. Feldmann (1937). Subsequently, another family, the Mesosporaceae Tanaka and Chihara (1982), was added. Recently, the monotypic Nemodermataceae based on *Nemoderma* Kuckuck (1912), was removed from the Ralfsiales to a new order, the Nemodermatales Parente, R. A. Fletcher, F. Rousseau et N. Phillips (in Phillips et al., 2008).

There is one family represented in the northern Gulf of California.

### RALFSIACEAE

Ralfsiaceae Farlow, 1881:17, 86.

Algae are discoid to spreading prostrate crusts or cushionlike, with smooth to convoluted surfaces. Crustose thalli growing on hard substrata are usually without rhizoids on their ventral surface and may be firmly attached or easily detached. Internally, crustose members are composed of a basal layer of horizontal radiating filaments, one to several cell layers thick, and middle to upper layers of assurgent to erect filaments produced by the basal cells. These layers may be loosely (e.g., *Hapalospongidion* De A. Saunders, 1899), moderately (e.g., *Petroderma* Kuckuck, 1897, and *Ralfsia confusa* Hollenberg, 1969), or closely packed (e.g., members of *Ralfsia* subgen. *Ralfsia* [= Batters, 1902:42, as “R. subgen. *Euralfsia*”). Growth is from terminal cells of the horizontal and erect filaments or, in a few, intercalary from basal meristems of cortical

filaments. Cells have cup-shaped or plate-shaped chloroplasts without pyrenoids.

Reproductive structures are lateral, terminal, or intercalary on the reproductive filament and are usually associated with surrounding paraphyses or vegetative filaments (but lacking in a few) (León-Álvarez and Norris, 2004). Life histories, where known, are isomorphic, with unilocular or plurilocular sporangia (zoidangia) on separate individuals.

**REMARKS.** The Ralfsiaceae had been placed in the Ectocarpales (e.g., Wynne, 1981; Nelson, 1982; Scagel et al., 1989; Schneider and Searles, 1991; Silva et al., 1996a), or in the Myrionemataceae (e.g. Loiseaux, 1986), but on the basis of rDNA studies, Tan and Druehl (1994) concluded the family did not belong in the Ectocarpales,

and Draisma et al. (2003) stated molecular sequences of *Ralfsia* were needed to clarify their systematic and phylogenetic relationships. The ordinal taxonomic placement of the Ralfsiaceae was recently resolved in the molecular phylogeny of Lim et al. (2007), which supported the Ralfsiales. Taxonomic studies of members of the family include those of Tanaka and Chihara (1980a, 1980b, 1980c, 1981a, 1981b, 1982).

Riosmena-Rodríguez and Paul-Chávez (1997) have reported two genera in the southern Gulf from La Paz: *Endoplura* Hollenberg (1969) with *E. aurea* Hollenberg; and *Pseudolithoderma* Svedelius (in Kjellman and Svedelius 1910) with *P. nigrum* Hollenberg (1969).

Two genera, including one of uncertain taxonomic status, are known in the northern Gulf of California.

#### KEY TO THE GENERA OF RALFSIACEAE IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Thalli low-growing clumps of overlapping linear, mostly horizontal, short branches . . . . . *Hapterophycus*  
 1b. Thalli crustose; flat, discoid to spreading, sometimes overlapping; of 2–3 layers: a basal layer of 1 or more horizontal filaments and 1–2 upper layers of assurgent or vertical filaments . . . . . *Ralfsia*

#### ***Hapterophycus* Setchell et N. L. Gardner in Setchell**

*Hapterophycus* Setchell et N. L. Gardner in Setchell, 1912:233.

Algae are low growing and spreading, but only slightly crustose, with linear, mostly horizontal, short branches. Medulla has a middle layer of horizontal filaments of elongated cells that have with downwardly directed filaments and assurgent filaments that end with adjoined erect filaments. Cryptostomata are present. Cells have a single parietal chloroplast. Unilocular sporangia are in broad sori; sessile at the base of multicellular paraphyses. Gametangia not confirmed.

**REMARKS.** The generic status of *Hapterophycus* is in need of investigation. In culture studies, Kogame (1996) has shown that Japanese specimens identified as “*H. canaliculatus*” were a sporophytic phase in the life history of a species of *Scytosiphon* C. Agardh (1820) and, on the basis of their morphological similarity to the generitype (*H. canaliculatus* Setchell et N. L. Gardner in Setchell, 1912), concluded them to be *Scytosiphon canaliculatus* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Kogame, thus reducing *Hapterophycus* to a synonym of *Scytosiphon* (Scytosiphonaceae). However, in culture studies of southern California *H. canaliculatus* (type locality: San Pedro,

California) neither Hollenberg (1941) nor Wynne (1969) observed erect thalli, and Wynne concluded there was a “direct type” of life history with a macroscopic alga with unilocular sporangia. Hollenberg (1941; see also Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976) concluded *Hapterophycus* should be in the Ralfsiaceae, close to *Ralfsia*. The question of its generic and familial placement and if the algae from California and Japan are the same species will need to be resolved by molecular and phylogenetic analyses.

There is one endemic species in the northern Gulf of California.

#### ***Hapterophycus anastomosans* E. Y. Dawson**

FIGURE 77A,B

*Hapterophycus anastomosans* E. Y. Dawson, 1966b:56, figs. 2, 6A; Hollenberg, 1969:301; Wynne, 1969:7; González-González et al., 1996:152; Pacheco-Ruiz et al., 2008:204; Pedroche et al., 2008:26.

Algae form extensive, entangled mats, up to 40 cm or more in width; consisting of horizontal to partially erect, short, rigid (haptera-like) branches, subdichotomously to irregularly branched. Branches subcylindrical to compressed, up to 1.0 mm wide and to 15 mm long, simple to palmately divided terminally, with blunt, broadly rounded



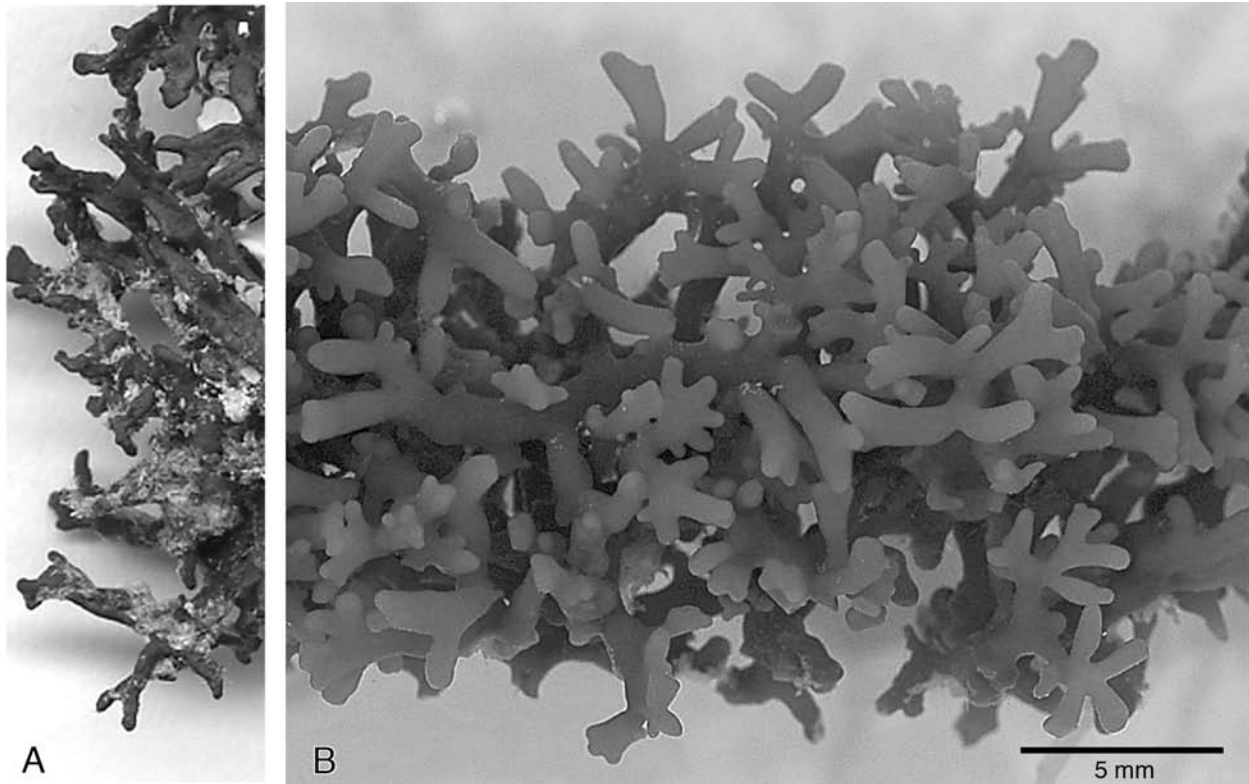


FIGURE 77. *Hapterophycus anastomosans*: Habit (holotype, EYD-26110; US Alg. Coll.-37228.). A. Portion of air-dried holotype specimen. B. Liquid-preserved portion of type specimen showing the entangled, fused, short branches that form the low-growing mat.

apices; entangled and fused at most lateral or terminal contacts by anastomosing growth, attachments give rigidity to thallus. Medulla in transection of compact, more or less isodiametric, angular cells of irregular size, 20–40  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; in longitudinal section, central portion of irregularly oblong cells and outward cells in a “fountain pattern” toward the apices and cortical surfaces. Cortex of sparsely branched, anticlinal rows of 7–8 cells, 6–7  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter.

Reproduction not known.

HABITAT. On rocks, mid intertidal.

DISTRIBUTION. Gulf of California: Isla San Lorenzo; Isla Raza.

TYPE LOCALITY. Isla Raza, Islas de la Cintura, Gulf of California.

REMARKS. Apparently a Gulf endemic, the taxonomic status of *H. anastomosans* is in need of investigation (see also Remarks above under genus). Until the generic and specific status of Gulf *H.?* *anastomosans* can be tested by comparative morphological, life history, and molecular analyses with the generitype *H. canaliculatus*

Setchell et N. L. Gardner (in Setchell 1912) (type locality San Pedro), and those reported from southern California (Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976), Pacific Baja California (Dawson, 1951), and Isla Guadalupe (Stewart and Stewart, 1984), the Gulf of California taxon is referred to this genus with a query.

### ***Ralfsia* Berkeley in J. E. Smith et J. C. Sowerby**

*Ralfsia* Berkeley in J. E. Smith et J. C. Sowerby, 1843:pl. 2866.

Algae are crustose and loosely to firmly adherent (without rhizoids) to the substratum or attached by rhizoids. Initially, crusts are more or less disc shaped, but later spread and may become slightly lobed at the margins. Few to several crusts often grow close to each other, and each may become thicker by overgrowth of overlapping margins. Anatomically, there are two or three layers: a lower or basal layer of one to several horizontally radiating filaments, either with or without rhizoids from

its lowermost cells, and upper and/or middle layers developed from basal filaments that ascend to form more or less vertical, moderately to firmly adjoined, unbranched to sparingly branched filaments of similar length. Cells of the outer surface layer usually have one chloroplast per cell. Hairs are grouped in hair pits within the upper surface layers.

Reproductive structures are unilocular or plurilocular on separate algae. Unilocular structures are lateral or terminal and sessile or on one to few stalk cells (pedicel), usually associated with paraphyses, and grouped in superficial sori. Plurilocular structures are slender, of one to two rows of locules, with one to two sterile terminal cells, and grouped within the crust.

**REMARKS.** Life history studies of the species of *Ralfsia* thus far cultured are heteromorphic (with mostly asexual phases, but sexual phases have been reported for

some in culture studies), with an erect bladelike thallus (such as *Petalonia*) and a prostrate crustose *Ralfsia* or “*Ralfsia*-like” phase (e.g., Wynne, 1969, 1972; Nakamura and Tatewaki, 1975; Fletcher, 1978). Loiseaux (1968) found two species of *Ralfsia* to be apomeiotic with apparent isomorphic life histories. Culture and molecular studies of Gulf species should prove interesting and help elucidate their taxonomic status.

One species, *Ralfsia hesperia* Setchell et N.L. Gardner (1924b), has been reported in the southern Gulf (Carballo et al. 2002). In addition to those species known in the northern Gulf, there are at least two other species of “*Ralfsia*-like” crusts occurring on mid-intertidal rocks in the upper Gulf at Puerto Peñasco (Dawson, 1966a), but the lack of fertile material has left them undetermined.

Three species and one uncertain record are reported in the northern Gulf of California.

#### KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *RALFSIA* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Crusts of 3 distinct layers: basal layer of 2–4 horizontal rows of basal filaments, upper medulla layer of assurgent rows of branching filaments, and multicellular cortical layer; unilocular sporangia on (3–)4–5(–6) celled pedicel . . . *R. hancockii*
- 1b. Crusts of 2 layers of filaments: a basal layer and an upper layer . . . . . 2
- 2a. Upper layer of more or less assurgent filaments developed from basal layers; crusts usually more than 300  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; mostly sessile sporangia . . . . . *R. pacifica*
- 2b. Upper layer of erect, vertical rows of filaments above a thin basal layer of 1(–2) horizontal rows of basal filaments; crusts mostly less than 200  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; unilocular sporangia on 1- to 6-celled pedicels . . . . . *R. confusa*

### *Ralfsia confusa* Hollenberg

FIGURE 78C

*Ralfsia confusa* Hollenberg, 1969:291, figs. 1–12; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:164, fig. 131; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:141; Dreckmann et al., 1990:26; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González 1992:23; León-Álvarez and González-González, 1993:461, 464; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:49; González-González, 1993:443; León-Tejera et al., 1993:200; León-Tejera and González-González, 1993:497; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González 1994a:50; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:110; González-González et al., 1996:158; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones 1999:22; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:67; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González 2003:21; Pedroche et al. 2008:28.

*Ralfsia californica* sensu Dawson, 1944:232 [in part; see Hollenberg, 1969:293] [non *Ralfsia californica* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924b:2].

Algae, light to medium brown crusts, often coalescent, mostly 5–10 mm wide, and relatively thin, usually less than 200  $\mu\text{m}$  thick and 150–250  $\mu\text{m}$  thick in fertile portions. Basal layers of 1–2 horizontally elongate cells, 13.5–24.0  $\mu\text{m}$  long and 9–12  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Upper layer of erect, vertical (not assurgent) filaments of 10–15 cells, 5–6  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Cells with a single chloroplast. Hair pits frequent.

Unilocular and plurilocular sporangia on separate thalli. Unilocular sporangia, 70–90  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 20–25  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, sessile or borne on pedicels of 1–2(–6) cells; associated with paraphyses of (3–)10–12 cells, 75–100  $\mu\text{m}$  in length and 6–8  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Plurilocular sporangia mostly in uniseriate rows, 30–45(–60)  $\mu\text{m}$  in length and 5  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, with a single sterile terminal cell, 7.5–10  $\mu\text{m}$  long and mostly 5  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter.

**HABITAT.** On rocks; upper to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Guaymas to Cabo Pulmo. Pacific coast: Washington; southern California to Baja California; Isla Guadalupe; Isla Socorro (Islas Revillagigedo); Sinaloa to Oaxaca.

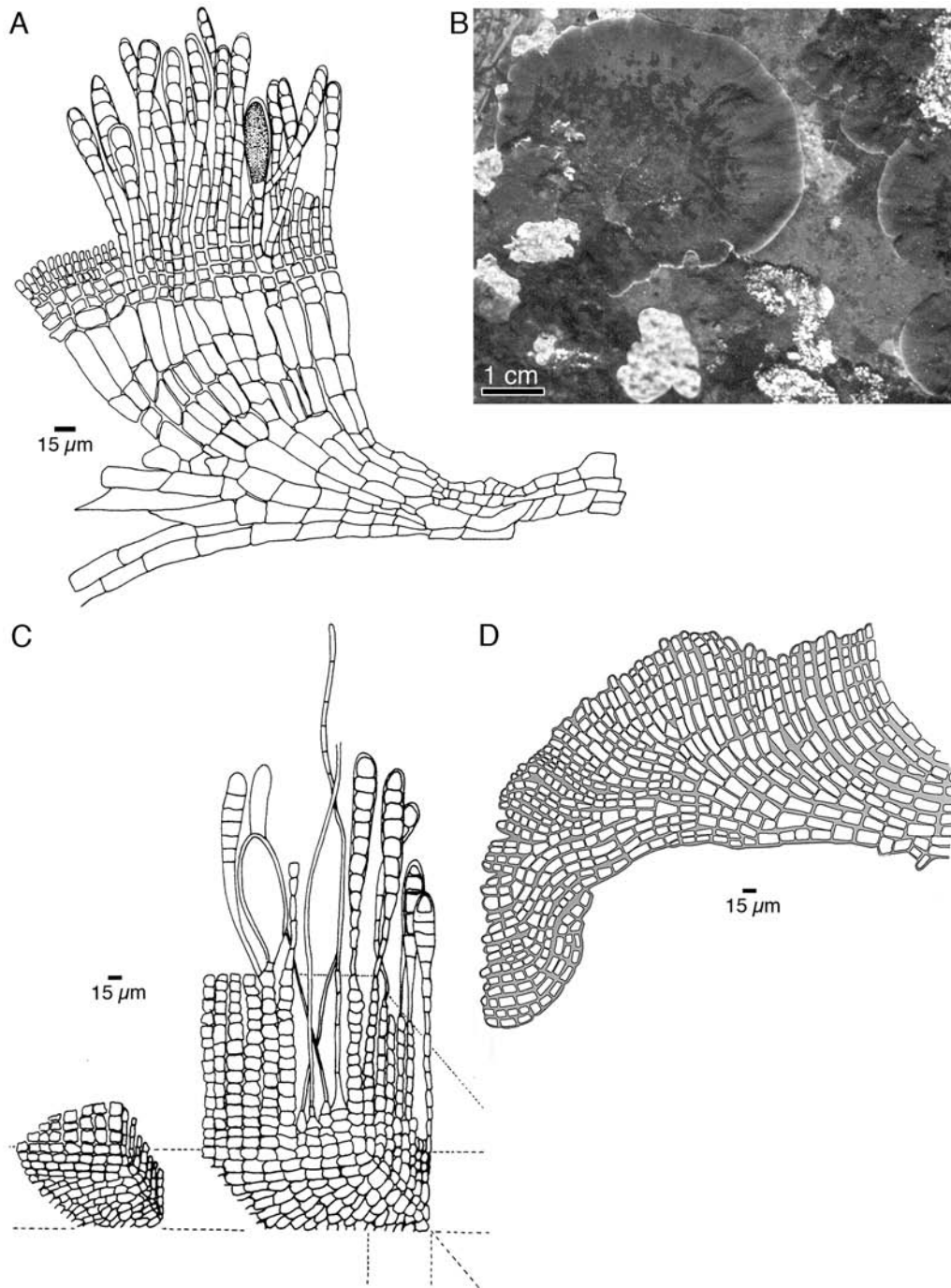


FIGURE 78. Species of *Ralfsia*. A, B. *Ralfsia hancockii*: A. Section of thallus showing assurgent branched rows of cells and unilocular sporangia on five-celled stalk and associated paraphyses. B. Habit, surface view of crust in the intertidal, showing the smooth surface and concentric lines of an orbicular crust. C. *Ralfsia confusa*: internal structure (three-dimensional depiction) showing vertical and horizontal growth of margin (left) and middle region showing vertical rows of cells, hairs in pits, and unilocular sporangia with associated paraphyses (right). D. *Ralfsia pacifica*: section through sterile crust showing filaments curving upward from basal layer. Illustrations A, C, and D drawn by Adrián Ramírez, UNAM; photo B taken by D. León-Álvarez.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Corona del Mar, Orange County, California.

**REMARKS.** In describing *Ralfsia confusa* from southern California to Pacific Baja California, Hollenberg (1969:293) also suggested some of the Dawson collections (1944, as "*R. californica*") were probably this species; however, these thin Gulf specimens were not reproductive and thus are tentatively referred to *R. confusa*.

### ***Ralfsia hancockii* E. Y. Dawson**

FIGURE 78A,B

*Ralfsia hancockii* E. Y. Dawson, 1944:223, pl. 31: figs. 6, 7, pl. 54: fig. 2; Dawson, 1954a:3; Dawson, 1961b:387; León-Álvarez and González-González, 1993:461, 464; León-Álvarez and González-González, 1995:358, figs. 3, 4; González-González et al., 1996:158; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:132; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:67; León-Álvarez and González-González, 2003:614, figs. 2–12; López et al., 2004:10; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49, 57; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:8; Pedroche et al., 2008:29.

*Ralfsia expansa* sensu Børgesen 1912a:123; Børgesen 1914:189 (see: León-Álvarez and González-González 2003:614); Chávez 1972:268; Tanaka and Chihara, 1980b:231, figs. 1B, 2C,D; González-González, 1993:443; León-Tejera et al., 1993:200 [non *Ralfsia expansa* (J. Agardh) J. Agardh, 1848:63].

Crusts light-brown to reddish brown, orbicular, up to 7 cm in diameter, upper surface smooth with radial and concentric growth lines or rugose to verrucose and with a conspicuous margin; vegetative portions 108–306  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; reproductive portions 198–360  $\mu\text{m}$  thick. Crusts firmly attached to substratum by rhizoids. Growth mainly unilateral; in thick portions, filaments may grow downward, tending toward bilateral symmetry. Base of 2–4 horizontal layers of thick-walled, elongate basal cells, 24–42  $\mu\text{m}$  long and 10.5–15.0  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; curving upward. Upper layer of assurgent, branching rows of cells; middle cells 22–31.5  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 10.5–18  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; outer cells of 4–7 layers of anticlinal cells, 6–10  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 6–8.5  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter.

Unilocular sporangia, in sori sparsely scattered over thallus surface; ovoid, ellipsoid to clavate, 62.5–93  $\mu\text{m}$  in length and 22–43  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; terminal on a narrow stalk of 4–5 cells, 7.5–13  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Paraphyses slender of 10–18 cells, 100–150  $\mu\text{m}$  long; basal cells 9–18  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 3.8  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; upper cells 6–12  $\mu\text{m}$  long by

6–8  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Plurilocular sporangia not known for northern Gulf specimens.

**HABITAT.** Mid intertidal; on rocks and in tide pools; forming small continuous or isolated patches and often associated with crustose coralline algae.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: San Felipe to Puertecitos; Punta Arena to San José del Cabo. Pacific coast: Isla San Benedicto (Islas Revillagigedo); Nayarit to Oaxaca; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Southern end of San José del Cabo, Baja California Sur.

**REMARKS.** Studies of León-Álvarez and González-González (1995, 2003) have clarified *Ralfsia hancockii*, and although some morphologically intergrading forms are found, two different morphological forms are recognized. One form is a light-yellowish-brown to dark-brown crust, 165–495  $\mu\text{m}$  thick, with smooth upper surface without growth lines and sometimes greenish; strongly adhering to substratum by scattered rhizoids or without rhizoids (difficult to detach); anatomically tending toward unilateral symmetry. The other form is a light-brown to greenish crust, 108–750  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; upper surface usually irregular, rough or sometimes verrucose, and with radial and/or concentric lines; partially attached to substratum (easily detached); anatomically of variable symmetry, usually tending toward irregular bilateral symmetry. Structures tentatively identified as "plurilocular sporangia" were found on Pacific Mexico *R. hancockii* (León-Álvarez and González-González, 2003), but thus far, no plurilocular reproductive structures have been reported in northern Gulf specimens.

### ***Ralfsia pacifica* Hollenberg**

FIGURE 78D

*Ralfsia pacifica* Hollenberg in G. M. Smith, 1944:95, pl. 12: figs. 4–6; Dawson, 1944:222; Dawson, 1961b:387; Smith, 1969:95, pl. 12: figs. 4–6; Hollenberg, 1969:296, figs. 17–18; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:167, fig. 135; Deviny 1978:358; Pacheco-Ruíz, 1982:70; Dreckmann et al., 1990:26; González-González, 1993:443; León-Álvarez and González-González, 1993:461; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al. 1993:485; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:49; González-González et al., 1996:158; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 1998:45; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:132; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:68; López et al., 2004:10; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:8; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:203; Pedroche et al., 2008:30.

*Ralfsia occidentalis* Hollenberg in W. R. Taylor, 1945:81; Salcedo-Martínez et al., 1988:82.

*Ralfsia verrucosa* sensu Setchell and Gardner, 1925:497 [non *Ralfsia verrucosa* (Areschoug) Areschoug in E. Fries, 1845:124; basionym: *Cruoria verrucosa* Areschoug, 1843:264].

Crusts, irregularly circular, 2–10 cm broad, 0.4–1.0 mm thick, olive-brown to dark-brown, upper surface often with radial and concentric growth lines or ridges and firmly adhering to substratum without rhizoids. Basal layer filaments curving upward; of cells, 9–16 µm long by 11–32(–40) µm wide. Upper layer of forked filaments; of cells, mostly 6–8 µm in diameter and 12–24 µm long below, near the surface of similar diameter but shorter in length 6–15 µm; hair pits frequent.

Unilocular sporangia oblong to clavate, up to 90 µm long and to 23 µm wide, usually sessile at base of paraphyses; borne in more or less circular sori, about 1 mm wide. Paraphyses of 9–12 cells, up to 150 µm long and up to 9 µm in diameter. Plurilocular sporangia in groups up to 1 mm in diameter within crust; uniseriate, up to 90 µm long, on cells shorter than broad (to 6 µm in diameter) of erect filaments, and with a single terminal sterile cell, 1.5–2.0 times long as wide.

**HABITAT.** On rocks; mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Playa Santa Teresa; Bahía Tepoca to Isla San Esteban; Bahía Concepción to Cabo Pulmo; Matzatlán. Pacific coast: Alaska to Sinaloa; Isla Socorro (Islas Revillagigedo); Nayarit to Oaxaca.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Corona del Mar, Orange County, California.

**REMARKS.** Although Womersley (1987) suggested that Pacific North America *Ralfsia pacifica* may not be distinct from the Australian *R. verrucosa*, most continue to recognize *R. pacifica* in Pacific Mexico (e.g., Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976; León-Álvarez and González-González, 1993; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000). The relationship of *R. pacifica* (type locality: southern California) and the Gulf of California *R. pacifica* to *R. verrucosa* (Areschoug) Areschoug in E. Fries (1845:124; type locality: Bohuslän, Sweden) requires further investigation (see also Tanaka and Chihara, 1980a, 1980b).

#### Uncertain Record:

#### *Ralfsia californica* Setchell et N. L. Gardner

*Ralfsia californica* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924b:2; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:497, pl. 36: fig. 22; Dawson, 1944:223 [in part]; Dawson, 1961b:386 [in part];

González-González et al., 1996:158; Pedroche et al., 2008:27.

**REMARKS.** The report of *Ralfsia californica* from the northern Gulf is questionable since it was based on nonfertile specimens (Dawson, 1944). Culture studies of Pacific coast “*R. californica*” (as interpreted by Wynne, 1969, 1972) indicate that it is a sporophytic crustose phase in the heteromorphic life history of Pacific North American species of Scytosiphonaceae, including *Petalonia fasciata* (O. F. Müller) O. Kuntze (1898) (see also Nakamura and Tatewaki, 1975; Dethier, 1981, 1987; Kogame, 1997a), which has been reported from Alaska to Baja California and Sinaloa (Scagel et al., 1989; Hansen, 1997; Perdoche et al., 2008). Other specimens similar to “*R. californica*” (Wynne, 1969, 1972) or *Ralfsia*-like crusts (Nakamura, 1965; Tatewaki, 1966) were found to be a phase in the life history of *Scytosiphon lomentaria* (Lyngbye) Link (1833).

Interestingly, southern California to Pacific Baja California specimens identified as “*R. californica*” were determined to be a new species, *R. confusa* Hollenberg (1969; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976). Thus, “*R. californica*” from the Gulf clearly needs reinvestigation. Fertile specimens need to be found, and culture studies and DNA analyses are needed before its identification can be verified.

#### CUTLERIALES

Cutleriales Oltmanns, 1922:109.

Cutleriales Bessey, 1907:289.

Algae are erect or prostrate or partially prostrate and erect. Gametophytes may be cylindrical or narrow and slightly compressed and variously branched, with all branches having an apical tuft of unbranched filaments, or flat and fan shaped, with a fringed distal margin of monosiphonous unbranched filaments. Life histories are isomorphic or heteromorphic. Members of the latter group have gametophytes that are erect and a morphologically different macroscopic crustose sporophyte. Erect thalli have a trichothallic mode of growth, with intercalary cell division occurring near the base of each distal unbranched pigmented filament. Both gametophytes and sporophytes are parenchymatous in structure, with cortical layers of small pigmented cells and a medulla of irregularly arranged larger, colorless, rounded cells. Cortical cells have numerous discoid plastids and apparently lack pyrenoids; however, Hori and Udea (1975) reported that although inconspicuous, small pyrenoids may also

be present. Single or small clusters of phaeophycean hairs arising from surface cells are scattered over the thallus surface.

Sporophytes (asexual phase) develop unilocular sporangia in sori scattered on the blade surface. Each sporangium produces 8, 16, or 32 motile meiospores. Gametophytes are either monoecious or dioecious, with gametangia borne in clusters on lower portions of simple or branched fertile filaments (which, in some, may extend into hairlike filaments). Sexual reproduction is anisogamous. Female gametangia have 8–16 large locules, while male gametangia have numerous smaller locules.

**REMARKS.** Recent study of the phylogenetic relationships of brown algae by Phillips et al. (2008:figs. 3, 4) have revealed the Cutleriaceae and Tilopteridaceae to diverge within the same group. Further, they considered these two families to be a single order Tilopteridales Kylin (1917; = Tilopteridales Bessey, 1907) and suggested that ordinal name be used. However, herein the more widely used Cutleriales Oltmanns *sensu stricto* is recognized for the order.

There is one family represented in the Gulf of California.

### CUTLERIACEAE

Cutleriaceae Hauck, 1883:318; Hauck, 1884:403 [see Silva, 1980:71].

Cutleriaceae J. W. Griffith et Henfrey, 1856:179.

The family has the characteristics of the order and includes three genera: *Cutleria* Greville (1830), *Microzonia* J. Agardh (1894), and *Zanardinia* Nardo ex P. Crouan et H. Crouan (1857).

One genus, *Cutleria*, is represented in the Gulf of California.

### *Cutleria* Greville

*Cutleria* Greville, 1830:xliv, 59.

Most species of *Cutleria* have an alternation of heteromorphic generations with an erect gametophyte and a prostrate crustose sporophyte. The latter was once considered to be a separate genus, *Aglaozonia* Zanardini (1843), until it was recognized as an alternate phase in the life history of *Cutleria* (Falkenberg, 1879; Yamanouchi, 1912; Drew, 1955). Gametophytic thalli of *Cutleria* are mostly compressed to flat and are either fan shaped or straplike (however, at least one species is cylindrical) and

may be entire or dichotomously to irregularly branched, with lacinated apices, and attached to the substratum by rhizoidal outgrowths or discoid holdfasts. Growth is by trichothallic meristems near the base of unbranched pigmented filaments that are either along the distal margin of flabellate blades or, in other species, terminal on the branch apices. These filaments coalesce with each other behind the apical tufts, and longitudinal divisions take place to form a parenchymatous thallus that develops a one- to two-celled cortical layer and a medulla of several layers of larger, colorless, rounded cells. Cortical cells contain many discoid chloroplasts without conspicuous pyrenoids. Phaeophycean hairs are usually grouped together in small clusters and are scattered over the surface.

Sporophytes of *Cutleria* (“*Aglaozonia*-phase”) are prostrate and flabellate to irregularly shaped and lobed thalli, from 3 to up to 10 cells thick, with tufts of phaeophycean hairs on their upper surface. Crusts are loosely attached to the substratum by rhizoidal filaments produced from their lower surface. Growth is by a row of meristematic cells along the thallus margin. The medulla is composed of irregularly placed large inner cells, and cortex is composed of smaller cells.

The life history, where known, is an alternation of heteromorphic generations. Unilocular sporangia of the encrusting sporophyte (“*Aglaozonia*-phase”) are sessile, cylindrical, and grouped in clusters on the crust surface. Plurilocular sporangia on sporophytic thalli that developed neutral plurispores have been reported in one species, *C. cylindrica* from Japan (Kitayama et al., 1992). Gametophytes of *Cutleria* are dioecious or monoecious. Plurilocular gametangia are typically grouped in superficial tufts on erect blade surfaces. Female gametangia are ovoid, with large locules, and produce gametes more than twice as long and wide as male gametes. Female gametes attract male gametes by the secretion of a sexual pheromone (Müller, 1974). Antheridial gametangia are elongated, with numerous smaller locules. Parthenogenesis of unfused female gametes and androgenesis of unfused male gametes have both been reported (Kitayama et al., 1992).

**REMARKS.** Gametophytes of *Cutleria* are typically reported to be annual or ephemeral, and sporophytes are usually reported to be perennial. The reported dominance in field populations of female gametophytic thalli has been partly explained by parthenogenetic females (Fletcher, 1987; Womersley, 1987; Kitayama et al., 1992). Unfused female gametes may either develop into female gametophytes or develop directly into the sporophyte (Kitayama et al., 1992; Nagasato et al., 1998).

There is one species, *Cutleria cylindrica* Okamura (1902b), reported on the Pacific coast from southern California (Hollenberg, 1978; Stewart, 1991) to northern Baja California (R. Aguilar-Rosas, 1994).

One endemic species occurs in the Gulf of California.

### ***Cutleria hancockii* E. Y. Dawson**

FIGURE 79A–F

*Cutleria hancockii* E. Y. Dawson, 1944:226, pl. 54: fig. 1; Dawson, 1953b:3; Dawson, 1961b:387; Dawson, 1966a:9–10; Hommersand, 1972:70; Norris, 1973:4; La Claire and West, 1978:93, figs. 1–31; La Claire and West, 1979:247, figs. 1–30; Littler and Littler, 1981:153, tbl. 4; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:420; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:110; González-González et al., 1996:143; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:132; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:68; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 2001:461, fig. 1; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49, 58; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:203; Pedroche et al., 2008:58.

*Zanardina prototypus* sensu Dawson 1941:119 [non *Zanardinia prototypus* (Nardo) Nardo 1841:189, *nom. illeg.*; which is now *Zanardinia typus* (Nardo) P.C. Silva in Greuter 2000:2].

Gametophytic algae (Figure 79A–D) erect, light-brown to golden-yellow-brown, flat, fan-shaped blades with fringe of monosiphonous pigmented filaments along distal margin, blades often becoming lacinate; 1 to several blades per clump, up to 15(–22) cm high by (2.5–)10–21 cm wide; arising from a flattened, prostrate basal portion attached by rhizoids from its undersurface. Trichothallic growth occurs at the basal meristem of each monosiphonous unbranched filament near the transition from free filaments to consolidated blade. Blades parenchymatous below the fringed margin, with 1(–2) layer(s) of small pigmented cortical cells. Fronds 100–140(–180)  $\mu\text{m}$  thick. Cortical cells: in transection, brick-shaped, 6–9(–12)  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 5–9  $\mu\text{m}$  wide; in surface view, quadrate with rounded corners. Medulla cells in transection, irregularly arranged, (45–)60–100(–125)  $\mu\text{m}$  long by (17–)35–53  $\mu\text{m}$  wide.

Gametophytes dioecious, gametangial sori in tufts on thallus surface, coalescing to form concentric bands on mature thalli, on both surfaces of blade. One to a number of plurilocular gametangia develop on a fertile filament, a greater number of male gametangia in a series than female gametangia. Female gametangia develop laterally on fertile

filaments; initially, a protuberance forms a 2- and then 4-celled filament that divides twice longitudinally to form a gametangium of 4 tiers with 4 locules per tier (16 locules) and matures acropetally. Mature female gametangia are ovoid, usually biseriate in lateral view, 40–55  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 18–20  $\mu\text{m}$  wide. Antheridial gametangia borne laterally (rarely terminal) on fertile filaments; mature antheridial gametangia often multiserial in lateral view, of 16 tiers with 4–6 locules per tier (64–96 locules). Antheridial gametangia cylindrical, 40–60  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 7–9  $\mu\text{m}$  wide. The uniseriate fertile filament continues on above both types of gametangia with a sterile portion that has shorter and wider cells (9.5–12  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter) and more pigmented cells than filament cells below it.

### ***Aglaozonia*-phase of *Cutleria hancockii***

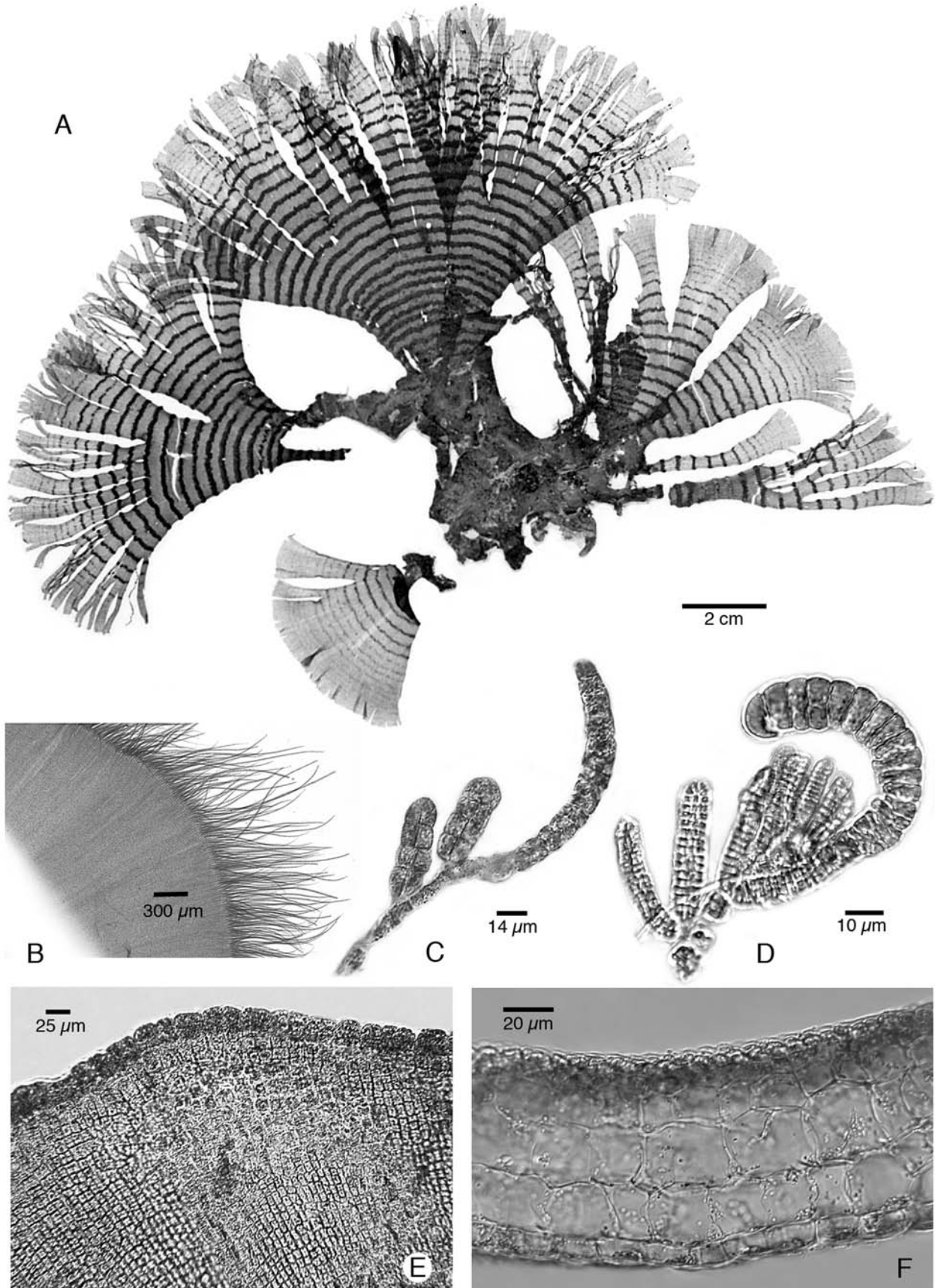
Sporophytic thalli (“*Aglaozonia*-phase”; Figure 79 E,F) encrusting, brown to olive-brown, loosely attached, thin, prostrate blades, multilobed, small, up to 2 cm wide; loosely attached by branched, multicellular rhizoids. Lobes 2–5 mm wide, rounded; 70–85(–105)  $\mu\text{m}$  and often 6–7 cell layers thick. Thallus parenchymatous, arising from slightly larger, darker row of meristematic apical cells along the crust’s margin. Crust dorsiventral, cortical surface cells quadrate, 6–8  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, lower cortex flanking substrate of larger cells, medulla of several slightly uneven layers of larger colorless cells.

**HABITAT.** On rocks or loosely attached to various fleshy algae and corallines; epizoic on mollusk shells and carapace of black sea turtle (*Chelonia mydas agassizii*); mid to low intertidal, occasionally in shallow subtidal, to 5 m depths.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Isla San Pedro Nolasco; Múlege to Bahía Concepción; Bahía de La Paz to Punta Arena (Baja California Sur); Mazatlán, Sinaloa.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Gametophyte: low intertidal, rocky reef, Isla Turners (off Isla Tiburón), Las Islas de la Cintura, Gulf of California. Sporophyte: southwest shore of Isla Tiburón (opposite Isla Turners), Las Islas de la Cintura, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** Apparently a Gulf of California endemic, gametophytes of *Cutleria hancockii* in the northern Gulf occur seasonally from midwinter to midspring, only rarely extending into late spring (during cooler years). On the reef platform at Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, gametophytes are found in the mid to low intertidal from January to June, sometimes with the darker-brown, lobed crustose “*Aglaozonia*-phase.” *Cutleria hancockii* is easily





**FIGURE 79.** *Cutleria hancockii*: A–D. Gametophytes: A. Frond with concentric bands of dense reproductive filaments bearing male gametangia (JN-4953). B. Trichothallic growth occurs at meristems near the base of monosiphonous filaments fringing the frond margin (JN-4786). C. Fertile filament bearing female gametangia with large locules (JN-6040). D. Fertile filament bearing a row of male gametangia with numerous smaller locules (JN-7065). E, F. Sporophytes (*Aglaozonia*-phase of *Cutleria hancockii*): E. Surface view of a portion of the crust; note larger, darker apical cells lining margin (EYD-27365). F. Transection through dorsiventral crust (JN-3691b).

separated from somewhat similar looking Gulf *Padina*: *Cutleria* is more delicate, yellowish brown to golden light brown, with a fringed margin of monosiphonous filaments, whereas *Padina* is more rigid and darker brown, with an inrolled margin.

**ECTOCARPALES**

- Ectocarpales Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1922c:403.
- Mesogloiales Nägeli, 1847:141, 252.
- Ectocarpales Bessey, 1907:288.
- Chordariales Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1925:570.
- Dictyosiphonales Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1925:586.
- Scytosiphonales Feldmann, 1949:112.

Gametophytic and sporophytic thalli exhibit a great diversity of size and shape. Some are erect tufts of unbranched or branched uniseriate filaments that are attached by basal rhizoids, and some are filaments that are entirely or partly endophytic. Others are cylindrical to compressed, foliose, saccate, or subglobose and may be simple and entire or branched, membranous or gelatinous in texture, with surfaces that are smooth, irregular or folded, or that may be perforated with holes of various sizes. Internally, the latter group are centrally solid or hollow, with a medulla either of colorless filaments surrounding a core of uniaxial or multiaxial filaments or of large, colorless parenchymatous cells. The cortex of pigmented filaments or small pigmented cells bears the reproductive structures and is with or without phaeophycean hairs. Growth is apical, intercalary, diffuse, or trichothallic in cortical filaments. Cells have a single or few to many ribbon-shaped or discoid chloroplasts, with one to several pyrenoids. Ultrastructural studies have shown a pedunculate pyrenoid with a cap layer

in the plastids (Evans, 1966; Hori 1971; Hori and Udea, 1975), a character unique to the Ectocarpales, and vesicle-like globules (physodes) that may be present or lacking.

Life histories, where known, may be any of four basic types: (1) isomorphic generations of sporophytes and gametophytes; (2) heteromorphic, with a large sporophyte and microscopic gametophytes; (3) heteromorphic, with either gametophytic or sporophytic macrothalli that have either a sporophytic or gametophytic crustose phase, respectively; or (4) some macrothalli that have direct development to the next phase.

Reproductive structures are terminal, lateral, or intercalary and may be either solitary or in series or in sori scattered over the thallus surface. Sporangia may be unilocular or plurilocular; both produce zoospores. Also, some have been found to have unilocular sporangia that produce meiospores, and a few with neutral plurilocular sporangia are known. Sexual reproduction is isogamous or anisogamous. Gametophytes develop plurilocular or unilocular gametangia that produce isogametes or anisogametes. Gametes in some have been shown to be capable of parthenogenetic development.

**REMARKS.** The taxonomy of the Ectocarpales is still in flux. There has been much debate about the distinctiveness of the orders Chordariales, Dictyosiphonales, Mesogloiales, and Scytosiphonales and if they should be included in the Ectocarpales. On the basis of molecular analyses, many now consider these orders to be part of the Ectocarpales (e.g., Rousseau and de Reviers, 1999a; Silva and de Reviers, 2000; Peters and Ramírez, 2001; Draisma et al., 2003; Cho et al., 2004; Adl et al., 2005; Phillips et al., 2008).

There are seven families represented in the northern Gulf of California.

**KEY TO THE FAMILIES OF ECTOCARPALES IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA**

- 1a. Algae of uniseriate filaments throughout or basically filamentous (mostly uniseriate, but a few cells may divide longitudinally to become parenchymatous) . . . . . 2
- 1b. Algae not filamentous; erect, terete to compressed or foliose and simple to branched or saccate or globose . . . . . 4
- 2a. Filaments mostly uniseriate, becoming parenchymatous by a few longitudinal divisions; meristems random; reproductive structures developed within vegetative cells. . . . . **Pyliellaceae**
- 2b. Uniseriate filaments throughout; meristems intercalary; reproductive structures lateral or terminal . . . . . 3

- 3a. Meristems localized or random on axes and branches; ribbonlike plastids with several pyrenoids . . . . . **Ectocarpaceae**
- 3b. Meristems mostly basal on axes and branches; discoid plastids usually with single pyrenoid . . . . . **Acinetosporaceae**
- 4a. More or less cylindrical, axes and branches, narrow diameter; internally solid parenchyma (not hollow); surface of irregularly arranged cells, and numerous shallow pits with conspicuous tufts of hairs; single plastid with 1 pyrenoid; growth by a subapical meristem . . . . . **Chnoosporaceae**
- 4b. Cylindrical to compressed and simple to branched or frondose, saccate, or globose; discoid plastids with pyrenoids; growth by diffuse intercalary meristems or single apical cell . . . . . 5
- 5a. Gametophytes erect, tubular to compressed, saccate, globose, or foliose, either open flat and entire or clathrate (with holes); internally, usually hollow; medulla parenchymatous, cortex of small cells; sporophytes crustose . . . . . **Scytosiphonaceae**
- 5b. Thalli variable: minute filaments or small to moderate size globose to lobed forms or cylindrical to compressed branched forms; internally, not hollow; medulla filamentous; cortex of filaments . . . . . 6
- 6a. Small, globose, subglobose, or lobed forms; without an evident basal layer . . . . . **Leathesiaceae**
- 6b. Minute filaments, epiphytic or endophytic, simple to branched with or without a distromatic basal layer or erect, cylindrical to compressed branched forms with a holdfast . . . . . **Chordariaceae**

### ACINETOSPORACEAE

Acinetosporaceae Hamel, 1931b:8 [as “Acinétosporacées”]; Hamel ex J. Feldmann, 1937:110.

Algae are uniseriate filaments that either are sparsely and irregularly branched or can be more densely branched and of variable branching patterns. Species grow as epiphytes or attached on hard substratum. Branches are often formed from the middle of an axial cell (appearing perpendicular to it) and have rounded or tapered and hairlike apices; some develop short, curved laterals (crampons) that attach to or become entangled with other algae. Intercalary meristematic growth regions are basal, usually near the base of laterals, or diffuse. Cells have numerous plastids, each with a pyrenoid.

Reproduction by fragmentation has been documented for some species (Amsler, 1984). Ovoid monosporangia, which are found in some, produce and release a single nonmotile spore. Unilocular and plurilocular sporangia are sessile, short-stalked, or intercalary (formed by direct transformation of vegetative cells). Plurilocular structures have been described with large locules (zoosporangia) in some species and with numerous small locules in others. Plurilocular gametangia, of different shapes and sizes, that produce isogametes or anisogametes are also known for many of the species.

**REMARKS.** Life histories for some members of the family are not completely understood. For example, there is no evidence that meiosis occurs in the unilocular sporangia, nor has sexual reproduction been observed in the type of the family (*Acinetospora pusilla* (Griffiths ex Harvey) De Toni, 1895b; = *A. crinita* (Carmichael) Kornmann, 1953). Müller (1986) reported apomeiotic unilocular sporangia and suggested that the loss of sexual reproduction could allow the establishment of geographically isolated populations and could account for the great variability within species of *Acinetospora*.

The report of *Asteronema breviarticulatum* (J. Agardh) Ouriques et Bouzon (2000; basionym: *Ectocarpus breviarticulatus* J. Agardh 1847) establishes the genus *Asteronema* Delépine et Asensi (1975) in the southern Gulf (Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González 1985, as “*E. breviarticulatus*”; Riosmena-Rodríguez and Paul-Chávez 1997; and Mateo-Cid et al. (2000a, as *Hincksia breviarticulata* (J. Agardh) P. C. Silva (in Silva et al., 1987). The familial placement of the genus is problematic, and it has been placed in the Ectocarpaceae, Scytothamnaeaceae Womersley (1987) or Acinetosporaceae.

Two genera are known in the northern Gulf of California.

### KEY TO THE GENERA OF ACINETOSPORACEAE IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Filaments relatively simple; with branches and reproductive structures below distinct intercalary meristems in lower portion of axes; above the meristematic zone filaments long and unbranched, with distal portion often appearing hairlike. . . . . **Feldmannia**
- 1b. Filaments repeatedly branched, 2–4 orders; with intercalary meristematic zones and reproductive structures distributed throughout main axes and branches . . . . . **Hincksia**

### **Feldmannia Hamel**

*Feldmannia* Hamel, 1939b:xli.

Algae are small, usually epiphytic, erect tufts of uniseriate filaments; each of the axes, and branches, has a distinct localized intercalary meristematic zone near its base; and are attached below by rhizoids or sometimes by prostrate filaments. Branches are restricted to below the meristematic zone. Above the meristematic zone, the filaments are unbranched and become long, with hair-like ends. Cells contain several to many discoid chloroplasts with one to many pyrenoids.

Life histories, where known, are isomorphic. Reproductive structures are below the meristematic zones. Unilocular sporangia are ovoid to spherical. Plurilocular sporangia and plurilocular gametangia are multiseriate, similar in appearance, and apparently borne on separate thalli. Gametes are isogamous.

**REMARKS.** The taxonomic status of *Feldmannia* has been questioned by some phycologists. For example, Knoepffler-Péguy (1974) found some species of *Acinetospora* Bornet (1891) were involved in the life history of some species of *Feldmannia* and *Hincksia* and later concluded that these genera could not be convincingly separated on morphology and may represent a single variable genus (Knoepffler-Péguy, 1977). Later, Kim and Lee (1994), recognizing *Feldmannia*, proposed that the genus be based solely on the characteristics seen in the illustration of *Ectocarpus irregularis* Kützing (1855:pl. 62: fig. 1). Several others have also continued to recognize *Feldmannia* (e.g., Womersley, 1987; Silva et al., 1987; Silva et al., 1996a; Abbott and Huisman, 2004). Pedersen and Kristiansen (2001) elucidated generic characters and concluded that *Acinetospora*, *Feldmannia*, and *Hincksia* could be reliably distinguished. Life history culture studies and molecular analyses on the generitype, *Feldmannia lebelii* (Areschoug ex P. Crouan et H. Crouan) G. Hamel (1939a; basionym: *Ectocarpus lebelii* Areschoug ex P. Crouan et H. Crouan, 1867), will help clarify its generic status.

One species, *Feldmannia hemispherica* (De A. Saunders) Hollenberg (1971), has been reported in the southern Gulf (Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González 1994a).

There is one species known in the northern Gulf of California.

### ***Feldmannia irregularis* (Kützing) Hamel**

FIGURE 80

*Ectocarpus irregularis* Kützing, 1845:234; Kützing, 1855:19, pl. 62: fig. 1 [note: illustration redrawn by

Kim and Lee, 1994: fig. 4A]; Dawson 1954a:3; Dawson, 1961b:385; González-González et al., 1996:149; Yoshida, 1998:168.

*Feldmannia irregularis* (Kützing) Hamel, 1939b:xvii, fig. 61f; Cardinal, 1964:54, fig. 29A–K; Hollenberg, 1970:61, fig. 1; Hollenberg, 1971:285; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:136, fig. 99; Stewart, 1991:39; Kim and Lee, 1994:154, figs. 1A,B, 2A–C, 3A–K, 4A,B; González-González et al., 1996:296; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:159, fig. 58A; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49; Servièze-Zaragoza et al., 2007:8; Pedroche et al., 2008:20.

*Giffordia irregularis* (Kützing) Joly, 1965:72, pl. VIII: figs. 111–119.

*Hincksia irregularis* (Kützing) Amsler in Schneider et Searles, 1991:120, figs. 129–131.

*Ectocarpus mucronatus* De A. Saunders, 1898:152, pl. 19; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:429; Dawson, 1944:220; Dawson, 1961b:385; Dawson, 1966a:9; González-González et al., 1996:149.

Algae small, slender tufted thalli, up to 3 mm tall, of erect, loosely intertwined filaments that become elongated

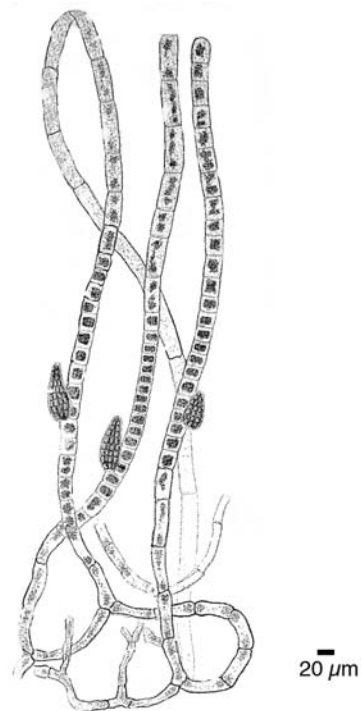


FIGURE 80. *Feldmannia irregularis*: Drawing of type specimen (from Kützing, 1855: pl. 62, fig. 1).

and taper slightly toward apices (terminal hairlike appearance due to elongated cells with fewer chloroplasts); attached below by a prostrate system of entangled rhizoidal filaments. Axes often sparse and irregularly branched several times below the intercalary meristematic zone (meristem shifts upward toward the lower-middle portion of the filament as it grows, obscuring its original basal position). Cells 18–20 µm in diameter; 0.5–1.0 times as long as wide in meristematic zone; 1–3 times as long as wide in lower portions and 2–5 times as long as wide in upper portions.

Unilocular sporangia unknown in Gulf material. Plurilocular sporangia sessile on branches below meristematic zone; elongate-conical, 90–150 µm long and 20–35 µm in diameter, often with attenuated apices.

**HABITAT.** Epizoid on the black sea turtle (*Chelonia mydas agassizii*; see Parham and Zug, 1996), epiphytic on *Sargassum* and probably other algae, and growing on rocks; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco; Canal de Infiernillo (between coast of Sonora and Isla Tiburón). Pacific coast: British Columbia to Oregon; southern California to Baja California; Isla San Benedicto (Islas Revillagigedo); Hawaiian Islands; Japan; China.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** On *Laurencia obtusa*, Adriatic Sea.

**REMARKS.** *Feldmannia irregularis* has a wide distribution (Guiry and Guiry, 2008), but its generic placement has been somewhat uncertain, in part because the type specimen of *Ectocarpus irregularis* Kützinger (1845) was not preserved and the original description was vague (Clayton, 1974). This uncertainty has resulted in the species being variously interpreted as belonging to other genera; e.g., Womersley (1987) noted that Australian *F. irregularis* exhibited intermediate characteristics of both *Feldmannia* and *Hincksia*, and Amsler (in Schneider and Searles, 1991) considered it to be *Hincksia irregularis*. However, studies of Kim and Lee (1994) support recognition of *Feldmannia irregularis*.

Life history culture studies and comparative molecular analyses on Gulf of California specimens referred to *F. irregularis* are needed to elucidate their taxonomic status and phylogenetic relationships.

**Hincksia J. E. Gray**

*Hincksia* J. E. Gray, 1864:12.

*Giffordia* Batters, 1893:86; Hamel, 1939b:X, as “*Giffordia* (Batters) Hamel.”

Algae are erect, tufts of uniseriate filaments with variable branching patterns, and attached below by rhizoids. Branching is to 2–3(–4) orders and unilaterally secund or tending to spiral or irregular, alternate, or opposite. Growth is diffuse by intercalary cell divisions. Meristems are scattered throughout the axes and near the base of most branches, with additional meristems distally. Meristematic zones are not always obvious but in some species are very distinct. Cells are more or less isodiametric to barrel-shaped and have numerous discoid chloroplasts, each with a single pyrenoid. True phaeophycean hairs are unknown.

Life histories are mostly of isomorphic alternating generations; however, some have repeating generations via spores or parthenogenic gametes. Reproductive structures are usually sessile and singular or in a series on the branches. Unilocular sporangia are apparently rare. Plurilocular sporangia are formed on the adaxial side of the supporting lateral branch and may also occur on the main axis. Plurilocular gametangia (where known) are of different sizes and shapes and produce anisogametes.

**REMARKS.** One species is reported in the southern Gulf, *Hincksia rallsiae* (Vickers) P. C. Silva (in Silva et al., 1987), by Mateo-Cid et al. (2000a).

Three species are known in the northern Gulf of California.

**KEY TO THE SPECIES OF HINCKSIA IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA**

- 1a. Filaments occasionally to frequently oppositely branched; plurilocular sporangia sessile, asymmetrically ovoid . . . . . *H. granulosa*
- 1b. Filaments not oppositely branched, mostly dichotomous, alternate, unilaterally secund, or spiral; plurilocular sporangia sessile or pedicellate and fusiform or ellipsoidal to cylindrical . . . . . 2
- 2a. Branching sparse, dichotomous below (nearly at algal host’s surface cells); apical cells blunt; plurilocular sporangia sessile or pedicellate, fusiform . . . . . *H. bryantii*
- 2b. Branching alternate or unilaterally secund or spiral; apices attenuated; plurilocular sporangia sessile and ellipsoidal to cylindrical with rounded apices . . . . . *H. mitchelliae*

***Hincksia bryantii* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner)  
J. N. Norris, *comb. nov.***

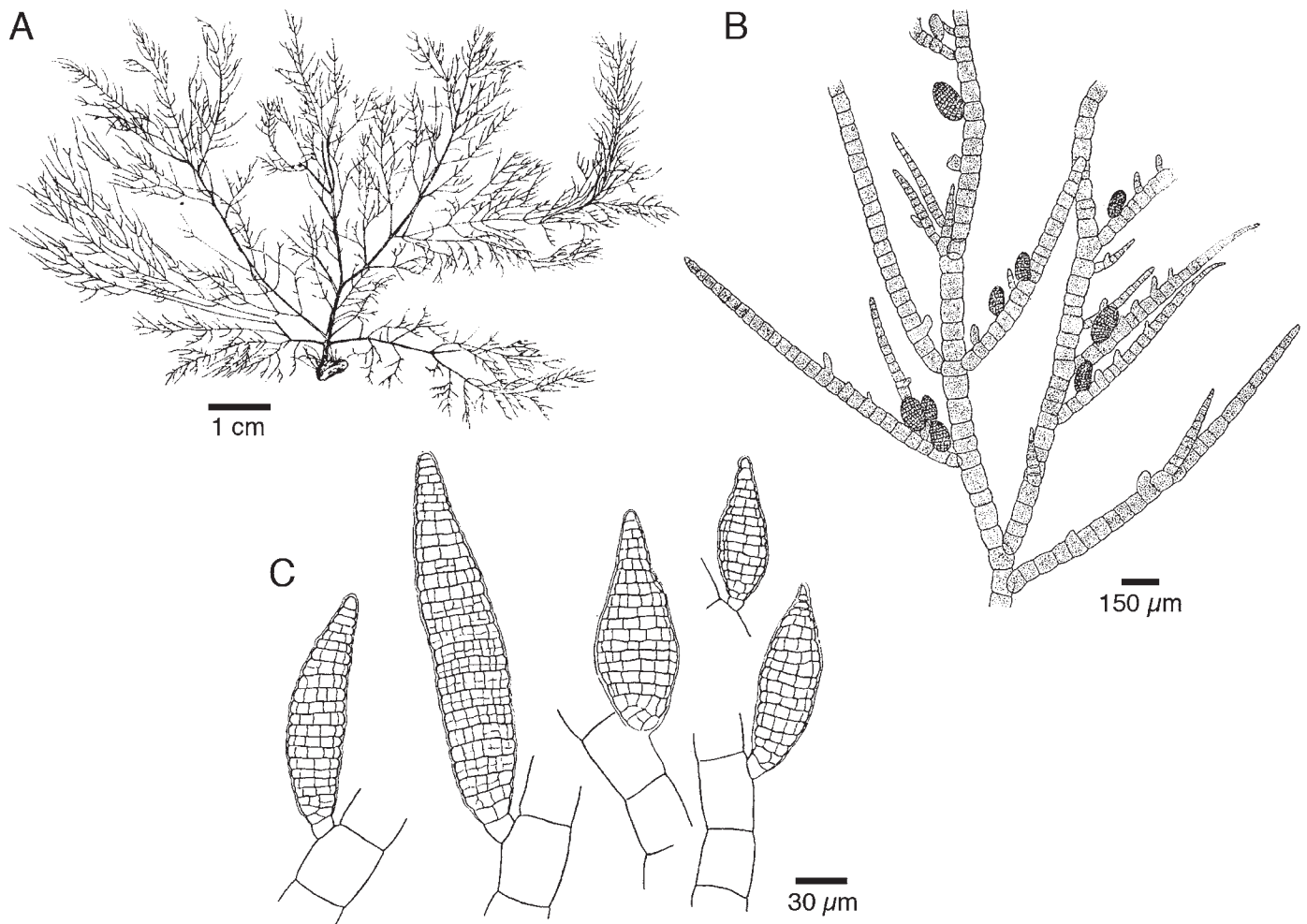
FIGURE 81C

*Ectocarpus bryantii* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:720, pl. 17: fig. 45; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:440; Dawson, 1944:220; Dawson, 1961b:384; Dawson, 1966a:9; Dawson, 1966b:55; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:44; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:24; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; González-González et al., 1996:147; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez 2000:146; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49; Pedronche et al. 2008:16.

Algae tufted epiphytes, up to 2.5 mm high, of intertwined, uncorticated filaments, attached below by penetrating rhizoidal filaments. Branching below dichotomous (nearly at surface of algal host cells); above sparse with very few short, slightly tapering branchlets terminating in a blunt cell and lacking terminal hairs. Cells 28–64  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 28–32  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Chloroplasts discoid.

Unilocular sporangia unknown. Plurilocular sporangia scattered along filaments; sessile or pedicellate on 1 cell; narrow to broadly fusiform, 70–100(–140)  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 25–35  $\mu\text{m}$  wide.

**HABITAT.** Epiphytic on *Codium brandegeei* and *C. simulans*; mid to low intertidal.



**FIGURE 81.** Two species of *Hincksia*. A, B. *Hincksia granulosa*: A. Habit, with lateral branches predominately opposite (from Saunders, 1898: pl. 24, fig. 3). B. Plurilocular sporangia sessile, asymmetrically ovoid, borne on lateral branches (from Saunders, 1898: pl. 24, fig. 4). C. *Hincksia bryantii*: Plurilocular reproductive structures; varying from narrow to broadly fusiform and either sessile or borne on one-celled pedicel (after Setchell and Gardner, 1924a: pl. 17, fig. 45).

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco; Isla Espíritu Santo to Bahía de La Paz.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Epiphytic on *Codium bran-degeei*, La Paz, Baja California Sur, Gulf of California, Mexico.

**REMARKS.** The discoid chloroplasts and branching pattern of *Ectocarpus bryantii* Setchell et N. L. Gardner (1924a) suggest that it more properly belongs to *Hincksia*, and a new combination is proposed. Setchell and Gardner (1924a, as *E. bryantii*) noted that *Hincksia bryantii* could be related to the Gulf *Ectocarpus gonodoides* but it differed in its mode of branching. Further collections are needed to elucidate the generic placement and the phylogenetic relationship of *H. bryantii* to other species.

### ***Hincksia granulosa* (J. E. Smith) P. C. Silva**

FIGURE 81A,B

*Conferva granulosa* J. E. Smith, 1811:pl. 2351.

*Hincksia granulosa* (J. E. Smith) P. C. Silva in Silva, Meñez et Moe, 1987:130; Stewart, 1991:39; Kim and Lee, 1992:252, figs. 7A–D, 8E–H; Hoffmann and Santelices, 1997:116, fig. 27; Yoshida, 1998:171; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2005b:34; Pedroche et al., 2008:21.

*Ectocarpus granulosis* (J. E. Smith) C. Agardh, 1824:163; C. Agardh, 1828:45; De A. Saunders, 1898:156, pl. 24: figs. 3–5; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:426; Smith, 1944:81, pl. 11: figs. 1, 2; Dawson, 1945b:64; Dawson, 1960a:36; Dawson, 1961b:385; Dawson, 1962c:278; Devanny, 1978:358; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:420; González-González et al., 1996:149.

*Giffordia granulosa* (J. E. Smith) G. Hamel 1939b:xv, fig. 61E; Cardinal, 1964:39, figs. 19A–J, 20A–J; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:140, fig. 103; Fletcher, 1981:211; Pacheco-Ruíz, 1982:70; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:420; Santelices, 1989:267, pl. DD: figs. 9–11; González-González et al., 1996:151.

Algae tufted, up to 2.5 cm high, intertwined filaments; lower axes of filaments corticated, upper portions uncorticated; attached below by penetrating rhizoidal filaments. Lateral branches predominately opposite, with short ultimate branchlets; branches and branchlets taper distally and terminate in a blunt apical cell and lack terminal hairs. Cells mostly shorter than wide, 35–80 µm long, 50–80(–100) µm in diameter; with numerous discoid chloroplasts.

Unilocular sporangia unknown in Gulf material (reported elsewhere to be globose). Plurilocular sporangia adaxial along branches and branchlets; sessile, broadly

ovate, asymmetrical, 45–60(–100) µm long by 40–60 µm in diameter.

**HABITAT.** Epiphytic on *Codium*, also probably on other algae and on rocks; intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Isla Pelicano, Bahía Kino. Pacific coast: Alaska to Baja California; Chile; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** BRIGHTHELMSTON (Brighton) and Shoreham, Sussex, England.

**REMARKS.** Description of *Hincksia granulosa* is based primarily on Abbott and Hollenberg (1976) since I have not seen the Sonoran specimens reported by Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid (1986).

### ***Hincksia mitchelliae* (Harvey) P. C. Silva**

FIGURE 82

*Ectocarpus mitchelliae* Harvey, 1852:142, pl. 12G: figs. 1–3; D. A. Saunders, 1898:153, pl. 21: figs. 1, 2; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:428; Setchell and Gardner, 1930:140; Dawson, 1944:220; Dawson, 1954:5; Dawson, 1961b:385; Dawson, 1966a:9.

*Hincksia mitchelliae* (Harvey) P. C. Silva in Silva, Meñez et Moe, 1987:73; R. Aguilar-Rosas and Machado-Galindo, 1990:188; Stewart, 1991:39; Kim and Lee, 1992:246, figs. 3A–D, 5A–D; González-González, 1993:443; León-Tejera and González-González, 1993:497; Stout and Dreckmann, 1993:6; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:110; González-González et al., 1996:153; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1996:70, 85, pl. 18: figs. 75–77; Hoffman and Santelices, 1997:119, fig. 28; Yoshida, 1998:171; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:132; León-Tejera and González-González, 2000:328; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 2003:21; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:162, fig. 59C; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2005b:34; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49; Dreckmann et al., 2006:154; Servière-Zaragoza et al., 2007:8; Pedroche et al., 2008:22.

*Giffordia mitchelliae* (Harvey) Hamel, 1939a:66; Hamel, 1939b:XIV, fig. 61c,d; Cardinal, 1964:45, fig. 23A–H; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:127; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:143, fig. 105; L. Aguilar-Rosas, 1982:84; Schnetter and Bula Meyer, 1982:55, pl. 8: figs. C, D; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:141; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:44; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:24; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:420; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:40; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:49; González-González et al., 1996:296.

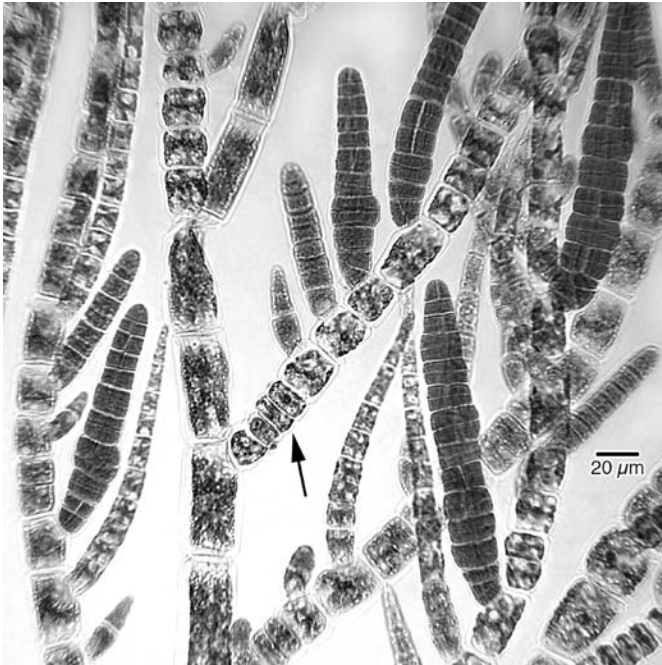


FIGURE 82. *Hincksia mitchelliae*: Filaments with intercalary meristem (arrow) at base of branch and several sessile, ellipsoid to cylindrical plurilocular sporangia with rounded apices, borne on adaxial side of branches, often arranged in short series (JN-4774).

Algae tufted, 1–4 cm tall, often densely branched in mid to upper portions; attached to host by creeping rhizoidal filaments. Filaments of main axis up to 50  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; branching alternate or unilaterally secund or spiral; apices often attenuated. Intercalary meristematic zones scattered along axes and near base of branches. Cells 1–3 times longer than wide; 20–120  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 20–40  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; with numerous discoid plastids.

Unilocular sporangia not seen in Gulf material (reported elsewhere as sessile, ovoid to elliptical, 40–45  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 15–20  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter). Plurilocular sporangia sessile on main axes and adaxial on lateral branches, often in short series (2–5); more or less cylindrical, tapering slightly with rounded apices, (40–)60–150  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 30–45  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; with 1–3(–4) locules in each horizontal row (seen in lateral view).

**HABITAT.** Epiphytic on *Sargassum* and *Ralfsia*, occasionally on other algae, and epizoid on the black sea turtle, *Chelonia mydas agassizii* (see Parham and Zug, 1996); mid intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Canal de Infernillo (between Isla Tiburón and Campo Ona, Sonora); Bahía Concepción to San José del

Cabo. Pacific coast: central California to Sinaloa; Isla San Benedicto (Islas Revillagigedo); Michoacán to Chiapas; Colombia; Chile; Hawaiian Islands; Taiwan; Korea; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Nantucket, Nantucket County, Massachusetts.

**REMARKS.** The northern Gulf collection of *Hincksia mitchelliae* (US Alg. Coll.-158145), growing on the carapace of a black sea turtle in the Canal de Infernillo (between Campo Ona, Sonora, and Isla Tiburón), extends its known distribution south from Puerto Peñasco (Dawson, 1966a). Southern Gulf collections of Dawson (1959a, as “*E. sp. aff. E. mitchelliae*”) were also referred to this species, but with doubt.

### CHNOOSPORACEAE

Chnoosporaceae Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1925:400, 552.

Algae are composed of terete to compressed axes and usually subdichotomously divided branches above a crustose or discoid holdfast. Internally they have a solid, pseudoparenchymatous structure of elongate, colorless cells in the medulla that is developed from a subapical meristem below the outer cortical layer. The cortex is composed of one to two layers of small, pigmented, irregularly arranged cells and numerous shallow pits with conspicuous tufts of colorless hairs (cryptoblasts). Each cortical cell has a single chloroplast with one pyrenoid.

Life histories are apparently heteromorphic but are not fully known for most of the species. An independent crustose phase that repeated itself was described by Fotos (1981), and a heteromorphic life history was reported in culture studies of *C. implexa* J. Agardh (1848) from Japan (Kogame, 2001). Unilocular and plurilocular reproductive structures, both sporangia (zoidangia), are known in the sporophytic crustose phase of one species. Plurilocular structures are found in the erect phase and either develop in association with the colorless hairs or sometimes may be separate from these hairs.

**REMARKS.** Although some consider the Chnoosporaceae to be a synonym of the Scytosiphonaceae (e.g., Kogame, 2001), others continue to recognize it as a distinct family (e.g., Silva et al., 1996a; Yoshida, 1998; Abbott and Huisman, 2004), primarily on the basis of its members having vegetative cells that contain a single chloroplast with one pyrenoid. Molecular analysis of *C. pacifica* J. Agardh (lectotype of the genus) will help elucidate the taxonomic status and phylogenetic relationships of this monotypic family.

The family's single genus, *Chnoospora*, occurs in the northern Gulf of California.

### ***Chnoospora* J. Agardh**

*Chnoospora* J. Agardh, 1847:7.

Gametophytes are erect tufts, clumps, or partly decumbent mats, and composed of one to several, more or less terete to compressed axes arising from a crustose holdfast. Axes are dichotomously, subdichotomously, or irregularly branched. Growth is in the subapical meristematic row of cells. Anatomically, the medulla is solid, and pseudoparenchymatous, composed of large and small colorless medullary cells, and the cortex is of one to two layers of smaller pigmented cells. The surface layer is of irregularly arranged cortical cells and numerous shallow pits from which groups of colorless hairs extend. Each cortical cell has a single chloroplast and a pyrenoid.

Unilocular and plurilocular structures (zoidangia) are developed on discoid sporophytes for at least one species (Kogame, 2001) and have been reported as "densely packed around groups of hairs" to form "more or less continuous sori" (Lawson and John, 1982:134). Plurilocular gametangia that produce isogametes are developed on the erect thalli in superficial sori or may be associated with colorless hairs on the outer surfaces.

**REMARKS.** The generic type of *Chnoospora* was not specifically designated by Agardh (1847), and Setchell and Gardner (1925) were apparently the first to choose a lectotype, *C. pacifica* J. Agardh, for the genus.

Reproductive structures in *Chnoospora* were first described by Barton (1898) and Børgesen (1924) and later more completely described by Fotos (1981) and Kogame (2001), who also found a repeating crustose phase in culture studies. In the most complete life history study, erect dioecious gametophytes of Japanese *C. implexa* produced isogametes in plurilocular gametangia that formed zygotes, which grew into crustose sporophytes. Under long-day photoperiod conditions the latter developed plurilocular zoidangia that produced sporophytic crusts repeatedly, whereas under short-day regimes the crusts developed unilocular zoidangia that grew into the dioecious, erect gametophytes (Kogame, 2001). Some strains of cultured *C. implexa* exhibited a direct life history with gametophytic thalli produced without sporophytes (Kogame, 2001).

Three other species are reported in the southern Gulf and Pacific Mexico: *C. implexa* J. Agardh (1848) by Dawson (1959a, 1959b, 1960c, 1961b); *C. minima* (K. Hering) Papenfuss (1956) by Chávez B. (1972), Pedroche

and González-González (1981), Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González (1985), León-Tejera and González-González (1993), Stout and Dreckmann (1993), Mateo-Cid et al. (1993), and Servièze-Zaragoza et al. (1993); and *C. pannosa* J. Agardh (1848) from Isla Guadalupe (Setchell and Gardner, 1930; Stewart and Stewart, 1984).

One species is reported in the northern Gulf of California.

### ***Chnoospora pacifica* J. Agardh**

FIGURE 83A–C

*Chnoospora pacifica* J. Agardh, 1847:7; Kützing, 1859:36, pl. 86: fig. 1; Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:728; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:553; Okamura, 1936:236; Dawson, 1944:234; Taylor, 1945:82; Dawson, 1954a:4, pl. 3: fig. 1; Huerta-Múzquiz and Tirado-Lizárraga, 1970:127; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:339; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:421; Salcedo-Martínez et al., 1988:82; León-Tejera and González-González, 1993:497; Servièze-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; González-González et al., 1996:141; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:146.

*Chnoospora fastigiata* a [var.] *pacifica* (J. Agardh) J. Agardh, 1848:171–172; Børgesen, 1924:263, figs. 11, 12.

*Chnoospora minima* sensu Dawson 1959b:8; Mateo-Cid et al. 1993:49; Pedroche et al. 2008:63 [non *Chnoospora minima* (K. Hering) Papenfuss 1956:69].

Algae erect, up to 6 cm tall, of few to many more or less cylindrical to compressed branched axes, up to 2 mm in diameter, arising from a basal crustose holdfast. Branched dichotomously to subdichotomously; branches of more or less the same diameter throughout, tapering to slightly smaller apices. Surface with irregularly arranged cortical cells and scattered, noticeable groups of colorless hairs, up to 3 mm long, extending from shallow pits. Medulla of thick-walled, small to large, colorless cells; cortex of 1–2 layers of smaller pigmented cells.

Plurilocular uniseriate and biseriata structures, up to 80 µm long, develop in long sori on branch surfaces.

**HABITAT.** Intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Bahía San Pedro (north of San Carlos); Bahía Concepción to Bahía de La Paz. Pacific coast: Isla San Benedicto (Islas Revillagigedo); Isla María Magdalena (Las Islas Tres Mariás); Nayarit to Oaxaca; Hawaiian Islands; Rapa Nui (Easter Island).

**TYPE LOCALITY.** San Agustín, Oaxaca, Mexico (Agardh, 1847, "St. Augustin, Stilla Oceanen [Pacific Ocean]").



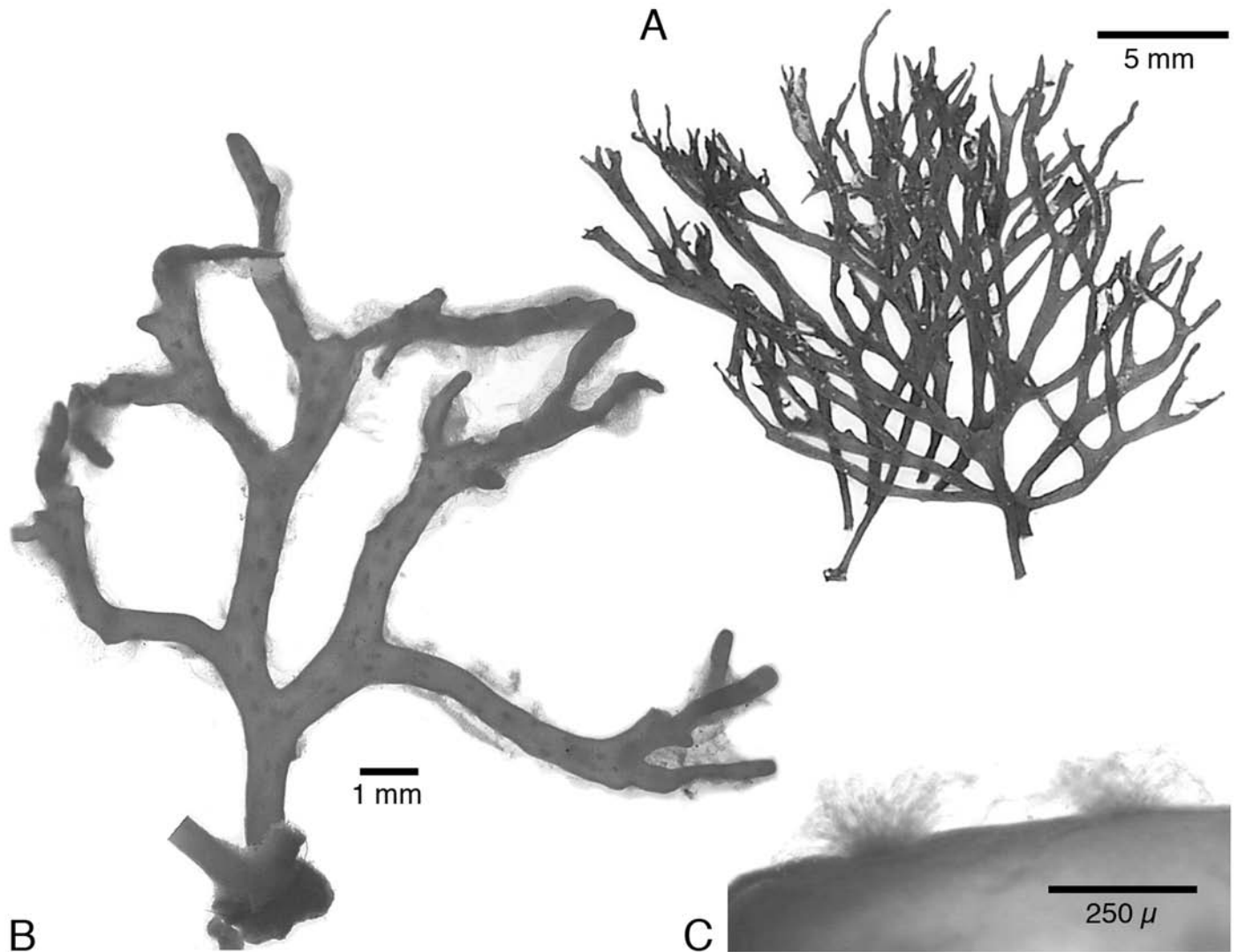


FIGURE 83. *Chnoospora pacifica*, EYD-12121: A. Habit, air-dried herbarium specimen. B. Liquid-preserved specimen showing scattered groups of hairs from shallow pits. C. Close-up of clumps of hairs extending from superficial pits.

**REMARKS.** Described from southern Oaxaca, Pacific Mexico (Agardh, 1847), *Chnoospora pacifica* was first reported in the southern Gulf by Setchell and Gardner (1924a). Subsequently, Dawson (1944) noted its absence from further Gulf collections and suggested it may be a strictly tropical species, limited to the southernmost Gulf (Dawson, 1961b). More recently, *C. pacifica* was reported from Sonora in the northern Gulf by Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid (1986); although I have not seen their specimens, *Chnoospora* is very distinctive, with characteristic scattered pits in the thallus surface from which tufts of colorless hairs extend (Figure 83B,C).

Some have considered the Pacific Mexico *C. pacifica* to be a synonym of the South African *C. minima* (K. Hering) Papenfuss (1956; cf. Levring, 1938:22, fig. 10, pl. 4: fig. 12, as "*C. pacifica*"; basionym: *Fucus minimus* K. Hering, 1841). Others have continued to recognize them as separate species; e.g., Servièze-Zaragoza et al. (1993) reported both occurring in Jalisco and Nayarit, Pacific Mexico. Until the types and type locality materials of *C. pacifica* (generitype) and *C. minima* have been reexamined and tested using molecular and phylogenetic analyses and compared to the Gulf of California *C. pacifica*, it seems best to recognize them as separate species.

**CHORDARIACEAE**

Chordariaceae Greville, 1830:44.

Dictyosiphonaceae Kützing, 1849:484 as "Dictyosiphoneae."

Elachistaceae Kjellman, 1890:41.

Myrionemataceae Nägeli, 1847:145, 252 as "Myrionemeae."

Myriotrichiaceae Kjellman, 1890:46.

Punctariaceae (Thuret) Kjellman, 1880:9; Punctariae Thuret in Le Jolis, 1863:14, 21.

Spermatochneaceae Kjellman, 1890:32.

Algae are microscopic or macroscopic, erect or partly erect, and variable in size and shape, ranging from (1) simple to branched filaments or tufts, (2) cushion-shaped to irregularly lobed forms, or (3) cylindrical to compressed, simple, entire, or branching forms, attached by basal filaments. Some are membranous or gelatinous in texture. Some of the species are filamentous or have a filamentous form in their life history. Other species are structurally differentiated, with a medulla composed of filaments that surround a central axis (core) of one or more colorless filaments, each of which grows from an apical cell; internally, they may be either solid or hollow when mature. Cells divide radially from the central medullary filaments and

give rise to whorls of outer assimilatory filaments. These assimilatory filaments bear reproductive structures, and hairs or paraphyses may also be present or absent. Growth may be apical, marginal, diffuse, or intercalary in cortical filaments. Cells have one to several discoid, elongate, or irregular chloroplasts and usually one pyrenoid.

Life histories, where known, are mostly heteromorphic, usually with a macroscopic pseudoparenchymatous sporophyte of uniaxial or multiaxial structure and a usually smaller or microscopic filamentous gametophytic phase. Sporophytes produce unilocular sporangia, which are borne at the base of paraphyses. Plurilocular structures are uniseriate or multiseriate and may be sessile or pedicellate or borne at the base of paraphyses or on special branches growing from the outer cortical cells. Gametophytes are filamentous and produced unilocular or plurilocular gametangia. Gametes are usually of unequal size.

**REMARKS.** On the basis of molecular phylogenies, Peters and Ramírez (2001) considered the Chordariaceae to include several families (see those listed above as synonyms). In addition to the genera known in the northern Gulf, another, *Haplogloia* Levring (1939), has been reported in the southern Gulf by Mateo-Cid et al. (1993, as *H. andersonii* (Farlow) Levring).

There are three genera represented in the northern Gulf of California.

**KEY TO THE GENERA OF CHORDARIACEAE IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA**

- 1a. Erect, terete, narrow axis and branches (up to 1.0 mm in diameter), up to 20 cm or more in length; more or less alternately to irregularly branched . . . . . *Nemacystus*  
 1b. Much smaller, microscopic to minute uniseriate filaments, less than 3 mm tall and 5–15 µm in diameter . . . . . 2  
 2a. Sparingly branched filaments, up to 0.5 mm tall, above a discoid base of laterally adjoined prostrate filaments which become mostly distromatic . . . . . *Hecatonema*  
 2b. Uniseriate filaments entirely to partly endophytic, up to 3 mm in length; without a discoid base . . . . . *Streblonema*

***Hecatonema* Sauvageau**

*Hecatonema* Sauvageau, 1897:248.

Algae are minute, discoid to irregularly shaped or cushion-shaped filamentous, crustose thalli. Structurally, they are composed of a mostly distromatic basal layer of laterally adjoined, radiating filaments. Most cells of these basal filaments grow parallel to the substratum or, if epiphytic, on the surface of the host. Longitudinal divisions of the basal filament cells occur inconsistently, thus forming a partly distromatic disc; other cells of the filaments may divide in an intercalary manner or marginally. Some

of the lower filament cells may produce rhizoids that penetrate the cells of the host alga; the upper cells develop an erect, simple, unbranched or branched filament or an endogenous hair or a hyaline paraphysis-like structure (ascocyst) or a reproductive structure. Cells contain one to several discoid chloroplasts and one pyrenoid.

Unilocular sporangia, where known, are usually sessile or sometimes pedicellate on the basal layer. Plurilocular sporangia are multiseriate, variable in shape, sessile, and terminal or lateral.

**REMARKS.** The taxonomic status and placement of the genus *Hecatonema* needs further investigation. Culture studies have shown some *Hecatonema*-like

microthalli to produce macrothalli that are other genera, e.g., *Asperococcus* Lamouroux (1813), *Desmotrichum* Kützing (1845), *Myriotrichia* Harvey (1835), or *Punctaria* Greville (1830) (see Loiseaux, 1967, 1969; Clayton, 1974; Lockhart, 1982; Fletcher, 1984; Pedersen, 1984); therefore, some phycologists have placed *Hecatonema* in the Punctariaceae (Thuret) Kjellman (1880; e.g., Christensen, 1980; Fletcher, 1987; Womersley, 1987; Wynne, 1998a). However, other species of *Hecatonema* have been shown to have an isomorphic life history and do not develop macrothalli in culture (e.g., Clayton, 1974; Pedersen, 1984). These species have been placed in the Myrionemataceae (e.g., Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976; Schneider and Searles, 1991; Silva et al., 1996a). Most recent investigations consider both the Myrionemataceae and Punctariaceae as

members of a more broadly defined Chordariaceae (e.g., Peters and Ramírez, 2001; Wynne, 2005).

Easily overlooked, future studies of these microscopic to minute filamentous brown algae will probably reveal more species in the Gulf of California.

Currently there is one species known in the northern Gulf of California.

***Hecatonema streblonematoides*  
(Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Loiseaux**

FIGURE 84A,B

*Compsonema streblonematoides* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1922a:353, pl. 35: fig. 4; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:481; Dawson, 1961b:391.

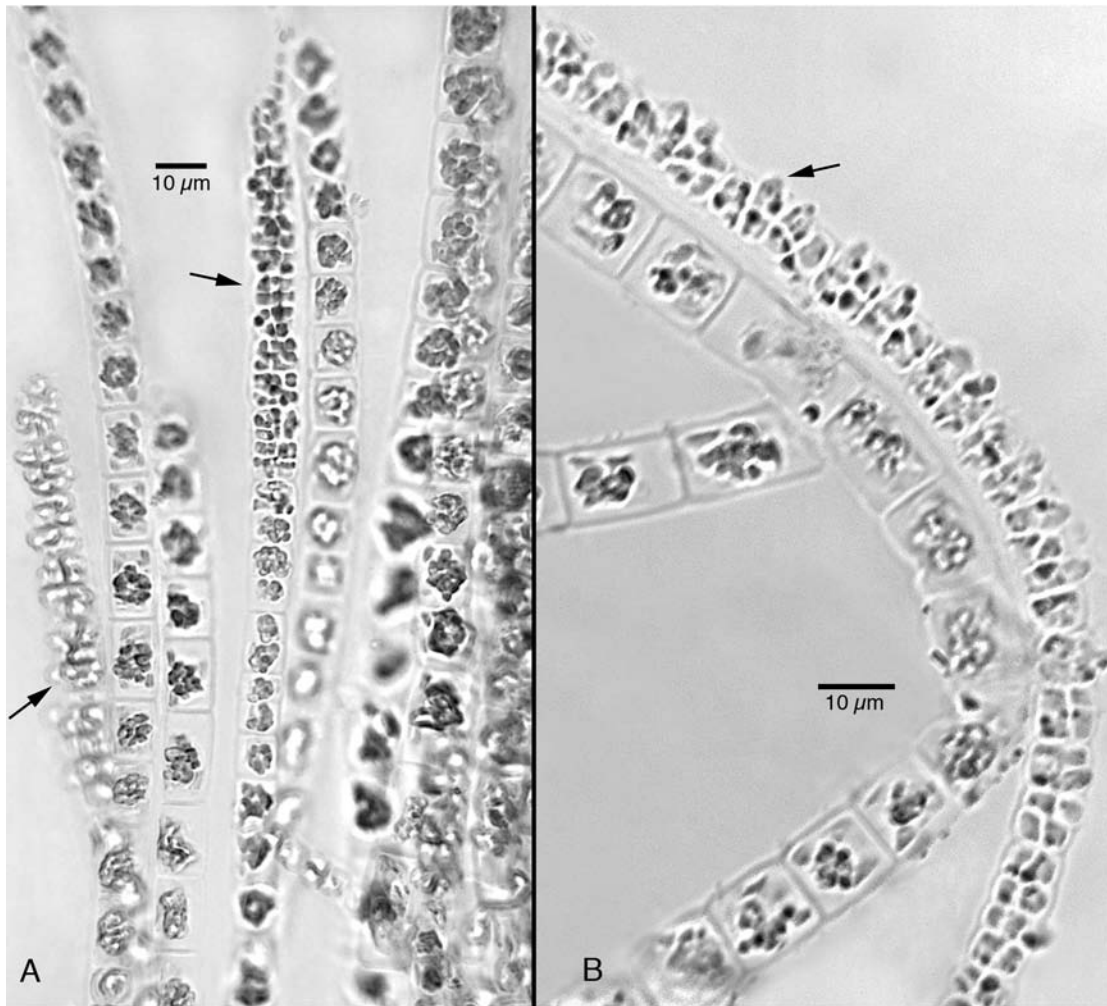


FIGURE 84. *Hecatonema streblonematoides*: Upper portions of filaments from a dense tuft (JN-4033). A. Two filaments with terminal plurilocular gametangia (arrows). B. Plurilocular gametangium with short lateral protuberances (arrow).

- Hecatonema streblonematoides* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Loiseaux, 1970b:253, figs. 2, 3; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:162, fig. 130; Stewart, 1991:40; González-González et al., 1996:153; Pedroche et al., 2008:62.
- Compsonema myrionematoides* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1922a:361, pl. 36: fig. 1; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:483; Smith, 1944:109; Dawson, 1961b:390.
- Compsonema nummuloides* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1922a:359, pl. 35: figs. 5, 6; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:475; Dawson, 1961b:391.
- Compsonema pusillum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1922a:356, pl. 37: fig. 3; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:477, pl. 54: fig. 3; Smith, 1944:108; Dawson, 1961b:391.
- Compsonema ramulosum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1922a:362, pl. 39: figs. 1–5; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:486; Smith, 1944:111; Dawson, 1961b:391.
- Compsonema secundum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1922a:361, pl. 37: figs. 1, 2; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:483, pl. 54: figs. 1, 2; Smith, 1944:109, pl. 15: fig. 4; Dawson, 1961b:391; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; González-González et al., 1996:374; Pedroche et al., 2008:69.
- Compsonema secundum* f. *terminale* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1922a:366, pl. 37: figs. 4, 5; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:484, pl. 54: figs. 4, 5; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:420; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; González-González et al., 1996:143, 374; Yoshida, 1998:269; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:58; Pedroche et al., 2008:69.
- Compsonema speciosum* f. *piliferum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1922a:356, pl. 38: figs. 1, 2; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:485; Dawson, 1961b:391.
- Hecatonema clavatum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1922a:378, pl. 40: figs. 1–4; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:491; Dawson, 1961b:391.
- Hecatonema variabile* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1922a:377, pl. 41: figs. 1–12; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:490; Smith, 1944:113; Dawson, 1961b:391.

Algae minute tufts form a discoid to irregular cushion, 2–10 mm in diameter; basal layer mostly distromatic, and 1 cell layer at margins; attached below by rhizoids; erect filaments unbranched, mostly 100–500  $\mu\text{m}$  tall (older specimens reported up to 1000  $\mu\text{m}$  tall and with second branching). Filaments of cylindrical cells, 5–7  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter basally and 10–12(–15)  $\mu\text{m}$  above. Cells with (1)–2–4(–5) chloroplasts. Endogenous hairs, up to 7  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; rare in juveniles, abundant in mature specimens. Ascocysts rare, sessile or lateral on erect filaments, 20–50  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 10–15  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter.

Unilocular sporangia erect on basal filaments, sessile, lateral or pedicellate; 40–80  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 15–30  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Plurilocular structures very variable in shape and position; sessile, 40  $\mu\text{m}$  long and 12  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, or pedicellate, 40–180  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 12–17  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, or lateral or in long terminal rows on erect filaments, up to 400  $\mu\text{m}$  in length (sometimes resembling a cockscomb; see Setchell and Gardner, 1925:pl. 54: fig. 1).

**HABITAT.** Epiphytic on *Padina durvillei* and *P. caulescens*; mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Bahía Kino. Pacific coast: Alaska to central California; Baja California; Jalisco to Nayarit; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** On pneumatocyst of *Nereocystis luetkeana*, Tomales Bay, Marin County, California.

**REMARKS.** *Hecatonema streblonematoides* has been recorded from the Sonora coast at Puerto Peñasco (Loiseaux, 1970b) and in the vicinity of Bahía Kino at Isla Pelicano and Segundo Cerro Prieto (Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986, as “*Compsonema secundum* f. *terminale*”). The form of *H. streblonematoides* we have collected (Playa Hermosa, vicinity of Puerto Peñasco, JN-4033; US Alg. Coll. slide 5350) closely resembles those originally described as *Compsonema secundum* (see Setchell and Gardner, 1925:pl. 54: fig. 2).

Smith (1944, as “*C. secundum*”) noted its sporangia were so variable that it was impossible to distinguish the type species of *C. secundum* from the forma, *C. secundum* f. *terminale*. On the basis of culture and morphological studies, Loiseaux (1970b) concluded *H. streblonematoides* was a single species that included *C. secundum* and several other northeastern Pacific taxa previously placed in *Compsonema* or *Hecatonema*. The species encompassed within the broadly taxonomically defined *H. streblonematoides* (Loiseaux, 1970b) need to be molecular phylogenetically and morphologically tested.

### ***Nemacystus* Derbès et Solier**

*Nemacystus* Derbès et Solier, 1850:269.

Algae are erect, lax, with cylindrical narrow axes, 400–1000  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, usually irregularly branched, and attached by a small discoid holdfast. The single axial filament of the medulla (usually evident in the upper portions) grows by divisions of a dome-shaped apical cell. Surrounding the axial filament are large pseudoparenchymatous cells that develop from filaments growing downward from the base of the assimilatory filaments. The outermost pseudoparenchymatous cells bear pigmented assimilatory filaments that are simple or branched at their

bases, straight or curved, and up to 20 cells in length. Colorless phaeophycean hairs develop from basal cells of the assimilatory filaments, and together with the assimilatory filaments, they cover the surface, giving it a hairy or furry appearance under low magnification.

Life histories, where known (e.g., Migita and Yotsui, 1972; Yotsui, 1980), are either direct from spores of plurilocular sporangia or heteromorphic, with macroscopic sporophytes and microscopic gametophytes. Sporophytes produce two kinds of sporangia: unilocular, ovoid to pyriform sporangia that are borne at base of assimilatory filaments and plurilocular sporangia that are uniseriate and borne on simple or sometimes branched pedicels at the base of assimilatory filaments (Yotsui, 1976, 1980). Microscopic “streblonematoid” gametophytes, known in some species (e.g., *N. decipiens* (Suringar) Kuckuck, 1929), bear few-celled, uniseriate gametangia that produce isogametes (Peters and Müller, 1986a; Peters, 1987).

There is one species, originally described from the southern Gulf, and known to occur throughout the Gulf of California.

***Nemacystus brandegeei* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Kylin**

FIGURE 85A–C

*Meneghiniella brandegeei* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924b:5; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:549, pl. 47: fig.11, pl. 49: fig.16.

*Nemacystus brandegeei* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Kylin, 1940:49; Dawson, 1944:232; Dawson, 1949:230; Dawson, 1959a:19, fig. 2; Dawson, 1961b:392; Hommersand, 1972:70; Norris, 1973:6; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:46; González-González et al., 1996:155; de Jong and Prud'homme van Reine, 1997:6; de Jong, 1999:88; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:132; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:58; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:204; Pedroche et al., 2008:62.

*Haplogloia andersonii* sensu Norris, 1973:6; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:204 [non *Haplogloia andersonii* (Farlow) Levring, 1939:50; basionym: *Mesogloia andersonii* Farlow, 1889:6].

Algae soft, dark-brown, slender cylindrical main axes, irregularly and alternately branched, mostly up to 20 cm (to 1.0 m) long and up to 500–600(–1000)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Main axis and branches develop from a single apical cell; initial axial filament more evident in upper portions. Internally of large, thin-walled, colorless, pseudoparenchymatous cells; innermost up to 100  $\mu\text{m}$  wide by up to 400  $\mu\text{m}$  long; outward mostly 45  $\mu\text{m}$  by 125  $\mu\text{m}$ ; outermost cells

36  $\mu\text{m}$  by 65  $\mu\text{m}$ . Assimilatory filaments up to 140(–160)  $\mu\text{m}$  in length, composed of 6–12 cells with discoid plastids; basal cells smaller, 5–7  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, distal cells relatively larger and moniliform, 7–10(–13)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Phaeophycean hairs with a basal meristem; 3–8  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter.

Unilocular sporangia ovoid, 41  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 32  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Plurilocular sporangia on single or branched pedicels; mostly uniseriate, up to 50  $\mu\text{m}$  long, and up to 10  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter.

**HABITAT.** Epiphytic or entangled with various algae, notably *Sargassum*; low intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to La Paz. Pacific coast: west side of Laguna Ojo de Liebre (Scammon's Lagoon), opposite Isla La Concha (Baja California Sur).

**TYPE LOCALITY.** La Paz, Baja California Sur, Gulf of California, Mexico.

**REMARKS.** In the field, *Nemacystus brandegeei* is recognized by its thin cylindrical axes, which are mostly irregularly branched (usually less than 600  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter), and slippery texture.

***Streblonema* Derbès et Solier**

*Streblonema* Derbès et Solier, 1851:100.

Algae are minute, uniseriate, branched filaments, up to 3 mm in height. They may be entirely endophytic, growing between cells of the host, or partly endophytic, with both creeping and erect portions above the host's surface. Growth is mostly diffuse. Cells have one to several band-shaped or discoid plastids and are without pyrenoids. Colorless hairs are usually present.

Reproductive structures are terminal or lateral on erect or creeping filaments, mostly extending above surface cells of its host. Unilocular structures are only known in a few species. Plurilocular sporangia are cylindrical or ovoid and uniseriate or multiseriate and occur either on the same thallus or on separate thalli. Gametophytes are apparently unknown.

**REMARKS.** Many species of *Streblonema* are problematic or poorly known, and studies have revealed the genus to be paraphyletic. Some, but apparently not all, may be distinct independent species (Pedersen 1984). These species of *Streblonema* may have evolved by complete suppression of the macrothallus, or their sexual reproduction has been lost.

*Streblonema* microthalli have been found physically connected to a macrothallus. Pedersen (1978), studying the

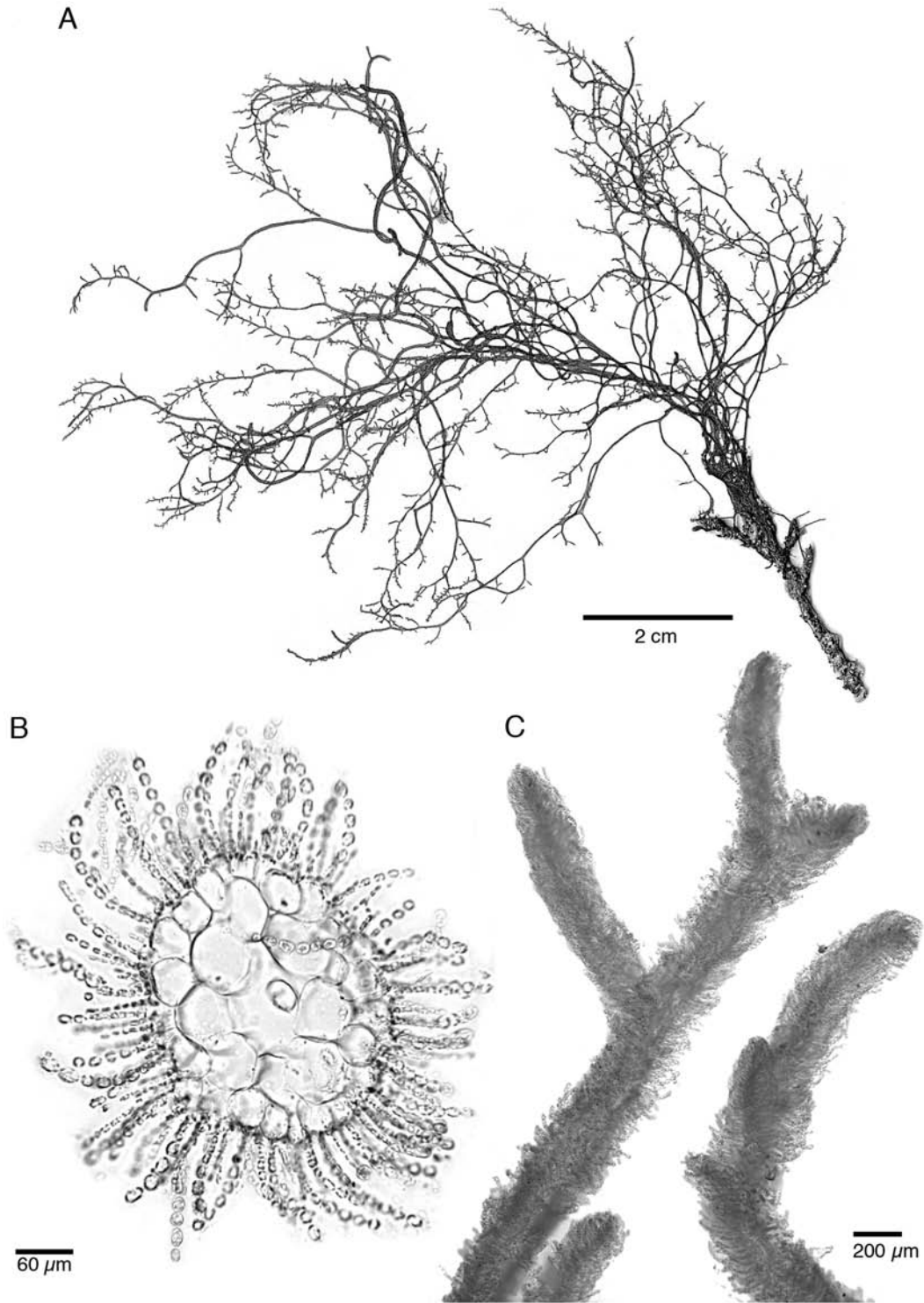


FIGURE 85. *Nema cystus brandegeei*: A. Habit (JN-3985), epiphytic on *Sargassum*. B. Transection of a liquid-preserved specimen showing single axial filament cell and pseudoparenchymatous cortex, grading from larger inner cells to smaller outer cells that bear the assimilatory filaments. C. Furry external appearance of axes and branches derived from well-developed outer layer of free assimilatory filaments and phaeo-phycean hairs. B, C. EYD-25847.

life history of *Myriotrichia clavaeformis* Harvey (1834), found its prostrate system was probably *S. sphaericum* (Derbès et Solier) Thuret in Le Jolis (1863), the possible generitype of *Streblonema*. Culture studies have shown other *Streblonema* to be a microthallus phase in the heteromorphic life history of other species of brown macroalgae. For example, *Streblonema*-like microthalli were found to be life history phases of *Litosiphon laminariae* (Lyngbye) Harvey (1849) (Pedersen, 1981, as *Litosiphon pusillus*), *Sphaerotrichia divaricata* (J. Agardh) Kylin (1940) (Ajisaka and Umezaki, 1978), and *Stilophora tenella* (Esper) P. Silva (in Silva et al., 1996a; = *S. rhizodes* (C. Agardh) J. Agardh, 1841) (Peters and Müller, 1986a; Peters, 1987).

One species of *Streblonema* may be responsible for an algal disease. The endophytic infestations that result in loss of quality of *Undaria* (human food, known as wakame) in Japan are caused by *S. aecidioides* (Rosenvinge) Fosile in DeToni (1895b) (Yoshida and Akiyama, 1979) (note that molecular evidence places *S. aecidioides* in a group of kelp endophytes, *Laminariocolax* Kylin, 1947a; Burkhardt and Peters, 1998).

Three species of *Streblonema* are reported from Pacific Baja California (see L. Aguilar-Rosas, 1985; R. Aguilar-Rosas and M. Aguilar-Rosas, 1986) and Isla Guadalupe (Dawson, 1961b; Stewart and Stewart, 1984).

One species and one undetermined species are recorded from the northern Gulf of California.

***Streblonema transfixum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURE 86

*Streblonema transfixum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1922b:391; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:446; Dawson, 1945c:28; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:156, fig. 121; R. Aguilar-Rosas and M. Aguilar-Rosas, 1986:18; Scagel et al., 1989:139; González-González et al., 1996:165; Pedroche et al., 2008:24.

Algae minute filaments; lower portion, partly endophytic of irregularly branched filaments, 4–5  $\mu\text{m}$  diameter, and upper portion of erect, unbranched filaments. Upper filaments short, of squarish to slightly rectangular cells, (5–)7–15  $\mu\text{m}$  long and 7–10  $\mu\text{m}$  diameter. Cells with band-shaped chloroplast.

Unilocular sporangia unknown. Plurilocular sporangia terminal on filaments; cylindroconical, 40–60  $\mu\text{m}$  long and up to 15  $\mu\text{m}$  wide; with locules in both longitudinal and transverse rows.

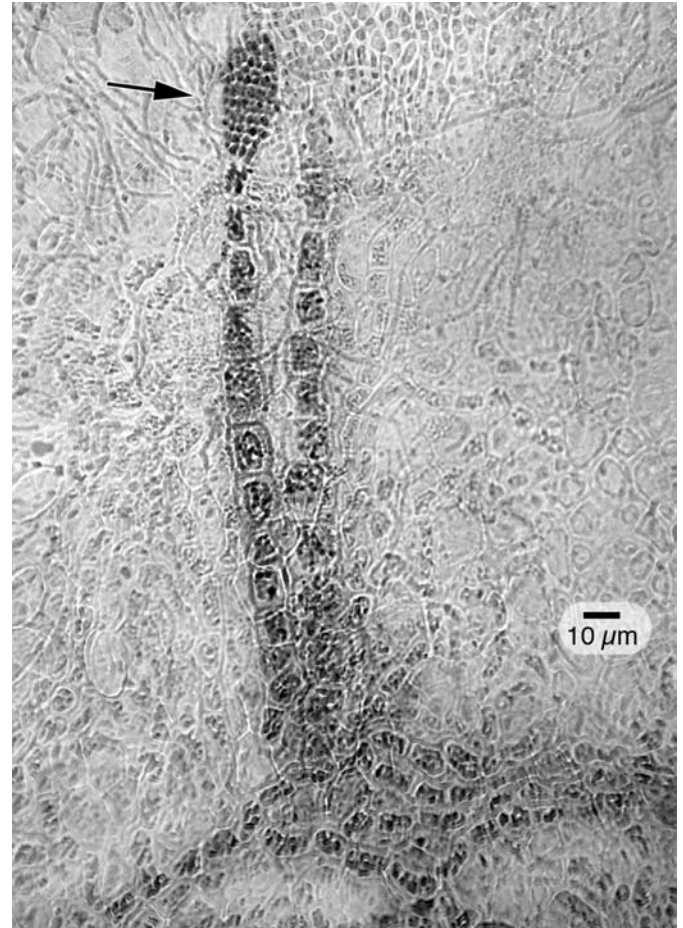


FIGURE 86. *Streblonema transfixum*: Habit, uniseriate unbranched filaments; one filament bearing a terminal plurilocular structure (arrow) with locules in longitudinal and transverse rows; epiphytic on *Gracilaria textorii* (JN-4411c).

**HABITAT.** Partly endophytic-epiphytic on *Gracilaria textorii*; shallow subtidal, 10 m depths.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Isla Coronado (Isla Smith), Bahía de Los Ángeles. Pacific coast: British Columbia to Oregon; central California to northern Baja California.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** On *Desmarestia herbacea*, San Pedro, Los Angeles County, California.

**REMARKS.** Gulf specimens from Isla Coronado (JN-4411c; US Alg. Coll. slide 4257) are tentatively referred to *Streblonema transfixum* and represent a new record for the Gulf of California. Previously, *S. transfixum* has been known on *Desmarestia* (Smith, 1944; R. Aguilar-Rosas and M. Aguilar-Rosas, 1986), and *Gracilaria* would be an unusual host for this species. Life history and

molecular studies are needed to confirm the identification of this species in the northern Gulf of California.

***Streblonema* sp. A**

*Streblonema* sp. of La Claire II and West, 1977:127, figs. 1–4.

Microscopic, endophytic, and partly emerged irregularly branched filaments above surface cells of host, *Cutleria hancockii*. Reproduction not observed.

**HABITAT.** Endophytic or epiphytic on gametophytes of *Cutleria hancockii*; mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Punta Pelicano (vicinity of Puerto Peñasco), Sonora.

**REMARKS.** Filaments of a *Streblonema* sp. A were collected on gametophytes of *Cutleria hancockii* in the upper Gulf (La Claire II and West, 1977). Spores of the *Streblonema* were isolated and grown in culture studies, and ultrastructural study revealed viruslike particles (previously unknown in brown algal vegetative cells) within their cytoplasm (La Claire II and West, 1977). Studies of future collections, as well as life history culture and molecular analyses, are needed to identify the species.

**ECTOCARPACEAE**

Ectocarpaceae C. Agardh, 1828:9.

Members of this family are generally small or occasionally microscopic, branched, uniseriate filaments. The erect filaments can be corticated or uncorticated throughout and are usually attached by a disc-shaped base or a creeping rhizoidal holdfast, but some may penetrate the host or substrata. The branches are most often uniseriate, but in a few they are biseriate. Cells have a few to many parietal or axially elongated, band-shaped plastids and one to several pyrenoids.

Reproductive structures, unilocular or plurilocular sporangia and plurilocular gametangia, are borne laterally on branches or are intercalary in some and are formed by transformation of vegetative cells. Plurilocular and unilocular structures sometimes occur on the same thallus.

Sporangia produce meiospores (zoospores). Gametangia produce isogametes or anisogametes.

One genus is represented in the northern Gulf of California.

***Ectocarpus* Lyngbye**

*Ectocarpus* Lyngbye, 1819:130.

Algae are erect, uniseriate filaments that are sparsely to densely irregularly branched and basally attached by rhizoids and/or prostrate filaments. The main axis may be uncorticated or, in some, corticated by descending rhizoidal filaments. Growth is diffuse by intercalary meristems (among the vegetative cells). Axis and branches often terminate in elongated terminal cells or colorless “pseudohairs.” Cells have one to several parietal, band-shaped or ribbon-like chloroplasts and usually several pyrenoids per plastid.

Life histories are isomorphic or heteromorphic with only slightly different generations; however, a few species are known to be only asexual. Reproductive structures are similar in appearance and sessile or pedicellate. Unilocular and plurilocular sporangia can be borne on the same alga or on separate thalli. Unilocular sporangia are globose or ellipsoidal, usually sessile, or terminal on short laterals. Plurilocular sporangia are usually terminal but, in some, may develop from vegetative cells below a pseudohair. Plurilocular gametangia are borne on separate thalli, and the gametes are isogamous.

**REMARKS.** *Ectocarpus* is worldwide in distribution, with species that often exhibit wide phenotypic plasticity. The relationship of the species of *Ectocarpus* recorded in the Gulf to other known species is in need of critical study, including comparative morphological and life history studies and DNA analyses. Further field exploration will probably yield additional species in the Gulf of California.

Three species are reported in the southern Gulf (Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González 1985; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001): *Ectocarpus corticulatus* De A. Saunders (1898), *E. chantrasoides* Setchell et N. L. Gardner (1922c) and *E. simulans* Setchell et N. L. Gardner (1922c).

Seven species are recorded in the northern Gulf of California.

**KEY TO THE SPECIES OF ECTOCARPUS IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA**

- 1a. Filaments corticated basally; distally narrowing in diameter; cells more or less barrel-shaped; plurilocular sporangia more or less cylindrical with a conical upper portion . . . . . *E. acutus*
- 1b. Filaments not corticated basally; cells not barrel-shaped; plurilocular sporangia not cylindrical . . . . . 2



- 2a. Upper branches usually in secund pattern; plurilocular sporangia up to 500  $\mu\text{m}$  (or more) in length, with a sterile apex or long extension . . . . . *E. siliculosus*
- 2b. Upper branches usually not in secund series; plurilocular sporangia shorter and without sterile apices . . . . . 3
- 3a. Two distinct kinds of reproductive structures on same thallus; plurilocular structures: one of multiseriate rows of locules and the other of a uniseriate row of large locules . . . . . *E. commensalis*
- 3b. Different kinds of reproductive structures on separate thalli: unilocular and plurilocular sporangia and plurilocular gametangia . . . . . 4
- 4a. Reproductive structures borne on both prostrate and erect filaments . . . . . *E. parvus*
- 4b. Reproductive structures restricted to erect filaments . . . . . 5
- 5a. Epiphytic on *Codium* . . . . . *E. gonodioides*
- 5b. Growing on rocks or crustose coralline algae . . . . . 6
- 6a. Thalli small, filaments infrequently branched, about 20  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, apices usually blunt; plurilocular sporangia sessile, to 175  $\mu\text{m}$  long, without apical extensions . . . . . *E. hancockii*
- 6b. Thalli larger, filaments abundantly branched, up to 50  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; plurilocular sporangia pedicellate, to 400  $\mu\text{m}$  long, with apical extension of cells . . . . . *E. sonorensis*

***Ectocarpus acutus* Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURE 87A,B

*Ecotcarpus acutus* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1922c:404, pl. 48: figs. 36–39, pl. 49: figs. 40, 41; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:415; Smith, 1944:80, pl. 10: fig. 1; Dawson, 1961b:383; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:123, fig. 83; Pacheco-Ruíz, 1982:70; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:24; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1991:23; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1994b:42; González-González et al., 1996:147; Hoffmann and Santelices, 1997:110, fig. 25; Rodríguez-Morales and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1999:17, 22; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:146; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:57; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:3, 8; Pedroche et al., 2008:15.

Algae filamentous, up to 5 cm tall; usually densely branched; attached by prostrate, entangled filaments (not penetrating deeply into host). Main filaments corticated below by rhizoidal filaments growing into holdfast and not corticated above; branching mostly alternate below and secund above; with branches gradually narrowing and becoming attenuated distally. Cells of filaments more or less barrel-shaped; in lower to middle portions (16–)24–120  $\mu\text{m}$  long and 40–60  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; with few irregular band-shaped chloroplasts, each with several pyrenoids.

Unilocular sporangia unknown. Plurilocular sporangia on 1–2 celled pedicels; more or less cylindrical with a conical upper portion, 100–150(–230)  $\mu\text{m}$  long and 20–35  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter.

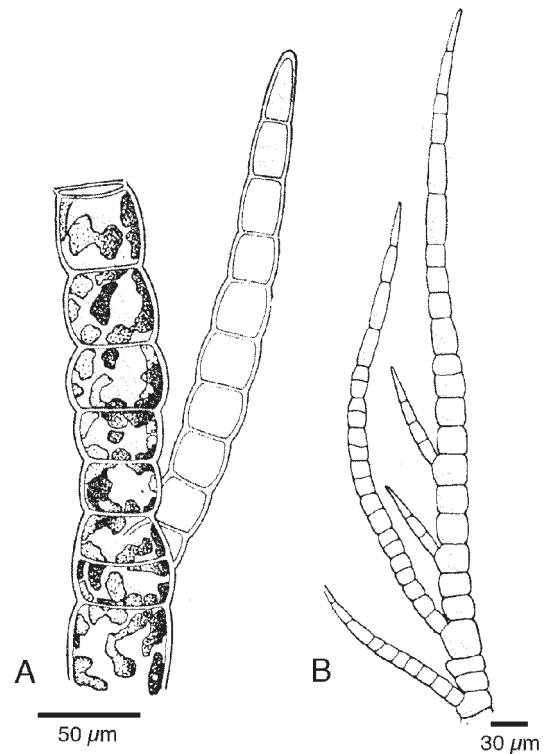


FIGURE 87. *Ectocarpus acutus*: A. Portion of a filament showing the barrel shape of the cells with irregular band-shaped chloroplasts (from Setchell and Gardner, 1922b: pl. 48, fig. 38). B. Upper portion of filament showing branches attenuated toward acute apices (from Setchell and Gardner, 1922b: pl. 48, fig. 39).

**HABITAT.** Epiphytic, usually on brown algae; intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco; Isla Espíritu Santo to Bahía de La Paz. Pacific coast: British Columbia to Baja California Sur; Colima; Chile.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Carmel, Monterey County, California.

***Ectocarpus commensalis*  
Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURE 88A

*Ectocarpus commensalis* Setchell et N.L. Gardner, 1922c:407, pl. 48: figs. 32–35; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:424; Smith, 1944:86; Dawson, 1961b:384; González-González et al., 1996:147; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:57; Pedroche et al., 2008:16.

*Ectocarpus dimorphus* P. C. Silva *nom. nov.*, 1957:42; Dawson, 1961b:384; Silva, 1979:332.

*Ectocarpus variabilis* (De A. Saunders) G. M. Smith, *nom. illeg.*, 1942:647, figs. 1–4 [note *Ectocarpus variabilis* Vickers, 1905:59 is an earlier homonym]; Smith, 1944:85, pl. 10: figs. 2–4; Dawson, 1945b:64; Dawson, 1951:52; Dawson, 1954b:111; González-González et al., 1996:149.

*Ectocarpus confervoides* f. *variabilis* De A. Saunders, 1898:155, pl. 23: figs 1–10; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:414, pl. 46: fig. 7; Dawson, 1944:220.

Algae epiphytic, forming tufts up to 1.0 cm tall. Erect filaments uncorticated, sparingly and predominately alternate branched; upper ends attenuated, with round apices; prostrate filaments irregularly branched, attached to but not penetrating host cells. Cells of erect filaments 10–75(–90)  $\mu\text{m}$  long by (10–)15–30  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, with band-shaped chloroplasts.

Plurilocular structures of two kinds, both pedicellate (1–3 celled stalk), and usually borne on separate branches of same individual: (1) multiseriate, 10–15 locules wide, fusiform to ovoid, 75–180  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 15–35  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; each locule about 0.2  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; and (2) a uniseriate row, 70–200  $\mu\text{m}$  in length; of 2–15 barrel-shaped large locules, each 15–35  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter.

**HABITAT.** Epiphytic on *Sargassum* and probably other algae; low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Isla Turners (off south end of Isla Tiburón). Pacific coast: British Columbia to Baja California Sur; Nayarit.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Not stated by Saunders (1898); Point Pinos, Pacific Grove, Monterey County, California, given by Smith (1944).

**REMARKS.** Description of *Ectocarpus commensalis* is based primarily on Dawson (1944, as “*E. confervoides* f. *variabilis*”) and Smith (1944, as “*E. variabilis*”). Although considered to be conspecific with *E. parvus* by Abbott and Hollenberg (1976), Silva (1979, as “*E. dimorphus*”) noted that the epiphytic *E. commensalis* should probably be separated from the epilithic *E. parvus*.

***Ectocarpus gonodioides*  
Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURE 88B

*Ectocarpus gonodioides* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:721, pl. 17: fig. 44; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:439; Dawson, 1944:221; Smith, 1944:86; Dawson, 1961b:384; Dawson, 1966a:9; Dawson, 1966b:55; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:126, fig. 87; González-González et al., 1996:148; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:203; Pedroche et al., 2008:16.

Algae minute tufts, up to 550  $\mu\text{m}$  high, epiphytic, attached by rhizoidal filaments deeply penetrating into the host. Erect filaments near base, almost colorless, sparsely branched at host’s surface; upper filaments simple, mostly becoming attenuated toward apices. Cells 1–2 times as long as wide; lower cells 18–24  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; upper cells 10–14  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Chloroplasts not adequately described in Gulf specimens.

Unilocular sporangia unknown. Plurilocular gametangia pedicellate, on 1–2 celled stalk, borne near base of filaments; narrowly fusiform, up to 125  $\mu\text{m}$  long by 20–28  $\mu\text{m}$  wide.

**HABITAT.** Epiphytic on *Codium macdougalii* (= *C. brandegeei*) and *C. cuneatum* (= *C. simulans*); mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Bahía de Los Ángeles; Bahía Agua Verde to Cabo Pulmo. Pacific coast: central California.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Isla Coronado (Isla Smith), Las Islas de la Cintura, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** Setchell and Gardner (1924a:722), in describing the Gulf *E. gonodioides*, stated “the chromatophores are too much disorganized for characterization.” Recording this species from Carmel, central California, Smith (1944:86) noted it differed somewhat

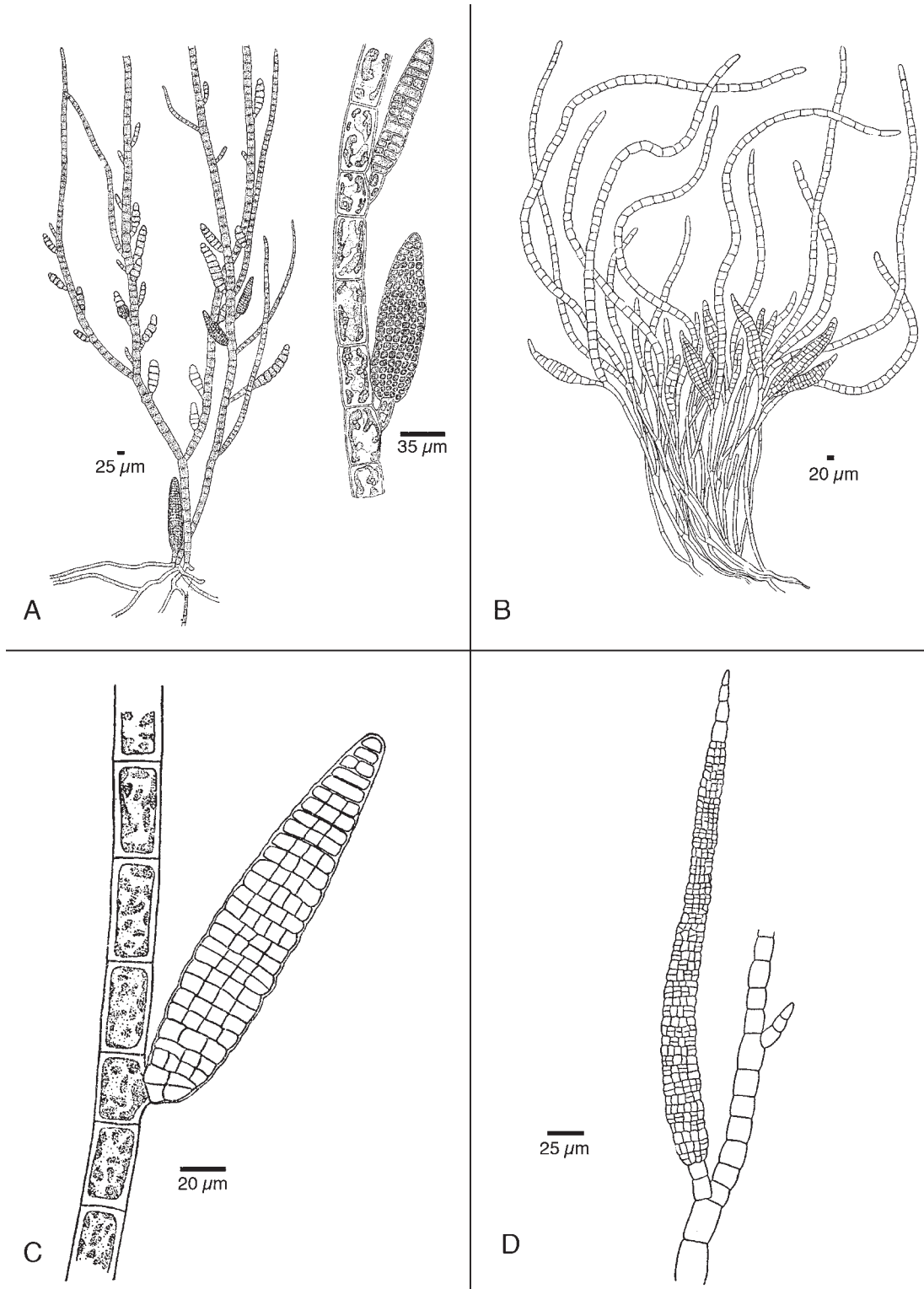


FIGURE 88. Four species of *Ectocarpus*. A. *Ectocarpus commensalis*: Filaments bearing both multiseriate and uniseriate plurilocular sporangia (from Saunders, 1898: pl. 23, figs. 1, 9). B. *Ectocarpus gonodioides*: Tuft of filaments showing plurilocular reproductive structures borne right above the rhizoidal portion that penetrates the host (drawn from type specimen, *I. M. Johnston-47e*; Setchell and Gardner, 1924a: pl. 17, fig. 44). C. *Ectocarpus hancockii*: Portion of a filament bearing a sessile, plurilocular sporangium (drawn from type specimen, *EYD-[1940]133*, Dawson, 1944: pl. 31, fig. 4). D. *Ectocarpus sonorensis*: Portion of a filament bearing a narrow, elongate plurilocular sporangium with sterile apical cells (drawn from type specimen, *Drouet & Richards-3281*, Dawson, 1944: pl. 31, fig. 5).

from those of the Gulf of California type locality and described its plastids as band-shaped, and later, Abbott and Hollenberg (1976:126) noted there were few per cell. Until further collections of Gulf type locality material are made and its plastids and mode of growth are described and tested with molecular analyses, it is best to retain the species here (see also "Remarks" under *E. hancockii*).

### ***Ectocarpus hancockii* E. Y. Dawson**

FIGURE 88C

*Ectocarpus hancockii* E. Y. Dawson, 1944:222, pl. 31: fig. 4; Dawson, 1961b:385; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; González-González et al., 1996:149; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:132, 134; Pedroche et al., 2008:18.

Algae tufted, 4–5 mm high, saxicolous or epiphytic on crustose coralline algae, attached by a mat of cells and basal filaments. Erect filaments infrequently branched, about 20 µm in diameter, apices usually blunt. Cells 30–60 µm in length and up to 20 µm in diameter. Plastids probably band-shaped.

Unilocular sporangia unknown. Plurilocular sporangia, abundant, lateral, sessile, 125–175 µm long by 28–32 µm in diameter.

**HABITAT.** On rocks and on crustose coralline algae; mid intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: El Faro de San Felipe (lighthouse of San Felipe); Isla Turners.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Reef off Isla Turners (off southeast end of Isla Tiburón), Las Islas de la Cintura, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** The generic placement of the Gulf-endemic *Ectocarpus hancockii* remains uncertain, as characters necessary for generic separation, such as the plastids or type of growth, were not given in the original description (Dawson, 1944). However, in Dawson's illustration (1944, pl. 31: fig. 4) the plastids appear to be mostly band-shaped, and thus, for now, this species is retained in *Ectocarpus*. Further study, including DNA analyses, on future collections from the type locality should lead to a better understanding of this species.

### ***Ectocarpus parvus* (De A. Saunders) Hollenberg**

FIGURE 89

*Ectocarpus siliculosus* var. *parvus* De A. Saunders, 1898:153, pl. 22: figs. 1–9.

*Ectocarpus parvus* (De A. Saunders) Hollenberg, 1971:283; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:126, fig. 89 [in part]; L. Aguilar-Rosas, 1982:31; Pacheco-Ruiz, 1982:70; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:24; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:420; Stewart, 1991:38; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; R. Aguilar-Rosas and M. Aguilar-Rosas, 1994:517; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:109; González-González et al., 1996:149; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1996:69, 85, pl. 17: figs. 69–72; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Dreckmann et al., 2006:154.

*Ectocarpus confervoides* f. *parvus* (De A. Saunders) Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1922c:414; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:413; Dawson, 1961b:384.

*Ectocarpus confervoides* f. *pygmaeus* sensu Setchell and Gardner, 1925:415 [non *E. confervoides* f. *pygmaeus* (Areschoug) Kjellman, 1890:77; basionym: *Ectocarpus pygmaeus* Areschoug in Kjellman, 1872:85].

*Ectocarpus confervoides* var. *pygmaeus* sensu Hollenberg and Abbott, 1968:1237 [non *E. confervoides* var. *pygmaeus* (Areschoug) Rosenvinge, 1893:883; the basionym, *E. pygmaeus* Areschoug in Kjellman, 1872:85, is a synonym of *Ectocarpus fasciculatus* Harvey, 1841:40 (see Russell, 1966:270)].

Algae erect, forming short, filamentous tufts, 5–10 mm high. Filaments uncorticated, 20–30 µm in diameter; simple or sparingly, more or less alternately branched; attenuated at branch apices. Cells of filaments 25–75 µm in length, 20–30 µm in diameter; upper cells shorter than lower cells. Chloroplasts irregularly band-shaped.

Unilocular and plurilocular sporangia not reported in northern Gulf material.

**HABITAT.** Growing on rocks; low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Isla Pelicano, Bahía Kino; Bahía de La Paz. Pacific coast: Alaska to Baja California Sur; Sinaloa to Chiapas.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** On "sand-colored rocks," San Pedro, Los Angeles County, California (Saunders, 1898).

**REMARKS.** The relationship of *Ectocarpus parvus* with *E. commensalis* is problematic. While recognizing *E. parvus* as a separate taxon (including those misidentified as "*E. confervoides* var. *pygmaeus*"), Scagel et al. (1989) noted its taxonomic status, as well as that of other morphologically similar taxa, is uncertain. Future collections will be helpful in understanding the degree of variation and the status of this taxon within the Gulf of California. Specimens of "*E. confervoides* f. *pygmaeus*"

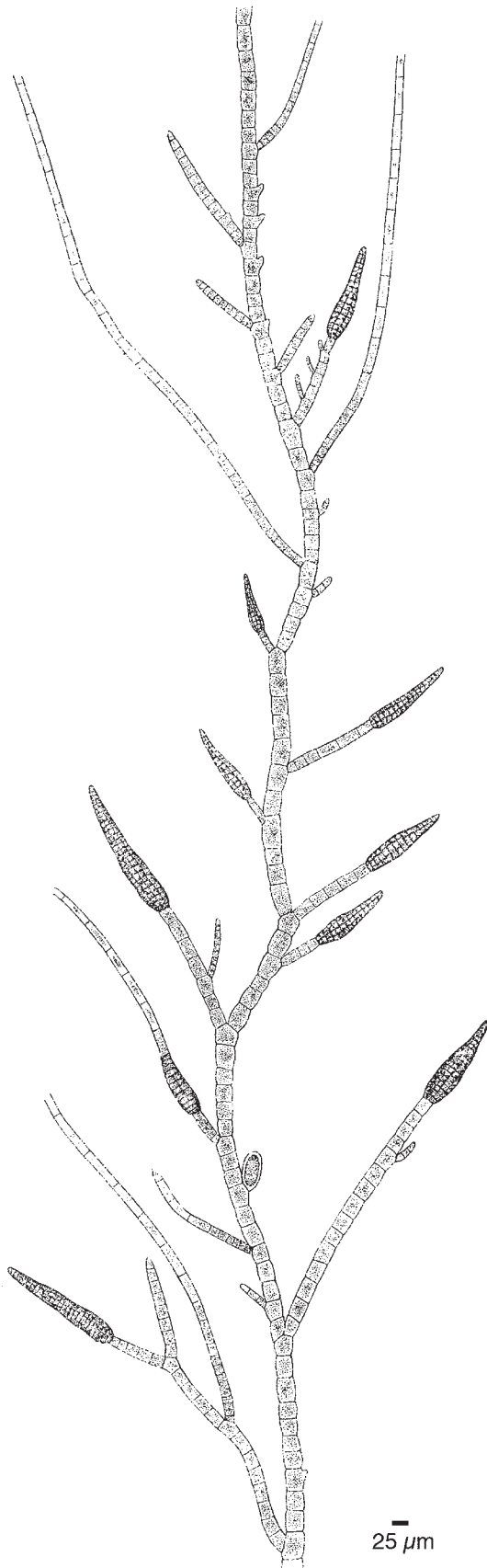


FIGURE 89. *Ectocarpus parvus*: Habit, portion of a filament showing terminal and lateral plurilocular sporangia (drawn from type specimen, W.A. Setchell-1213, Saunders, 1898: pl. 22, fig. 1).

as reported from Sonora (Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986) and Nayarit (León-Tejera et al., 1993) may also be this species.

### ***Ectocarpus siliculosus* (Dillwyn) Lyngbye**

*Conferva siliculosa* Dillwyn, 1809: 69, Suppl. pl. E.

*Ectocarpus siliculosus* (Dillwyn) Lyngbye, 1819:131, pl. 43B,C; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:410; Doty, 1947:31; Dawson, 1961b:385; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:128, fig. 90; Silva, 1979:332; Servièze-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González 1991:23; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González 1992:23; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González 1994b:42; González-González et al., 1996:376; Kitayama, 1996:224, figs. 2, 3; Yoshida, 1998:166; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:132, L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002:235; Pedroche et al., 2008:18.

Algae forming tufts, up to 2.0 cm tall, composed of uniseriate, uncorticated filaments; branching subdichotomous in lower portion and alternately secund above; larger branches 45–60  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, ultimate branchlets 10–25  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Cells (0.6–)1–2 times as long as wide; with ribbon-shaped chloroplasts and several pyrenoids.

Plurilocular sporangia conical, usually on short pedicels (also reported sessile), 90–500(–600)  $\mu\text{m}$  long, 15–25(–40)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; with sterile tip or sometimes with hairlike multicellular extension.

**HABITAT.** On rocks, limestone, and clay, in tide pools, or epiphytic on *Codium*; often becomes free-floating; high to mid intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: El Tornilal to Puertecitos. Pacific coast: Alaska to Baja California Sur; Nayarit to Colima, Peru; Chile; China; Japan.

**SYNTYPE LOCALITIES.** Cromer in Norfolk and Hastings in East Sussex, England (Silva et al., 1996a).

**REMARKS.** *Ectocarpus siliculosus* has been recorded in the northern Gulf by L. Aguilar-Rosas et al. (2000, 2002); description is based on Abbott and Hollenberg (1976).

***Ectocarpus sonorensis* E. Y. Dawson**

FIGURE 88D

*Ectocarpus sonorensis* E. Y. Dawson, 1944:221, pl. 31: fig.5; Dawson, 1961b:385; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; González-González et al., 1996:149; Pedroche et al., 2008:20.

Algae filamentous, light green-brown, up to 10 cm tall, abundantly branched, with main filaments up to 50 µm in diameter, and branches attenuating distally from 40 µm to 12 µm in diameter; secondary and other order branches, slender, somewhat cylindrical, and tapering upwards to a sharp point; branches bearing numerous short, spine-like secondary branchlets near apices. Cells thin-walled, 1.25–1.50 times as long as wide; with pale chloroplasts apparently lining the wall.

Unilocular sporangia unknown. Plurilocular sporangia borne on 2-celled pedicels, slender, up to 400 µm long by 20–25 µm in diameter, with an apical, pointed extension of vegetative cells, 30–120 µm long.

**HABITAT.** On rocks; intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Guaymas.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** “On rocks in tidal stream,” 3 km east of Guaymas, Sonora, Gulf of California (Dawson, 1944).

**REMARKS.** Apparently a Gulf of California endemic, *Ectocarpus sonorensis* is known only from the type collection.

**PYLAIELLACEAE**

Pylaiellaceae P. M. Pedersen, 1984:50, as “Pilayellaceae.”

Algae are filamentous, with erect and sometimes low-growing portions, attached by rhizoids. Filaments are mostly uniseriate, becoming parenchymatous by longitudinal divisions of the cells.

Sporangia are formed by the transformation of vegetative cells.

**REMARKS.** Pedersen (1984) considered the Pylaiellaceae to be close to some families of the orders Dictyosiphonales and Tilopteridales, noting that the more or less frequent formation of longitudinal walls in *Pylaiella* justifies its position among the parenchymatous brown algae. However, Wynne (1986) questioned the taxonomic significance of this character and placed *Pylaiella* in the Ectocarpaceae and, later (Wynne, 2005), within the Acinetosporaceae (both Ectocarpales). Herein the Pylaiellaceae is recognized as a family within the Ectocarpales (Silva et al., 1996a).

***Pylaiella* Bory de Saint-Vincent**

*Pylaiella* Bory de Saint-Vincent, 1823:393.

Algae are filamentous, composed of creeping and erect portions, which may be simple or more or less opposite, alternate, or irregularly branched, and attached by rhizoids. Filaments are initially uniseriate and without a terminal hair; later, these filaments may be frequently divided by longitudinal walls (some interpret this as becoming parenchymatous) and taper upward into pseudohairs (note that true phaeophycean hairs are absent). Growth is by intercalary divisions, which are generally diffuse throughout the thallus or sometimes localized. Cells have numerous discoid plastids and a single pyrenoid.

Thalli are isomorphic, sometimes with both unilocular and plurilocular structures on the same individual. Plurilocular and unilocular sporangia are barrel-shaped or subspherical, are intercalary in catenate series with lateral openings, and are formed by direct transformation of vegetative cells. Plurilocular gametangia are oblong to more or less cylindrical.

**REMARKS.** The original spelling, *Pylaiella* Bory de Saint-Vincent (1823) has been conserved over “*Pilayella*” (Silva et al., 1999; Compère, 2003). Species of *Pylaiella* exhibit a wide range of phenotypic plasticity; thus, the species concepts are in need of testing and clarification.

Although species of *Pylaiella* are not well known in the Gulf, large loose-lying mats of another species, *P. littoralis* (Linnaeus) Kjellman (1872), have created environmental problems on the northeastern coast of the United States (Wilce et al., 1982).

One undetermined species is now recorded from the northern Gulf of California.

***Pylaiella* sp. A**

Alga minute and filamentous. Main axes branched irregularly alternate.

Sporangia not seen.

**HABITAT.** In a tide pool, entangled with *Anthamionella spirographidis*; low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Punta Pelicano, Puerto Peñasco.

**REMARKS.** A minute specimen of *Pylaiella* (JN-3979) establishes the genus as occurring in the northern Gulf. Unfortunately, the material is not fertile; thus, the species cannot be determined. It is noted herein to call its presence to the attention of future collectors.

**LEATHESIAEAE\***

Leathesiaceae Farlow, 1881:16, 79.  
Corynophlaeaceae Oltmanns, 1922:23 [see Silva, 1980: 71, 73].

Sporophytic algae are cushionlike, globose, or hemispherical, some becoming irregularly globular, with smooth to convoluted surfaces and without a distinct basal layer. Assimilatory filaments are anticlinally arranged, with intercalary growth. Cells of assimilatory filaments contain several chloroplasts, each with a pyrenoid.

Life histories, where known, are heteromorphic with a sporophytic macrothallus and a haploid filamentous microthallus. Sporophytes may have unilocular and/or plurilocular sporangia on the same or separate thalli. Presumed gametophytes are filamentous, microscopic thalli, with uniseriate gametangia.

**REMARKS.** Some taxonomists consider the Leathesiaceae to be synonymous with the family Chordariaceae on the basis of morphological and life history similarities. Molecular phylogenetic analyses of the generitype *Leathesia tuberiformis* S. F. Gray (1821; which is now *Leathesia marina* (Lyngbye) Decaisne, 1842, basionym *Chaetophora marina* Lyngbye 1819; *L. difformis* (Linnaeus) J. E. Areschoug, 1847; see Pedroche et al., 2008) will help resolve the familial status.

One of the genera, *Myriactula* Kuntze (1898), is represented by two poorly known endemic species in the southern Gulf: *Myriactula johnstonii* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Feldmann (1945; basionym: *Gonodia johnstonii* Setchell et N. L. Gardner 1924a); and *M. marchantiae* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) Feldmann (1945; basionym: *Gonodia marchantiae* Setchell et N.L. Gardner 1924a).

There is one genus recorded in the northern Gulf of California.

***Leathesia* S. F. Gray**

*Leathesia* S. F. Gray, 1821: 279, 301.

Algae are globular to hemispherical or irregularly convoluted and internally solid or initially solid and later

becoming hollow. Species are epiphytic or growing on solid substratum. Growth is by intercalary cell divisions. Internal structure is of two kinds of filaments: inner medullary filaments that are loosely arranged, dichotomously to trichotomously branched, and composed of large, elongated, colorless cells; and outer multicelled assimilatory filaments that are composed of cylindrical pigmented cells that terminate with a large globular cell. Cells of assimilatory filaments contain several chloroplasts with pyrenoids. Phaeophyceean hairs, often common, are among the assimilatory filaments and project above the surface layer.

The life history is heteromorphic, with plurispores of sporophytic macrothalli producing filamentous microthalli and unfused gametes of the latter developing gametophytes (e.g., Kylin, 1933; Dangeard, 1969). Unilocular and plurilocular sporangia develop on the basal cells of the assimilatory filaments, sometimes on the same individual. Unilocular sporangia are ovoid to ellipsoid and are usually separated from each other. Plurilocular sporangia with locules in uniseriate rows are usually grouped together.

**REMARKS.** Two taxonomic sections of the genus were recognized by Inagaki (1958). *Leathesia* sect. *Leathesia* includes members that are hollow, with a reticulated medullary layer, and *Leathesia* sect. *Primariae* includes those that are solid, with densely packed medullary filaments. Species of the latter section resemble the genus *Corynophlaea* Kützting (1843) in their inner anatomy; however, they are different genera. Ajisaka (1984) cultured one member, *L. japonica* Inagaki (1958), and reported the occurrence of filamentous thalli that resembled *Polytretus reinboldii* (Reinke) Sauvageau (1900; =*Botrytella reinboldii* (Reinke) Kornmann et Sahling, 1988) and formed plurilocular sporangia with several lateral release pores in its life history.

One species has been reported in the northern Gulf of California.

***Leathesia nana* Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURE 90A–C

*Leathesia nana* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924b:3; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:511, pl. 43: fig. 67; Smith, 1944:115, pl. 15: fig. 1; Dawson, 1958:65; Dawson, 1961b:391; Hollenberg, 1971:285, fig. 3; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:177, fig. 143; Pacheco-Ruíz, 1982:70; Tseng, 1983:174, pl. 88: fig. 1; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1984a:152; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1984b:161; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1990:123; González-González

\* Contributed by Luis E. Aguilar-Rosas, Raúl Aguilar-Rosas, and James N. Norris; L. Aguilar-Rosas: Instituto de Investigaciones Oceanológicas, Universidad Autónoma de Baja California, Km 107 carretera Tijuana-Ensenada, 22830 Ensenada, Baja California, Mexico; R. Aguilar-Rosas: Facultad de Ciencias Marinas, Universidad Autónoma de Baja California.

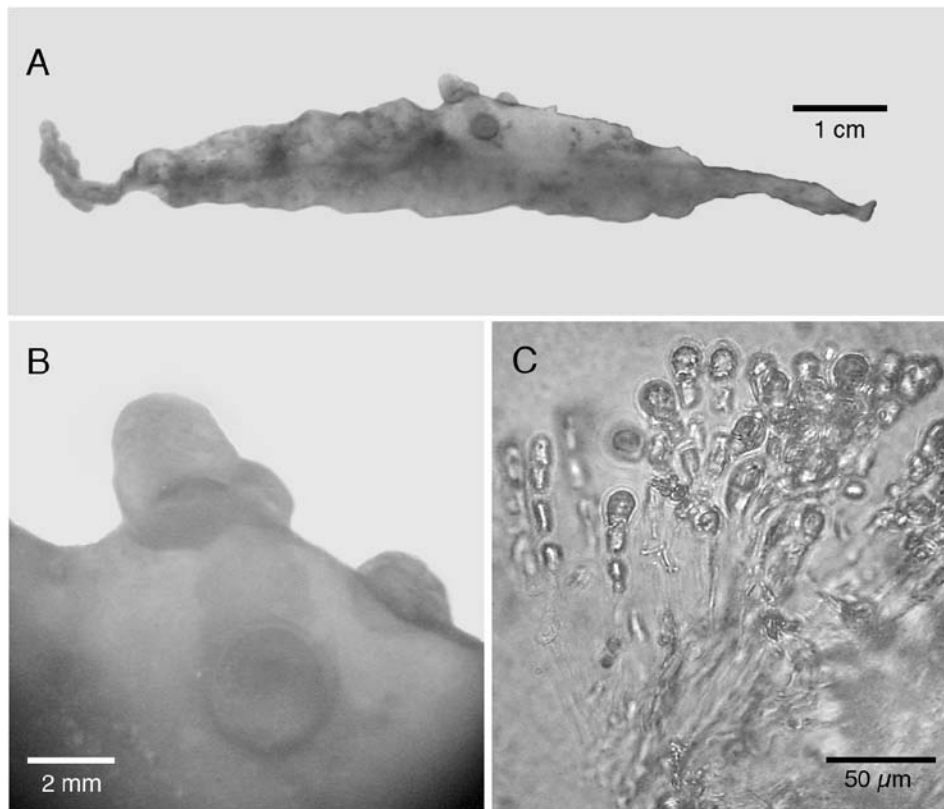


FIGURE 90. *Leathesia nana*: A. Several thalli epiphytic on a leaflike blade of *Sargassum sinicola*. B. Habit of several small globose thalli. C. Transection of thallus showing three- to five-celled assimilatory filaments with a larger, subspherical, terminal cell (CMMEX-6447).

et al., 1996:154; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:127, 136; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:58; Pedroche et al., 2008:60.

Algae small, more or less globose or hemispherical, 1.0–3.0(–5.0) mm in diameter; mostly with a smooth surface and usually not hollow; epiphytic on *Sargassum*. Assimilatory (cortical) filaments of 3–4(–5) elongate cells, (6–)7–8  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, with a larger, subspherical terminal cell, 10  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Medullary filaments of larger colorless cells. Hairs not observed in Gulf specimens (reported as present or absent for the species).

Reproductive structure not observed in upper Gulf of California specimens.

**HABITAT.** Epiphytic on *Sargassum sinicola* and *S. herporhizum*; intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco; Playa El Coloradito. Pacific coast: northern Washington to Cabo Colnett, Baja California; China.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Monterey, Monterey County, California.

**REMARKS.** The northern Gulf *Leathesia nana* were found on brown algae, species of *Sargassum* (L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006). This is a new host, as central California *L. nana* are known as epiphytes on the sea grass *Phyllospadix* (Setchell and Gardner, 1924b, 1925; Smith, 1944) and on the red algae *Neorhodomela larix* (Turner) Masuda (1982; = *Rhodomela larix* (Turner) C. Agardh, 1822) and *Odonthalia floccosa* (Esper) Falkenberg (1901), both Rhodomelaceae (Sparling, 1971; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976).

Although reproductive structures were not seen in upper Gulf specimens, two kinds of sporangia are reported in California *L. nana* (Hollenberg, 1971; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976): plurilocular sporangia, uniseriate, of 4–6 locules, 20–30  $\mu\text{m}$  long and 3.5–5.0  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, borne at base of 3- to 4-celled paraphyses, with a globular terminal cell only slightly larger than lower cells (Setchell and Gardner, 1925); and unilocular sporangia 25–40(–50)  $\mu\text{m}$  long and 10–20  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter, borne at base of 4- to 6-celled assimilatory filaments with a large



globular terminal cell (larger than those that bear plurilocular sporangia; Hollenberg, 1971:fig. 3). Specimens of *L. nana* with plurilocular sporangia are known only on *Phyllospadix*, whereas those with unilocular sporangia are almost exclusively on *Neorhodomela* and *Odonthalia* (Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976).

Webber (1981, as "*L. difformis*") suggested *L. nana* was a growth-form of *L. marina* (Lyngbye) Decaisne, and Scagel et al. (1989, as "*L. difformis*"), considering the study of Novacek (1987), reduced *L. nana* to a synonym of *L. marina*. Comparative molecular and morphological studies of *L. marina* (type locality: Båstad, Sweden), central California "*L. difformis* sensu Smith (1944) and Abbott and Hollenberg (1976)," *L. nana* (type locality: Monterey), and the northern Gulf *L. nana* are needed to elucidate the taxonomic status and phylogenetic relationships of these four.

### SCYTOSIPHONACEAE

Scytosiphonaceae Farlow, 1881:15, 62.

Algae of this family exhibit a wide variety of forms and can be tubular, compressed, or flattened and elongated,

cylindrical, foliose, spherical, or saccate. The habit of these algae can be entire, irregularly shaped, or branched. Structurally, they are multiaxial and pseudoparenchymatous, with a medulla of large colorless cells and a cortical layer of small pigmented cells, and can be either solid or hollow centrally. Growth in most of the members is intercalary or from subapical cells. Cells have a large plastid with a pyrenoid, and vesicle-like globules (physodes) may be present or lacking. Phaeophyceyan hairs are present and either isolated or grouped in superficial pits.

Life histories, where known, are heteromorphic. Reproductive structures are in sori. Sporophytes produce unilocular and plurilocular sporangia. Sexual reproduction is by unilocular gametangia and uniseriate or multiseriate plurilocular gametangia that produce isogametes or anisogametes.

**REMARKS.** The report of two members of the family in the northern Gulf (Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986), *Petalonia binghamiae* (J. Agardh) Vinogradova (1973; = *Endarachne binghamiae* J. Agardh 1896) and *Petalonia fascia* (O. F. Müller) Kuntze (1898), needs to be confirmed.

Four genera of the Scytosiphonaceae are known in the northern Gulf of California.

#### KEY TO THE GENERA OF SCYTOSIPHONACEAE IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Minute to small epiphytes or endophytes; a dislike basal layer of monostromatic filaments, with erect, short, simple to laterally branched filaments . . . . . *Compsonema*
- 1b. Large, erect, and centrally hollow (not filamentous) and may be cylindrical and tubular or compressed, or globose or saccate, or open and sheetlike with or without holes (netlike) . . . . . 2
- 2a. Thalli either long, narrow cylindrical axes and branches, up to 3 mm in diameter, or low-growing clumps of more or less cylindrical to compressed entangled branches, up to 6 mm in diameter . . . . . *Rosenvingea*
- 2b. Thalli globose or saccate or open sheetlike or netlike . . . . . 3
- 3a. Thalli may be spherical to irregularly globose or saccate or more or less tubular irregularly lobed branches or open sheetlike without holes . . . . . *Colpomenia*
- 3b. Thallus three-dimensional "net" of small to large holes, usually torn open and forming netlike sheets . . . . . *Hydroclathrus*

### *Colpomenia* (Endlicher) Derbès et Solier

*Colpomenia* (Endlicher) Derbès et Solier, 1851:95.  
*Asperococcus* β. *Colpomenia* Endlicher, 1843:26.

Algae are more or less globose or saccate and hollow, occasionally forming prostrate expanses or open expanded sheets. The surface may be smooth, lobed, or constricted, or may be heavily convoluted and with prominent protuberances. Some may become torn or open and flattened with age. The medulla is composed of large

colorless cells, the innermost medullary layer facing the open hollow cavity. The cortex is generally one layer of small pigmented cells and has scattered tufts of hairs with basal meristems.

Plurilocular gametangia are borne in superficial sori associated with paraphyses, scattered over the thallus surface.

Four species of *Colpomenia* are recognized in the northern Gulf of California. Another, *C. peregrina* Sauvageau (1927), has been reported in the southern Gulf (Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001).

KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *COLPOMENIA* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Thalli consisting of erect, clustered, fingerlike sacs arising from a common prostrate holdfast; wall of sacs thin, delicate, usually less than 100  $\mu\text{m}$  thick . . . . . *C. phaeodactyla*  
 1b. Thalli not fingerlike sacs, but range from spherical, balloonlike to irregularly shaped, low-growing or sessile expanses or clumps of branched thalli; thicker and firmer, >200  $\mu\text{m}$  in thickness . . . . . 2  
 2a. Thalli forming a spreading clump of adherent, irregular lobed branches; smooth surface . . . . . *C. ramosa*  
 2b. Thalli globose or expanded sacs (occasionally open and flat sheets); lacking definite branches; smooth, convoluted, or tuberculate surface . . . . . 3  
 3a. Thalli with tuberculate, warty surface; of a crisp, rigid texture; thickness exceeding 500  $\mu\text{m}$  (often up to 1.0 mm); plurilocular structures up to 25  $\mu\text{m}$  long . . . . . *C. tuberculata*  
 3b. Thalli with smooth or convoluted surface; flaccid, never tuberculate or rigid; thinner in transection, 300–500  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; plurilocular structures 40 or more  $\mu\text{m}$  long . . . . . 4  
 4a. Thallus hollow, vesicle-like or globose . . . . . *C. sinuosa*  
 4b. Thallus open, broad or expanded thin sheets . . . . . *C. sp. A*

***Colpomenia phaeodactyla***  
**M. J. Wynne et J. N. Norris**

FIGURE 91A

*Colpomenia phaeodactyla* M. J. Wynne et J. N. Norris, 1976:5, figs. 4, 5a,b, 9a, 11c; Littler and Littler, 1981:151, tbl. 3, figs. 4, 5, 7; Norris, 1985:209, fig. 16.3 (bottom); Santelices, 1989:289, pl. GG: fig. 7; Yoshida et al., 1995:280; González-González et al., 1996:142; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; Hoffmann and Santelices, 1997:159, fig. 40; Yoshida, 1998:305, fig. 2-21G; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49, 58; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:204; Pedroche et al., 2008:64.

*Colpomenia sinuosa* f. *deformans* sensu Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:726, pl. 19: figs. 61, 62; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:542; Dawson, 1949:239 [in part; Gulf of California specimens only]; Dawson, 1944:233; Dawson, 1966a:11; Wynne, 1972:137, figs. 1, 17, 18; Wynne, 1973:141 [non *Colpomenia sinuosa* f. *deformans* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1903:242; which is *Colpomenia bullosa* (De A. Saunders) Yamada, 1948:6].

*Colpomenia bullosa* sensu Norris, 1973:6; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:204 [non *Colpomenia bullosa* (De A. Saunders) Yamada, 1948:6; basionym: *Scytosiphon bullosus* De A. Saunders, 1898:163].

Algae usually forming clusters of long, hollow sacs, golden brown (darker when fertile), 8–15(–25) cm long, 0.8–1.5(–5.5) cm wide, arising from a compressed base attached to the substrate. Sacs flaccid and delicate, elongated and tapering toward base; hollow throughout; thin,

70–88(–110)  $\mu\text{m}$  thick. Medulla 2–3 cells thick, of large colorless cells. Outer cortex a single layer of small cuboidal cells, each with 1 chloroplast; tufts of colorless hairs rare. Subcortex also a single layer of slightly larger cells.

Unilocular sporangia unknown. Plurilocular structures, uniseriate and biseriate, 28–38  $\mu\text{m}$  long; forming dense, extensive sori over surface of erect sacs; paraphyses rare (if present, more or less same height as plurilocular structures).

**HABITAT.** On tops of rocks and tidal platforms; mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Guaymas. Pacific coast: Bahía San Bartolomé to Bahía Asunción (Baja California Sur); Costa Rica; central Chile; Japan.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** Named for the brown finger-like appearance of its elongated sacs, *Colpomenia phaeodactyla* is an ephemeral species and can be relatively common at some locales in the upper Gulf from December to May. It is quite flaccid, lying on the substratum when exposed during low tides, and during high tides it is submerged and vertical, with the hollow portions appearing to be at least partly filled with air.

Ramírez and Rojas V. (1991) considered Chilean records identified as “*C. phaeodactyla*” (Santelices et al., 1989; Ramírez and Santelices, 1991) to be *C. durvillei* (Bory de Saint-Vincent) Ramírez (see Wynne, 1999, for clarification of status of this taxon). However, Hoffmann and Santelices (1997) recognized *C. phaeodactyla* from central Chile.

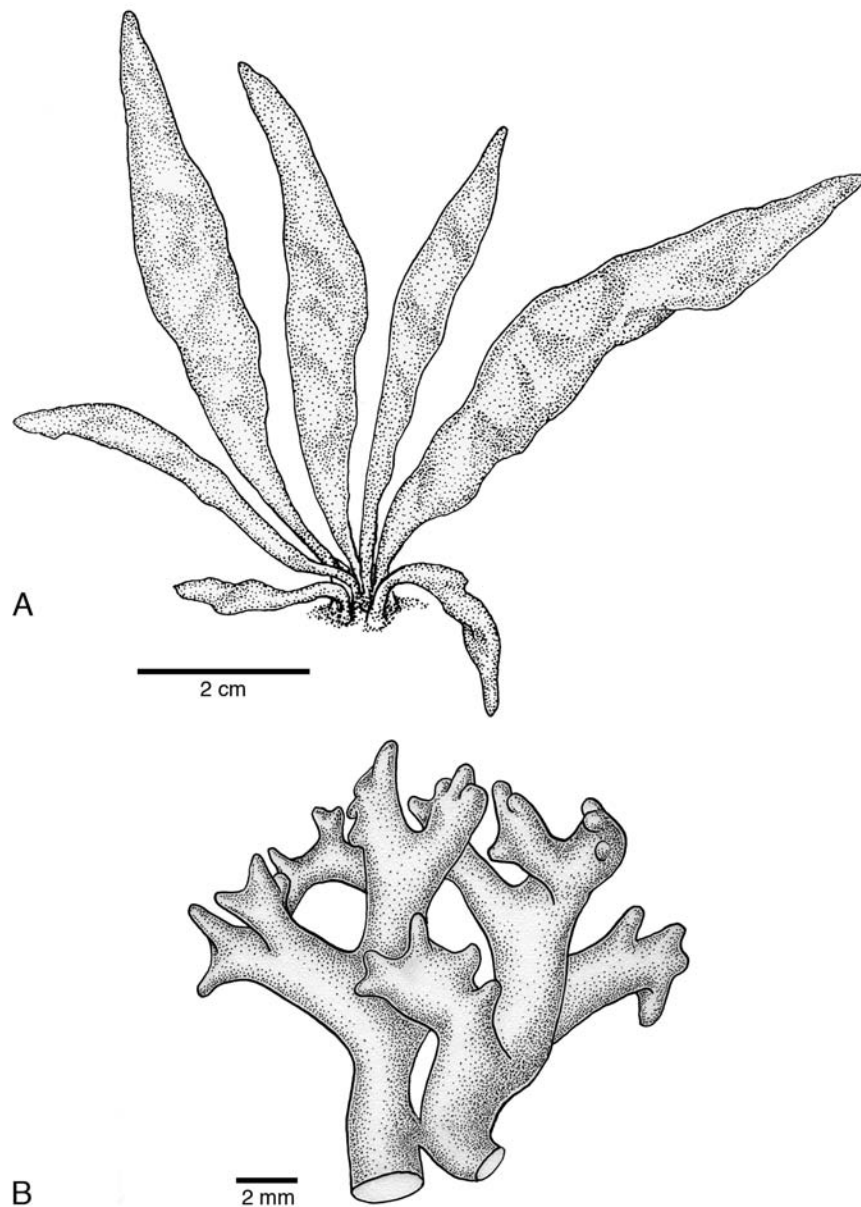


FIGURE 91. Two species of *Colpomenia*. A. *Colpomenia phaeodactyla*: Habit of several fingerlike hollow sacs (JN-4759). B. *Colpomenia ramosa*: Upper portion of thallus showing branching pattern (JN-4697).

### ***Colpomenia ramosa* W. R. Taylor**

FIGURE 91B

*Colpomenia ramosa* W. R. Taylor, 1945:84, pl. 6, fig. 2; Dawson, 1949:228, 250; Dawson, 1951:52; Dawson, 1952:431; Dawson, 1961b:394; Wynne and Norris, 1976:11, fig. 8a,b; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:24; Ramírez and Rojas V., 1991:16, figs. 4, 8; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:23; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:110; González-González et al., 1996:142; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171;

Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1997:59, pl. 7: figs. 28, 29, pl. 9: fig. 39; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 2003:22; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:204; Pedroche et al., 2008:65.

*Rosenvingea intricata* sensu Dawson, 1944:233 [in part], pl. 52: fig. 1 [non *Rosenvingea intricata* (J. Agardh) Børgesen, 1914:26].

Algae forming adherent clumps, up to 4 cm broad and to 2 cm tall, with several areas of attachment. Thallus of congested, hollow, more or less cylindrical to compressed axes, irregularly subdichotomously to polychotomously

branched; broader basally, becoming narrower distally; terminal branch divisions cylindrical, short, 1–2 mm in diameter by 2–3 mm long, with rounded ends. In transection, outer wall 200–500  $\mu\text{m}$  thick, of 6–8 cell layers; cells larger inward toward hollow cavity, becoming smaller outward to small-celled cortex.

Plurilocular sporangia in sori, uniseriate, with 10–12 locules, 35–40  $\mu\text{m}$  long.

**HABITAT.** Often entangled with other algae; low intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Isla Willard, Bahía San Luis Gonzaga to Bahía Tepoca; Isla Espiritu Santo to Bahía de La Paz. Pacific coast: Baja California to Sinaloa; Guerrero to Oaxaca; Costa Rica; Galápagos Islands; Chile.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Bahía Sur, Isla Cedros, Baja California, Pacific Mexico.

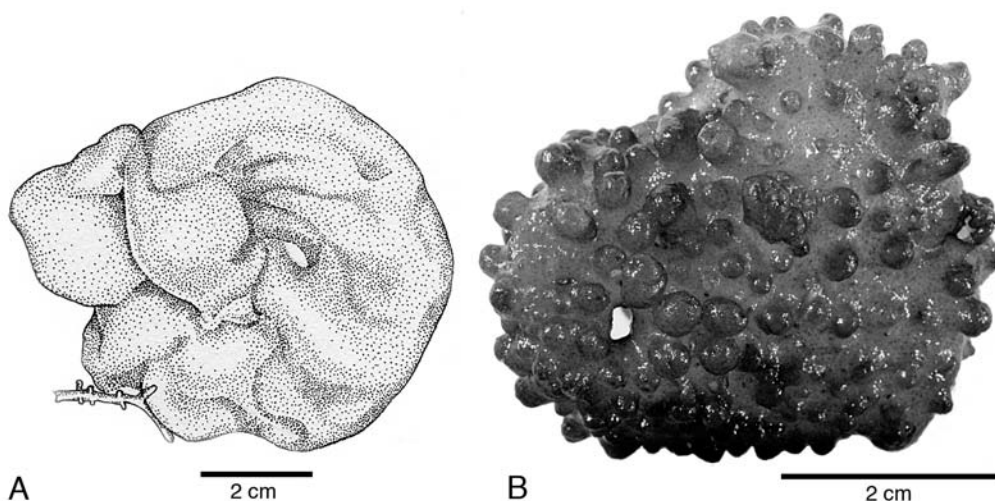
***Colpomenia sinuosa* (Mertens ex Roth)  
Derbès et Solier**

FIGURES 5A, 92A

*Ulva sinuosa* Mertens ex Roth, 1806:327, pl. 12: figs. a–c. *Colpomenia sinuosa* (Mertens ex Roth) Derbès et Solier, 1851:95; Derbès and Solier, 1856:11, pl. 22: figs. 18–20; Saunders, 1898:164, pl. 32: figs. 7, 8; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:539, 541, pl. 45: figs. 82–86; Dawson, 1944:232; Dawson, 1951:52; Dawson, 1959a:19; Dawson et al., 1960a:30, pl. 9: fig. 1, 2; Dawson,

1962b:199, fig. 77; Dawson, 1966a:10; Earle, 1972:85; Clayton, 1975: 187, tbl. 1, figs. 5–7, 12, 13; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:204, fig. 168; Wynne and Norris, 1976:2, figs. 1, 2a,b, 11a; L. Aguilar-Rosas, 1982:31; Parsons, 1982:291, figs. 2, 3, 11, 12; Schnetter and Bula Meyer, 1982:65, pl. 10: fig. N; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:141; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1985:125; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:46; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:24; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:40; Santelices, 1989:280, pl. FF: fig. 3; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1990:123; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:23; Ramírez and Rojas V., 1991:16, figs. 2, 6; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:24; Stewart, 1991:44; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:50; R. Aguilar-Rosas and M. Aguilar-Rosas, 1994:518; Mendoza-González et al., 1994:110; González-González et al., 1996:143; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; Hoffmann and Santelices, 1997:156, fig. 39; Yoshida, 1998:305, fig. 2-21 H; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:68; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:179, fig. 67A,B; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2005b:34; Hernández-Herrera et al., 2005:146; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49, 58; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:8; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:204; Pedroche et al., 2008:66.

Algae globose or vesicle-like, hollow, golden- to medium-brown, flaccid and slippery, up to 14 cm in diameter; 200–500  $\mu\text{m}$  thick; becoming compressed, irregularly convoluted and expanded; attached by rhizoids on lower surface. Medulla and subcortex of 4–6 layers of



**FIGURE 92.** Two species of *Colpomenia*. A. *Colpomenia sinuosa*: Habit, showing smooth, slightly convoluted surface (JN-4580). B. *Colpomenia tuberculata*: Habit, photo of live specimen showing protuberances (from Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Mexico).

large, irregularly shaped cells; gradually becoming smaller toward outer surface layer of small cuboidal cells.

Unilocular sporangia unknown. Plurilocular sporangia uniseriate (to partially biseriate), up to 40 µm long, in sori covered with a cuticle, clustered often around an invaginated tuft of hairs. Paraphyses usually longer than plurilocular sporangia, to 55 µm long.

**HABITAT.** On rocks and tidal platforms or epiphytic on various algae; low intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Bahía Agua Verde; Bahía de La Paz to Cabo San Lucas. Pacific coast: southern California to Baja California Sur; Sinaloa to Jalisco; Isla Clarión (Islas Revillagigedo); Hawaiian Islands; Panama; Colombia; Chile.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** “Location uncertain” (Parsons, 1982); given as near Cádiz, Spain (Silva et al., 1996a).

**REMARKS.** In the northern Gulf of California, specimens of *Colpomenia sinuosa* were found only with plurilocular sporangia (Wynne and Norris, 1976). Interestingly, the life history of *C. sinuosa* in the Azores was found to be highly variable (Toste et al., 2003b) with three different kinds of life histories: (1) asexual plurisporous from gametophytes that developed directly into new gametophytes; (2) heteromorphic (involving an alternation of a macrothallus and a filamentous prostrate thalli), and either diplohaplontic or monophasic life history; and (3) isomorphic, monophasic life histories.

### ***Colpomenia* sp. A**

*Colpomenia sinuosa*? of Wynne and Norris, 1976: 5, fig. 3 [“open expanded sheet form”].

*Colpomenia sinuosa* f. *expansa* sensu Norris 1973:6; Pedroche et al. 2008:67 [non *Colpomenia sinuosa* f. *expansa* De A. Saunders 1898:164; which is now *Colpomenia expansa* (De A. Saunders) Y.-P. Lee 2008:116].

Algae thin, broadly expanded open sheets, up to 25 cm wide, with smooth surfaces and margins.

Reproductive structures not seen.

**HABITAT.** On rocks; shallow subtidal, 4–16 m depths.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Calamajue (Bahía de Calamajue) to Bahía San Francisco; Isla San Esteban; Puerto Escondido to Isla Carmen.

**REMARKS.** Relatively large specimens of open expanded sheets of *Colpomenia* sp. A, were collected in the

Gulf (Norris, 1973:6; Wynne and Norris, 1976:5, as *C. cf. sinuosa*). These may possibly be undescribed or another taxon or form of *Colpomenia*. Although somewhat similar to the Gulf of California *C. sinuosa* f. *expansissima* Setchell et N. L. Gardner (1924a:726; Dawson, 1944, as “*C. sinuosa* f. *tuberculata*”), these Gulf specimens have smooth surfaces and lack the minute, spinelike projections of *C. sinuosa* f. *expansissima*. Further collections are needed for study to clarify the taxonomic status of these Gulf open-sheet specimens.

### ***Colpomenia tuberculata* De A. Saunders**

FIGURE 92B

*Colpomenia tuberculata* De A. Saunders, 1898:164, pl. 32: figs. 1–3; Wynne, 1972:137, fig. 2; Wynne and Norris, 1976:8, figs. 6, 7a,b, 11b; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:204, fig. 169; Littler and Littler, 1981:150, tpls. 2–4, figs. 3–7; Stewart, 1982:54; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:46; Norris, 1985:209, fig. 16.3 (top); Santelices, 1989:281, pl. FF: fig. 2; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:40; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1990:123; Ramírez and Rojas V., 1991:16, figs. 3, 7; Stewart, 1991:44; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:32; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:23; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:50; González-González et al., 1996:143; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; Hoffmann and Santelices, 1997:162, fig. 41; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 1998:45; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:68; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:180, fig. 67C,D; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:49, 58; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:204; Pedroche et al., 2008:67.

*Colpomenia sinuosa* f. *tuberculata* (De A. Saunders) Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1903:242; Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:725; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:541; Dawson, 1944:233; Dawson, 1959a:19; Dawson, 1966a:11; Norris, 1973:6; González-González et al., 1996:143.

Algae olive- to dark-brown globose or hemispherical, up to 15 cm in diameter, to irregularly shaped, compressed expanses, up to 24 cm wide; rigid and crisp, 0.6–1.5 mm thick; surface coriaceous, deeply convoluted and sometimes folded, covered with blunt tubercles (protuberances), 1.0–10 mm high and 1.0–10 mm wide. Cortex of 4–5 small cuboidal cells; hairs arising in tufts from deep invaginations; subcortex and medulla of 4–8 large colorless cells, becoming increasingly smaller outward.

Unilocular sporangia unknown. Plurilocular sporangia, uniseriate (occasionally with biseriate portions), with 5–7

locules, 16–23  $\mu\text{m}$  long; in extensive sori over entire thallus. Paraphyses slightly shorter than plurilocular sporangia.

**HABITAT.** On rocks and tidal platforms; occasionally epiphytic on other algae; mid to low intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to San José del Cabo. Pacific coast: southern California to Baja California Sur; Sinaloa; Hawaiian Islands; Ecuador; Chile.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Near San Pedro, Los Angeles County, California.

### ***Compsonema Kuckuck***

*Compsonema Kuckuck*, 1899:58.

Algae discoid, composed of a monostromatic basal layer of irregular contorted filaments and upper erect filaments that are simple and unbranched or branched laterally.

Plurilocular sporangia multiseriate, borne on erect filaments.

**REMARKS.** *Compsonema* has been placed in the Ectocarpaceae or the Myrionemataceae (now = Chordariaceae) (e.g. Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976). The generic status of *Compsonema* has been questioned. For example, Loiseaux (1970a) concluded one species of *Compsonema* was a phase in the life history of a *Scytosiphon*, and on the basis of studies of the generitype, *Compsonema gracile* Kuckuck (1899), Pedersen and Sokhi (1990) placed the genus in the Scytosiphonaceae. Further studies may reveal some species of *Compsonema* in the Gulf of California to be microthallus phases in the life history of other brown algae.

One species, *Compsonema intricatum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner (1922a), is reported in the southern Gulf (Mendoza-González et al. 1994).

Two species are currently known in the northern Gulf of California.

#### KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *COMPSONEMA* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Plurilocular sporangia long and narrow, 24–30  $\mu\text{m}$  long and 6–8  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter . . . . . *C. immixtum*  
 1b. Plurilocular sporangia longer and much wider, 60–130  $\mu\text{m}$  long and 18–28  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. . . . . *C. serpens*

### ***Compsonema immixtum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

*Compsonema immixtum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:724, pl. 17: fig. 49; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:487; Dawson, 1944:222; Dawson, 1961b:390; González-González et al., 1996:143; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:204; Pedroche et al., 2008:69.

Algae minute, epiphytic; lower portion of prostrate basal filaments, creeping among the plurilocular reproductive structures of the host alga; upper portion with numerous erect, short unbranched filaments, most bearing plurilocular structures.

Unilocular sporangia not known. Plurilocular sporangia (?), narrow, ellipsoid, 24–30  $\mu\text{m}$  long, and 6–8  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; terminal on erect, short filaments (extending above the plurilocular structures of the host alga).

**HABITAT.** Epiphytic on *Colpomenia phaeodactyla*; intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Isla Partida.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Isla Partida, Islas de la Cintura, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** A poorly known species, Setchell and Gardner (1924a) commented that *Compsonema immixtum* was close to both *Myrionema* Greville (1827) and *Compsonema* and placed it in the latter genus on the basis of its plurilocular structures. Abbott and Hollenberg (1976:160) stated that in their opinion, several of the Setchell and Gardner (1922) species of *Compsonema*, including the Gulf of California *C. immixtum*, did not merit recognition. However, it is included herein in hopes that when it is once again collected, its taxonomic status, life history, and phylogenetic relationships will be investigated and its unique habit and association with *Colpomenia phaeodactyla* will be elucidated.

### ***Compsonema serpens* Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURE 93

*Compsonema serpens* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1922a:363, pl. 39: fig. 7; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:480; Smith, 1944:110, pl. 15: fig. 3; Dawson, 1960b:391; Norris and Abbott, 1972:89; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:160, fig. 128; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1992:21; Servière-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; González-González

et al., 1996:374; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2000:133; Pedroche et al., 2008:70.

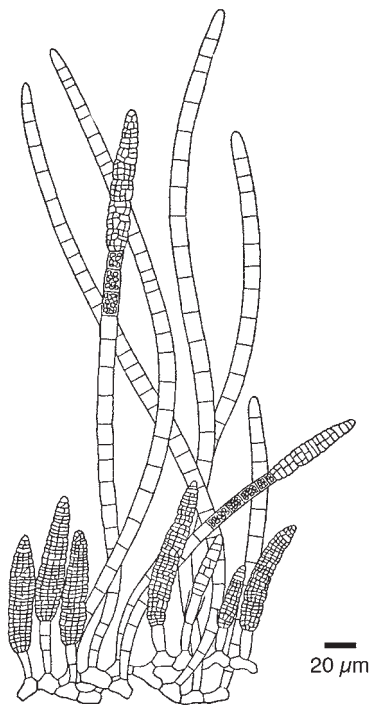
Algae minute, epiphytic, lower portion of irregularly branched prostrate filaments with a few endophytic rhizoids attached to host; above erect, unbranched (rarely subulate) filaments, up to 550  $\mu\text{m}$  tall. Erect filaments narrower in diameter at base and near the apices. Cells of basal filaments 5–9  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; wider in midportions, 10–12(–17)  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter.

Unilocular sporangia not known. Plurilocular sporangia, conical, 60–130  $\mu\text{m}$  long, 18–28  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter; terminal on erect pedicel of several cells above basal filaments.

**HABITAT.** Epiphytic and endophytic on *Padina durvillei*; intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Playa El Coloradito to Puertecitos. Pacific coast: British Columbia; northern to central California; Jalisco.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Cypress Point, Monterey County, California.



**FIGURE 93.** *Compsomena serpens*: Erect filaments, with terminal plurilocular reproductive structures, arising from prostrate filaments (drawn from type specimen, N. L. Gardner-4684, Setchell and Gardner, 1922a: pl. 39, fig.7).

**REMARKS.** *Compsomena serpens* was reported in the northern Gulf by L. Aguilar-Rosas et al. (2000); description of the species is based on Abbott and Hollenberg (1976).

### ***Hydroclathrus Bory de Saint-Vincent***

*Hydroclathrus* Bory de Saint-Vincent, 1825:419.

Algae are a three-dimensional net, often becoming torn, perhaps from grazing or physical stress, to form small- to large-holed, netlike sheets. Initially saccate, the thalli become irregularly shaped and convoluted with perforations of varying sizes that sometimes may join together to form larger holes. Outer cortical cells are small and pigmented, and large colorless medullary cells of up to several layers thick are above a usually hollow center. Hairs are borne in shallow depressions scattered over the thallus surface.

Life history is a heteromorphic alternation of the perforated thallus that produces plurilocular structures and a filamentous phase with both plurilocular and unilocular structures; the latter are known only in culture (Toste et al., 2003a).

One species is reported in the northern Gulf of California.

### ***Hydroclathrus clathratus* (C. Agardh) M. Howe**

FIGURE 94

*Encoelium clathratum* C. Agardh, 1823:412.

*Hydroclathrus clathratus* (C. Agardh) M. Howe, 1920:590; Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:727; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:543; Dawson, 1944:324; Dawson, 1959a:19; Dawson, 1961b:395; Dawson, 1962b:197–198, figs. 74, 229; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:206, fig.170; L. Aguilar-Rosas, 1982:30, 31; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:141; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:46; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:24; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:421; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:40; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1990:123; Oates and Cole, 1990a:12–16; Stewart, 1991:46; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:32; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:23; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:50; González-González et al., 1996:297; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; Kogame, 1997b:228, figs. 7–14; Yoshida, 1998:306; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Kraft and Abbott, 2003:246, figs. 2–11; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:183, fig. 68C,D;

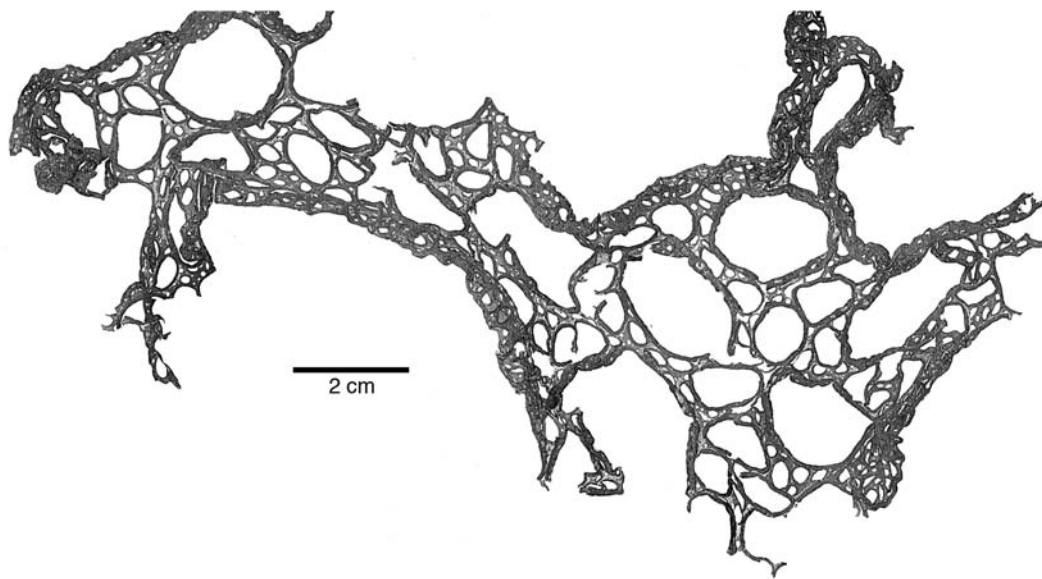


FIGURE 94. *Hydroclathrus clathratus*: Habit, of a sheetlike thallus with numerous small to large holes (US Alg. Coll.-36619).

R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2005b:34; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:204; Pedroche et al., 2008:70.

*Hydroclathrus cancellatus* Bory de Saint-Vincent, 1825:419; Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:727.

Algae netlike, initially more or less globose, then becoming irregularly shaped and convoluted with numerous irregularly shaped, variously sized holes; often torn into sheets; somewhat coarse and slippery; attached by groups of rhizoids along the lower surface. Surface perforations from less than 1 mm in diameter to holes over 3 cm in width; larger holes often with inrolled margins; surface distance between the perforations usually less than 2 mm. Colorless hairs in clusters of 3–15 within shallow pits, scattered over and extended above thallus surface. Thallus thickness from less than 200  $\mu\text{m}$  to over 900  $\mu\text{m}$ . Medulla of up to 6 layers of thin-walled, subspherical to ovoid colorless medullary cells, 60–320  $\mu\text{m}$ , around hollow center. Cortex of 1–2 layers of pigmented cells, 6–7.5  $\mu\text{m}$  by 7–17  $\mu\text{m}$ ; surface layer in transection papillate, of domed cells, 10–15(–20)  $\mu\text{m}$  tall.

Plurilocular sporangia 5–7  $\mu\text{m}$  by 10–12(–25)  $\mu\text{m}$ , in 2–3 rows of 3–4 locules; in irregularly shaped sori, usually near hair tufts. Sori scattered and grow separately, spread and coalesce, sometimes covering much of the surface.

**HABITAT.** On rocks or occasionally epiphytic or entangled on other algae; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Punta Perla, northeast end of Isla Tiburón to Bahía de Los

Ángeles; Bahía Concepción to Bahía de La Paz. Pacific coast: southern California to Laguna Ojo de Liebre (Scammon's Lagoon), Baja California Sur; Ecuador; Chile; Hawaiian Islands; China; Japan; Vietnam.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** “Uncertain” (see Silva et al., 1996a:631). Lectotype with locality of Belle-Île, Brittany, France, was selected by Howe (1920); however, neither *Hydroclathrus clathratus* or mollusk shells found with the lectotype collection are known from this locality (Hamel, 1937; Silva et al., 1996a; Kraft and Abbott, 2003). Other syntype locales of the basionym, *Encoelium clathratum* C. Agardh (1823), were Rauki, Waigeo Island, Moluccas, Indonesia; and Shark Bay, Western Australia.

**REMARKS.** Generally considered a warm-water species, *Hydroclathrus clathratus* was reported in the northern Gulf by Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid (1986) and Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González (1996b). This description of *H. clathratus* is after Kraft and Abbott (2003).

### **Rosenvingea Børgesen**

*Rosenvingea* Børgesen, 1914:22.

Algae are terete to compressed, erect but mostly lax. They are branched alternately, oppositely, subdichotomously, or irregularly. Internally, they are hollow, except near the base, where they are filled with rhizoidal filaments. Growth is intercalary and apical. A few layers of pseudoparenchymatous cells face the hollow center and



outwardly join the surface layer of small pigmented cells. Phaeophyceal hairs are distributed over the thallus.

Plurilocular gametangia are borne in sori with groups of hairs. Sori are scattered over the thallus surface.

**REMARKS.** The erect, cylindrical species of *Rosenvingea* are problematic, with species largely separated by branching pattern. Characters of vegetative anatomy and reproductive structures need to be clar-

fied for type species, and comparative morphological and DNA analyses are needed to define species limits. Further studies of Gulf of California specimens, including fertile material and DNA analyses, are needed to assess their taxonomic status in comparison to the western Atlantic taxa.

Three species are known in the northern Gulf of California.

#### KEY TO THE SPECIES OF ROSENVINGEA IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Algae clumps of low-growing mats of entangled branches; branches more or less cylindrical to compressed, 2–6 mm in diameter; attached by rhizoids from branches . . . . . *R. intricata*  
 1b. Algae erect; of narrow, terete axes and branches, less than 2 mm in diameter; attached by single holdfast . . . . . 2  
 2a. Thalli sparsely and irregularly branched; up to 1 mm in diameter; thin in transection (3–4 cell layers) . . . . *R. antillarum*  
 2b. Thalli mostly oppositely or occasionally irregularly branched; mostly 1.5 to 2.5 mm in diameter; thicker in transection (4–6 cell layers) . . . . . *R. floridana*

#### *Rosenvingea antillarum* (P. Crouan et H. Crouan) M. J. Wynne

*Stilophora antillarum* P. Crouan et H. Crouan in Schramm et Mazé, 1865:2; Schramm and Mazé, 1866:3; Mazé and Schramm, 1878:116.

*Rosenvingea antillarum* (P. Crouan et H. Crouan) M. J. Wynne, 1997:334, fig. 1; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002:235; Pedroche et al., 2008 (in part; excluding records of *R. floridana*):72.

Algae erect, composed of terete, internally hollow, axes and branches, up to 25 cm long, and 0.5–1.0 mm in diameter. Branching sparse and irregular, 2–3 orders.

Plurilocular reproductive structures uni- to biserial, of 6–7 locules; 32–36 µm long and 4–6 µm in diameter; with enlarged cells (“apparently paraphyses”).

**HABITAT.** Intertidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: El Tornillal to Punta Gorda, Sonora.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Le Moule, Grande-Terre, Guadeloupe, French West Indies.

**REMARKS.** *Rosenvingea antillarum* was reported in the upper Gulf by L. Aguilar-Rosas et al. (2000); since I have not seen their specimens, the description is based on Wynne (1997).

#### *Rosenvingea floridana* (W. R. Taylor) W. R. Taylor

FIGURE 95A,B

*Cladosiphonia? floridana* W. R. Taylor, 1928:113, pl. 15: figs 10–14.

*Rosenvingea floridana* (W. R. Taylor) W. R. Taylor, 1955:72, pl. IV; Taylor, 1960:262, pl. 29: figs.7, 8; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976:202, fig. 165; Mateo-Cid and Mendoza-González, 1997:59, pl. 8: figs. 34, 35, pl. 9: fig. 38.

*Rosenvingea antillarum* sensu Pedroche et al., 2008 (in part; only records of *R. floridana*):72 [non *Rosenvingea antillarum* (P. Crouan et H. Crouan) M. J. Wynne, 1997:334].

*Rosenvingea* aff. *sanctae-crucis* sensu Norris and Bucher, 1976:7, fig. 5a,b; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:204; Pedroche et al., 2008:72 [non *Rosenvingea sanctae-crucis* Børgesen, 1914:22, figs. 14–17].

Algae composed of terete, internally hollow axes and branches, up to 55 cm long and (0.5–)1.5–2.5 mm in diameter. Branching often predominately opposite, sometimes irregular, 2–3(–4) orders; branches narrowed at their base. Transection with internal hollow cavity; outer wall composed of 4–5(–6) cell layers, 90–120 µm thick.

Reproductive structures not observed in Gulf material.

**HABITAT.** On rocks or occasionally entangled with other algae; low intertidal to shallow subtidal, 3–9 m depths.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: El Tornillal to Punta Gorda; Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda; Punta la Gringa, Bahía de Los Ángeles. Pacific coast: Santa Catalina Island (California Channel Islands); Oaxaca.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** East Cay, Dry Tortugas Islands (Dry Tortugas National Park), Florida.

**REMARKS.** The northern Gulf specimens are tentatively referred to *Rosenvingea floridana*. Wynne (1997) considered *R. floridana* to be a synonym of

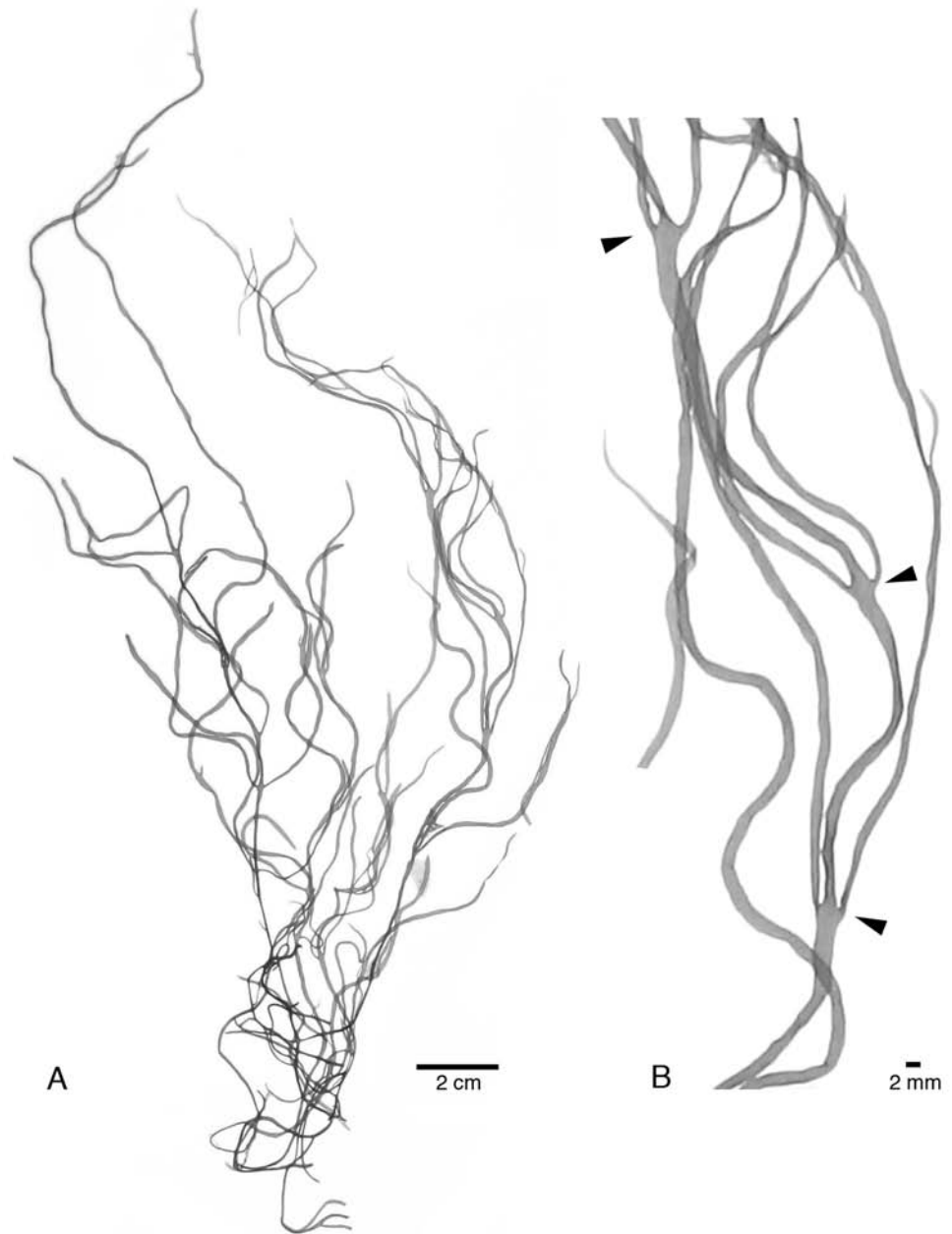


FIGURE 95. *Rosevingea floridana* (JN-5471): A. Habit. B. Portion of tubular thallus showing opposite branching (arrow heads).

*R. antillarum*. Although both are terete species, *R. antillarum* has narrower axes (up to 1.0 mm in diameter), is thinner (up to 60  $\mu\text{m}$  thick), has 3–4 cell layers, and is sparsely and irregularly branched (Wynne, 1997:334, fig. 1). Our Gulf specimens (Norris and Bucher, 1976) have wider axes (1.5–2.5 mm in diameter), are thicker (90–120  $\mu\text{m}$ ), have 4–6 cell layers, and are mostly oppositely branched (a character that can be seen in Taylor, 1955:pl. IV) to occasionally irregularly branched; and thus, Gulf specimens are closer to the characteristics of *R. floridana* sensu stricto (see Taylor, 1955:72). A terete specimen of

Dawson (1944, as “*R. intricata*”) from Isla Estanque may also belong here.

***Rosevingea intricata* (J. Agardh) Børgesen**

FIGURE 96

*Asperococcus intricatus* J. Agardh, 1847:7.  
*Rosevingea intricata* (J. Agardh) Børgesen, 1914:26; Taylor, 1928:111, pl. 15: figs. 15–17; Dawson, 1944:233 [in part]; Taylor, 1945:83 [as “*R. intricata prox.*”]; Daw-

son, 1959a:19; Taylor, 1960:262, pl. 36, fig. 2; Dawson, 1961b:395; Wynne and Norris, 1976:12; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:46; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:32; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:50; González-González et al., 1996:298, 380; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:68; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Abbott and Huisman, 2004:185, fig. 69A–C; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 2007:8; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:204; Pedroche et al. 2008:72.

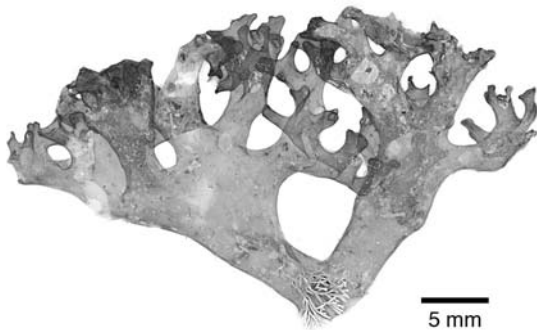
Algae forming low-growing clumps of more or less cylindrical to compressed, crisp, hollow branches, up to 30 cm long, and subdichotomously to irregularly branched; attached by groups of rhizoids at several places along the lower branches or sometimes unattached and free-floating. Branches (2–)4–6 mm in diameter, becoming narrower distally to ultimate branches; apices mostly rounded. Transection of 3–4 cell layers, less than 100 µm thick. Cells in surface view in more or less longitudinal series or irregularly arranged. Phaeophyceyan hairs in groups scattered over thallus surface.

Plurilocular structures, biseriate, in small, discrete sori scattered over thallus surface.

**HABITAT.** On rocks or shells, in tide pools, or free-floating; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Punta Bufeo to Isla Ángel de la Guarda; Bahía Concepción to Punta Arena. Pacific coast: Isla Clarión and Isla Socorro (Islas Revillagigedo); Guerrero to Oaxaca; China; Japan; Hawaiian Islands; Ecuador.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Veracruz, Veracruz (estado), Gulf of Mexico, Mexico.



**FIGURE 96.** *Rosenvingea intricata*: Upper portion of clump showing compressed tubular branches that narrow in diameter toward tips (US Alg. Coll.-163441).

**REMARKS.** In the Gulf, *Rosenvingea intricata* seems to prefer calmer protected habitats, bays, and lagoons, often living in large depressions or holes in sand bottoms. Large, broad specimens, similar to those illustrated by Dawson (1944:pl. 52, fig. 1, as “*R. intricata*”) from Isla Willard, Bahía Tepoca and Isla Espiritu Santo, were recognized to be *Colpomenia ramosa* W. R. Taylor by Wynne and Norris (1976).

## FUCALES

Fucales Bory de Saint-Vincent, 1827c:62.

Fucales Kylin, 1917:309.

Algae of this order are all macroscopic, often very large and rather sturdy in structure, flattened to cylindrical, and branched. Branching in flattened forms is dichotomous (e.g., *Fucus*, common in temperate regions). Others, such as *Sargassum* (abundantly represented in the Gulf and widespread in tropical to temperate areas worldwide), are variously branched but mostly radial about a central cylindrical axis. Growth in most is initiated by a single apical cell, usually sunken within an apical pit, and diffuse in a few members. Divisions from the apical cell result in a parenchymatous structure in many species; only a few have a filamentous structure. Cells have several discoid plastids and no pyrenoids.

Asexual reproduction is generally absent in the Fucales. The majority have only a parenchymatous sporophyte. Sexual reproduction is mostly oogamous, but at least one species is anisogamous. Members are monoecious or dioecious, with reproductive structures developed within conceptacles. In some monoecious species the reproductive structures of both sexes are produced within the same conceptacle. Vegetative division of the initial cell produces a layer of cells which line the conceptacle. The upper lining produces hairs which project through the opening of the cavity (ostiole), and the basal layer develops paraphyses. The oogonia are borne on the conceptacle wall, usually on a stalk cell, and the antheridia are on branched filaments. Antheridia normally produce 64–128 biflagellated, pyriform-shaped antherizoids. The number of eggs produced by the oogonia is variable. The primary nucleus in the oogonium undergoes meiotic divisions followed by a single mitotic division of each of the four nuclei produced. This results in eight haploid eggs (e.g., as in *Fucus*), but in others, four, six, or seven of them degenerate.

**REMARKS.** On the basis of DNA sequence data, Rousseau and de Revièrs (1999b) proposed a phylogeny of the Fucales that included additional families, merged

the Cystoseiraceae with the Sargassaceae, and expanded the ordinal characters.

One family is represented in the northern Gulf of California.

### SARGASSACEAE

Sargassaceae Kützing, 1843:349, 359.

Cystoseiraceae Kützing, 1843:349, 353, as "Cystosireae."

Members of this family are among the most highly morphologically differentiated algae. They have a basal attachment that is distinct from the erect axis or stemlike parts. The stipe and primary axes are cylindrical, are usually branched, and bear leaflike blades with a basal pedicel. Blades are with or without a midrib or cryptostomata (sterile pits) and have smooth, dentate, or serrate margins. Vesicles (flotation structures) are usually present and are borne laterally, terminally, or within short branchlets.

Reproductive structures, oogonia and antheridia, are contained within monoecious or dioecious conceptacles in regular branches or in specialized receptacle branchlets. Each oogonium develops a single egg, and the antheridia produce numerous antherozoids.

There is one genus, *Sargassum*, well represented in northern Gulf and widely distributed throughout the Gulf of California.

### *Sargassum* C. Agardh

*Sargassum* C. Agardh, 1820:1.

Algae are light to dark brown and morphologically differentiated into holdfasts, stipes, terete to compressed axes and branches, leaflike blades, buoyant vesicles, and reproductive branchlets (receptacles). Primary axes have few to numerous, radially or distichously arranged lateral branches of determinate or indeterminate growth and are usually above a stipe that is attached below to the substratum by a holdfast that is discoid, crustose, conical, or lobed or with protuberances or rhizoidal to rhizomatous. Ultimate branchlets are leaflike blades that may be simple or divided, subcylindrical, filiform, or compressed to flattened and broad, with entire, dentate, or serrate margins and with or without a midrib or cryptostomata (sterile pits). Vesicles (usually present) are subspherical to ovoid above a pedicel and with or without terminal extensions. Growth is from a three-sided cell in an apical depression. Internally, the stipe and branch axes are composed of a

central medulla of elongate cells, surrounded by a core of isodiametric cells outward to the meristoderm (surface tissue that acts as meristem with cells often dividing).

Reproductive receptacles (specialized branchlets) develop in axils of lateral branches, ultimate branchlets, and leaflike blades and are single or grouped in clusters. Receptacles are simple or branched and can be terete, angular, or compressed, with a smooth, verrucose, or spinous surface. Conceptacles within the receptacles are ostiolate and contain either oogonia or antheridia or both.

**REMARKS.** Species of *Sargassum* are worldwide in tropical to temperate seas and are often quite large, 10–100 cm in length (some may be up to 3 m or more tall). In the Gulf of California, species of *Sargassum* comprise the bulk of the biomass of fleshy macroalgae, providing habitat for diverse communities of epiphytic algae and a canopy for understory algae, invertebrates (Brusca, 1980), and fishes (Thomson and Lehner, 1976; Thomson et al., 2000). Gulf species of *Sargassum*, such as *S. sinicola*, could be important sources for alginates, and it has been suggested they could be harvested in spring, the season of maximum biomass and high yield (Rodríguez-Montesinos et al., 2008).

In addition to those of the northern Gulf, there are six other species reported in the southern Gulf (Dawson 1959a; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González 1985; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltones 1990, 1991; Martínez-Lozano et al. 1991, Riosmena-Rodríguez et al. 2005): *Sargassum cylindrocarpum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner (1924a), *S. horridum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner (1924a); *S. howelli* Setchell (1937b); *S. liebmanni* J. Agardh (1847); *S. pacificum* Bory de Saint-Vincent (1828), and *S. palmeri* Grunow (1915).

A Japanese species, *S. muticum* (Yendo) Fensholt (1955), introduced in British Columbia in the 1940s (Scagel, 1956, 1957) now ranges on the Pacific coast from southeast Alaska to Baja California Sur (Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976; Silva, 1979; Norton, 1981; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1982; Deysher and Norton, 1982; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1984a, 1984b; R. Aguilar-Rosas and L. Aguilar-Rosas, 1985, 1993; Scagel et al., 1989; R. Aguilar-Rosas and Machado-Galindo, 1990; Espinoza, 1990b; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991; Stewart, 1991; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2005b). Riosmena-Rodríguez et al. (1992) have suggested the invasive *S. muticum* in Pacific Baja California could continue its expansion southward and may colonize into the Gulf of California.

Eight species, two subspecies, and one form of *Sargassum* are found in the northern Gulf of California.

KEY TO THE SPECIES OF *SARGASSUM* IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF CALIFORNIA

- 1a. Leaf-like blades without a midrib; holdfast small, discoid, conical, or irregularly discoid to spreading crust . . . . . 2  
 1b. Leaf-like blades either with inconspicuous or distinct midribs; holdfast not crustose. . . . . 5  
 2a. Leaf-like blades subcylindrical to slightly compressed, long and very narrow, 10–22 mm long by 1.0–1.5 mm wide; vesicles with long apiculate extensions; holdfast disc-shaped to spreading crust . . . . . *S. johnstonii*  
 2b. Leaf-like blades wider and mostly asymmetrical . . . . . 3  
 3a. Upper leaf-like blades, to 8 mm long by 4–7 mm wide; some almost as wide as long; discoid holdfast . . . . . *S. macdougalii*  
 3b. Upper leaf-like blades larger, mostly longer than 12 mm in length . . . . . 4  
 4a. Axes branched; leaf-like blades 12–16 mm long; vesicles subspherical to ellipsoidal, smooth, with short apiculate extensions; holdfast presumably discoid . . . . . *S. acinacifolium*  
 4b. Axes unbranched; upper leaf-like blades mostly 20–25 mm long; vesicles ellipsoidal with long, usually dentate, foliaceous extensions; holdfast knotty, of short protuberances. . . . . *S. sonorensis*  
 5a. Leaf-like blades variable in shape and size, with an inconspicuous midrib; 5.0–12.5 mm long; smallest blades symmetrical and dentate; midsized blades asymmetrical, as wide as long, and partly dentate; and largest blades symmetrical, elongated, and dentate; holdfast discoid . . . . . *S. lapazeanum*  
 5b. Leaf-like blades symmetrical, longer than wide, with a conspicuous midrib; holdfast of long branching rhizomes or woody and conical or knotty with short protuberances . . . . . 6  
 6a. Several thalli arising from long, branched, narrow in diameter rhizomes that are attached below at various points by hap-  
 tera; leaf-like blades usually without cryptostomata (or rarely with only a few cryptostomata) . . . . . 7  
 6b. Thallus arising from a single woody, discoid to conical holdfast or a coarse, knotty holdfast; leaf-like blades with conspicu-  
 ous to inconspicuous cryptostomata . . . . . 8  
 7a. Leaf-like blades mostly smaller, 15–25 mm by 2–5 mm; with a midrib (often less distinct or not evident toward apices) and  
 slightly and irregularly dentate or uneven margins; without or with inconspicuous cryptostomata . . . . . *S. herporhizum*  
 7b. Leaf-like blades mostly larger, 30–60(–110) mm by 4–10 mm; with a distinct midrib and serrate margins of regularly, evenly  
 spaced, pronounced dentation; mostly without cryptostomata (or rarely a few cryptostomata on only a few blades) . . . .  
 . . . . . *S. brandegeei*  
 8a. Thalli usually lax; axes smooth; holdfast coarse, knotty, with short, thick protuberances . . . . . *S. sinicola* subsp. *sinicola*  
 8b. Thalli usually not as lax; axes muricate; holdfast conical, woody . . . . . *S. sinicola* subsp. *camouii*

***Sargassum* subgen. *Sargassum***

REMARKS. Dawson (1944, as “*S.* subgen. *Eusargassum*”) considered all the Gulf of California species of *Sargassum* to be in *S.* subgen. *Sargassum*. However, Phillips (1995:118, tbl. 1) noted their subgeneric placement to be “unknown.” Thus, as has been previously noted, there is still much work to be done.

The four morphological groups of Dawson (1944) for the Gulf of California species of *Sargassum* are herein described and designated by the name chosen by him for the principal or most representative species of each group. Recognizing that many of the Gulf species of *Sargassum* are problematic, poorly known, or inadequately defined, it is helpful in attempting to identify specimens to first associate them with the suite of characters of these morphological groups.

***Sargassum* sect. *johnstonii* E. Y. Dawson ex J. N. Norris, sect. nov.**

“The *Johnstonii* Group” of Dawson, 1944:239, pls. 32, 33.

LATIN DESCRIPTION. Sectio cum sequentibus characteribus: laminae folio similes, maxime angustae, sub-cylindratae usque ad compressae, sine costa, et cryptostomata frequenter praesentia; vesiculae ellipticae cum longis apiculatis extensionibus.

The section is characterized by leaf-like blades that are very narrow, subcylindrical to compressed, without a midrib, and with cryptostomata usually present; vesicles are elliptical and with long apiculate extensions.

TYPE SPECIES. *Sargassum johnstonii* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:737, pl. 20: fig. 72, pl. 21: fig. 80.

There is one species, and one form in the northern Gulf of California.

***Sargassum johnstonii* Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURES 6, 97A,B

*Sargassum johnstonii* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:737, pl. 20: fig. 72, pl. 21: fig. 80; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:719; Dawson, 1944:240, pl. 23: figs. 1–15, pl. 33: figs. 1, 2, 17–22; Dawson, 1961b:400; Dawson, 1966a:12; Norris, 1973:7, pl. 13; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:337; Littler and Littler, 1981:151, tbl. 3, figs. 4, 5, 7; McCourt, 1984a:142; McCourt, 1984b:141; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:26; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:421; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1990:19; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:26; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; Phillips, 1995:118; González-González et al., 1996:161; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002:235; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:50, 58; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:205; Pedroche et al., 2008:95.

*Sargassum guardiense* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:723, pl. 19: fig. 64; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:713; González-González et al., 1996:160.

Algae with several erect axes, up to 1(–2) m long, arising from a perennial, parenchymatous, disc-shaped to spreading crustose holdfast. Axes and branches terete and smooth. Leaf-like blades narrow, lanceolate to linear, slightly compressed to flattened, up to 10 mm long and 0.5–1.5 mm wide; margins smooth to sparsely dentate; without a midrib and with few to many cryptostomata. Vesicles on short pedicels, subspherical to elliptical, up to 4 mm long and 1 mm wide; apiculate with foliaceous crests or extensions, up to 5 mm long.

Receptacle branchlets narrow in diameter, branching up to 4 orders, dentate in varying degrees. Antheridial receptacles smaller in diameter than oogonial receptacles.

**HABITAT.** On rocks; high to low intertidal; occasionally shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: El Tornilal to Bahía de La Paz. Pacific coast: Baja California Sur.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Isla Jorge (George's Island), off Sonora, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** The distinctive crustlike, spreading holdfast of *Sargassum johnstonii* and its narrow (up to 1.5 mm wide), lanceolate to linear leaflike blades make

it one of the Gulf species easiest to recognize in the field. Although generally considered a Gulf-endemic species, *S. johnstonii* has also been reported from India (Thivy and Chauhan, 1964; Silva et al., 1996).

***Sargassum johnstonii* f. *gracile*  
Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURE 98

*Sargassum johnstonii* f. *gracile* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:738, pl. 21: fig. 76; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:720; Dawson, 1944:241, pl. 33: figs. 3–16; Dawson, 1961b:400; Norris, 1973:7; González-González et al., 1996:161; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:50; Pedroche et al. 2008:96.

*Sargassum johnstonii* f. *laxius* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:737, pl. 21: figs. 75, 81; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:719; Norris, 1973:7; González-González et al., 1996:161.

Although very similar to *Sargassum johnstonii* f. *johnstonii*, this form, *S. johnstonii* f. *gracile*, differs in being more slender, lax, and longer, with fewer branches; having leaf-like blades less closely spaced and longer, up to 22.5 mm long, usually filiform and not as flattened, with abundant conspicuous cryptostomata; and having vesicles with long, terete apicula.

**HABITAT.** Often floating, in drift, or cast ashore; probably low intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Guaymas.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Cast ashore, Guaymas, Sonora, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** Setchell and Gardner (1924a) noted the type specimen lacked basal parts.

***Sargassum* sect. *lapazeanum*  
E. Y. Dawson ex J. N. Norris, sect. nov.**

“The *Lapazeanum* Group” of Dawson, 1944:241, pls. 34–37.

**LATIN DESCRIPTION.** Sectio cum sequentibus caracteribus: laminae folio similes planae, expansae et assymetricae, cum costa absentis vel aliquando presentis sed inconspicuae, afixae cum hapterone rhizomatozo.

The section is characterized by leaf-like blades that are flattened, expanded, and asymmetrical, without a midrib

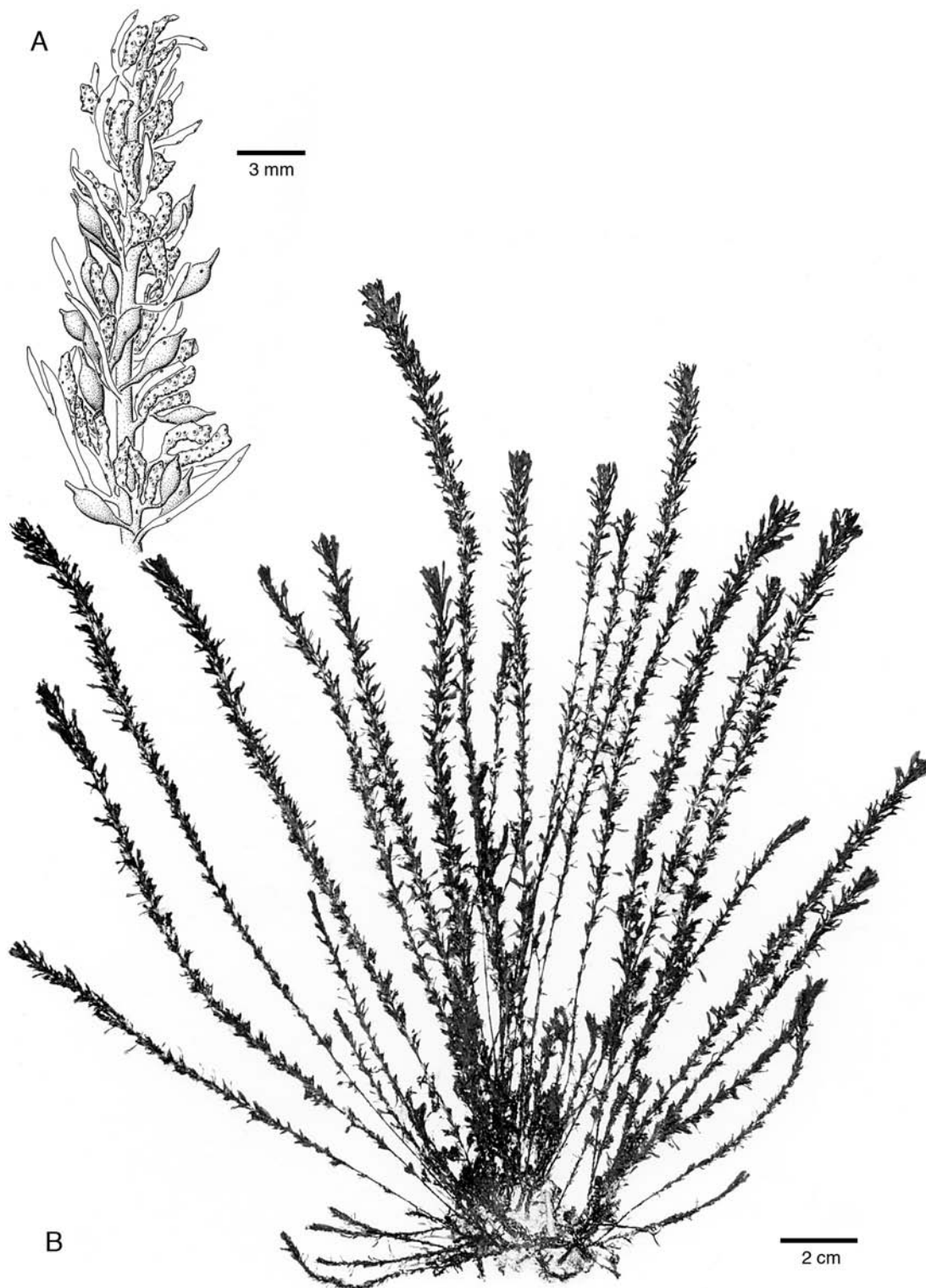


FIGURE 97. *Sargassum johnstonii*: A. Upper portion of a branch showing the narrow, elongate leaf-like blades, elliptical vesicles with apiculate extensions, and receptacle branchlets (EYD-27204). B. Habit, multiple axes arising from a crustose holdfast (JN-4559).

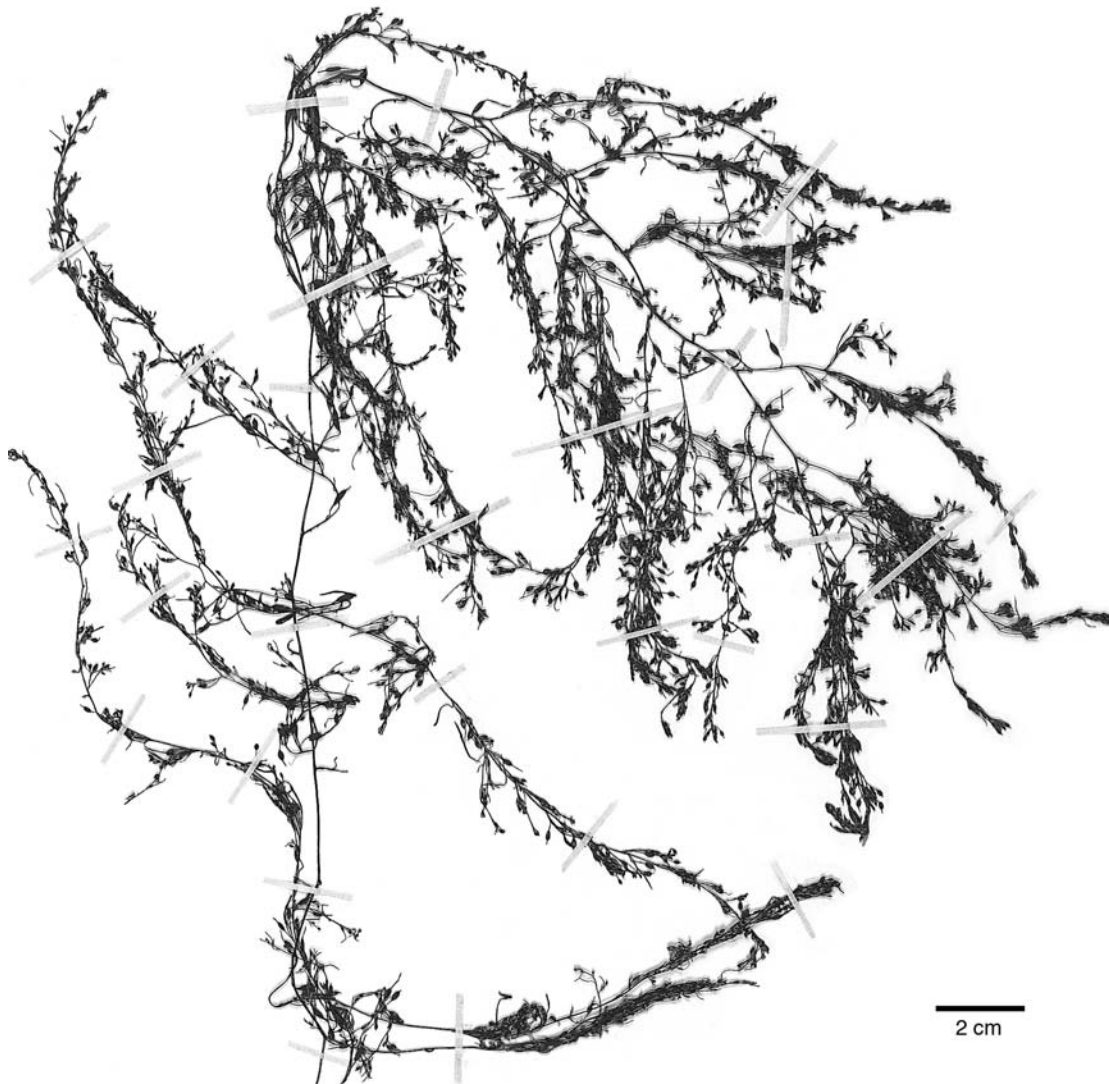


FIGURE 98. *Sargassum johnstonii* f. *gracile*: Habit, isotype specimen (D. R. Marchant-28a; US Alg. Coll.-56958).

or occasionally, if present, inconspicuous, and attached by rhizomatous holdfast.

**TYPE SPECIES.** *Sargassum lapazeanum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:733, pl. 20: fig. 74.

There are four species found in the northern Gulf of California.

***Sargassum lapazeanum*  
Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURE 99A,B

*Sargassum lapazeanum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:734, pl. 20: fig.74; Setchell and Gardner,

1925:714; Dawson, 1944:243, pl. 34: figs. 1–34; Dawson, 1961b:400; Norris, 1973:7; Huerta Muzquiz, 1978:337; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:46; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:421; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1990:18; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:26; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:23; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:50; Phillips, 1995:118; González-González et al., 1996:161; Núñez-López and Casas-Valdez, 1997:19; Paul-Chávez and Riosmena-Rodríguez, 2000:137; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Rivera and Scrosati, 2006:178; Rivera and Scrosati, 2008:45–49; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:205; Pedroche et al., 2008:96.



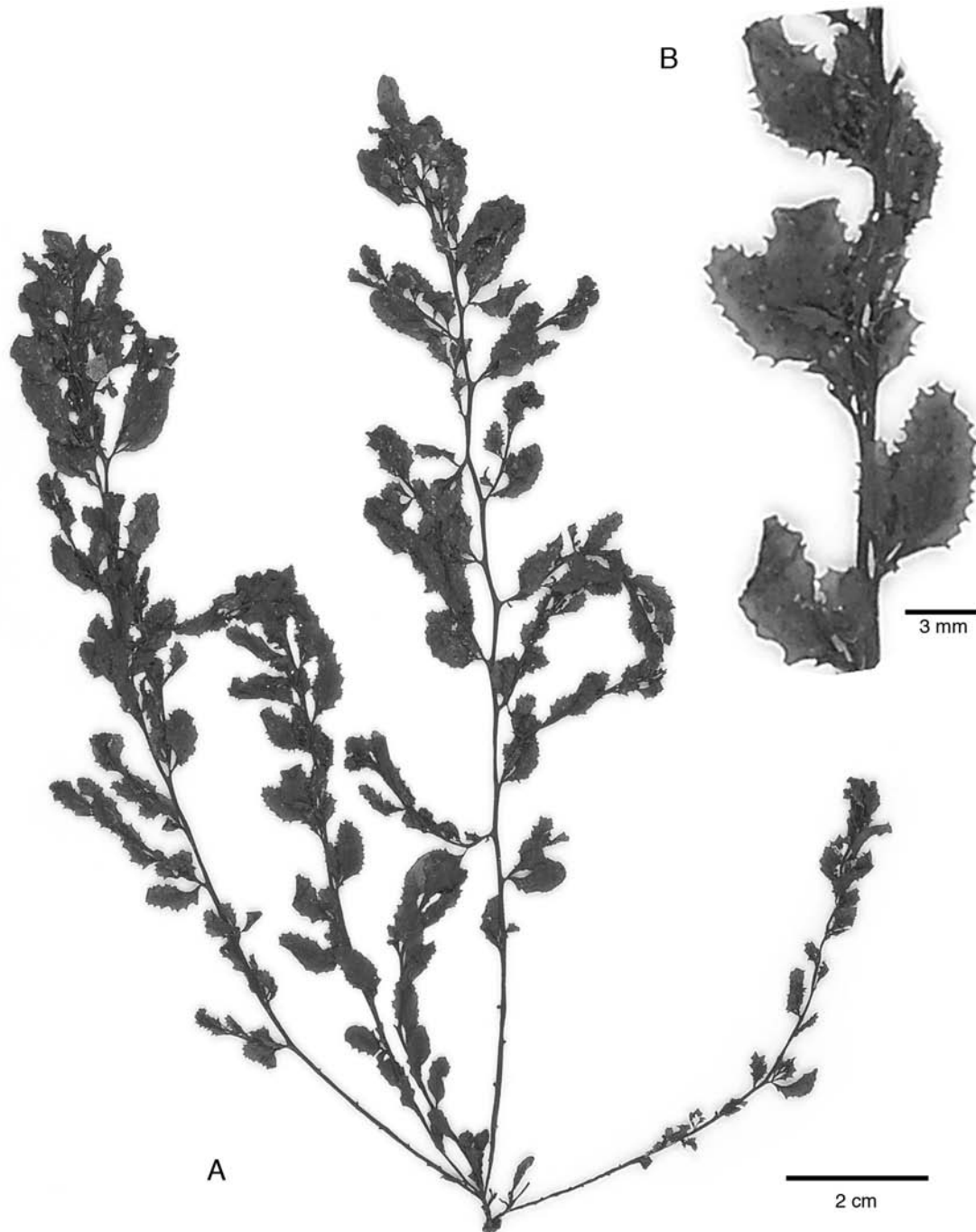


FIGURE 99. *Sargassum lapazeanum*: A. Habit. B. Close-up showing smooth axes and small leaflike blades with dentate margins and prominent cryptostomata. A, B. Isotype specimen (D. R. Marchant-21; US Alg. Coll.-56961).

*Sargassum bryantii* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:733, pl. 21: fig. 83.

*Sargassum insulare* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:735, pl. 20: figs. 67, 68, pl. 21: fig. 78; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:717.

Erect axes, up to 1 m or more long, above a terete stipe, up to 2 cm long; with 5–7 terete, smooth primary branches from which several long, slender secondary branches arise; attached by a parenchymatous disc, formed by fusing of short haptera. Leaf-like blades, variable in shape, 5–20

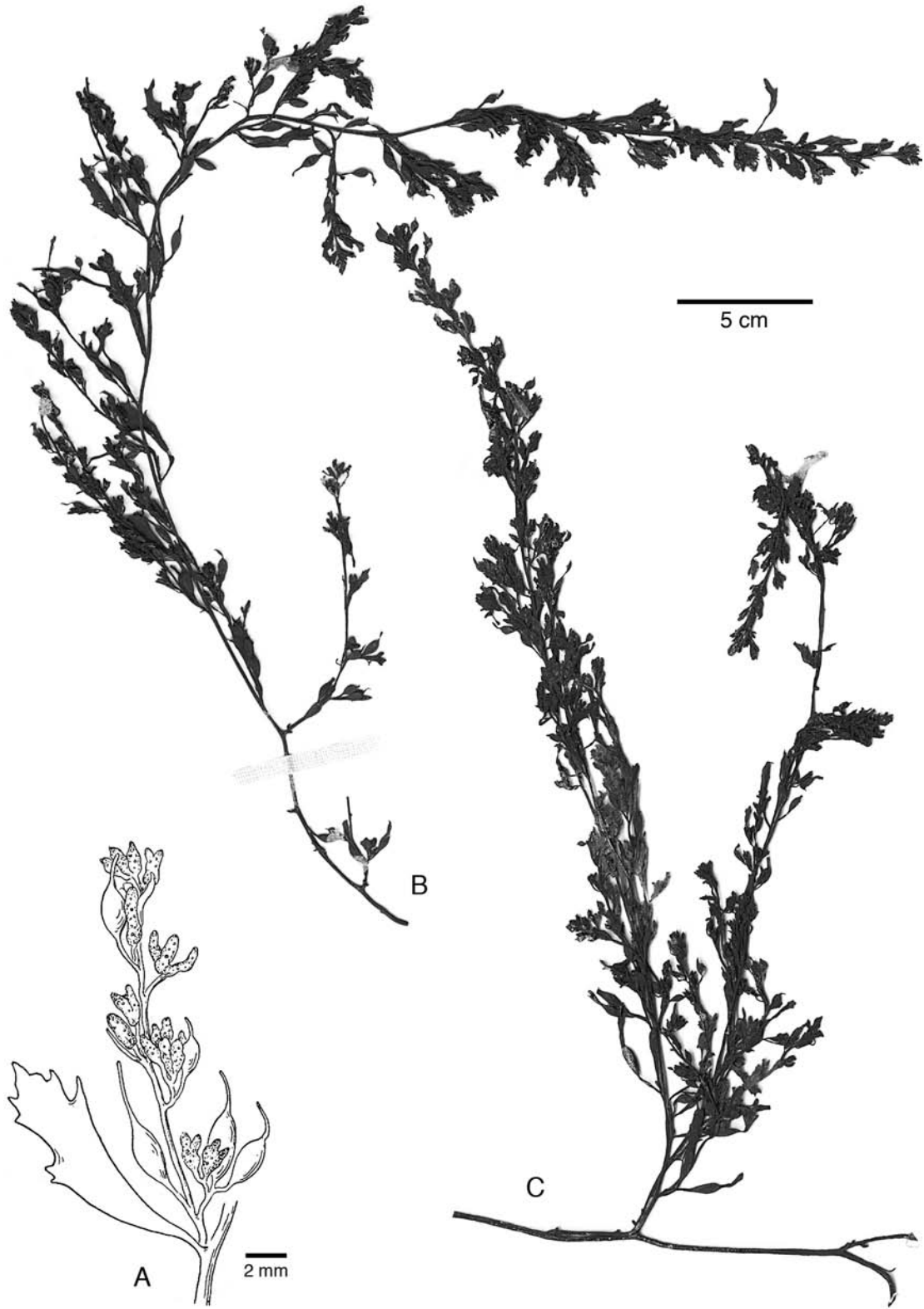


FIGURE 100. *Sargassum acinacifolium*: A. Upper portion of a branch showing a leaf-like blade with coarsely dentate portion, several vesicles with apiculate extensions, and receptacle branchlets (drawn from type, Setchell and Gardner, 1924a: pl. 21, fig. 82). B, C. Isotype specimen (*T. S. Brandegee*-2; UC 221158).

mm long, with a short pedicel, without or sometimes with an inconspicuous midrib, and few to abundant conspicuous cryptostomata. Smallest blades more or less symmetrical with dentate margins; midsized blades asymmetrical, often as wide as long in midportions, with crenate to dentate lower margins and often smooth upper margins; upper blades symmetrical, larger, often widest toward apices, and with dentate margins. Vesicles among receptacles, spherical to subspherical, ellipsoidal, up to 2 mm long, usually with a short, small apical blade-like extension.

Receptacles intermixed with blades and vesicles; on short pedicel at base of a blade; spinulose, branched 2–3 times, up to 7 mm long.

**HABITAT.** On rocks; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Bahía San Francisquito to Cabo San Lucas.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** La Paz, Baja California Sur, Gulf of California.

***Sargassum acinacifolium*  
Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURE 100A–C

*Sargassum acinacifolium* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:732, pl. 21: fig. 82; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:713; Dawson, 1944:244, pl. 37: figs. 1–26; Dawson, 1961b:399; Dawson, 1966a:12; De Lara Isassi, 1992:22; González-González et al., 1996:159; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:50; Pedroche et al., 2008:92.

Algae erect with terete, smooth axes and branches; leaf-like blades asymmetrical, mostly 12–16 mm long, without a midrib and originally described without cryptostomata (see Remarks below); upper side (adaxial) of blades with concave, smooth margins and lower side and apical margins coarsely dentate; holdfast unknown (“probably a parenchymatous disc;” see Dawson, 1944:244). Vesicles on a short pedicel among or at base of receptacles; subspherical to ellipsoidal, 1.5–2.5 mm in diameter, smooth, with short, simple apicula extending to about half of vesicle’s length.

Oogonial receptacles nearly cylindrical and branched 2–3 times, smooth or slightly dentate toward apices (Dawson, 1944:fig. 18). Antheridial receptacles branched 2–3 times and dentate (Dawson, 1944:figs. 17, 24).

**HABITAT.** On rocks and tidal platforms; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Guaymas.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** “Guaymas (?),” Sonora, Gulf of California (Setchell and Gardner, 1924a).

**REMARKS.** *Sargassum acinacifolium* is apparently a northern Gulf endemic. The basal parts of the type specimen are unknown (Setchell and Gardner, 1924a), although Dawson (1944) has suggested they are probably a parenchymatous disc. Although the leaf-like blades were described as being without cryptostomata (Setchell and Gardner, 1924a), illustrations of *S. acinacifolium* by Dawson (1944:pl. 37: figs. 2–3, 19–26; the latter figures were drawn from the type specimen) show some to have cryptostomata, thus sharing that character with *S. lapazeanum* and *S. sonorensis*. Until *S. acinacifolium* can be adequately described and molecularly and phylogenetically analyzed, it remains a poorly known species.

***Sargassum macdougalii* E. Y. Dawson**

FIGURE 101A,B

*Sargassum macdougalii* E. Y. Dawson, 1944:245, pl. 35: figs. 1–8, pl. 36: figs. 1–7, pl. 37: figs. 27–30; Dawson, 1959a:19; Dawson, 1961b:400; Dawson, 1966b:59; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:46; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; Phillips, 1995:118; González-González et al., 1996:161; Pacheco-Ruiz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; Pacheco-Ruiz et al., 2008:205; Pedroche et al., 2008:97.

Several erect terete, smooth axes, up to 50 cm long, arising from a slender stipe, to 1 cm long, attached below by a discoid holdfast. Leaf-like blades asymmetrical, without a midrib and lacking cryptostomata; mostly up to 8 mm long by (2.5–)4–6(–7) mm wide (sometimes almost as wide as long); upper blades usually larger, longer than wide, up to 15(–20) mm long. Blade margins sharply denticulate (usually more prominent at apices); lower portion of upper side of blade concave and smooth. Vesicles ellipsoidal, with foliar apical extensions (usually about as long as length of vesicle).

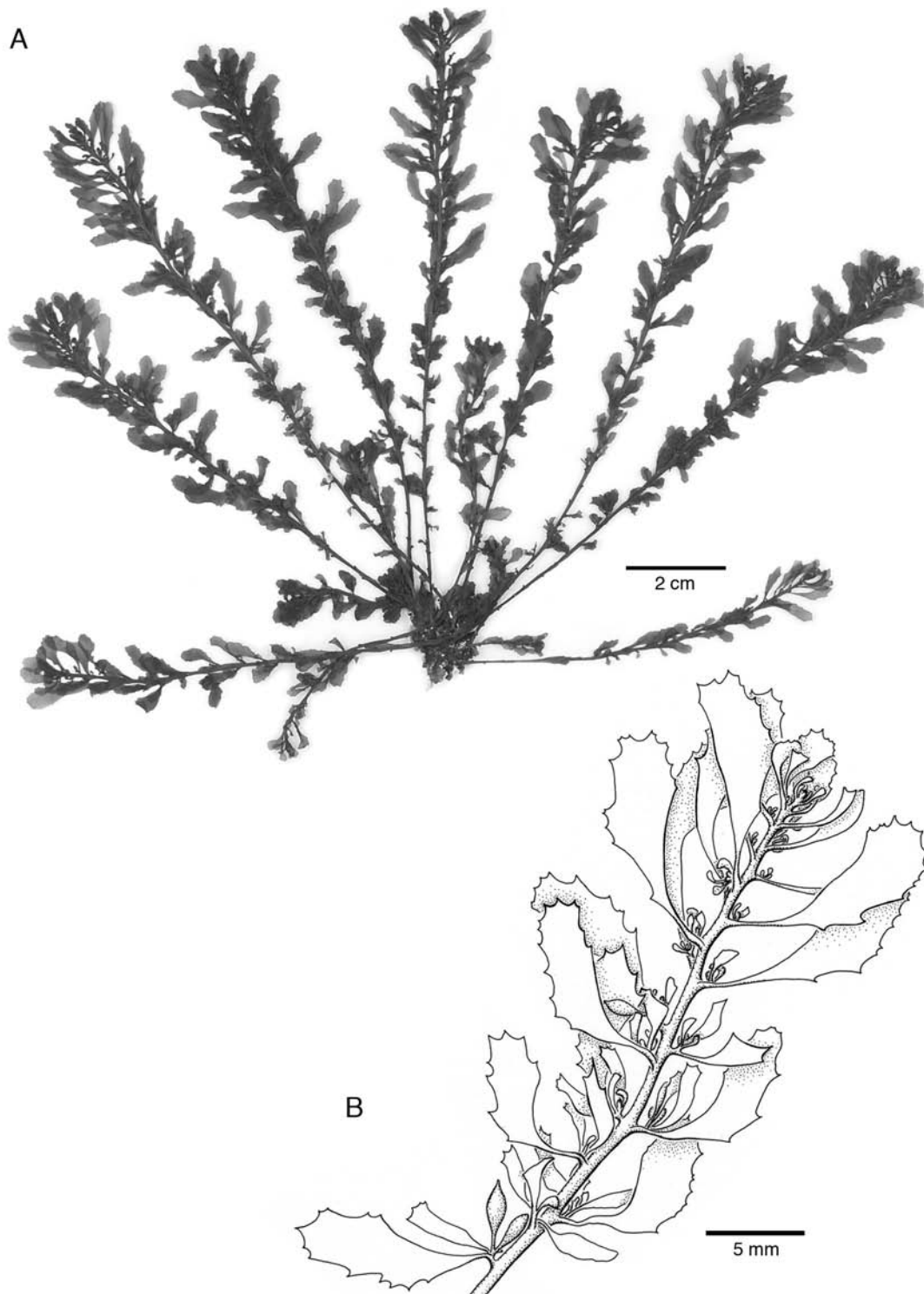
Receptacles unknown.

**HABITAT.** On rocks; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Libertad to Guaymas; Puerto Escondido to Bahía de La Paz.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Puerto Libertad, Sonora, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** *Sargassum macdougalii* is said to differ from *S. lapazeanum* primarily by its longer vesicles with elongated foliaceous extensions and larger upper leaflike blades, up to 15(–20) mm long (Dawson, 1944).



---

FIGURE 101. *Sargassum macdougalii*: A. Habit (JN-5975). B. Upper portion of an axis showing characters of asymmetrical leaflike blades and some vesicles (JN-5944).

---



FIGURE 102. *Sargassum sonorensis*: Habit of young thallus showing asymmetrical leaflike blades and holdfast of short protuberances (arrow) (JN-5205).

Both *S. macdougallii* and *S. lapazeanum* are attached by parenchymatous discoid holdfasts. The nature of the holdfast helps separate them in the field from *S. sonorensis*, which has a knotty holdfast with short protuberances.

### ***Sargassum sonorensis* E. Y. Dawson**

FIGURE 102

*Sargassum sonorensis* E. Y. Dawson, 1960a:36; Dawson, 1961b:400; Phillips, 1995:118; González-González et

al., 1996:163; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:50; Pedroche et al., 2008:102.

*Sargassum asymmetricum* E. Y. Dawson, nom. illeg., 1944:244, pl. 36: figs. 8–18; Dawson, 1966a:12; González-González et al., 1996:159 [non *Sargassum asymmetricum* Yamada, 1942:563, figs. 30, 31; Yamada, 1944:3 (which is now a synonym of *Sargassum alternato-pinnatum* Yamada, 1942; see Yoshida, 1988; Noro and Nanba, 1990; Ajisaka et al., 1994)].

Algae erect of terete, smooth primary axes, unbranched, up to 60 cm long, arising above a slender stipe, up to 1 cm long, attached below by a small, knotty holdfast of short protuberances, up to 1.5 cm wide. Leaf-like blades, mostly asymmetrical, resulting from a usually smooth, concave upper side; without a midrib; with small, inconspicuous cryptostomata; blade margins dentate. Upper blades 20–25 mm long, sometimes more or less lobed; lowermost blades usually smaller, 3–6 mm long, and variable in shape: from lanceolate with blunt apices to more or less triangular. Vesicles ellipsoid, usually with dentate foliaceous extensions, 1–3 times longer than vesicle.

Oogonial receptacles unknown. Antheridial receptacles, up to 1.0 cm long, branched 2–4 times, upper portions dentate.

**HABITAT.** On rocks; low intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Guaymas.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** On shore, southern end of Isla Tiburón (opposite Isla Turners), Las Islas de la Cintura, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** *Sargassum sonorensis* can be separated from other morphologically similar members of this section primarily by its holdfast, which is knotty, with short protuberances, in contrast to the parenchymatous discoid holdfast found in the other species of this group. In addition to its holdfast, *S. sonorensis* differs from similar *S. acinacifolium* by its larger blade sizes. These two are both problematic species, and their relationship needs further study.

Originally described as *Sargassum asymmetricum* E. Y. Dawson (July 1944), it was the second use of the name “*asymmetricum*” in *Sargassum*. The earliest use of the name was *S. asymmetricum* Yamada (1942; April 1944) from Japan. Therefore, since *S. asymmetricum* E. Y. Dawson is a later homonym, a replacement name, *S. sonorensis*, was given for the northern Gulf of California species by Dawson (1960a).

***Sargassum* sect. *sinicola* E. Y. Dawson ex J. N. Norris, sect. nov.**

“The *Sinicola* Group” of Dawson, 1944:245, pls. 38–39.

**LATIN DESCRIPTION.** Sectio cum sequentibus characteribus: laminae folio similes, longiores quam latae, symmetricae, cum costa, margines dentatae usque ad serratae, cryptostomata presentia, saepe abundantia; vesiculae

sub-sphaericae usque ad sphaericae; hapteron ligneum, conicum vel nodosum cum parvis protuberationibus.

The section is characterized by leaf-like blades that are longer than wide, symmetrical, with a midrib, dentate to serrate margins, and cryptostomata present, often abundant; vesicles are subspherical to spherical; holdfasts are woody, conical, or knotty, with short protuberances.

**TYPE SPECIES.** *Sargassum sinicola* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:736, pl. 20: fig. 73.

**REMARKS.** There are two subspecies of *Sargassum sinicola* known in the northern Gulf of California. Another member of this section, *S. horridum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner (1924a), is known from the southern Gulf (Dawson, 1944, 1959.; Pedroche et al., 2008).

***Sargassum sinicola* Setchell et N. L. Gardner  
subsp. *sinicola***

FIGURES 103, 104, 105A

*Sargassum sinicola* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:736, pl. 20: fig. 73; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:718; Dawson, 1944:247, pl. 35: fig. 10, pl. 38: figs. 5–11, pl. 39: figs. 1–11; Dawson, 1959a:19; Dawson, 1961b:400; Dawson, 1966a:13; Norris, 1973:8; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:337; Stewart and Stewart, 1984:142; McCourt, 1984b:141; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:46; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1985:26; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:421; Ortega et al., 1987:77; Espinoza-Ávalos and Rodríguez-Garza, 1985:115, fig. 1; Espinoza-Ávalos and Rodríguez-Garza, 1987:183; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:41; Espinoza-Ávalos and Rodríguez-Garza, 1989:141; Espinoza, 1990a:1; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1990:20 [in part]; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1991:26; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:23; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:51; Phillips, 1995:118; González-González et al., 1996:163; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; Riosmena-Rodríguez et al., 1998:45; Mateo-Cid et al., 2000a:68; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; L. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 2002:235; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:50, 58; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:205; Rodríguez-Montesinos et al., 2008:33; Pedroche et al., 2008:100.

*Sargassum polyacanthum* f. *americanum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:736; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:718; González-González et al., 1996:162.

Algae up to 60 cm long; of smooth axes and branches above a short stipe, attached below by a knotty, coarse



FIGURE 103. *Sargassum sinicola* subsp. *sinicola*: Habit; note holdfast of rhizomelike protuberances (arrow) (EYD-21568).

holdfast with short, thick protuberances. Leaf-like blades, long and narrow, very variable in size, 30–60(–90) mm long and (2–)3–5 mm wide; with a midrib, inconspicuous cryptostomata, and irregularly dentate margins. Vesicles smooth, mostly spherical, up to 6 mm

in diameter, with a pedicel, and sometimes with a small terminal apicula.

Receptacle branchlets forked up to 4 times, subcylindrical, smooth, with acuminate apices, and scattered among vesicles in upper portions of the thallus. Oogonial



---

FIGURE 104. *Sargassum sinicola* subsp. *sinicola*: Habit, smooth axes and long, leaflike blades with irregularly dentate margins and vesicles with a pedicel (JN-3119).

---

receptacles generally shorter and more robust than the antheridial receptacles.

**HABITAT.** On rocks and tidal platforms; usually low intertidal to shallow subtidal, occasional in mid intertidal tide pools.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Piedras de La Salina to Cabo San Lucas. Pacific coast: Isla Guadalupe; Baja California Sur.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Eureka, near La Paz, Baja California Sur, Gulf of California.



**REMARKS.** The most common of the species of *Sargassum* in the northern Gulf, *S. sinicola* usually reaches its largest size in spring. *Sargassum sinicola* subsp. *sinicola* is recognized by its characteristic coarse, knotty holdfast, smooth branch axes, leaf-like blades that are always longer than wide and with dentate margins, a percurrent midrib and cryptostomata, and its round, smooth vesicles. Unusual reproductive forms of *S. sinicola*, with both oogonial and antheridial conceptacles in the receptacle branchlets, were reported from Puerto Peñasco by Dawson (1944:pl. 39: figs. 6, 7).

Some specimens of *S. sinicola* can be confused with the southern Gulf *S. horridum*. Characters pointed out by Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones (1991) that distinguish *S. horridum* are spinose or terminally dentate receptacles of oogonial thalli, strongly muricate stipes and axes, leaf-like blades that are wavy or ruffled. Both *S. sinicola* subsp. *sinicola* and *S. horridum* primarily differ from *S. sinicola* subsp. *camouii* in having holdfasts of short, rhizome-like protuberances.

Another species, *Sargassum californicum* (Grunow) Setchell (1937b; basionym *S. fuliginosum* var.? *californica* Grunow, 1916), was listed as a synonym of *S. sinicola* by Dawson (1944). Since it was described from the Pacific coast (Grunow, 1916: 173, type locality: “*ad litora Californiae*”) and was subsequently reported in the Gulf of California (Setchell and Gardner, 1924a, as “*S. paniculatum*”), it has remained a poorly known and largely overlooked species (e.g., not mentioned by Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976, or Phillips, 1995). Specimens of “*S. paniculatum*” sensu Setchell and Gardner (1924a, 1925, 1930; non *S. paniculatum* J. Agardh, 1848) from the Gulf, along with those from Isla Guadalupe (Pacific Mexico), were also referred to *S. californicum* by Setchell (1937b) when he made the taxonomic combination. Shortly after this, Dawson (1944) considered *S. californicum* (Grunow) Setchell (1937b) to be a synonym of the Gulf *S. sinicola* and also included “*S. paniculatum*” sensu Setchell and Gardner (1924a, 1925, 1930). Since then, this taxonomic interpretation of *S. sinicola* has been followed (e.g., Dawson, 1961b; Stewart and Stewart, 1984; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1990; González-González et al., 1996). Although presumably somewhat similar to *S. sinicola*, the Pacific coast *S. californicum* appears to differ in having slightly muricate axes, leaf-like blades that lack a midrib, and subspherical to ovate vesicles, some slightly pointed, on relatively long pedicels (cf. Grunow, 1916; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:pl. 46: fig. 5). Thus, the morphology and relationship of the little-known California *S. californicum* to the Gulf *S. sinicola* needs to be

reinvestigated. Either these two are taxonomically the same species, as proposed by Dawson (1944), or *S. californicum* is a separate species.

***Sargassum sinicola* subsp. *camouii*  
(E. Y. Dawson) J. N. Norris et Yensen, *comb. nov.***

FIGURES 105B, 106

*Sargassum camouii* E. Y. Dawson, 1944:248, pl. 35: figs. 9, 11–13; Dawson, 1961b:399; Dawson, 1966a:13; Norris, 1973:12, 20; McCourt, 1984a:142; McCourt, 1984b:141; Huerta-Múzquiz and Mendoza-González, 1985:46; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986:421; Sánchez-Rodríguez et al., 1989:41; De Lara Isassi, 1992:22; Mateo-Cid et al., 1993:51; González-González et al., 1996:159; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:50, 58.

*Sargassum sinicola* var. *camouii* (E. Y. Dawson) J. N. Norris et Yensen in Pedroche et al., 2008:101.

Algae erect and rigid, up to 60 cm tall, axes rough, usually muricate, and densely branched; attached by solid, woodlike holdfast, initially discoid, becoming conical. Leaf-like blades lanceolate, mostly 30–60 mm long and 3–6 mm wide; with a midrib, dentate margins, and numerous cryptostomata (not always as evident on dried specimens). Vesicles spherical, smooth, 3–4.5 mm in diameter.

Oogonial receptacles, more or less cylindrical, branched 1–3 orders, and somewhat spiny.

**HABITAT.** On rocks and tidal platforms and in tide pools; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Isla San Esteban; Bahía Concepción to Bahía de La Paz. Pacific coast: Bahía Sebastián Vizcaíno to Bahía Magdalena, Baja California Sur.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** South end of Isla Tiburón, Las Islas de la Cintura, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** The new combination *Sargassum sinicola* subsp. *camouii* is proposed to reflect its possible relationship to *S. sinicola*. Although similar in most characteristics with *S. sinicola* subsp. *sinicola*, *S. sinicola* subsp. *camouii* is generally darker in color and is distinguished by its woody conical holdfast (see Dawson, 1944:pl. 35: fig. 9), rough to muricate primary axis, mostly muricate upper axes, and a more rigid habit. Critical studies, including DNA analyses, are needed to test its taxonomic and phylogenetic status.

Unfortunately, the type specimen lacked a holdfast (Dawson, 1944); it was the only specimen saved when all others were lost on a boat trip returning from Isla

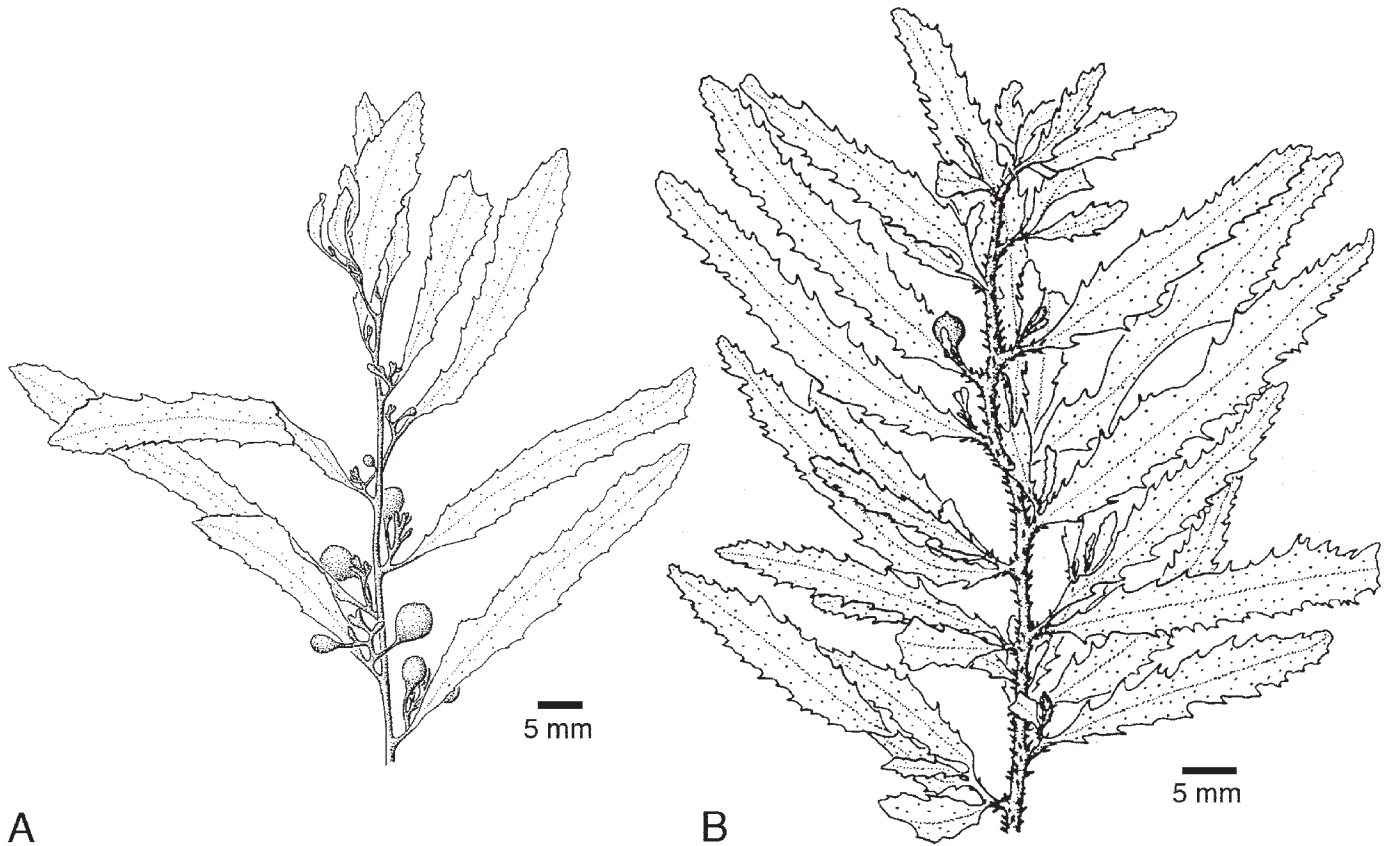


FIGURE 105. Comparison of *Sargassum sinicola*: A. *Sargassum sinicola* subsp. *sinicola*, showing smooth axes, irregular dentate margin of leaflike blades, vesicles, and developing receptacles (JN-3119). B. *Sargassum sinicola* subsp. *camouii*, showing muricate axes, regular dentate margins of leaflike blades, and vesicles (JN-3250).

Tiburón, and the description of the holdfast was based on field notes and another (paratype) specimen from another locality, “a bay, 10 miles northwest of Guaymas” (probably Bahía San Carlos).

***Sargassum* sect. *herporhizum***

**E. Y. Dawson ex J. N. Norris, sect. nov.**

“The *Herporhizum* Group” of Dawson, 1944:249, pl. 40: figs. 1–26.

**LATIN DESCRIPTION.** Sectio cum sequentibus characteribus: laminae folio similes cum costa, cum cryptostomatibus absentibus vel, si praesentibus, inconspicuis; vesiculae cum apiculata extensione; hapteron cum lungis, expansis, saepe intricatis rhizomatibus.

The section is characterized by leaf-like blades that have a midrib and are without cryptostomata or, if present, with inconspicuous cryptostomata; vesicles with an

apiculate extension; holdfast of long, spreading, often entangled rhizomes.

**TYPE SPECIES.** *Sargassum herporhizum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:739, pl. 20: figs. 69–71.

**REMARKS.** Currently there are two species from the northern Gulf of California and another, *Sargassum liebmannii* J. Agardh (1847, 1889), from Pacific Mexico (Baja California to Oaxaca; González-González et al., 1996) that belong to this section.

***Sargassum herporhizum*  
Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURES 107, 108A,B

*Sargassum herporhizum* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:739, pl. 20: figs. 69–71; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:720; Dawson, 1944:249, pl. 40: figs. 1–12; Dawson, 1961b:400; Dawson, 1966a:13; Norris, 1973:7; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:337; McCourt, 1984b:141;



FIGURE 106. *Sargassum simicola* subsp. *camouii*: Habit; note insert (lower right) showing conical holdfast attached to rock (JN-6064).

Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1990:19; De Lara Isassi, 1992:22; Espinoza-Ávalos, 1993:333; Phillips, 1995:118; González-González et al., 1996:160; Pacheco-Ruíz and Zertuche-González, 1996b:171; Cruz-Ayala et al., 2001:190; Mateo-Cid et al., 2006:50,

58; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:205; Pedroche et al., 2008:93.

Algae up to 30 cm long, with several erect terete, smooth axes, alternately to irregularly branched, often

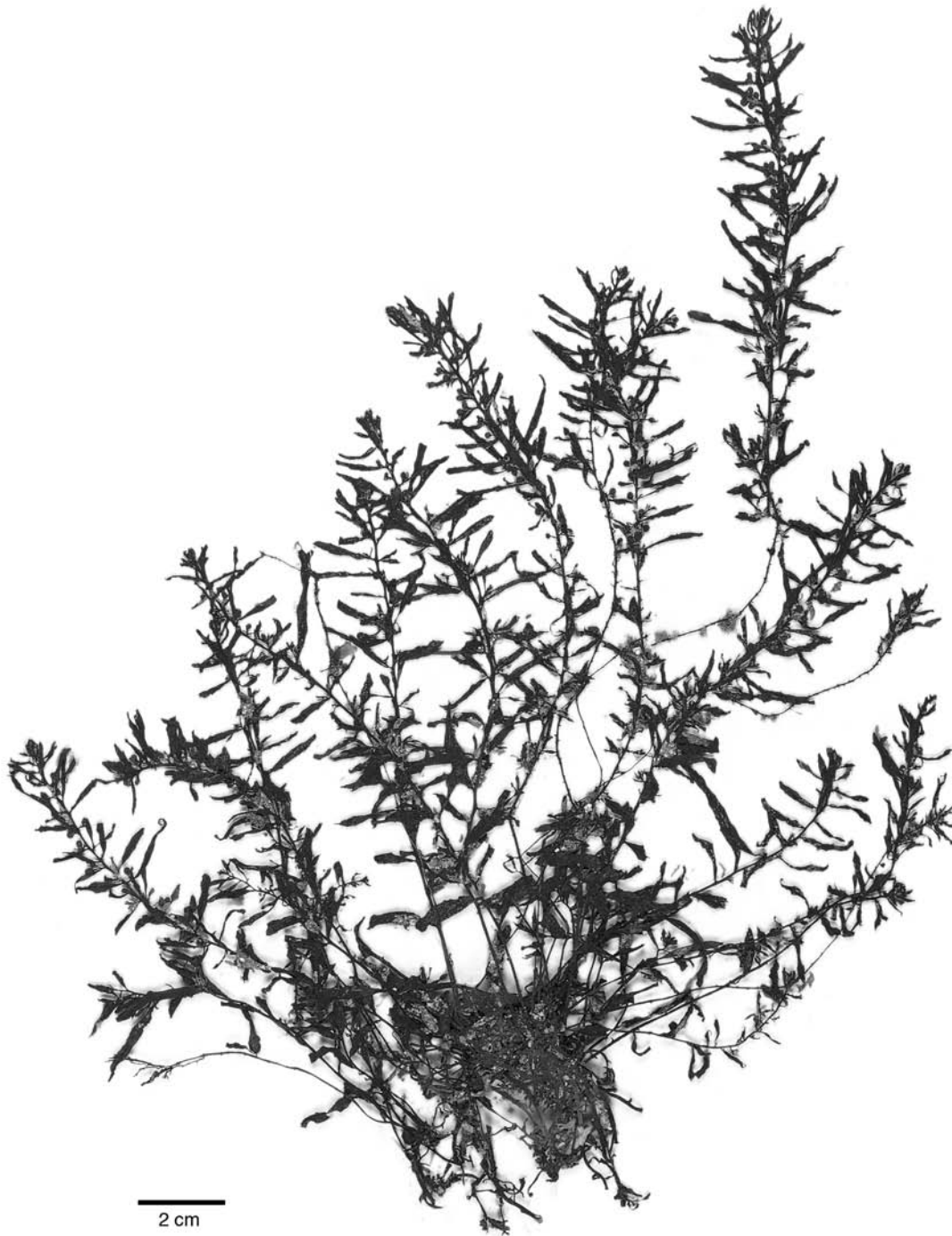


FIGURE 107. *Sargassum herporhizum*: Habit, showing basal attachment of entangled rhizomes (JN-4963).

whorled, above entangled rhizomes. Primary axis initially arising from a small discoid base that develops numerous, branching, narrow in diameter (less than 3 mm), repent cylindrical rhizomes that are attached at various points by small haptera; several erect secondary

axes arise along horizontal rhizomes as they lengthen. Leaf-like blades, long and narrow, 15–25 mm long and 2–5 mm wide, with a midrib (sometimes less distinct or faint on uppermost blades); cryptostomata absent or few and inconspicuous; margins vary, uneven or slightly to

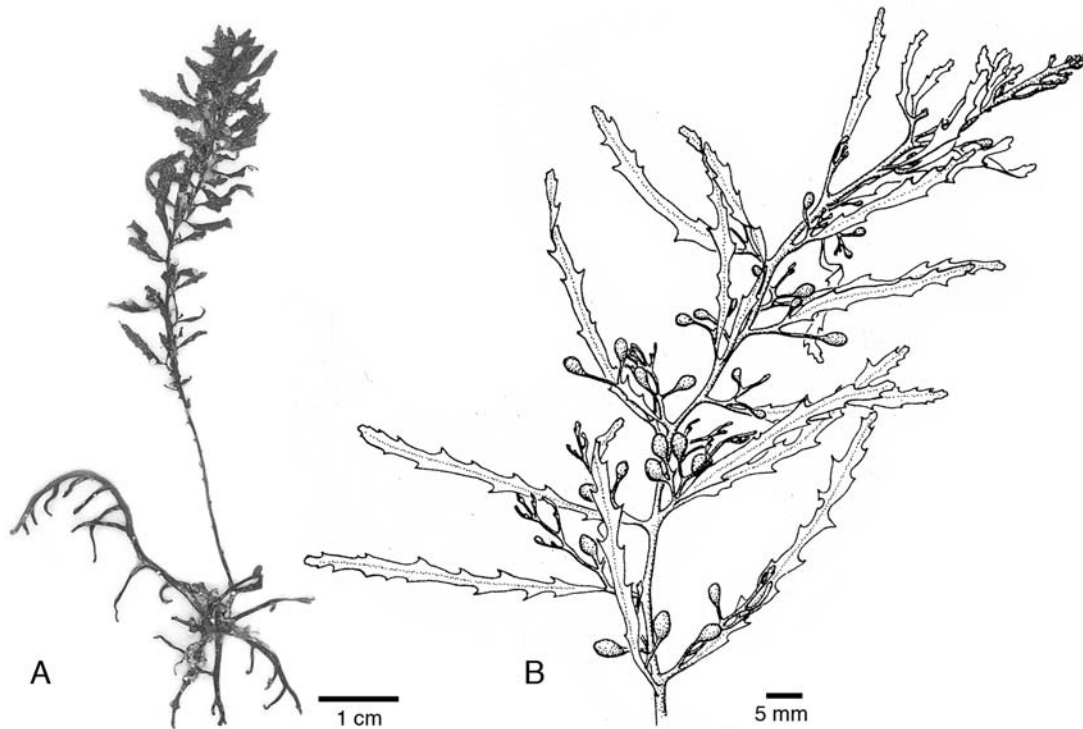


FIGURE 108. *Sargassum herporhizum*: A. Young thallus arising from basal rhizomes (JN-5870b). B. Upper portion of thallus showing long, thin leaflike blades, with faint midrib and serrate margins, pedicellate vesicles, and receptacles (JN-3117).

irregularly dentate. Vesicles spherical to ovoid, mostly smooth, up to 3 mm in diameter; on pedicels; occasionally apiculate.

Dioecious; receptacle branchlets scattered among vesicles, narrow, subcylindrical, up to 10 mm long, branched, on short pedicel, with conspicuous conceptacles.

**HABITAT.** On rocks and tidal platforms and in tide pools; mid intertidal to shallow subtidal, down to 6 m depths.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Bahía de La Paz. Pacific coast: Jalisco; Galápagos Islands.

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Isla San Jorge (George's Island), off Sonora, Gulf of California.

**REMARKS.** Seasonal observations of *Sargassum herporhizum* at Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, showed it to be one of the three dominant species of *Sargassum*, along with *S. johnstonii* and *S. sinicola* subsp. *camouii* (see also McCourt, 1984a, 1984b). Some intertidal specimens can be difficult to separate from *S. brandegeei*, but *S. herporhizum* has smaller, narrower leaf-like blades with less distinct midribs and margins that are only slightly

and irregularly dentate or sometimes uneven (see also "Remarks" for *S. brandegeei*).

### ***Sargassum brandegeei* Setchell et N. L. Gardner**

FIGURE 109A-C

*Sargassum brandegeei* Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1924a:736, pl. 21: fig. 79; Setchell and Gardner, 1925:718; Dawson, 1944:249, pl. 40: figs. 13–26; Taylor, 1945:120 [with a query]; Dawson, 1959a:19; Dawson, 1961b:399; Dawson, 1966a:12; Norris, 1973:7; Huerta-Múzquiz, 1978:337, 338; Pedroche and González-González, 1981:67; Rocha-Ramírez and Siqueiros-Beltrones, 1990:18–19 [in part, only *S. brandegeei*]; Servièrre-Zaragoza et al., 1993:482; Phillips, 1995:118; González-González et al., 1996:159; Pacheco-Ruíz et al., 2008:204; Pedroche et al., 2008:93.

Algae up to 30 cm long, of 1 to several erect, terete, smooth axes, branching alternately to irregularly. Primary axis initially from a discoid base that develops numerous,



FIGURE 109. *Sargassum brandegeei*: A. Habit, showing developing basal rhizomes (JN-6034). B, C. Smooth axes, with long and comparatively wider leaflike blades, with midribs and moderate to deeply serrate margins (JN-4829).

irregularly branched, narrow in diameter, decumbent rhizomes that become entangled and attach by haptera at various points. Leaf-like blades, longer than wide, mostly 30–60(–110) mm long and 4–10 mm wide; with a midrib and without cryptostomata (note some observed with very few cryptostomata); margins regularly, moderately to deeply, serrate. Vesicles spherical to subspherical, (2–)3–5 mm in diameter, smooth, and usually apiculate or sometimes with a foliaceous extension; borne on pedicels (more or less equal to or longer than their diameter) at base of leaflike blades or scattered among receptacles.

Receptacle branchlets relatively short, up to 20 mm long, branched mostly to 2 orders, smooth, and with blunt, rounded apices.

**HABITAT.** On rocks and tidal platforms and in tide pools; low intertidal to shallow subtidal to 8 m depths.

**DISTRIBUTION.** Gulf of California: Puerto Peñasco to Guaymas. Pacific coast: Jalisco; Galápagos Islands (?).

**TYPE LOCALITY.** Cast ashore, probably Guaymas, Sonora, Gulf of California (Setchell and Gardner 1924a).

**REMARKS.** Northern Gulf specimens generally agree with *Sargassum brandegeei* as described, including that most have leaf-like blades that lack cryptostomata (Setchell and Gardner, 1924a; Dawson, 1944), but a few specimens were observed to also have a small number of scattered cryptostomata on some of their leaf-like blades.

Dawson (1966a) observed that some of the intertidal *S. brandegeei* were not always clearly distinct from *S. herporhizum*. However, the size of the leaf-like blades and the nature of their margins distinguish these two in the field. *Sargassum brandegeei* has larger, longer, and comparatively wider blades, with a distinct midrib, and margins of regularly, evenly spaced, pronounced serration; in contrast, *S. herporhizum* has smaller, narrower blades, with less distinct midribs (sometimes very faint or not apparent on blades of the upper thallus and not always evident on the upper portion of some individual blades; see Figure 108B), and margins that are uneven or slightly, irregularly dentate.

**Uncertain Record:  
*Sargassum agardhianum* Farlow ex J. Agardh**

*Sargassum agardhianum* Farlow ex J. Agardh, 1889:93; 38, pl. 16:fig. 1; Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid,

1986:421; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991:23; González-González et al., 1996:159; Pedroche et al., 2008(in part; Gulf of California records only):93.

**REMARKS.** Described from San Diego, California, *Sargassum agardhianum* (J. Agardh, 1889) is known on the Pacific coast from southern California to central Baja California (Dawson et al., 1960a; Abbott and Hollenberg, 1976; Pacheco-Ruíz, 1982; Stewart and Stewart, 1984; R. Aguilar-Rosas et al., 1990; Stewart, 1991; Phillips, 1995). The reported presence of this species in the northern Gulf of California needs to be verified by reexamining specimens identified as *S. agardhianum* (Mendoza-González and Mateo-Cid, 1986; Martínez-Lozano et al., 1991).

**EXCLUDED RECORDS OF PHAEOPHYCEAE**

**LAMINARIALES**

Laminariales Migula, 1908:173, 243.

Laminariales Kylin, 1917:308.

**REMARKS.** In 25 years of collecting in the Gulf of California, Dawson himself did not collect any members of the Laminariales. Since then, neither I nor others have encountered or reported any Laminariales in field collecting and diving surveys in the northern Gulf.

**ALARIACEAE**

Alariaceae Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1925:591.

***Egrecia Areschoug***

*Egrecia Areschoug*, 1876:66.

***Egrecia laevigata* Setchell**

*Egrecia laevigata* Setchell, 1896:44; Dawson, 1946a:83; Dawson, 1946b:182; Dawson, 1947:43; Dawson, 1949:241; González-González et al., 1996:149; Pedroche et al., 2008:79.

**REMARKS.** Two beach drift specimens of *Egrecia laevigata* reputed to be from Bahía de Los Ángeles were recorded in the northern Gulf (Dawson, 1946a). Later, Dawson (1949b) noted *E. laevigata* had been erroneously reported in the Gulf of California.

**LESSONIACEAE**

Lessoniaceae Setchell et N. L. Gardner, 1925: 621.

***Macrocystis* C. Agardh**

*Macrocystis* C. Agardh, 1820:46.

***Macrocystis pyrifera* (Linnaeus) C. Agardh**

*Fucus pyriferus* Linnaeus, 1771:311.

*Macrocystis pyrifera* (Linnaeus) C. Agardh, 1820:47;  
Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:728; Dawson, 1944:237;

González-González et al., 1996:154; Pedroche et al.,  
2008 (in part; only Gulf of California record):85.

**REMARKS.** A single specimen, about 3 ft. long, apparently adrift, was caught on [the] log-line of [the] vessel between Isla Espiritu Santo and La Paz and “brought aboard the vessel, but no specimens were found growing attached within the Gulf” (Setchell and Gardner, 1924a:728; Dawson, 1944). Since then, there has never been any published reports of attached *Macrocystis*, nor any further reports of drift specimens in the Gulf of California.



# Acknowledgments

---

I express my appreciation to my professors and mentors of the marine algae, Isabella Aiona Abbott (Stanford University), Michael Neushul, Jr. (University of California, Santa Barbara [UCSB]), Robert W. Hoshaw (University of Arizona), and George T. Oberlander and Harry D. Thiers (San Francisco State University), and to Demorest Davenport and Alfred W. Ebeling (UCSB) for their continued encouragement, advice, and support throughout my Gulf of California research. Special thanks are owed to initiators of the Puerto Peñasco project, the marine scientists of the University of Arizona, Robert W. Hoshaw (McCourt, 1993), Donald A. Thomson, J. Laurens Barnard (Brusca, 1993), and John R. Hendrickson (Owens, 2003). I appreciated the use of Laboratorio de Biología Marina in Puerto Peñasco (shared facility of the Universidad de Sonora and University of Arizona) while I was serving as University of Arizona Resident Marine Biologist and Station Director. I particularly thank Carlos Peña, Jose Ramon Infante-León, Ramon Durazo, Fernando Montanez, Argelia González, Manuel Esper-Huerta, Christine A. Flanagan, and Richard C. Brusca; and also those at the Peñasco Experimental Unit of the University of Arizona Environmental Research Laboratory (ERL), notably David Moore (Station Manager), Carl N. Hodges (Director, ERL), Carl Hodge, and Jim Ure. I thank Agustin Cortéz C., Eugenio Zamorano and his family, and the many people of Puerto Peñasco for making me welcome while I lived in Mexico.

During the course of this floristic study, my travel, fieldwork, and scuba diving was supported by grants from the National Science Foundation (NSF-BMS-73-07000) and NOAA (04-5-158-20 8/75); later support was received from the American Philosophical Society, the National Museum of Natural History, Smithsonian Institution, and NSF-PEET grant DEB-0328491. Help in designing and equipping a four-wheel-drive truck for off-road use and land-based scuba operations came from Vic Hickey, Bill Issacson, and especially Gary Haden (Ventura, California), all of whom developed and allowed the rigorous testing of off-road prototype equipment. Advice and assistance on setting up the truck for land-based scuba and field work that could accommodate four divers (and dogs, Cyril and Beau) and all the collection, scuba, photographic, and camping gear along with food, water, and fuel came from Whitney Baines (UCSB), Craig

Askin (Tucson), and Norm Lammer (Marine Science Institute, UCSB), who also constructed much of the specialized field equipment.

Thanks are owed to William Fenical (UCSD-SIO, Chief Scientist) for the opportunity to participate on National Science Foundation-sponsored cruises of the Scripps Institution of Oceanography R/V *Dolphin* to Gulf of California and the OR/V *Alpha Helix* to islands of Pacific Mexico. He and Robert Jacobs (UCSB), Valerie Paul (Smithsonian Marine Station at Fort Pierce), William Gerwick (UCSD, SIO), and Oliver McConnell (the latter three were students of Bill Fenical at the time) provided many hours of collecting, lab work on natural product chemistry, and interesting discussions; I am grateful to have shared many adventures with them. Thanks are also owed to Dennis Divins (UCSB) for scuba training and support and continued friendship. The field work and collecting could not have been completed without the help of scuba diving partners Katina Bucher Norris, William Fenical, Howard Sleeper, William Gerwick, John Paul, George Boehlert, David Coon, David Moore, Jerry D. Kudenov, Mark Helvey, Whitney Baines, Valerie Paul, Bruce Howard, and Oliver McConnell, all of whom made one or more of the land-based and/or ship-based surveys and assisted with logistics and collecting. It is a pleasure to thank Richard S. Felger (University Arizona), Richard Evans Schultes (Harvard University), and Andrew T. Weil (University Arizona) for their gifts of algae collected in Sonora; David G. Lindquist (University North Carolina Wilmington; Howe, 2001) for algal specimens from El Tornillal, Rocas Consag, and Caleta Santa Maria; Nicolas P. Yensen for his collection from Isla San Pedro Nolasco; Mark and Diane Littler (NMNH), fellow marine botanists, divers, and “Baja-proven travelers” for their collections of algae and hours of discussion; Max H. Hommersand (University North Carolina) and Makoto Yoshizaki (Toho University, Japan) for sharing their collections and traveling with my group when we met in Bahía de Los Ángeles during a trip to Baja California; and Nonie McKibbin and Dale Evanson (Tucson, Arizona) for their collections of Sonoran algae. My appreciation goes to those who made Tucson a home during my trips to University of Arizona, particularly Craig Askin, Richard S. Felger, Ronald and Jan Pulliam, Robert and Ruth Hoshaw, and Alexander “Ike” and Jean Straub Russell. I thank Ike Russell, who generously flew my team in his small aircraft to locales in Sonora and to Isla Ángel de la Guarda, enabling us to collect and work with the Seri (including one trip with Clinton J. Dawes, University South Florida, and Donald P. Cheney, Northeastern University), and who also once flew

in critical parts to get us on the road again when our vehicle was broken down in a remote location. I am indebted to Edward and Mary Beck Moser, who assisted in numerous ways, including sharing their home in El Desemboque (El Desemboque de San Ignacio; Haxöl Ihoom of the Seri) during our Sonora coast trips. I am also indebted to the Seri fishermen of El Desemboque and Punta Cheuca for guiding and providing boats for scuba diving. Their knowledge of locales, sea turtle foraging sites, and offshore reefs of Isla Tiburón and coastal Sonora yielded numerous collections, and their understanding of the sea conditions in this region kept us safe more than once. The assistance of Glenn and Martha Vargas (Thermal, California) enabled my team to scuba dive on many of the islands in the vicinity of Bahía de Los Ángeles, and I thank them for their generous hospitality and numerous boat trips. I again extend my thanks to Donald and Isabella Abbott for sharing their Pacific Grove home and providing access to the Hopkins Marine Station laboratory to study Gulf seaweeds; to William and Fran Fenical and Joan G. and James Stewart for letting us stay with them while studying at Scripps Institution of Oceanography, La Jolla; and to Gary and Mary Haden for providing accommodations during trips to Ventura and UCSB.

I am grateful for the taxonomic expertise, discussions, and comments of Isabella A. Abbott, Michael Neushul, Richard E. Norris, and Paul C. Silva, and of Michael J. Wynne on *Colpomenia*, he and William Randolph Taylor (University Michigan) on *Sporochmus*, Daniel León-Álvarez (UNAM) on the Ralfsiales, Luis Aguilar-Rosas and Raúl Aguilar-Rosas (CMMEX) on Gulf *Leathesia nana*, Heroen Verbruggen (University Ghent) for reviewing and discussion on the species of *Codium*. I am also grateful to Frederik Leliaert (University Ghent) for reviewing “*Willeella-Phyllodictyon*,” Naomi Phillips (Arcadia University) for comments on the classification of the brown algal orders and their evolutionary relationships, and Nicolas P. Yensen (University Arizona) for discussions on Gulf *Sargassum* species. My appreciation goes to Dan H. Nicolson (NMNH) and Larry J. Dorr (NMNH) for advice on solving numerous nomenclatural problems, to Alain Touwaide (NMNH) for the Latin descriptions of new taxa, to Francisco F. Pedroche, Luis Aguilar-Rosas, Raúl Aguilar-Rosas, and Rafael Riosmena-Rodríguez for help on obtaining important literature and the loan of specimens, and finally, to Paul M. Peterson (Botany Editor; NMNH) for his encouragement throughout the submission and review process.

I thank those who have prepared or helped with illustrations: Susan Manchester (Monterey, California)

for drawing many of the algae, Ilka C. Feller (NMNH; SERC) for line drawings of *Sargassum*, Adrián Ramírez (UNAM) for the species of *Ralfsia*, and Alice R. Tangerini (Botanical Illustrator, NMNH) for the northern Gulf of California map and the comparative diagrammatic illustrations of *Ulva* and the Gulf genera of the Dictyotaceae. Most of the algal and habitat photographs were taken by me. Additionally, I am grateful not only for the help of many others but for the photographs and digital images of selected herbarium specimens they skillfully provided, including Alison Habel (Photographic Illustrator, University of Arizona), Chip Clark (NMNH Scientific Photographer), Harvey Kupferberg (NMNH volunteer), and Ingrid Lin (NMNH Botany); I am grateful to Scott Whittaker (NMNH) for assistance on digital photomicrographs and Kathy Ann Miller (Herbarium, UC Berkeley) for kindly (and rapidly) providing the isotype image of *Sargassum acinacifolium*. I thank Roger H. Hill (USAF) for obtaining the NASA *Gemini V* photo of the northern Gulf of California and NASA for permission for its use herein. Thanks go to Chip Clark (NMNH) for consultation and advice on digital photography, 35mm photographic slide digitizing, and his appreciation of margaritas. The photos, digital images, and line drawings were competently prepared for this study by Robert H. Sims (NMNH), whose research assistance is much appreciated.

To my wife, Katina “Katy” Bucher Norris (NMNH Botany), it is impossible to express all my thanks for her companionship and friendship. She has participated in

every phase of this research: planning and carrying out the field work, scuba diving, collecting and studying Gulf of California marine algae, research collaboration, curatorial assistance, taking the digital photomicrographs of algal images used, and reviewing the various stages of the manuscript throughout this project. It is with Katy that I have shared many great adventures of diving and traveling through the pristine desert, beaches, reefs, and islands of the Gulf of California. To our sons, James “Jesse” Alexander and Shaun William, I give thanks and appreciation for their interest in Baja California, scuba diving, and listening to many tales of the Gulf of California forays.

Many people were kind enough to review and discuss various parts of the manuscript as it developed, and I particularly thank Robert W. Hoshaw and Jeanine L. Olsen (University of Groningen), for reviews and comments on earlier drafts of the greens, and Isabella A. Abbott for comments on the browns. I also extend sincere thanks to the reviewers of the final draft of the manuscript—Luis Ernesto Aguilar-Rosas and Raúl Aguilar-Rosas (Universidad Autónoma de Baja California, Ensenada), David L. Ballantine (University of Puerto Rico, Mayagüez), Suzanne L. Fredericq (University of Louisiana Lafayette), Rafael Riosmena-Rodríguez (Universidad Autónoma de Baja California Sur, La Paz), and Richard M. McCourt (National Science Foundation)—for their thoughtful and constructive suggestions and comments that led to its improvement. Despite all this input and help, I alone am responsible for any errors.



# Appendix 1: List of New Taxa and Combinations

---

## I. CHLOROPHYTA

### Ctenocladales: Ulvellaceae

*Epicladia condensata* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) J. N. Norris, *comb. nov.*

*Epicladia mexicana* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) J. N. Norris, *comb. nov.*

## II. PHAEOPHYCEAE

### Desmarestiales: Desmarestiaceae

*Desmarestia munda* Setchell et N. L. Gardner subsp. *mexicana* (E. Y. Dawson)  
J. N. Norris, *comb. nov.*

### Sporochnales: Sporochnaceae

*Sporochnus neushulii* J. N. Norris, *sp. nov.*

### Ectocarpales: Acinetosporaceae

*Hincksia bryantii* (Setchell et N. L. Gardner) J. N. Norris, *comb. nov.*

### Fucales: Sargassaceae

*Sargassum* sect. *johnstonii* E. Y. Dawson ex J. N. Norris, *sect. nov.*

*Sargassum* sect. *lapazeanum* E. Y. Dawson ex J. N. Norris, *sect. nov.*

*Sargassum* sect. *sinicola* E. Y. Dawson ex J. N. Norris, *sect. nov.*

*Sargassum* sect. *herporhizum* E. Y. Dawson ex J. N. Norris, *sect. nov.*

*Sargassum sinicola* Setchell et N. L. Gardner subsp. *camouii* (E. Y. Dawson)  
J. N. Norris et Yensen, *comb. nov.*



# Appendix 2: Endemic Taxa of the Gulf of California that Occur in the Northern Gulf

---

## I. CHLOROPHYTA

Ctenocladales: Ulvellaceae

*Entocladia marchantiae*

*Epicladia condensata*

*Epicladia mexicana*

Cladophorales: Cladophoraceae

*Cladophora macdougalii*

*Cladophora tiburonensis*

Siphonocladales: Valoniaceae

*Valoniopsis hancockii*

Bryopsidales: Codiaceae

*Codium brandegeei*

## II. PHAEOPHYCEAE

Ishigeales: Ishigeaceae

*Ishige sinicola*

Dictyotales: Dictyotaceae

*Spatoglossum lanceolatum*

*Spatoglossum subflabellatum*

Desmarestiales: Desmarestiaceae

*Desmarestia filamentosa*

*Desmarestia munda* subsp. *mexicana*

**Sporochnales: Sporochnaceae**

*Sporochnus neushulii*

**Ralfsiales: Ralfsiaceae**

*Hapterophycus anastomosans*

**Cutleriales: Cutleriaceae**

*Cutleria hancockii*

**Ectocarpales: Acinetosporaceae**

*Hincksia bryantii*

**Ectocarpales: Chordariaceae**

*Nemacystus brandegeei*

**Ectocarpales: Ectocarpaceae**

*Ectocarpus hancockii*

*Ectocarpus sonorensis*

**Ectocarpales: Scytosiphonaceae**

*Compsonea immixtum*

**Fucales: Sargassaceae**

*Sargassum johnstonii* f. *gracile*

*Sargassum lapazeanum*

*Sargassum acinacifolium*

*Sargassum macdougallii*

*Sargassum sonorensis*

*Sargassum brandegeei*



# Appendix 3: Algal Specimens Illustrated: Species Locality Information and Herbarium

---

## I. CHLOROPHYTA

*Entocladia marchantiae* (Figure 9A): Epiphytic on *Gracilaria textorii*, north end of Isla Coronado, Bahía de los Ángeles, Baja California, Coll. H. Sleeper and M. Helvey (JN-4411b; US Alg. Coll. slide 4257).

*Entocladia polysiphoniae* (Figure 9B): Endophytic on *Polysiphonia*, El Desemboque, Sonora, Coll. R. E. Schultes, R. S. Felger, and A. T. Weil (JN-5190; US Alg. Coll.-157757 and slide 5344).

*Entocladia* sp. (Figure 9C): Epiphytic on *Cladophora*, Islas de los Gemelos, Bahía de los Ángeles, Baja California, Coll. H. Sleeper and M. Helvey (JN-4492b; US Alg. Coll. slide 4154).

*Entocladia viridis* (Figure 9D,E): Epiphytic on *Chaetomorpha aerea*, El Desemboque, Sonora, Coll. R. E. Schultes, R. S. Felger, and A. T. Weil (JN-5180b; US Alg. Coll. slide 4144).

*Stromatella monostromatica* (Figure 11A,B): Epiphytic on *Polysiphonia*, Isla la Ventana, Bahía de los Ángeles, Baja California, Coll. J. N. Norris, M. Helvey, and H. Sleeper (JN-4442b; US Alg. Coll. slide 4160).

*Ulvella lens* (Figure 12A): Epiphytic on *Cladophora graminea*, channel between Isla Mejia and Isla Ángel de la Guarda, Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda, Coll. E. Y. Dawson (EYD[1940]-271; US Alg. Coll. slide 4165).

*Ulvella setchellii* (Figure 12B): Epiphytic on *Cladophora* cf. *microcladioides*, Bahía Aqua Dulce, Isla Tiburón, Coll. E. Y. Dawson (EYD-46-980; US Alg. Coll. slide 892).

*Ulva californica* (Figure 14A): Vicinity of Punta Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. E. Y. Dawson (EYD-27407; US Alg. Coll.-55027).

*Ulva californica* (Figure 14B): Isla Willard, N end of island, Bahía de San Luis Gonzaga, Baja California, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (JN-5425; US Alg. Coll.-157778).

- Ulva lactuca* (Figure 15): La Paz, Baja California Sur, Coll. O. Holguín Q. (*ChP-1606*; US Alg. Coll.-36624).
- Ulva lobata* (Figure 16): Punta la Gringa, Bahía de los Ángeles, Baja California, Coll. J. N. Norris (*JN-6103a*; US Alg. Coll.-157781).
- Ulva nematoidea* (Figure 17A): Ensenada, Bahía de Todos Santos, Baja California (Pacific Mexico), Coll. E. Y. Dawson (*EYD-10421*; US Alg. Coll.-41727).
- Ulva nematoidea* (Figure 17B): San Isidro, Baja California (Pacific México), Coll. Clair Etienne (US Alg. Coll.-8799).
- Ulva rigida* (Figure 18): Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (*JN-5742*; US Alg. Coll.-157779).
- Ulva acanthophora* (Figure 19A): Punta la Gringa, Bahía de los Ángeles, Baja California, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (*JN-5455*; US Alg. Coll.-157716).
- Ulva acanthophora* (Figure 19B): Estuary, Bahía de los Animas, Baja California, Coll. G. Bockus (*JN-383*; US Alg. Coll.-89466).
- Ulva clathrata* (Figure 20): Bahía Cholla, vicinity of Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (*JN-4994*; US Alg. Coll.-157727).
- Ulva flexuosa* (Figure 21A,B): Epizoic on carapace of female black sea turtle (*Chelonia mydas agassizii*), vicinity of Campo Ona, Canal de Infernillo, Sonora, Coll. R. S. Felger, E. Moser, and G. Mendez (*JN-4790*; US Alg. Coll.-157732 and slide 4172).
- Ulva intestinalis* (Figure 22): El Tornillal, Sonora, Coll. D. G. Lindquist (*JN-3327*; US Alg. Coll.-157741).
- Ulva linza* (Figure 23): Playa Hermosa, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris (*JN-3694*; US Alg. Coll.-157743).
- Chaetomorpha antennina* (Figure 24A): Near Bahía San Carlos, Ensenada de San Francisco, Sonora, Coll. E. Y. Dawson (*EYD-11023*; US Alg. Coll.-39950).
- Chaetomorpha aerea* (Figure 24B): El Desemboque, Sonora, Coll. R. E. Schultes, R. S. Felger, and A. T. Weil (*JN-5180a*; US Alg. Coll. slide 4144).
- Cladophora graminea* (Figure 28A): West side of large rock, Rocas Consag, Coll. D. G. Lindquist (*JN-3118*; US Alg. Coll.-157544).
- Cladophora hesperia* (Figure 29A): Puerto Lobos on Bahía Tepoca, Sonora, Coll. E. Y. Dawson (*EYD-832*; US Alg. Coll.-30072 and slide 4170).
- Cladophora microcladioides* (Figure 30B): Bahía Kino, Sonora, Coll. E. Y. Dawson (*EYD-2928*; US Alg. Coll.-30073 and slide 4166).
- Phyllocladion pulcherrimum* (Figure 33): East side of Punta Concepción, Baja California Sur, Coll. J. Bleck (*EYD-25872*; US Alg. Coll.-36522).
- Phyllocladion robustum* (Figure 34A): Isla San Pedro Nolasco, Coll. E. Y. Dawson (*EYD-18555*; US Alg. Coll.-5603).
- Valoniopsis pachynema* (Figure 36C): Photo of living clump from Puerto Peñasco, Sonora.
- Bryopsis pennata* (Figure 37): South of rocky shore fronting Laboratorio de Biología Marina, vicinity of Punta Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. A. E. Dennis (*EYD-27451*; US Alg. Coll.-40783).
- Halicystis*-phase (Figure 39A,B): Isla Willard, Bahía de San Luis Gonzaga, Baja California, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (*JN-5732*; US Alg. Coll.-157764).
- Codium amplivesiculatum* (Figure 40): Isla San Esteban, Coll. J. N. Norris, with J. Paul and K. Robertson (*JN-5700*; US Alg. Coll.-157600).
- Codium brandegeei* (Figure 42): “*Codium macdougalii*-form” of *C. brandegeei*, Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and R. W. Hoshaw (*JN-5020*; US Alg. Coll.-157629).
- Codium simulans* (Figure 43): SE side of Isla San Esteban, Coll. J. N. Norris, with J. Paul and K. Robertson (*JN-5713*; US Alg. Coll.-157676).
- Codium sp.?* (Figure 44): cf. *Codium cuneatum*-form of *C. simulans*, off west side of Roca Blanca, Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda, Coll. J. N. Norris, with J. Paul and K. Robertson (*JN-5286*; US Alg. Coll.-157616).
- Caulerpa mexicana* f. *pectinata* (Figure 45): Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. N.J. Lang (*JN-5861*; US Alg. Coll.-157510).
- Caulerpa sertularioides* (Figure 46A): N side of bay, Bahía Bocochoibampo, Guaymas, Sonora, Coll. M. Helvey (*JN-4471*; US Alg. Coll.-157509).
- Caulerpa sertularioides* (Figure 46B): Bahía de San Carlos, Nueva Guaymas, Sonora, coll. D. Evanson (*JN-4277*; US Alg. Coll.-157507).
- Caulerpa vanbosseae* (Figure 47A): El Desemboque de San Ignacio, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris, K. E. Bucher and D. Coon (*JN-6562*; US Alg. Coll.-157529).
- Caulerpa vanbosseae* (Figure 47B): Punta Pelicano, vicinity of Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (*JN-4981*; US Alg. Coll.-157521).

*Halimeda discoidea* (Figure 48B,C): 3 miles [4.8 km] south of Punta Mangles, Baja California Sur, Coll. J. Bleck (EYD-25921; US Alg. Coll.-36518 and slide 8477 and slide 8478).

*Acetabularia caliculus* (Figure 49A): Bahía Cholla, vicinity of Punta Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. A. E. Dennis (EYD-27569; US Alg. Coll.-40937 and vial 3442, jar 406).

*Acetabularia caliculus* (Figure 49B): Bahía Cholla, vicinity of Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. R. W. Hoshaw (US Alg. Coll.-95320 and slide 5533).

## II. PHAEOPHYCEAE

*Ishige sinicola* (Figure 50A): Specimens, from left to right: La Mona, Bahía de los Ángeles, Baja California, Coll. J. N. Norris (JN-2980; US Alg. Coll.-158148); Puerto Calamajué, Baja California, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (JN-4621; US Alg. Coll.-158165); and Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (JN-4166; US Alg. Coll.-158160).

*Ishige sinicola* (Figure 50B): Northwest of rock window on shore, Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (JN-5824; US Alg. Coll.-158176 and slide 8481).

*Sphacelaria rigidula* (Figure 51A): Playa Hermosa, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (JN-4041; US Alg. Coll.-158531 and slide 4201).

*Sphacelaria rigidula* (Figure 51B): Bahía San Francisco, Baja California, Coll. J. N. Norris (JN-3271; US Alg. Coll.-158528 and slide 4194).

*Sphacelaria rigidula* (Figure 51C): Playa Hermosa, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris (JN-3715; US Alg. Coll.-158514 and slide 4196).

*Sphacelaria tribuloides* (Figure 53A–C): Playa Hermosa, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (JN-4038; US Alg. Coll.-158525 and slide 4198 and slide 4199).

*Dictyopteris undulata* (Figure 55): Off west side of Roca Blanca, Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda, Coll. J. N. Norris (JN-5801; US Alg. Coll.-157994).

*Dictyota conrescens* (Figure 56A): Punta Hughes, vicinity of Bahía Magdalena, about 3½ miles [5.6 km] southeast of Cabo San Lazaro, Baja California Sur (Pacific Mexico), Isotype (W. R. Taylor 34-598; US Alg. Coll.-56360).

*Dictyota conrescens* (Figure 56B): North side of Puerto Calamajué, Baja California, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (JN-4695; US Alg. Coll.-158074).

*Dictyota coriacea* (Figure 57): Off southeast end of Isla San Esteban, Coll. K. E. Bucher (JN-5522; US Alg. Coll.-158202).

*Dictyota crenulata* (Figure 58A): Playa between San Jose del Cabo and Cabo San Lucas, Baja California Sur, Coll. J. N. Norris and H. Sleeper (JN-4091a; US Alg. Coll.-158007).

*Dictyota crenulata* (Figure 58B): Playa between San Jose del Cabo and Cabo San Lucas, Baja California Sur, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher, and H. Sleeper (JN-4114; US Alg. Coll.-158009).

*Dictyota dichotoma* var. *intricata* (Figure 59A): Cabeza Ballena, Baja California Sur, Coll. J. N. Norris and H. Sleeper (JN-4087; US Alg. Coll.-158034).

*Dictyota dichotoma* var. *intricata* (Figure 59B): In front of Laboratorio de Biología Marina, Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris (JN-5630; US Alg. Coll.-158042).

*Dictyota dichotoma* var. *intricata* (Figure 59C): Playa between San Jose del Cabo and Cabo San Lucas, Baja California Sur, Coll. J. N. Norris and H. Sleeper (JN-4094; US Alg. Coll.-158016).

*Dictyota flabellata* (Figure 60): Playa Hermosa, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (JN-3474; US Alg. Coll.-158049).

*Dictyota stolonifera* (Figure 61A): Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (JN-3865a; US Alg. Coll.-158031).

*Dictyota stolonifera* (Figure 61B): Playa between San Jose del Cabo and Cabo San Lucas, Baja California Sur, Coll. J. N. Norris, K. E. Bucher and H. Sleeper (JN-4113a; US Alg. Coll.-158017).

*Dictyota stolonifera* (Figure 61C): C. In front of marine laboratory, vicinity of Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. E. Y. Dawson (EYD-27409; US Alg. Coll.-40641).

*Dictyota vivesii* (Figure 62): Punta Prieta, outer Bahía Topolobampo, Sinaloa, Coll. E. Y. Dawson (EYD-10938; US Alg. Coll.-39951).

*Padina caulescens* (Figure 63A,B): Islas de los Gemelos, Bahía de los Ángeles, Baja California, Coll. J. N. Norris, H. Sleeper and W. Baines (JN-4748; US Alg. Coll.-158312).

- Padina crispata* (Figure 64A–C): Isla Grande, Guerrero (Pacific Mexico), Coll. E. Y. Dawson (EYD-20957; US Alg. Coll.-6160).
- Padina durvillei* (Figure 65): Punta Pelicano, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. M. and D. Littler, *s.n.* (US Alg. Coll.-163415).
- Padina gymnospora* (Figure 66): Playa Arenosa, east of Punta Pelicano, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (JN-3425b; US Alg. Coll.-158298).
- Padina mexicana* var. *mexicana* (Figure 67): Photo of live specimen from Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora.
- Rugulopteryx okamuræ* (Figure 68A): Cabeza Ballena, Baja California Sur, Coll. J. N. Norris and H. Sleeper (JN-4086; US Alg. Coll.-158127).
- Rugulopteryx okamuræ* (Figure 68B): Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris (JN-3724; US Alg. Coll.-158125 and slide 4204).
- Spatoglossum subflabellatum* (Figure 70): Punta Lobos, north side of point, vicinity of Puerto Lobos, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris (JN-5902; US Alg. Coll.-158512).
- Desmarestia filamentosa* (Figure 71): Off west side of Roca Blanca, Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda, Coll. J. N. Norris (JN-5271; US Alg. Coll.-157950).
- Desmarestia filamentosa* (Figure 72A,B): Off west side of Roca Blanca, Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda, Coll. J. N. Norris, with J. Paul and K. Robertson (JN-5271; US Alg. Coll.-157950 and slide 4183).
- Desmarestia munda* subsp. *mexicana* (Figure 73): Off west side of Roca Blanca, Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda, Coll. J. N. Norris (JN-5283; US Alg. Coll.-157944).
- Sporochnus anomalus* (Figure 74): Off west side of Roca Blanca, Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda, Coll. J. N. Norris (JN-5264; US Alg. Coll.-158494).
- Sporochnus anomalus* (Figure 75A,B): Off west side of Roca Blanca, Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda, Coll. J. N. Norris (JN-5264; US Alg. Coll.-158494; US Alg. Coll. vial 5824, jar 568, and slide 4210).
- Sporochnus neushulii* J. N. Norris *sp. nov.* (Figure 76A–E): Off west side of Roca Blanca, Puerto Refugio, Isla Ángel de la Guarda, Coll. J. N. Norris (A–E. Holotype: JN-5262, US Alg. Coll.158492; B. US Alg. Coll. vial 5823, jar 568; C. US Alg. Coll. slide 4208; D. US Alg. Coll. slide 4209; and E. US Alg. Coll. slide 8474).
- Hapterophycus anastomosans* (Figure 77A,B): Isla Raza, Gulf of California (A,B. Holotype: EYD-26110; US Alg. Coll.-37228 and vial 2479, jar 296).
- Cutleria hancockii* (Figure 79A): Gametophyte, Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (JN-4953; US Alg. Coll.-209237).
- Cutleria hancockii* (Figure 79B): Gametophyte, epizoic on carapace of female black sea turtle (*Chelonia mydas agassizii*), vicinity of Campo Ona, Canal de Infiernillo, Sonora, Coll. R. S. Felger and E. Moser (JN-4786; US Alg. Coll.-157912 and slide 4182).
- Cutleria hancockii* (Figure 79C): Gametophyte, Puerto Lobos, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and M. Helvey (JN-6040; US Alg. Coll.-157937 and slide 8471).
- Cutleria hancockii* (Figure 79D): Gametophyte, Camp Dolar, Cabo Tepopa, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris (JN-7065; US Alg. Coll.-157942 and slide 8473).
- Cutleria hancockii* (Figure 79E): Sporophyte (“*Aglaozonia*-phase”), Punta Pelicano–Playa Arenosa area, vicinity of Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. E. Y. Dawson (EYD-27365; US Alg. Coll.-40713 and slide 8469).
- Cutleria hancockii* (Figure 79F): Sporophyte (“*Aglaozonia*-phase”), epiphytic on *Sargassum*, Playa Hermosa, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris (JN-3691b; US Alg. Coll. slide 4158).
- Hincksia mitchelliae* (Figure 82): Epizoic on black sea turtle (*Chelonia mydas agassizii*) carapace, vicinity of Campo Ona, Canal de Infiernillo, Sonora, Coll. R. S. Felger and E. Moser (JN-4774; US Alg. Coll.-158145 and slide 4223).
- Chnoospora pacifica* (Figure 83A–C): Binnens Cove, Isla Socorro, Revillagigedo Arch. (Pacific Mexico), Coll. E. Y. Dawson (EYD-12121; US Alg. Coll.-5794 and vial 784, jar B88).
- Hecatonema streblonematoides* (Figure 84A,B): Playa Hermosa, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. K. Bucher and J. N. Norris (JN-4033; US Alg. Coll. slide 5350).
- Nemacystus brandegeei* (Figure 85A): Epiphytic on *Sargassum*, Playa Hermosa, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (JN-3985; US Alg. Coll.-158192).

- Nemacystus brandegeei* (Figure 85B,C): Isla San Jose, Baja California Sur (EYD-25847; US Alg. Coll.-36453; B. US Alg. Coll. slide 8479 and C. US Alg. Coll. jar 269, vial 2271).
- Streblonema transfixum* (Figure 86): Epiphytic on *Gracilaria textorii*, north end of Isla Coronado, Bahía de los Ángeles, Baja California, Coll. H. Sleeper and M. Helvey (JN-4411c; US Alg. Coll. slide 4257).
- Leathesia nana* (Figure 90A–C): Epiphytic on leaflike blade of *Sargassum sinicola*, El Coloradito, Baja California, Coll. R. Aguilar-Rosas, L. Aguilar-Rosas, L. E. Mateo-Cid, C. Mendoza-Gonzalez and C. E. Gutierrez-Villaseñor (BC95-S/N3; CMMEX-6447).
- Colpomenia phaeodactyla* (Figure 91A): Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (drawing of JN-4759; US Alg. Coll.-157841).
- Colpomenia ramosa* (Figure 91B): North side of Puerto Calamajué, Baja California, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (drawing of JN-4697; US Alg. Coll.-157854).
- Colpomenia sinuosa* (Figure 92A): Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (drawing of JN-4580; US Alg. Coll.-60062).
- Colpomenia tuberculata* (Figure 92B): Photo of living specimen from Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora.
- Hydroclathrus clathratus* (Figure 94): Isla Pichilingue, La Paz, Baja California Sur, Coll. O. Holguin Q. (PhP-1536; US Alg. Coll.-36619).
- Rosenvingea floridana* (Figure 95A,B): Punta la Gringa, Bahía de los Ángeles, Baja California, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (JN-5471; US Alg. Coll.-158327).
- Rosenvingea intricata* (Figure 96): Punta Bufe, Baja California, Coll. M. and D. Littler, *s.n.* (US Alg. Coll.-163441).
- Sargassum johnstonii* (Figure 97A): Bahía Cholla, vicinity of Punta Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. E. Y. Dawson (EYD-27204).
- Sargassum johnstonii* (Figure 97B): Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (JN-4559; US Alg. Coll.-158429).
- Sargassum johnstonii* f. *gracile* (Figure 98): Guaymas, Sonora, Coll. Daisy R. Marchant (Isotype, *D. R. Marchant-28a*; US Alg. Coll.-56958).
- Sargassum lapazeanum* (Figure 99A,B): La Paz, Baja California Sur, Coll. Daisy R. Marchant (Isotype, *D. R. Marchant-21*; US Alg. Coll.-56961).
- Sargassum acinacifolium* (Figure 100B,C): Cast ashore, Guaymas (?), Sonora (Isotype, *T. S. Brandegee-2*; UC-221158).
- Sargassum macdougallii* (Figure 101A): Cabo Tepoca, Puerto Lobos, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris (JN-5975; US Alg. Coll.-158398).
- Sargassum macdougallii* (Figure 101B): Punta Lobos, Cabo Tepoca, SE side of Puerto Lobos, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris (drawing of JN-5944; US Alg. Coll.-158397).
- Sargassum sonorensis* (Figure 102): Northeast side of cove, Isla San Pedro Nolasco, Coll. N. P. Yensen (JN-5205; US Alg. Coll.-158399).
- Sargassum sinicola* subsp. *sinicola* (Figure 103): Isla San Esteban, Coll. E. Y. Dawson (EYD-21568; US Alg. Coll.-6284).
- Sargassum sinicola* subsp. *sinicola* (Figure 104): West side of large rock, Rocas Consag, coll. D. G. Lindquist (JN-3119; US Alg. Coll.-158447).
- Sargassum sinicola* subsp. *sinicola* (Figure 105A): West side of large rock, Rocas Consag, coll. D. G. Lindquist (drawing of JN-3119; US Alg. Coll.-158447).
- Sargassum sinicola* subsp. *camouii* (Figure 105B): Playa Hermosa, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (drawing of JN-3250; US Alg. Coll.-158450).
- Sargassum sinicola* subsp. *camouii* (Figure 106): Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (JN-6064; US Alg. Coll.-158477).
- Sargassum herporhizum* (Figure 107): Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (JN-4963; US Alg. Coll.-158382).
- Sargassum herporhizum* (Figure 108A): Playa Estación, Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. E. Bucher (JN-5870b; US Alg. Coll.-158346).
- Sargassum herporhizum* (Figure 108B): West side of large rock, Rocas Consag, Coll. D. G. Lindquist, drawing of (JN-3117; US Alg. Coll.-158356).
- Sargassum brandegeei* (Figure 109A): North side of point Punta Lobos, Puerto de Lobos, Sonora, coll. M. Helvey (JN-6034; US Alg. Coll.-158392).
- Sargassum brandegeei* (Figure 109B,C): Punta Robinson, west side about 2.4 km east of Puerto Libertad, Sonora, Coll. J. N. Norris and K. B. Bucher (JN-4829; US Alg. Coll.-158377).



# References

---

- Abbott, I. A. 1966. Elmer Yale Dawson (1918–1966). *Journal of Phycology* 2(4): 129–132.
- Abbott, I. A. 1972. Taxonomic and Nomenclatural Notes on North Pacific Algae. *Phycologia* 11(3/4): 259–265.
- Abbott, I. A. 1986. A Unique Form of *Valoniopsis pachynema* (Chlorophyta) from French Polynesia. *Cryptogamie, Algologie* 7(2): 161–167.
- Abbott, I. A., and G. J. Hollenberg. 1976. *Marine Algae of California*. xii+[2]+827 pp. Stanford, Calif.: Stanford University Press.
- Abbott, I. A., and J. M. Huisman. 2003a. New Records and Notes on Hawaiian Marine Benthic Chlorophyta, Including *Pseudochlorodesmis abbreviata* (Gilbert) *n. comb.* (Udoteaceae) and *Cladophora luxurians* (Gilbert) *n. comb.* (Cladophoraceae). *Pacific Science* 57(3): 275–285.
- Abbott, I. A., and J. M. Huisman. 2003b. New Species, Observations, and a List of New Records of Brown Algae (Phaeophyceae) from the Hawaiian Islands. *Phycological Research* 5(3)1: 173–185.
- Abbott, I. A., and J. M. Huisman. 2004. *Marine Green and Brown Algae of the Hawaiian Islands*. Bishop Museum Bulletin in Botany, No. 4. xi+260 pp. Honolulu: Bishop Museum Press.
- Acleto O[sorio], C. 1973. Las Algas Marinas del Perú. *Boletín de la Sociedad Peruana de Botánica* 6(1/2): 1–164.
- Acleto O[sorio], C. 1977a. Las Algas Marinas de la Provincia de Pisco, Departamento de Ica, Perú. *Publicaciones del Museo de Historia Natural “Javier Prado,” Botanica, Serie B* 28: 33 pp., [7] pls.
- Acleto O[sorio], C. 1977b. *Nombres Vulgares y Usos de las Algas en el Perú*. Museo de Historia Natural “Javier Prado,” Departamento de Botanica, Serie de Divulgacion, No. 7. 7 pp., [2] pls. Lima: Universidad Nacional Mayor de San Marcos.
- Acleto O[sorio], C. 1980. Notas Sobre las Algas Marinas del Perú, I: Nuevos Registros. *Publicaciones del Museo de Historia Natural “Javier Prado,” Botanica, Serie B* 30: 33 pp.
- Acleto O[sorio], C. 1986. *Algas Marinas Algas del Perú de Importancia Económica*. 2nd ed. Museo de Historia Natural “Javier Prado,” Departamento de Botanica, Serie de Divulgacion, No. 5. 107 pp. Lima: Universidad Nacional Mayor de San Marcos.
- Adams, N. M. 1994. *Seaweeds of New Zealand: An Illustrated Guide*. 360 pp. Christchurch, N. Z.: Canterbury University Press.
- Adanson, M. 1763. *Familles des Plantes*. Volume 2. [i]+[24]+[vi]+640 pp. Paris: Vincent. [Facsimile edition: *Historiae naturalis classica*, No. 46. Lehre: J. Cramer, 1966.]
- Adl, S. M., A. G. B. Simpson, M. A. Farmer, R. A. Andersen, O. R. Anderson, J. Barta, S. S. Bowser, G. Brugerolle, R. A. Fensome, S. Fredericq, T. Y. James, S. Karpov,

- P. Kugrens, J. Krug, C. Lane, L. A. Lewis, J. Lodge, D. H. Lynn, D. G. Mann, R. M. McCourt, L. Mendoza, Ø. Moestrup, S. E. Mozley-Strandridge, T. A. Nerad, C. A. Shearer, A. V. Smirnov, F. Spiegel, and M. F. J. R. Taylor. 2005. The New Higher Level Classification of Eukaryotes with Emphasis on the Taxonomy of Protists. *Journal of Eukaryotic Microbiology* 52(5): 399–432.
- Agardh, C. A. 1811. *Dispositio algarum Sueciae, quam, publico examini subjiciunt Carl Adolph Agardh . . . & Johannes Bruzelius, Scanus. Die xi decembris mdcccxi. Part II, h. & l. s.* Pp. [i]+17–26. Lund: Berling.
- Agardh, C. A. 1817. *Synopsis algarum Scandinaviae, adjecta dispositione universali algarum.* xl+135 pp. Lund: Berling.
- Agardh, C. A. 1820. *Species Algarum Rite Cognitae, cum Synonymis, Differentiis Specificis et Descriptonibus Succinctis. Fucoideae*, Volume 1, Part 1. [iv]+168 pp. Lund: Berling.
- Agardh, C. A. 1822. *Species Algarum Rite Cognitae, Cum Synonymis, Differentiis Specificis et Descriptonibus Succinctis*, Volume 1, Part 2. Pp. [vi]+169–398. Lund: Berling.
- Agardh, C. A. 1823. *Species Algarum Rite Cognitae, Cum Synonymis, Differentiis Specificis et Descriptonibus Succinctis*, Volume 1, Part 2. Pp. 399–531. Lund: Berling.
- Agardh, C. A. 1824. *Systema Algarum.* xxxviii+[1]–312 pp. Lund: Berling.
- Agardh, C. A. 1827. Aufzählung einiger in den österreichischen Ländern gefundenen neuen Gattungen und Arten van Algen, nebst ihrer Diagnostik und beigefügten Bemerkugen. *Flora, Regensburg* 10: 625–646.
- Agardh, C. A. 1828. *Species Algarum Rite Cognitae, cum Synonymis, Differentiis Specificis et Descriptonibus Succinctis*, Volume 2, Part 1. [I]+lxxvi+189 pp. Greifswald: Ernst Mauritius.
- Agardh, J. G. 1841. In Historiam Algarum Symbolae. *Linnaea* 15: 1–50, 443–457.
- Agardh, J. G. 1847. Nya alger från Mexico. *Öfversigt af Konglige Vetenskaps-Akademiens Förhandlingar, Stockholm* 4(1): 5–17.
- Agardh, J. G. 1848. *Species Genera et Ordines Algarum, seu Descriptions Succinctae Specierum, Generum et Ordinum, Quibus Algarum Regnum Constituitur, Volume 1: Species Genera et Ordines Fucoidearum.* . . . [iii]+viii+363 pp. Lund: C. W. K. Gleerup.
- Agardh, J. G. 1854. Nya algformer. *Öfversigt af Kongliga Vetenskaps-Ademiens Förhandlingar, Stockholm* 11: 107–111.
- Agardh, J. G. 1873. Till algerne systematik, Nya bidrag . . . [Part 1, Nos. 1–3]. *Lunds Universitets Årsskrift, Afdelningen for Mathematik och Naturvetenskap* 9(8): 1–71.
- Agardh, J. G. 1882. Till algerne systematik, Nya bidrag . . . [Part 2, Nos. 4–5]. *Lunds Universitets Årsskrift, ny foeljd, Afdelningen for Mathematik och Naturvetenskap* 17(4): 1–134+[2], pls. 1–3.
- Agardh, J. G. 1883. Till algerne systematik, Nya bidrag. [Part 3, No. 6]. *Lunds Universitets Årsskrift, ny foeljd, Afdelningen for Mathematik och Naturvetenskap* 19(2): 1–177+[4], pls. 1–4.
- Agardh, J. G. 1887. Till algerne systematik, Nya bidrag. [Part 5, No. 8]. *Lunds Universitets Årsskrift, ny foeljd, Afdelningen for Mathematik och Naturvetenskap* 23: 1–174+[6], pls. 1–5.
- Agardh, J. G. 1889. Species Sargassorum Australiae, descriptae et depositae. *Kongliga Svenska Vetenskaps-Akademiens Handlingar* 23(3): [1]–133, 31 pls.
- Agardh, J. G. 1894. Analecta algologica. Observationes de speciebus algarum minus cognitae earumque dispositione. Continuatio I. *Lunds Universitets Årsskrift, Andra Afdelningen, Kongliga Fysiografiska Sällskapet i Lund Handlingar* 29(9): 1–144, pls. 1–2.
- Agardh, J. G. 1896. Analecta algologica. Observationes de speciebus algarum minus cognitae earumque dispositione. Continuatio III. *Lunds Universitets Årsskrift, Andra Afdelningen, Kongliga Fysiografiska Sällskapet i Lund Handlingar* 32(2): 1–140+[8], pl. 1.
- Aguila-Ramírez, N., A. Gaspar-Figueroa, I. Enciso-Padilla, and M. R. Mora-Navarro. 1998. Algas marinas de la costa sur de Jalisco. *Boletín del Instituto de Botánica, Universidad de Guadalajara* 5: 507–514.
- Aguilar-Rosas, L. E. 1982. Occurrence de algas cafées (Phaeophyta) en la Bahía Todos Santos, Baja California. *Ciencias Marinas* 8(2): 25–34.
- Aguilar-Rosas, L. E. 1985. New Records and Range Extensions for Marine Algae of the Pacific Coast of Baja California, México, II. *Ciencias Marinas* 11(2): 69–76.
- Aguilar-Rosas, L. E., and R. Aguilar-Rosas. 1993. Ficogeografía de las algas pardas (Phaeophyta) de la Península de Baja California. In *Biodiversidad Marina y Costera de México*, S. I. Salazar-Vallejo and N. E. González, eds., pp. 194–206. México D.F.: Comisión Nacional para el Conocimiento y Aprovechamiento de la Biodiversidad y Centro de Investigaciones de Quintana Roo.
- Aguilar-Rosas, L. E., R. Aguilar-Rosas, L. E. Mateo-Cid, and A. C. Mendoza-González. 2002. Marine Algae from the Gulf of Santa Clara, Sonora, México. *Hydrobiologia* 477(1–3): 231–238.
- Aguilar-Rosas, L. E., R. Aguilar-Rosas, A. C. Mendoza-González, and L. E. Mateo-Cid. 2000. Marine Algae from the Northeast Coast of Baja California, México. *Botanica Marina* 43(2): 127–139.
- Aguilar-Rosas, L. E., R. Aguilar-Rosas, I. Pacheco-Ruíz, E. Bórquez-Garcés, M. A. Aguilar-Rosas, and E. Urbietta-González. 1982. Algas de importancia económica de la región noroccidental de Baja California, México. *Ciencias Marinas* (1): 49–63. [See also Nota Editorial: Correccion, *Ciencias Marinas* 9(1): 169–170, 1983.]
- Aguilar-Rosas, L. E., E. Baltazar-Valenzuela, and I. Pacheco-Ruíz. 1985. Las algas bentónicas de la rada Portuaria de Ensenada, Baja California. *Ciencias Marinas* 11(3): 121–126.
- Aguilar-Rosas, L. E., and H. Bertsch. 1983. Algas verdes (Chlorophyta) de la Bahía Todos Santos, Baja California, México. *Ciencias Marinas* 9(1): 111–124.
- Aguilar-Rosas, L. E., M. J. Ochoa-Izaguirre, and R. Aguilar-Rosas. 2006. Nuevos registros de *Acetabularia schenckii* y *Acetabularia farlowii* (Chlorophyta) para la costa del Pacífico de México. *Hidrobiológica* 16(3): 267–270.
- Aguilar-Rosas, L. E., and I. Pacheco-Ruíz. 1985. Nuevos registros y ampliación de rango geográfico para algas marinas de la costa del Pacífico de Baja California, México, II. *Ciencias Marinas* 11(2): 69–76.



- Aguilar-Rosas, L. E., and I. Pacheco-Ruíz. 1986. Variaciones estacionales de las algas verdes (Chlorophyta) de la costa noroccidental de la Península de Baja California. *Ciencias Marinas* 12(1): 73–78.
- Aguilar-Rosas, L. E., and I. Pacheco-Ruíz. 1989. Influencia de desechos municipales-industriales sobre macroalgas del norte de Baja California, México. *Boletín del Instituto Oceanográfico (Cumaná)* 28(1/2): 77–84.
- Aguilar-Rosas, R. 1982. Identificación y distribución de las algas marinas del Estero de Punta Banda, Baja California, México. *Ciencias Marinas* 8(1): 78–87.
- Aguilar-Rosas, R. 1994. Notas ficológicas, I: Primer registro de *Cutleria cylindrica* Okamura (Cutleriaceae, Phaeophyta) par alas costas del Pacífico mexicano. *Acta Botánica Mexicana* 29: 55–60.
- Aguilar-Rosas, R., and L. E. Aguilar-Rosas. 1985. *Sargassum muticum* (Yendo) Fensholt (Fucales, Phaeophyta) en las costas de Baja California, México. *Ciencias Marinas* 11(3): 127–129.
- Aguilar-Rosas, R., and L. E. Aguilar-Rosas. 1993. Cronología de la colonización de *Sargassum muticum* (Phaeophyta) en las costas de la Península de Baja California, México (1971–1990). *Revista de Investigación Científica, Serie Ciencias Marinas UABCS* 4(1): 41–51.
- Aguilar-Rosas, R., L. E. Aquilar-Rosas, and F. F. Pedroche. 2005a. *Ulva fasciata* Delile (Ulveaceae, Chlorophycota): A Species Newly Introduced into Pacific México. *Botánica Marina* 48(1): 46–51.
- Aguilar-Rosas, R., L. E. Aquilar-Rosas, and S. Shimada. 2008. First Record of *Ulva pertusa* Kjellman (Ulvales, Chlorophyta) in the Pacific Coast of Mexico. *Algae* 23(3): 201–207.
- Aguilar-Rosas, R., and M. A. Aguilar-Rosas. 1986. Nuevos registros de algas marinas para la flora de Baja California, México. *Ciencias Marinas* 12(2): 17–20.
- Aguilar-Rosas, R., and M. A. Aguilar-Rosas. 1994. Estudio florístico de las algas marinas bentónicas del ejido San Jose, Baja California, México. *Ciencias Marinas* 20(4): 511–534.
- Aguilar-Rosas, R., M. López-Carrillo, and L. E. Aquilar-Rosas. 2005b. Macroalgas marinas de la Bahía de San Quintín, Baja California, México. *Polibotánica* 19: 19–38.
- Aguilar-Rosas, R., and A. Machado-Galindo. 1990. Ecological Aspects of *Sargassum muticum* (Fucales, Phaeophyta) in Baja California, México: Reproductive Phenology and Epiphytes. In *Proceedings of the 13th International Seaweed Symposium*, S. C. Lindstrom and P. W. Gabrielson, eds. *Hydrobiologia* 204/205: 185–190.
- Aguilar-Rosas, R., I. Pacheco-Ruíz, and L. E. Aquilar-Rosas. 1984a. Nuevos registros y algunas notas para la flora algal marina de la costa noroccidental de Baja California, México. *Ciencias Marinas* 10(2): 149–158.
- Aguilar-Rosas, R., I. Pacheco-Ruíz, and L. E. Aquilar-Rosas. 1984b. New Records and Some Notes about the Marine Algal Flora of the Northwest Coast of Baja California, México. *Ciencias Marinas* 10(2): 159–166.
- Aguilar-Rosas, R., I. Pacheco-Ruíz, and L. E. Aquilar-Rosas. 1990. Algas marinas de las Islas Todos Santos, Baja California, México. *Ciencias Marinas* 16(2): 117–129.
- Ajisaka, T. 1984. The life history of *Leathesia japonica* Inagaki (Phaeophyta, Chordariales) in culture. *Japanese Journal of Phycology (Sôru)* 32(4): 234–242.
- Ajisaka, T. 1989. Plurilocular Sporangia and the Development of plurispores in *Isbiga okamurai* Yendo (Phaeophyceae) from the Kada Coast, Wakayama Prefecture in Japan. *Japanese Journal of Phycology (Sôru)* 37(1): 17–22.
- Ajisaka, T., and I. Umezaki. 1978. The Life History of *Sphaerotrachia divaricata* (Ag.) Kylin (Phaeophyta, Chordariales) in Culture. *Japanese Journal of Phycology (Sôru)* 26(2): 53–59.
- Ajisaka, T., T. Noro, G. C. Trono Jr., Y.-M. Chiang, and T. Yoshida. 1994. Several *Sargassum* Species (Subgenus *Sargassum*) in East Asia with Furcately Branching Leaves. In *Taxonomy of Economic Seaweeds, with Reference to Some Pacific Species*. Volume 4, I. A. Abbott, ed., pp. 9–22. La Jolla: California Sea Grant College Program, University of California, San Diego.
- Allender, B. M., and G. T. Kraft. 1983. The Marine Algae of Lord Howe Island (New South Wales): The Dictyotales and Cutleriales (Phaeophyta). *Brunonia* 6(1): 73–130.
- Allison, E. C. 1964. Geology of Areas Bordering the Gulf of California. In *A Symposium: Marine Geology of the Gulf of California*, T. H. van Andel and G. S. Shor, eds., pp. 3–29. American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir, No. 3. Tulsa, Okla.: American Association of Petroleum Geologists.
- Altamirano-Cerecedo, M. del Carmen, and R. Riosmena-Rodríguez. 2007. Vegetative and Reproductive Variability of *Dictyota crenulata* (Phaeophyta: Dictyotales) along the Central and Southwestern Gulf of California, México. *Pacific Science* 61(4): 575–586.
- Álvarez-Borrego, S. 1983. Gulf of California. In *Volume 26: Estuaries and Enclosed Seas*, B. H. Ketchum, ed., pp. 427–449, *Ecosystems of the World*. New York: Elsevier Scientific Publishing Co.
- Álvarez-Borrego, S. 2002. Physical Oceanography. In *A New Island Biogeography of the Sea of Cortés*, T. J. Case, M. L. Cody, and E. Ezcurra, eds., pp. 41–59. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Álvarez-Borrego, S., L. A. Galindo-Bect, and B. P. Flores-Baez. 1973. Hidrología. In *Volume 1: Estudio Químico sobre la Contaminación por Insecticidas en la Desembocadura del Río Colorado* pp. 6–177. *Reporte a la Dirección de Acuicultura de la Secretaría de Recursos Hidráulicos*. Ensenada, Mexico: Universidad Autónoma de Baja California.
- Álvarez-Sánchez, L. G., A. Badan-Dangon, and J. M. Robles. 1984. Lagrangian Observations of Near-Surface Currents in Canal de Ballenas. *CalCOFI Reports* 25: 35–42.
- Amade, P., and R. Lemée. 1998. Chemical Defence of the Mediterranean Alga *Caulerpa taxifolia*: Variations in Caulerpenyne Production. *Aquatic Toxicology (Amsterdam)* 43(4): 287–300.
- Amico, V., G. Oriente, M. Piattelli, C. Tringali, E. Fattorusso, S. Magno, and L. Mayol. 1978. Caulerpenyne, An Unusual Sesquiterpenoid from the Green Alga *Caulerpa prolifera*. *Tetrahedron Letters* 1978: 3593–3596.
- Amsler, C. D. 1984. Culture and Field Studies of *Acinetospora crinata* (Carmichael) Sauvageau (Ectocarpaceae, Phaeophyceae) in North Carolina (USA). *Phycologia* 23(3): 377–382.

- Anaya-Reyna, G., and R. Riosmena-Rodríguez. 1996. Macroalgas del arrecife coralino del Cabo Pulmo-Los Frailes, B. C. S., México. *Revista de Biología Tropical* 44(4): 861–864.
- Andersen, R. A. 2004a. A Historical Review of Heterokont Phylogeny. *Phycological Research* 52(2): 153–162.
- Andersen, R. A. 2004b. Biology and Systematics of Heterokont and Haptophyte Algae. *American Journal of Botany* 91(10): 1508–1522.
- Anderson, C. A., J. W. Durham, F. P. Shepard, M. L. Natland, and R. Revelle. 1950. *1940 E. W. Scripps Cruise to the Gulf of California*. Geological Society of America Memoir, No. 43. vi pp. ; Pt. I:viii+53 pp. ; Pt. II:vii+216 pp. ; Pt. III:vii+32 pp. ; Pt. IV:iv+55 pp. ; Pt. V: 8 pp. ; 11 maps. New York: Geological Society of America.
- Anderson, R. J., and J. J. Bolton. 1989. Growth and Fertility, in Relation to Temperature and Photoperiod, in South African *Desmarestia firma* (Phaeophyceae). *Botanica Marina* 32(2): 149–158.
- Anderson, R. J., and B. Velimirov. 1982. An Experimental Investigation of the Palatability of Kelp Bed Algae to the Sea Urchin *Parechinus anplousus* Leske. *Pubblicazioni della Stazione Zoologica di Napoli I: Marine Ecology* 3: 357–373.
- Apartado F. P., K. M. Dreckmann, and A. Senties-Granados. 2002. *Caulerpa mexicana* Sonder ex Kützting (Caulerpaceae, Chlorophyta) in México. *Polibotánica* 13: 97–105.
- Arasaki, S. 1943. On the Life-History of *Ishige foliacea* Okamura. *The Botanical Magazine (Tokyo)* 57: 34–41. (In Japanese.)
- Ardissone, F. 1887. Phycologia mediterranea. Parte IIA, Oosporee-Zoosporee-Schizosporee. *Memorie della Società Crittogamologica Italiana*, 2: 129–325.
- Areschoug, J. E. 1843. Algarum (phycearum) minus rite cognitarium pugillus secundus. *Linnaea* 17: 257–269, pl. IX.
- Areschoug, J. E. 1847. Phycearum, quae in maribus Scandinaviae crescunt, enumeratio. Sectio prior: Fucaceae continens. *Nova Acta Regiae Societatis Scientiarum Upsaliensis* 13: 223–382, pls. 1–9.
- Areschoug, J. E. 1850. Phycearum, quae in maribus Scandinaviae crescunt, enumeratio. Sectio posterior, Ulvaceae continens. *Nova Acta Regiae Societatis Scientiarum Upsaliensis* 14: 385–454, pls. 1–3.
- Areschoug, J. E. 1876. De tribus Laminariis et de Stephano-cystide osmundaceae (Turn.) Trev. observationes praecursoriae. *Botaniska Notiser* 1876(3): 65–73.
- Astro, R. 1976. *Edward F. Ricketts*. BSU Western Writers Series, No. 21. 48 pp. Boise, Idaho: Boise State University.
- Astro, R. 2001. Introduction. In Steinbeck, J., *The Log from the "Sea of Cortez."* 320 pp., [republished 2001]. Penguin Modern Classics, New York: Penguin Group.
- Ávila-Ortiz, A. 2003. Una variedad nueva de *Padina mexicana* (Dictyotaceae) para el Pacífico Tropical mexicano. *Hidrobiológica* 13(1): 69–74.
- Ávila-Ortiz, A., and F. F. Pedroche. 1999. *Padina tetrastratica* Hauck, a Misapplied Name for *P. crispata* Thivy in Pacific Mexico. *Botanica Marina* 42(4): 355–358.
- Ávila-Ortiz, A., and F. F. Pedroche. 2005. El género *Padina* (Dictyotaceae, Phaeophyceae) en la región tropical del Pacífico mexicano. *Monografías Ficológicas* 2: 139–171.
- Badan-Dangon, A. 1998. Coastal Circulation from the Galápagos to the Gulf of California. In *Volume 11: The Global Coastal Ocean: Regional Studies and Syntheses*, A. R. Robinson and K. H. Brink, eds., pp. 315–343, *The Sea*. New York: John Wiley & Sons.
- Badan-Dangon, A., C. E. Dorman, M. A. Merrifield, and C. D. Winant. 1991. The Lower Atmosphere over the Gulf of California. *Journal of Marine Research* 96(C9): 16,877–16,896.
- Bakker, F. T., J. L. Olsen, and W. T. Stam. 1995. Global Phylogeography in the Cosmopolitan Species *Cladophora vagabunda* (Chlorophyta) Based on Nuclear rDNA Internal Transcribed Spacer Sequences. *European Journal of Phycology* 30(3): 197–208.
- Bakker, F. T., J. L. Olsen, W. T. Stam, and C. van den Hoek. 1994. The *Cladophora* Complex (Chlorophyta): New Views Based on 18S rRNA Gene Sequences. *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 3(4): 365–382.
- Barton, E. S. 1898. On the Fruit of *Chnoospora fastigata*. *Journal of the Linnean Society, Botany* 24: 450–453, pl. 18.
- Batters, E. A. L. 1893. On the Necessity of Removing *Ectocarpus secundus* Kütz. to a New Genus. *Grevillea* 21: 85–86.
- Batters, E. A. L. 1902. A Catalogue of the British Marine Algae, Being a List of All the Species of Seaweeds Known to Occur on the Shores of the British Islands, with the Localities Where They Are Found. *Journal of Botany, British and Foreign* 40(Suppl.): 1–107.
- Baynes, T. W. 1999. Factors Structuring a Subtidal Encrusting Community in the Southern Gulf of California. *Bulletin of Marine Science* 64(3): 419–450.
- Beaty, J. J. 1964. *Plants on His Back: A Life of Edward Palmer, Adventurous Botanist and Collector*. 182 pp. New York: Pantheon Books.
- Beier, E. 1997. A Numerical Investigation of the Annual Variability in the Gulf of California. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 27(5): 615–632.
- Beltrán-Magallanes, J. L. 2002. Las macroalgas de Sinaloa: Un recurso olvidado. In *Atlas de la Biodiversidad de Sinaloa*, J. L. Cifuentes-Lemus and J. Gaxiola-López, eds., pp. 43–48. Culiacán, Sinaloa: El Colegio de Sinaloa.
- Benson, M. R. 1986. A Demographic study of *Dictyopteris undulata* Holmes (Dictyotales, Phaeophyta) at Santa Catalina Island. *Phycologia* 25(4): 448–454.
- Berger, S., U. Fettweiss, S. Gleissberg, L. B. Liddle, U. Richter, H. Sawitsky, and G. C. Zuccarello. 2003. 18S rDNA Phylogeny and Evaluation of Cap Development in Polyphysaceae (Formerly Acetabulariaceae; Dasycladales, Chlorophyta). *Phycologia* 42(5): 506–561.
- Berger, S., and M. J. Kaever. 1992. *Dasycladales: An Illustrated Monograph of a Fascinating Algal Order*. 247 pp., 23 pls. Stuttgart: George Thieme Verlag.
- Berger, S., and L. B. Liddle. 2003. The Life Cycle of *Acetabularia* (Dasycladales, Chlorophyta): Textbook Accounts Are Wrong (Commentary). *Phycologia* 42(2): 204–207.
- Bessey, C. E. 1907. A Synopsis of Plant Phyla. *University of Nebraska Studies* 7: 275–373.
- Blackman, F. F., and A. G. Tansley. 1902. A Revision of the Classification of the Green Algae. *New Phytologist* 1: 133–144.

- Blair, S. M. 1983. Taxonomic Treatment of the *Chaetomorpha* and *Rhizoclonium* Species (Cladophorales; Chlorophyta) in New England. *Rhodora* 85(842): 175–211.
- Blair, S. M., A. C. Mathieson, and D. P. Cheney. 1982. Morphological and Electrophoretic Investigations of Selected Species of *Chaetomorpha* (Chlorophyta; Cladophorales). *Phycologia* 21(2): 164–172.
- Bliding, C. 1963. A Critical Survey of European Taxa in Ulvales, Part I: *Calosiphonia*, *Percursaria*, *Blidingia*, *Enteromorpha*. *Opera Botanica* 8(3): 1–160.
- Bliding, C. 1968. A Critical Survey of European Taxa in Ulvales, II: *Ulva*, *Ulvaria*, *Monostroma*, *Kornmannia*. *Botaniska Notiser* 121: 535–629.
- Blinks, L. R. 1951. Physiology and Biochemistry of Algae. In *Manual of Phycology*, G. M. Smith, ed., pp. 263–291. New York: The Ronald Press Co.
- Blomster, J., C. A. Maggs, and M. J. Stanhope. 1998. Molecular and Morphological Analysis of *Enteromorpha intestinalis* and *E. compressa* (Chlorophyta) in the British Isles. *Journal of Phycology* 34(2): 319–340.
- Blomster, J., C. A. Maggs, and M. J. Stanhope. 1999. Extensive Intraspecific Morphological Variation in *Enteromorpha muscooides* (Chlorophyta) Revealed by Molecular Analysis. *Journal of Phycology* 35(3): 575–586.
- Bonneau, E. R. 1977. Polymorphic Behavior of *Ulva lactuca* (Chlorophyta) in Axenic Culture, I: Occurrence of *Enteromorpha*-Like Plants in Haploid Clones. *Journal of Phycology* 13(2): 133–140.
- Boo, S. M., and Y. T. Chou. 1986. Two Species of *Sphacelaria* New to Korea. *Korean Journal of Phycology* 1(1): 95–101.
- Børgesen, F. 1905. Contributions à la connaissance du genre *Siphonocladus* Schmitz. *Oversigt over det Kongelige Danske Videnskabernes Selskabs Forhandlinger og dets Medlemmers Arbejder* 1905(3): 259–291.
- Børgesen, F. 1911. Some Chlorophyceae from the Danish West Indies. *Botanisk Tidsskrift* 31: 127–152.
- Børgesen, F. 1912a. Two Crustaceous Brown Algae from the Danish West Indies. *Nuova Notarisia* 23: 123–129.
- Børgesen, F. 1912b. Some Chlorophyceae from the Danish West Indies, II. *Botanisk Tidsskrift* 32: 241–273.
- Børgesen, F. 1913. The Marine Algae of the Danish West Indies, Part I: Chlorophyceae. *Dansk Botanisk Arkiv* 1(4): 1–158+[2]+map.
- Børgesen, F. 1914. The Marine Algae of the Danish West Indies, Part 2: Phaeophyceae. *Dansk Botanisk Arkiv* 2(2), 1–66+[2].
- Børgesen, F. 1920. The Marine Algae of the Danish West Indies, Part III: Rhodophyceae (6), With Addenda to the Chlorophyceae, Phaeophyceae and Rhodophyceae. *Dansk Botanisk Arkiv* 3(1f): 369–498+[6].
- Børgesen, F. 1924. Marine Algae from Easter Island. In *Volume 2: Botany*, Part 3, No. 9, C. Skottsberg, ed., pp. 247–309, *The Natural History of Juan Fernandez and Easter Island*. Uppsala: Almqvist & Wiksells Boktryckeri AB.
- Børgesen, F. 1925. The Marine Algae from the Canary Islands, Especially from Teneriffe and Gran Canaria, I: Chlorophyceae. *Det Kongelige Danske Videnskabernes Selskabs, Biologiske Meddelelser*, 5(3): 1–123.
- Børgesen, F. 1930. Some Indian Green and Brown Algae, Especially from the Shores of the Presidency of Bombay. *Journal of Indian Botanical Society* 9(2–3): 151–174.
- Børgesen, F. 1932. A Revision of Forsskål's Algae Mentioned in Flora Aegyptiaco-Arabica and Found in his Herbarium in the Botanical Museum of the University of Copenhagen. *Dansk Botanisk Arkiv* 8(2): 1–14. 1 pl.
- Børgesen, F. 1934. Some Marine Algae from the Northern Part of the Arabian Sea with Remarks on Their Geographical Distribution. *Det Kongelige Danske Videnskabernes Selskab, Biologiske Meddelelser* 11(6): 1–72.
- Børgesen, F. 1940. Some Marine Algae from Mauritius, I: Chlorophyceae. *Det Kongelige Danske Videnskabernes Selskab, Biologiske Meddelelser* 15(4): 1–81, 3 pls..
- Børgesen, F. 1950. *Vaughaniella*, a New Genus of the Dictyotaceae. *Det Kongelige Danske Videnskabernes Selskab, Biologiske Meddelelser* 18(16): 1–10.
- Bornet, [J.-B.] E. 1891. Note sur quelques *Ectocarpus*. *Bulletin de la Société Botanique de France* 38: 353–372.
- Bory de Saint-Vincent, J. B. G. M. 1804a. *Voyage dans les quatre principales îles des mers d'Afrique, fait par ordre du gouvernement, pendant les années neuf et dix de la République (1801–1802), avec l'histoire de la traversée du Capitaine Baudin jusqu'au Port Louis de l'Île Maurice. . . . Avec une collection de 58 planches, grand in 4., dessinées sur les lieux par l'auteur, et gravées en taille-douce*. Volume 1. xv+[xvi]+408 pp. Atlas. Pls. 1–14, 14 bis, 15–23, 23 bis, 24–56. Paris: F. Buisson.
- Bory de Saint-Vincent, J. B. G. M. 1804b. *Voyage dans les quatre principales îles des mers d'Afrique, fait par ordre du gouvernement, pendant les années neuf et dix de la République (1801–1802), avec l'histoire de la traversée du Capitaine Baudin jusqu'au Port Louis de l'Île Maurice. . . . Avec une collection de 58 planches, grand in 4., dessinées sur les lieux par l'auteur, et gravées en taille-douce*. Volume 2. 431 pp. Paris: F. Buisson.
- Bory de Saint-Vincent, J. B. G. M. 1823. *Dictionnaire classique d'histoire naturelle, Volume 4: CHI–COZ*. Audouin et al., eds., [iii]+628 pp. Paris: Rey et Gravier.
- Bory de Saint-Vincent, J. B. G. M. 1825. Hydroclathre. In *Volume 8: H–INV*, Audouin et al., eds., pp. 419–420, *Dictionnaire classique d'histoire naturelle*. Paris: Rey et Gravier.
- Bory de Saint-Vincent, J. B. G. M. 1827a. *Padina*. In *Volume 12: NUA–PAM*, Audouin et al., eds., pp. 589–591, *Dictionnaire classique d'histoire naturelle*. Paris: Rey et Gravier.
- Bory de Saint-Vincent, J. B. G. M. 1827b [‘1826’]. *Atlas: Histoire naturelle, Botanique*. [i] p., plates 1–13, 13bis, 14–24 [all hand-coloured by Bory], and 25–30, 30bis, 31–38 [by Bessa, uncoloured]. Paris: Arthus Bertrand. [Atlas dated 1826 but published 1827 along with text: *Histoire naturelle, Botanique, Volume 1: Cryptogamie*.]
- Bory de Saint-Vincent, J. B. G. M. 1827c. *Histoire naturelle, Botanique, Volume 1: Cryptogamie*, Parts 1 and 2, L. I. Duperrey, ed., *Voyage autour du monde, exécuté par ordre du Roi, sur la Corvette de sa Majesté, La Coquille, pendant les années 1822, 1823, 1824 et 1825*. Pt. 1, [iii]+49 pp., 6 pls.; Pt. 2, pp. 49–96, 7 pls. Paris: Arthus Bertrand.
- Bory de Saint-Vincent, J. B. G. M. 1828. *Histoire naturelle, Botanique, Volume 1: Cryptogamie*. Parts 3 and 4, L. I.

- Duperrey, ed., *Voyage autour du monde, exécuté par ordre du Roi, sur la Corvette de sa Majesté, La Coquille, pendant les années 1822, 1823, 1824 et 1825*. Pt. 3, pp. 97–136, 7 pls.; Pt. 4, pp. 137–200, 6 pls. Paris: Arthus Bertrand.
- Bory de Saint-Vincent, J. B. G. M. 1829. *Histoire naturelle, Botanique, Volume 1: Cryptogamie*. Parts 5 and 6, L. I. Duperrey, ed., *Voyage autour du monde, exécuté par ordre du Roi, sur la Corvette de sa Majesté, La Coquille, pendant les années 1822, 1823, 1824 et 1825*. Pt. 5, pp. 201–248, 7 pls.; Pt. 6, pp. 249–301, 6 pls. Paris: Arthus Bertrand.
- Borzi, A. 1895. *Studi algologici saggio di ricerche sulla biologia dell'Alga*. Fasciculus 2. Pp. [vii]+119–378, pls. 10–31. Palermo: Alberto Reber.
- Bot, P. V. M., W. T. Stam, S. A. Boele-Bos, C. van den Hoek, and W. van Delden. 1989. Biogeographic and Phylogenetic Studies in Three North Atlantic Species of *Cladophora* (Cladophorales, Chlorophyta) using DNA-DNA Hybridization. *Phycologia* 28(2): 159–168.
- Bot, P. V. M., W. T. Stam, and C. van den Hoek. 1990. Genotypic Relations between Geographic Isolates of *Cladophora laetevirens* and *Cladophora vagabunda*. *Botanica Marina* 33(5): 441–446.
- Brand, F. 1904. Über die Anheftung der Cladophoraceen und über verschiedene plyneseische Forem dieser Familie. *Beiheft zum Botanischen Centralblatt, Abteilung 2: Systematik, Pflanzengeographie, angewandte Botanik*, 18: 165–193, pls. 5–6.
- Bray, N. A. 1988a. Thermohaline Circulation in the Gulf of California. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 93(C5): 4993–5020.
- Bray, N. A. 1988b. Water Mass Formation in the Gulf of California. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 93(C5): 9223–9240.
- Bray, N. A., and J. M. Robles. 1991. Physical Oceanography of the Gulf of California. In *The Gulf and Peninsular Provinces of the Californias*, J. P. Dauphin and B. R. T. Simoneit, eds., pp. 511–553. American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir, No. 47. Tulsa, Okla.: American Association of Petroleum Geologists.
- Brostoff, W. N. 1984. *Sporochmus dotyi* sp. nov. (Sporochnales, Phaeophyta), a Brown Alga from Hawaii. *Pacific Science* 38(2): 177–181.
- Brown, R. W. 1956. *Composition of Scientific Words*. Revised ed. 882 pp. Baltimore: Reese Press. [Reprinted Washington, D. C.: Smithsonian Institution Press, 1979.]
- Brummitt, R. K., and C. E. Powell, eds. 1992. *Authors of Plant Names*. 732 pp. Kew, Richmond, Surrey, UK: Royal Botanic Gardens.
- Brusca, R. C. 1980. *Common Intertidal Invertebrates of the Gulf of California*. 2nd ed. 513 pp. Tucson: University of Arizona Press.
- Brusca, R. C. 1993. The Arizona/Sea of Cortez Years of J. Laurens Barnard. *Journal of Natural History* 27(4): 727–730.
- Brusca, R. C., L. T. Findley, P. A. Hastings, M. E. Hendrickx, J. Torre-Cosio, and A. M. van der Heiden. 2005. Macrofaunal Diversity in the Gulf of California. In *Biodiversity, Ecosystems, and Conservation in Northern México*, J.-L. E. Cartron, G. Ceballos, and R. S. Felger, eds., pp. 179–202. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Brusca, R. C., and D. A. Thomson. 1975. Pulmo Reef: The only “Coral Reef” in the Gulf of California. *Ciencias Marinas* 2(2): 37–53.
- Bucio-Pacheco, M., and K. M. Dreckmann. 1998 [1997]. Chlorophyta (Algas Verdes) marinas bentónicas intermareales de Michoacán, Pacífico Mexicano. *Polibotánica* 6: 41–46.
- Burkhardt, E., and A. F. Peters. 1998. Molecular Evidence from nrDNA ITS Sequences That *Laminariocolax* (Phaeophyceae, Ectocarpales *sensu lato*) Is a Worldwide Clade of Closely Related Kelp Endophytes. *Journal of Phycology* 34(4): 682–691.
- Burr, F. A., and J. A. West. 1970. Light and Electron Microscopic Observations on the Vegetative and Reproductive Structures of *Bryopsis hypnoides*. *Phycologia* 9(1): 17–37.
- Burrows, E. L. 1991. *Seaweeds of the British Isles, Volume 2: Chlorophyta*. xii+238 pp., 9 pls. London: Natural History Museum Publications.
- Calderón de Rzedowski, G., and J. Rzedowski-Rotter. 2000. Laura Huerta Múzquiz (1913–2000). *Acta Botanica Mexicana* 52: 1–3.
- Campbell, D. H. 1945. William Albert Setchell. *Biographical Memoirs of the National Academy of Sciences* 23: 127–147.
- Carballo, J. L., C. Olabarria, and T. Garza-Ozuna. 2002. Analysis of Four Macroalgal Assemblages along the Pacific Mexican Coast during and after the 1997–98 El Niño. *Ecosystems* 5: 749–760.
- Caram, B. 1965. Recherches sur la reproduction et le cycle sexué de quelques Phéophycées. *Vie et Milieu* 16: 21–222.
- Cardinal, A. 1964. Étude sur les Ectocarpacées de la Manche. *Beihfte zur Nova Hedwigia* 15: 1–86, figs. 1–41.
- Carlberg, G. E., E. Percival, and M. A. Rhaman. 1978. Carbohydrates of the Seaweeds *Desmarestia ligulata* and *D. firma*. *Phytochemistry* 17(8): 1289–1292.
- Carreño, A. L., and J. Helenes. 2002. Geology and Ages of the Islands. In *A New Island Biogeography of the Sea of Cortés*, T. J. Case, M. L. Cody, and E. Ezcurra, eds., pp. 14–40. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Carrillo, L., and E. Palacios-Hernández. 2002. Seasonal Evolution of the Geostrophic Circulation in the Northern Gulf of California. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 54(2): 157–173.
- Carriquiry, J. D., A. Sánchez, and V. F. Camacho-Ibar. 2001. Sedimentation in the Northern Gulf of California after Cessation of the Colorado River Discharge. *Sedimentary Geology* 144(1–2): 37–62.
- Cartron, J.-L. E., G. Ceballos, and R. S. Felger, eds. 2005a. *Biodiversity, Ecosystems, and Conservation in Northern México*. xvi+496 pp. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Cartron, J.-L. E., G. Ceballos, and R. S. Felger. 2005b. Biodiversity, Ecosystems, and Conservation: Prospects for Northern Mexico. In *Biodiversity, Ecosystems, and Conservation in Northern México*, J.-L. E. Cartron, G. Ceballos, and R. S. Felger, eds., pp. 3–7. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Case, T. J., M. L. Cody, and E. Ezcurra, eds. 2002. *A New Island Biogeography of the Sea of Cortés*. xvii+669 pp. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Cavalier-Smith, T. 1981. Eukaryotic Kingdoms: Seven or Nine? *Biosystems* 14: 461–481.

- Cavalier-Smith, T. 1986. The Kingdom Chromista: Origin and Systematics. In *Progress in Phycological Research* 4, F. E. Round and D. J. Chapman, eds., pp. 309–347. Bristol, U. K.: BioPress Ltd.
- Cavalier-Smith, T. 1998. A Revised Six-Kingdom System of Life. *Biological Reviews of the Cambridge Philosophical Society* 73(3): 203–266.
- Chace, F. A. Jr. 1978. Waldo LaSalle Schmitt, 25 June 1887–5 August 1977. *Crustaceana* 34(1): 83–90.
- Chapman, A. R. O. 1972a. Morphological Variation and Its Taxonomic Implications in the Ligulate Members of the Genus *Desmarestia* Occurring on the West Coast of North America. *Syesis* 5(1): 1–20.
- Chapman, A. R. O. 1972b. Species Delimitation in the Filiform, Oppositely Branched Members of the Genus *Desmarestia* Lamour. (Phaeophyceae, Desmarestiales) in the Northern Hemisphere. *Phycologia* 11(2–3): 225–231.
- Chapman, V. J. 1939. Some Algal Complexities. *Rhodora* 41(481): 19–28.
- Chapman, V. J. 1953. Phylogenetic Problems in the Chlorophyceae. In *Proceedings of the Seventh Pacific Congress (New Zealand)*, Volume 5, pp. 55–68. Auckland: Whitcome and Tombs, Ltd.
- Chapman, V. J. 1956. The Marine Algae of New Zealand. Part I: Myxophyceae and Chlorophyceae. *Journal of the Linnean Society of London, Botany*, 55(360): 333–501, pls. 24–50.
- Chappell, D. F., C. J. O’Kelly, L. W. Wilcox, and G. L. Floyd. 1990. Zoospore Flagellar Apparatus Architecture and the Taxonomic Position of *Phaeophila dendroides* (Ulvophyceae, Chlorophyta). *Phycologia* 29(4): 515–538.
- Chávez B[arrear], M. L. 1972. Estudio de la flora marina de la Bahía de Zihuatanejo y lugares adyacentes. In *Memorias de la IVth Congreso Nacional de Oceanografía (México)*, J. Carranza, ed., pp. 265–271. México D. F.: Universidad Nacional Autónoma México.
- Chávez B[arrear], M. L. 1980. Distribución del género *Padina* en las costas de México. *Anales de la Escuela Nacional de Ciencias Biológicas*, 23(1–4): 45–51.
- Chihara, M. 1953. Studies on the Life History of the Green Algae in the Warm Seas around Japan (2), on the Life History of *Valonia macrophysa* Kütz. *Journal of Japanese Botany* 28(12): 353–361.
- Chihara, M. 1959. Studies on The Life History of the Green Algae in the Warm Seas around Japan (9), Supplementary Note on the Life History of *Valonia*. *Journal of Japanese Botany* 34(9): 257–266.
- Chihara, M. 1968. Field, Culturing and Taxonomic Studies of *Ulva fenestrata* P. & R. and *Ulva scagelii* sp. nov. (Chlorophyceae) in British Columbia and Northern Washington. *Syesis* 1(1–2): 87–102.
- Chihara, M. 1969. *Pseudogloioiphloea okamurae* (Setchell) comb. nov. and *Ishige sinicola* (Setchell et Gardner) comb. nov. *Bulletin of the Japanese Society of Phycology* 17(1): 1–4.
- Cho, G. Y., S. H. Lee, and S. M. Boo. 2004. A New Brown Algal Order, Ishigeales (Phaeophyceae), Established on the Basis of Plastid Protein-Coding *rbcL*, *psaA*, and *psbA* Region Comparisons. *Journal of Phycology* 40(5): 921–936.
- Cho, G. Y., F. Rousseau, B. de Reviers, and S. M. Boo. 2006. Phylogenetic Relationships within the Fucales (Phaeophyceae) Assessed by the Photosystem I Coding *psaA* Sequences. *Phycologia* 45(5): 512–519.
- Christensen, T. 1957. *Chaetomorpha linum* in the Attached State. *Botanisk Tidsskrift, Udgivet af den Botaniske Forening Kjøbenhavn* 73: 311–316.
- Christensen, T. 1980. *Algae: A Taxonomic Survey*. Fasciculus 1. 216 pp. Odense, Denmark: AiO Tryk.
- Clayton, M. M. 1974. Studies on the Development, Life History and Taxonomy of the Ectocarpales (Phaeophyta) in Southern Australia. *Australian Journal of Botany* 22(4): 743–813.
- Clayton, M. M. 1975. A Study of Variation in Australian Species of *Colpomenia* (Phaeophyta, Scytosiphonales). *Phycologia* 14(4): 187–195.
- Clayton, M. M. 1982. Life History Studies in the Ectocarpales (Phaeophyta): Contributions toward the Understanding of Evolutionary Processes. *Botanica Marina* 25(1): 111–116.
- Clemente y Rubio, S. de Roxas. 1807. *Ensayo sobre las variedades de la vid común que vegetan en Andalucía*, pp. 308–322 (Lista Tercera y Última). Madrid: Imprenta de Villalpando.
- Clifton, K. E. 1997. Mass Spawning by Green Algae on Coral Reefs. *Science* 275(5303): 1116–1118.
- Clifton, K. E., and L. M. Clifton. 1999. The Phenology of Sexual Reproduction by Green Algae (Bryopsidales) on Caribbean Coral Reefs. *Journal of Phycology* 35(1): 25–34.
- Collins, F. S. 1901. The Algae of Jamaica. *Proceedings of the American Academy of Arts and Science* 37: 231–270.
- Collins, F. S. 1903. The Ulvaceae of North America. *Rhodora* 5(1): 1–31, pls. 41–43.
- Collins, F. S. 1909a. New Species of *Cladophora*. *Rhodora* 11(122): 17–20, pl. 78.
- Collins, F. S. 1909b. The Green Algae of North America. *Tufts College Studies* 2(3): 77–480, pls. 1–18. [Reprinted *Bibliotheca Phycologica* 11. 1970.]
- Collins, F. S. 1912. The Green Algae of North America, Supplementary Paper. *Tufts College Studies*, 3(2): 69–109, pls. 1–2.
- Collins, F. S., and A. B. Hervey. 1917. The Algae of Bermuda. *Proceedings of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences* 53: 1–195.
- Collins, F. S., I. Holden, and W. A. Setchell, eds. 1899. *Phycotheca Boreali-Americana. A Collection of Dried Specimens of the Algae of North America*. Exsiccata Fascicle 13, nos. 601–650. Malden, Mass.: Editors.
- Collins, F. S., I. Holden, and W. A. Setchell, eds. 1901a. *Phycotheca Boreali-Americana. A Collection of Dried Specimens of the Algae of North America*. Exsiccata Fascicle 17, nos. 801–850. Malden, Mass.: Editors.
- Collins, F. S., I. Holden, and W. A. Setchell, eds. 1901b. *Phycotheca Boreali-Americana. A Collection of Dried Specimens of the Algae of North America*. Exsiccata Fascicle 18, nos. 851–900. Malden, Mass.: Editors.
- Compère, P. 2003. Report of the Committee for Algae, 7. *Taxon* 52(2): 339–340.
- Coppejans, E., F. Leliaert, and O. De Clerck. 2000 [1999]. Annotated List of New Records of Marine Macroalgae for Kenya and Tanzania, Since Isaac’s and Jaasund’s Publications. *Biologisch Jaarboek Dodonaea* 67(1): 31–93.

- Corliss, J. O. 1994. An Interim Utilitarian ("User Friendly") Hierarchical Classification and Characterization of the Protoists. *Acta Protozoologica* 33(1): 1–51.
- Cremades, J., and J. L. Pérez-Cirera. 1990. Nuevas combinaciones de algas bentónicas marinas, como resultado del estudio del herbario de Simón de Rojas Clemente y Rubio (1777–1827). *Anales del Jardín Botánico de Madrid* 47: 489–492.
- Cribb, A. B. 1951. Invalidation of the Genus *Vaughaniella*. *Nature* 168(4268): 302.
- Cribb, A. B. 1954. Records of Marine Algae from South-eastern Queensland, I. *Papers of the Department of Biology of the University of Queensland* 3: 15–37.
- Cribb, A. B. 1995. Microscopic Green Algae from Heron Island Reef and Adjacent Reefs. *Proceedings of the Royal Society Queensland* 105(1): 19–41.
- Crouan, P. L., and H. M. Crouan. 1852. *Exsiccatae: Algues marines du Finistère, Volume 1: Fucoidées; p. [1]–[12], nos. 1–112, [vii, index]; Volume 2: Floridées; p. [1]–[12], nos. 113–322, [iv–xi, index]; Volume 3: Zoospermées, p. [1]–[8], nos. 323–404*. Brest: Chez Crouans frères, pharmaciens.
- Crouan, P. L., and H. M. Crouan. 1857. Observations microscopiques sur l'organisation, la fructification et la dissémination de plusieurs genres d'algues appartenant a la famille des Dictyotées. *Bulletin de la Société Botanique de France* 4(1): 24–29.
- Crouan, P. L., and H. M. Crouan. 1859. Notice sur quelques espèces et genres nouveaux d'algues marines de la rade de Brest. *Annales des Sciences Naturelles, Botanique, Série 4*, 12(5): 288–292, pl. 22.
- Crouan, P. L., and H. M. Crouan. 1867. *Florule du Finistère contenant les descriptions de 360 espèces nouvelles de Sporogames, de nombreuses observations et une synonymie des plantes cellulaires et vasculaires qui croissant spontanément dans ce département, accompagnées de trente-deux planches où est représentée l'organographie*. x+262 pp., pls. 1–31+1 suppl. pl. Paris: Friedrich Klincksieck.
- Cruz-Ayala, M. B., M. M. Casas-Valdez, and S. Ortega-García. 1998. Temporal and Spatial Variation of Frondose Benthic Seaweeds in La Paz, B. C. S., Mexico. *Botanica Marina* 41(2): 191–198.
- Cruz-Ayala, M. B., R. A. Núñez-López, and G. E. López. 2001. Seaweeds in the Southern Gulf of California. *Botanica Marina* 44(2): 187–197.
- Cunningham, G. 2004. *Sea of Cortez Cruising Guide, Volume 3: San Carlos*. 3rd ed. 104 pp. Patagonia, Ariz.: Cruising Charts.
- Cunningham, G. 2006a. *Sea of Cortez Cruising Guide, Volume 1: The Lower Gulf of California*. 2nd ed. 179 pp. Patagonia, Ariz.: Cruising Charts.
- Cunningham, G. 2006b. *Sea of Cortez Cruising Guide, Volume 2: The Middle Gulf of California*. 3rd ed. 140 pp. Patagonia, Ariz.: Cruising Charts.
- Danemann, G. D., and E. Ezcurra, eds. 2008. *Bahía de Los Ángeles: Recursos Naturales y Comunidad Línea base 2007*. 740 pp. Ensenada, B. C., Mexico: Pronatura Noroeste A. C., San Diego Natural History Museum, and Instituto Nacional de Ecología.
- Dangeard, P. [J. L.] 1931. *L'Ulveella lens* de Crouan et *l'Ulveella setchellii* sp. nov. *Bulletin de la Société Botanique de France* 78: 312–318, pl. 1.
- Dangeard, P. [J. L.] 1965. Sur cinq espèces d' "*Ulveella*." *Botaniste* 48: 45–64.
- Dangeard, P. [J. L.] 1969. A propos des travaux récents sur le cycle évolutif de quelques Phaeophycées, Phéosporées. *Botaniste* 52: 59–102.
- Daniel, T. F., F. Almeda, and D. E. Breedlove. 1994. John Thomas Howell 1903–1994. *Madroño* 41(3): 234–235.
- Daugbjerg, N., and R. A. Andersen. 1997. A Molecular Phylogeny of Heterokont Algae Based on Analyses of Chloroplast-Encoded *rbcL* Sequence Data. *Journal of Phycology* 33(6): 1031–1041.
- Dawes, C. J., and R. H. Goddard. 1978. Chemical Composition of the Wound Plug and Entire Plants for Species of the Coenocytic Green Alga, *Caulerpa*. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 35(3): 259–263.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1941. Field Observations on the Algae of Gulf of California. *Allan Hancock Pacific Expeditions* 3(7): 115–119.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1944. The Marine Algae of the Gulf of California. *Allan Hancock Pacific Expeditions* 3(10): [v]+189–453.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1945a. Notes on Pacific Coast Marine Algae, II. *Bulletin of the Southern California Academy of Sciences* 44(1): 22–45, 2 pls.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1945b. Marine Algae Associated with Upwelling along the Northwestern Coast of Baja California, Mexico. *Bulletin of the Southern California Academy of Science* 44(2): 57–71.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1945c. An Annotated List of the Marine Algae and Marine Grasses of San Diego County, California. *Occasional Papers of the San Diego Natural History Society*, 7: 1–97. [Reprinted in 1952, with corrections.]
- Dawson, E. Y. 1946a [1945]. New and Unreported Marine Algae from Southern California and Northwestern Mexico. *Bulletin of the Southern California Academy of Science* 44(3): 75–91.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1946b. Lista de las algas marinas de la costa Pacífica de México. *Revista de la Sociedad Mexicana de Historia Natural* 7: 167–215.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1947 [1946]. A Guide to the Literature and Distributions of the Marine Algae of the Pacific Coast of North America. *Memoirs of the Southern California Academy of Sciences* 3(1): 1–134.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1949 [1948]. Resultados preliminares de un reconocimiento de las algas marinas de la costa Pacífica de México. *Revista de la Sociedad Mexicana de Historia Natural* 9(3/4): 215–254, pl. 3.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1950a. Notes on Some Pacific Mexican Dictyotaceae. *Bulletin of the Torrey Botanical Club* 77(2): 83–93.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1950b. A Note on the Vegetation of a New Coastal Upwelling Area of Baja California. *Journal of Marine Research* 9(2): 65–68.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1950c. Notes on Pacific Coast Marine Algae, IV. *American Journal of Botany* 37(2): 149–158.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1950d. Notes on Pacific Coast Marine Algae, V. *American Journal of Botany* 37(5): 337–344.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1950e. On the Status of the Brown Alga, *Dictyota binghamiae* J. Agardh. *Wasmann Journal of Biology* 8(3): 267–269.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1950f. A Giant New *Codium* from Pacific Baja California. *Bulletin of the Torrey Botanical Club* 77(4): 298–300.

- Dawson, E. Y. 1951. A Further Study of Upwelling and Associated Vegetation along Pacific Baja California, Mexico. *Journal of Marine Research* 10(1): 39–58.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1952. Circulation within Bahía Vizcaino, Baja California, and Its Effects on the Marine Vegetation. *American Journal of Botany* 39(7): 425–432.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1953a. Marine Red Algae of Pacific Mexico, Part I: Bangiales to Corallinaceae subf. Corallinoideae. *Allan Hancock Pacific Expeditions* 17(1): 1–239.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1953b. Preliminary Results of a Marine Algal Reconnaissance of the Pacific Mexican Coast. In *Proceeding of the Seventh Pacific Science Congress (New Zealand)*, Volume 5, pp. 1–4. Auckland: Whitcome & Tombs Ltd.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1954a. The Marine Flora of Isla San Benedicto Following the Volcanic Eruption of 1952–1953. *Allan Hancock Foundation Publications Occasional Paper* 16: 1–25.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1954b. Resumen de las investigaciones recientes sobre algas marinas de la costa Pacifica de México, con una synopsis de la literatura, sinonimia y distribucion de las especies descritas. *Revista de la Sociedad Mexicana de Historia Natural* 13: 97–197, i–x. [Reprint of *Revista de la Sociedad Mexicana de Historia Natural* 13: 97–197, 1953, with corrections, index, pagination and addenda.]
- Dawson, E. Y. 1954c. Marine Red Algae of Pacific Mexico, Part 2: Cryptonemiales (continued). *Allan Hancock Pacific Expeditions* 17(2): 240–396.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1954d. Marine Plants in the Vicinity of the Institut Océanographique de Nha Trang, Viêt Nam. *Pacific Science* 8(4): 373–469, map.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1954e [1953]. Notes on Pacific Coast Marine Algae, VI. *Wasmann Journal of Biology* 11(3): 323–351.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1956. Some Marine Algae of the Southern Marshall Islands. *Pacific Science* 10(1): 25–66.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1957a. Notes on Eastern Pacific Insular Marine Algae. *Los Angeles County Museum Contributions in Science* 8: 1–8.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1957b. Marine Algae from the Pacific Costa Rican Gulfs. *Los Angeles County Museum Contributions in Science* 15: 1–28.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1958. Notes on Pacific Coast Marine Algae, VII. *Bulletin of the Southern California Academy of Sciences* 57(2): 65–80.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1959a. Marine Algae from the 1958 Cruise of the *Stella Polaris* in the Gulf of California. *Los Angeles County Museum Contributions in Science* 27: 1–39.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1959b. William H. Harvey's Report on the Marine Algae of the United States North Pacific Exploring Expedition of 1853–1856. *Pacific Naturalist* 1(5): 3–40.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1959c. Some Algae from Clipperton Island and the Danger Islands. *Pacific Naturalist* 1(7): 1–8.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1960a. New Records of Marine Algae from Pacific Mexico and Central America. *Pacific Naturalist* 1(20): 31–52.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1960b. Marine Red Algae of Pacific Mexico, Part 3: Cryptomeniales; Corallinaceae subf. Melobesioideae. *Pacific Naturalist* 2(1): 1–125.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1960c. A Review of the Ecology, Distribution, and Affinities of the Benthic Flora. In *The Biogeography of Baja California and Adjacent Seas, Part 2: Marine Biotas. Systematic Zoology* 9(3): 93–100.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1961a. Marine Red Algae of Pacific Mexico, Part 4: Gigartinales. *Pacific Naturalist* 2(5): 191–343.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1961b. A Guide to the Literature and Distributions of Pacific Benthic Algae from Alaska to the Galápagos Islands. *Pacific Science* 15(3): 370–461.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1961c. Plantas marinas de la zona de las mares de El Salvador (Intertidal marine plants of El Salvador). *Pacific Naturalist* 2(8): 389–461.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1962a. Marine Red Algae of Pacific Mexico, Part 7: Ceramiales: Ceramiaceae, Delesseriaceae. *Allan Hancock Pacific Expeditions* 26(1): 1–207.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1962b. Una clave ilustrada de los géneros de algas bénticas del Pacífico de la América Central. *Pacific Naturalist* 3(4): 167–321.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1962c. Benthic Marine Exploration of Bahía de San Quintín, Baja California, 1960–1961: Marine and Marsh Vegetation. *Pacific Naturalist* 3(7): 275–280.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1962d. Additions to the Marine Flora of Costa Rica and Nicaragua. *Pacific Naturalist* 3(13): 375–395.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1963a. Marine Red Algae of Pacific Mexico, Part 6: Rhodymeniales. *Nova Hedwigia* 5: 437–476, pls. 77–95.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1963b. Marine Red Algae of Pacific Mexico, Part 8: Ceramiales; Dasyaceae, Rhodomelaceae. *Nova Hedwigia* 6: 401–481, pls. 126–171.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1966a. *Marine Algae in the Vicinity of Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, Mexico*. Gulf of California Field Guide Series, No. 1. ii+57 pp., map. Tucson: University of Arizona.
- Dawson, E. Y. 1966b. New Records of Marine Algae from the Gulf of California. *Journal of the Arizona Academy of Sciences* 4(2): 55–66.
- Dawson, E. Y., C. Acleto, and N. Foldvik. 1964. The Seaweeds of Peru. *Beihefte zur Nova Hedwigia* 13: [5]+111 pp, 81 pls.
- Dawson, E. Y., and P. T. Beaudette. 1959. Field Notes from the 1959 Eastern Pacific Cruise of the *Stella Polaris*. *Pacific Naturalist* 1(13): 1–24.
- Dawson, E. Y., and M. Neushul. 1966. New Records of Marine Algae from Anacapa Island, California. *Nova Hedwigia* 12(1–2): 173–187, pls. 41–43.
- Dawson, E. Y., M. Neushul, and R. D. Wildman. 1960a. Seaweeds Associated with Kelp Beds along Southern California and Northwestern Mexico. *Pacific Naturalist* 1(14): 1–81.
- Dawson, E. Y., M. Neushul, and R. D. Wildman. 1960b. New Records of Sublittoral Marine Plants from Pacific Baja California. *Pacific Naturalist* 1(19): 1–30.
- De Bary, A., and E. Strasburger. 1877. *Acetabularia mediterranea*. *Botanische Zeitung* 35: 713–758.
- Decaisne, J. 1841. Plantes de l'Arabie Heureuse, recueillies par M. P.-E. Botta et décrites par M. J. Decaisne. *Archives du Muséum d'Histoire Naturelle Paris* 2: 89–199, pls. V–VII.
- Decaisne, J. 1842a. Essais sur une classification des algues et des polypiers calcifères de Lamouroux. *Annales des Sciences Naturelles, Botanique, Série 2*, 17: 297–380, pls. 14–17.
- Decaisne, J. 1842b. Essais sur une classification des algues et des polypiers calcifères de Lamouroux. [2nd part.] Mémoire sur les Corallines ou Polypiers calcifères. *Annales des Sciences Naturelles, Botanique, Série 2*, 18: 96–128.

- De Clerck, O. 1999. A Revision of the Genus *Dictyota* Lamouroux (Phaeophyta) in the Indian Ocean. 351 pp., 3 Appendices. Ph. D. diss., Universiteit Gent, Ghent, Belgium.
- De Clerck, O. 2003. The Genus *Dictyota* (Dictyotales, Phaeophyta) in the Indian Ocean. *Opera Botanica Belgica* 13: 1–205.
- De Clerck, O., J. J. Bolton, R. J. Anderson, and E. Coppejans. 2005. *Guide to the Seaweeds of KwaZulu-Natal*. Scripta Botanica Belgica, No. 33. 294 pp. Meise: National Botanic Garden of Belgium.
- De Clerck, O., and E. Coppejans. 1999. Two New Species of *Dictyota* (Dictyotales, Phaeophyta) from the Indo-Malayan Region. *Phycologia* 38(2): 184–194.
- De Clerck, O., P. De Vos, M. Gillis, and E. Coppejans. 2001. Molecular Systematics in the Genus *Dictyota* (Dictyotales, Phaeophyta), a First Attempt Based on Restriction Patterns of the Internal Transcribed Spacer 1(rDNA). *Systematics and Geography of Plants* 71: 25–35.
- De Clerck, O., F. Leliaert, H. Verbruggen, C. E. Lane, J. C. De Paula, D. I. Payo, and E. Coppejans. 2006. A Revised Classification of the Dictyoteae (Dictyotales, Phaeophyceae) Based on *rbcL* and 26S Ribosomal DNA Sequence Data Analyses. *Journal of Phycology* 42(6): 1271–1288.
- De la Lanza, G., M. M. Ortega, J. L. Laparra, R. M. Carrillo, and J. L. Godínez. 1989. Análisis químico de metales pesados (Hg, Pb, Cd, As, Cr, y Sr) en algas marinas de Baja California. *Anales del Instituto de Biología de la Universidad Nacional Autónoma México, Serie Botánica*, 59(1): 89–102.
- De Lara-Isassi, G. 1992 [1991]. Propiedades antibióticas de algunas especies de algas marinas bentónicas. *Hidrobiológica* 2(1–2): 21–28.
- Delépine, R., and Asensi, A. 1975. *Asteronema* nov. gen. nouveau genre de Phéophycée australe. *Bulletin de la Société Botanique de France* 122: 295–304.
- Delile, A. R. 1813. Flore de l'Égypte, with explication des planches. In *Description de l'Égypte, ou recueil des observations et des recherches qui ont été faites en Égypte pendant l'expédition de l'armée française, publié par les ordres de Sa Majesté l'Empereur Napoléon le Grand. Histoire naturelle*, Volume 2, pp. 145–320, pls. 1–62. Paris: Imprimerie impériale. [Plates published in 1826.]
- Delwiche, C. F. 1999. Tracing the Thread of Plastid Diversity through the Tapestry of Life. *The American Naturalist* 154(Supplement no. S4): S164–S177.
- Derbès, A. A., and A.-J.-J. Solier. 1850. Sur les organes reproducteurs des algues. *Annales des Sciences Naturelles, Botanique, Série 3*, 14: 261–282, pls. 32–37.
- Derbès, A. A., and A.-J.-J. Solier. 1851. Algues. In *Supplément au Catalogue des plantes qui croissent naturellement aux environs de Marseille*, J. L. M. Castagne, ed., pp. 93–121. Aix, France: Nicot et Pardigon.
- Derbès, A. A., and A.-J.-J. Solier. 1856. Mémoire sur quelques points de la physiologie des algues. *Supplément aux Comptes Rendus des Séances de L'Académie des Sciences, Paris 1*: 1–120, pls. 1–23.
- de Reviere, B., and F. Rousseau. 1999. Towards a New Classification of the Brown Algae. *Progress in Phycological Research* 13: 107–201.
- Dethier, M. N. 1981. Heteromorphic Algal Life Histories: The Seasonal Patterns and Response to Herbivory of the Brown Crust, *Ralfsia californica*. *Oecologia* 49(3): 333–339.
- Dethier, M. N. 1987. The Distribution and Reproductive Phenology of Intertidal Fleshy Crustose Algae in Washington. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 65(9): 1838–1850.
- De Toni, G. B. 1889. *Sylloge Algarum Omnium Hucusque Cognitarum, Volume 1: Chlorophyceae*. 12+CXXXIX+1315 pp. Padua: Author.
- De Toni, G. B. 1895a. Phyceae Japonicae Novae Addita Enumeratione Algarum in Ditione Maritima Japoniae Hucusque Cognitarum. *Memorie del Reale Istituto Vento di Scienze, Lettere ed Arti* 25(5): 1–78, 2 pls.
- De Toni, G. B. 1895b. *Sylloge Algarum Omnium Hucusque Cognitarum, Volume 3: Fucoideae*. Pp. XVI+638. Padua: Author.
- Deviny, J. S. 1978. Ordination of Seaweed Communities: Environmental Gradients at Punta Banda, México. *Botanica Marina* 21(4): 357–363.
- Deysler, L., and T. A. Norton. 1982. Dispersal and Colonization in *Sargassum muticum* (Yendo) Fensholt. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 56(2–3): 179–195.
- Dickie, G. 1874a. On the Algae of Mauritius. *Journal of the Linnean Society (London), Botany*, 14: 190–202.
- Dickie, G. 1874b. Enumeration of the Algae Collected at St. Thomas and Bermuda by H. N. Moseley, M. A., Naturalist to the H. M. S. "Challenger." In *Contributions to the Botany of the Expedition of H. M. S. "Challenger,"* J. D. Hooker, ed., p. 312–316. *Journal of the Linnean Society (London), Botany*, 14: 311–390.
- Dillenius, J. J. 1742 [1741]. *Historia Muscorum; in Qua Circiter Sexcentae Species Veteres et Novae ad Sua Genera Relatae Describuntur et Iconibus Genuinis Illustrantur cum Appendice et Indice Synonymorum*. xvi+576 pp., pls. 1–85. Oxford: Theatro Sheldoniano.
- Dillwyn, L. W. 1805. *British Confervae; or Coloured Figures and Descriptions of the British Plants Referred by Botanists to the Genus Conferva*. Fasciculus 6, 7. Pls. 45–56 (with text). London: W. Phillips.
- Dillwyn, L. W. 1806. *British Confervae; or Coloured Figures and Descriptions of the British Plants Referred by Botanists to the Genus Conferva*. Fasciculus 8–11. Pls. 57–68, 70–81 (with text). London: W. Phillips.
- Dillwyn, L. W. 1809. *British Confervae; or Coloured Figures and Descriptions of the British Plants Referred by Botanists to the Genus Conferva*. Fasciculus 15–16. Pls. 69, 100–109 (with text), Suppl. pls. A–G (with text); pp. [1]–87+[6]+index and errata. London: W. Phillips.
- Dong, M.-L., and C. K. Tseng. 1983. Studies of the *Geppella* (Chlorophyta) of Xisha Islands, South China Sea. *Chinese Journal of Oceanology and Limnology* 1(2): 190–196, pl. 1.
- Dorr, L. J., and D. H. Nicolson. 2008. *Taxonomic Literature*. 2nd ed. Supplement Volumes 7, 8. Ruggell, Liechtenstein: A. R. G. Ganter Verlag K. G.
- Doty, M. S. 1947. The Marine Algae of Oregon. Part I: Chlorophyta and Phaeophyta. *Farlowia* 3(1): 1–65.
- Doty, M. S., and G. Aguilar-Santos. 1966. Caulerpicin, a Toxic Constituent of *Caulerpa*. *Nature* 211(5052): 990.
- Doty, M.S., and G. Aguilar-Santos. 1970. Transfer of toxic algal substances in marine food chains. *Pacific Science* 24(4): 351–355.
- Douglas, R., O. Gonzalez-Yajimovich, J. Ledesma-Vazquez, and F. Strines-Urias. 2007. Climate Forcing, Primary Production and the Distribution of Holocene Biogenic Sediments in the



- Gulf of California. *Quaternary Science Reviews* 26(1–2): 115–129.
- Draisma, S. G. A., Y.-S. Keum, W. F. Prud'homme van Reine, and G. M. Lokhorst. 1998. The Species of *Sphacelaria* (Sphacelariales, Phaeophyceae) in China with a Description of a New Species. *Botanica Marina* 41(2): 181–190.
- Draisma, S. G. A., J. L. Olsen, W. T. Stam, and W. F. Prud'homme van Reine. 2002. Phylogenetic Relationships with the Sphacelariales (Phaeophyceae): *rbcL*, RUBISCO Spacer and Morphology. *European Journal of Phycology* 37(3): 385–401.
- Draisma, S. G. A., A. F. Peters, and R. L. Fletcher. 2003. Evolution and Taxonomy in the Phaeophyceae: Effects of the Molecular Age on Brown Algal Systematics. In *Out of the Past: Collected Reviews to Celebrate the Jubilee of the British Phycological Society*, T. A. Norton, ed., pp. 87–102. Belfast: The British Phycological Society.
- Draisma, S. G. A., W. F. Prud'homme van Reine, W. T. Stam, and J. L. Olsen. 2001. A Reassessment of Phylogenetic Relationships in the Phaeophyceae Based on RUBISCO Large Subunit and Ribosomal DNA Sequences. *Journal of Phycology* 37(4): 586–603.
- Dreckmann, K. M., F. F. Pedroche, and A. Senties G[ranados]. 1990. Lista florística de las algas marinas bentónicas de la costa norte de Michoacán, México. *Boletín de la Sociedad de Botánica México* 50: 19–42.
- Dreckmann, K. M., A. Senties G[ranados], F. F. Pedroche, and J. M. Callejas. 2006. Diagnóstico florístico de la ficología marina bentónica en Chiapas. *Hidrobiológica* 16(2): 147–158.
- Dreher, T., B. R. Grant, and R. Wetherbee. 1978. The Wound Response in the Siphonous Alga *Caulerpa simpliciuscula* C. Ag.: Fine Structure and Cytology. *Protoplasma* 96(1–2): 189–203.
- Drew, K. M. 1955. Life Histories in the Algae with Special Reference to the Chlorophyta, Phaeophyta and Rhodophyta. *Biological Review* 30: 43–390.
- Drouet, F. 1943. William Albert Setchell. *The American Midland Naturalist* 30(3): 529–532.
- Dube, M. A., and E. Ball. 1971. *Desmarestia* sp. Associated with the Sea Pen, *Ptilosarcus gurneyi* (Gray). *Journal of Phycology* 7(3): 218–220.
- Dumortier, B. C. J. 1822. *Commentationes botanicae. Observations botaniques, dédiées à la Société d' Horticulture de Tournay*. [iii]+[1]–116+[1] pp., [1] table. Tournay: Ch. Casterman-Dien.
- Dungan, M. L. 1986. Three-Way Interactions: Barnacles, Limpets, and Algae in a Sonoran Desert Rocky Intertidal Zone. *The American Naturalist* 127(3): 292–316.
- Earle, S. A. 1969. Phaeophyta of the Eastern Gulf of Mexico. *Phycologia* 7(2): 71–254.
- Earle, S. A. 1972. A Review of the Marine Plants of Panama. *Bulletin of the Biological Society of Washington* 2(1): 69–87.
- Eckhardt, R., R. Schnetter, and G. Seiboldt. 1986. Nuclear Behaviour During the Life Cycle of *Derbesia* (Chlorophyceae). *British Phycological Journal* 21(3): 287–295.
- Egerod, L. E. 1952. An Analysis of the Siphonous Chlorophyta, with Special Reference to the Siphonocladales, Siphonales, and Dasycladales of Hawaii. *University of California Publications in Botany* 25(5), iv+325–453[454], pls. 29–43.
- Egerod, L. E. 1975. Marine Algae of the Andaman Sea Coast of Thailand: Chlorophyceae. *Botanica Marina* 18(1): 41–66.
- Endlicher, S. L. 1843. *Genera Plantarum Secundum Ordines Naturales Disposita*. [Supplement 3] *Mantissa botanica altera. Sistens Generum Plantarum Supplementum Tertium*. 111+[vi] pp. Vienna: Fr. Beck.
- Eppley, R. W., and C. R. Bovell. 1958. Sulfuric Acid in *Desmarestia*. *Biological Bulletin* 115: 101–106.
- Espinoza [Ávalos], J. 1990a. Estructura por edades y reproducción de tres poblaciones de *Sargassum sinicola* (Phaeophyta, Fucales) en la Bahía de La Paz, Golfo de California. *Acta Botánica Mexicana* 11: 1–9.
- Espinoza [Ávalos], J. 1990b. The Southern Limit of *Sargassum muticum* (Yendo) Fensholt (Phaeophyta, Fucales) in the Mexican Pacific. *Botanica Marina* 33(2): 193–196.
- Espinoza-Ávalos, J. 1993. Macroalgas marinas del Golfo de California. In *Biodiversidad Marina y Costera de México*, S. I. Salazar-Vallejo and N. E. González, eds., pp. 328–357. Mexico City: Comisión Nacional para el Conocimiento y Aprovechamiento de la Biodiversidad, y Centro de Investigaciones de Quintana Roo.
- Espinoza-Ávalos, J., and H. Rodríguez-Garza. 1985. Observaciones preliminares de *Sargassum sinicola* Setchell y Gardner (Phaeophyta) en la Bahía de La Paz, Golfo de California. *Ciencias Marinas* 11(2): 115–120.
- Espinoza-Ávalos, J., and H. Rodríguez-Garza. 1987. Seasonal Phenology and Reciprocal Transplantation of *Sargassum sinicola* Setchell et Gardner in the Southern Gulf of California. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 110(2): 183–195.
- Espinoza-Ávalos, J., and H. Rodríguez-Garza. 1989. Crecimiento de *Sargassum sinicola* Setchell et Gardner en la parte sur del Golfo de California, México. *Ciencias Marinas* 15(4): 141–149.
- Eubank, L. L. 1946. Hawaiian Representatives of the Genus *Caulerpa*. *University of California Publications in Botany* 18(18): 409–432, pl. 22.
- Evans, L. V. 1966. Distribution of Pyrenoids among Some Brown Algae. *Journal of Cell Science* 1: 449–454.
- Falkenberg, P. 1879. Die Befruchtung und der Generationswechsel von *Cutleria*. *Mitteilungen Stazione Zoologica di Napoli* 1: 420–447, pl. 13.
- Falkenberg, P. 1901. *Die Rhodomelaceen des Golfes von Neapel und der angrenzenden Meeres-Abschnitte*. Fauna und Flora des Golfes von Neapel, Monographie, No. 26. xvi+754 pp., pls. 1–24. Berlin: R. Friedlander & Sohns.
- Farghaly, M. S., and M. Denizot. 1979. Le genre *Rhipiliopsis*. Définition et place dans les Caulerpales (Chlorophycées). *Revue Algologique, n.s.*, 14: 169–184.
- Farlow, W. G. 1881. Marine Algae of New England. Report of the U.S. Commissioner of Fish and Fisheries for 1879. Appendix A-1: 1–210 pp. Washington, D.C.: Government Printing Office. [Reissued in 1882 [1881] with a new title, “Marine Algae of New England and Adjacent Coasts,” and in 1891 with the original title.]
- Farlow, W. G. 1889. On Some New or Imperfectly Known Algae of the United States, I. *Bulletin of the Torrey Botanical Club* 16(1): 1–12, 2 pls.
- Farlow, W. G. 1899. Three Undescribed Californian Algae. *Erythraea* 7: 73–76.

- Farlow, W. G. 1902. Algae. In *Flora of the Galápagos Islands*, B. L. Robinson, ed. *Proceedings of the American Academy of Arts and Science* 38(4): 89–99.
- Faulkner, D. J. 1984. Marine Natural Products: Metabolites of Marine Algae and Herbivorous Marine Molluscs. *Natural Product Reports* 1(3): 251–280.
- Feldmann, J. 1937. Les algues marines de la côte des Albères, I–III: Cyanophycées, Chlorophycées, Phéophycées. *Revue Algologique* 9: 141–148, 149–335, pls. 8–17.
- Feldmann, J. 1945. Une nouvelle espèce de *Myriactula* parasite du *Gracilaria armata* J. Ag. *Bulletin de la Société de l'Histoire Naturelle de l'Afrique du Nord* 34: 222–229.
- Feldmann, J. 1946. Sur l'hétéroplastie de certaines Siphonales et leur classification. *Comptes Rendus Hebdomadaires des Séances de l'Académie des Sciences* 222: 752–753.
- Feldmann, J. 1949. L'ordre des Scytosiphonales. Travaux Botaniques dédiés à René Maire. *Mémoires hors-série de la Société d'Histoire Naturelle de l'Afrique du Nord* 2: 103–115.
- Feldmann, J. 1950. Sur l'existence d'une alternance de générations entre l'*Halicystis parvula* et le *Derbesia tenuissima* (De. Not.) Crn. *Comptes Rendus Hebdomadaires des Séances de l'Académie des Sciences* 230: 322–323.
- Felger, R. S., K. Clifton, and P. J. Regal. 1976. Winter Dormancy in Sea Turtles, Independent Discovery and Exploitation in the Gulf of California by Two Local Cultures. *Science* 191(4224): 283–285.
- Felger, R. S., and M. B. Moser. 1973. Eelgrass (*Zostera marina* L.) in the Gulf of California: Discovery of Its Nutritional Value by the Seri Indians. *Science* 181(4097): 355–356.
- Felger, R. S., and M. B. Moser. 1985. *People of the Desert and Sea: Ethnobotany of the Seri Indians*. xv+438 pp. Tucson: University of Arizona Press. [2nd printing in 1991.]
- Fenical, W., J. J. Sims, D. Squatrito, R. M. Wing, and P. Radlick. 1973. Zonarol and Isozonarol, Fungitoxic Hydroquinones from the Brown Seaweed *Dictyopteris zonarioides*. *Journal of Organic Chemistry* 38(13): 2383–2386.
- Fensholt, D. E. 1955. An Emendation of the Genus *Cystophyllum* (Fucales). *American Journal of Botany* 42(3): 305–322.
- Fisher, W. K. 1905. In Memoriam: Walter E. Bryant, Born 14th January, 1861. Died 21st May, 1905. *The Condor* 7(5): 129–131.
- Fletcher, R. L. 1978. Studies on the Family Ralfsiaceae (Phaeophyta) Around the British Isles. In *Modern Approaches to the Taxonomy of Red and Brown Algae*, D. E. G. Irvine and J. H. Price, eds., pp. 371–388. Systematics Association Special Volume, No. 10. London: Academic Press.
- Fletcher, R. L. 1981. Studies on the Marine Fouling Brown Alga *Giffordia granulosa* (Smith) Hamel in the Solent (South Coast of England). *Botanica Marina* 24(3): 211–221.
- Fletcher, R. L. 1984. Observations on the Life History of the Brown Alga *Hecatonema maculans* (Ectocarpales, Myriomonemataceae) in Laboratory Culture. *British Phycological Journal* 19: 193.
- Fletcher, R. L. 1987. *Seaweeds of the British Isles, Volume 3: Fucophyceae (Phaeophyceae) Part 1*. ix+359 pp. London: British Museum (Natural History).
- Fletcher, R. L., G. Blunden, B. E. Smith, D. J. Rogers, and B. C. Fish. 1989. Occurrence of a Fouling, Juvenile, Stage of *Codium fragile* ssp. *tomentosoides* (Goor) Silva 9Chlorophyceae, Codiales). *Journal of Applied Phycology* 1(3): 227–237.
- Forest, H. 1983. Francis Drouet. March 1, 1907–December 5, 1982. *Bulletin of the Torrey Botanical Club* 110(2): 231–238.
- Forsskål, P. 1775. *Flora aegyptiaco-arabica. Sive descriptiones plantarum, quas per Aegyptum inferiorem et Arabium felicem detexit, illustravit Petrus Forsskål . . . Post mortem auctoris edidit Carsten Niebuhr*. Pp. [1]–32+[i]–cxxvi, [1], [1]–220. Copenhagen: Möller.
- Foslie, M. 1890. Contributions to Knowledge of the Marine Algae of Norway, I: East-Finmarken. *Tromsø Museums Aarsbhefter* 13: 1–186, 3 pls.
- Foster, M. S., and D. R. Schiel. 1985. The Ecology of Giant Kelp Forests in California: A Community Profile. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, *Biological Report* 85(7.2): xv+152 pp.
- Fotos, S. S. 1981. Observations on *Chnoospora minima* (Hering) Papenfuss (Phaeophyta, Scytosiphonales) in the Field and in Culture. *Japanese Journal of Phycology (Sôru)* 29(2): 101–108.
- Fries, E. M. 1845. *Summa Vegetabilium Scandinaviae, seu Enumeratio, Systematica et Critica . . . Distributione Geographica. Sectio prior*. [i]+[iii]+258 pp. Uppsala, Sweden: E. Typographia Academica.
- Fries, L. 1975. Some Observations on the Morphology of *Enteromorpha linza* (L.) J. Ag. and *Enteromorpha compressa* (L.) Grev. in axenic culture. *Botanica Marina* 18(3): 251–253.
- Gabrielson, P. W., T. B. Widdowson, and S. C. Lindstrom. 2006. *Keys to the Seaweeds and Seagrasses of Southeast Alaska, British Columbia, Washington and Oregon*. iv+1–209 pp. Phycological Contribution, No. 7. Hillsborough, N.C.: PhycoID.
- Galindo-Villegas, J., J. A. Gamboa, and K. M. Dreckmann. 1997. Estudio de las macroalgas del Puerto de Salina Cruz, Oaxaca; redescubrimiento de *Predaea subpeltata* y nuevo registro de para el Golfo de Tehuantepec, Pacífico tropical mexicano. *Polibotánica* 4: 1–9.
- Garbary, D. J. 1978. An Introduction to the Scanning Electron Microscopy of Red Algae. In *Modern Approaches to the Taxonomy of Red and Brown Algae*, D. E. G. Irvine and J. H. Price, eds. pp. 205–222. Systematics Association Special Volume, No. 10. London: Academic Press.
- Garbary, D. J., G. I. Hansen, and R. F. Scagel. 1985 [1984]. Additions to the Marine Algae of Barkley Sound, Vancouver Island, British Columbia. *Syesis* 7(1): 43–45.
- Gardner, N. L. 1919. New Pacific Coast Marine Algae, IV. *University of California Publications in Botany* 6(18), 487–496+[497].
- Gardner, N. L. 1927. New Rhodophyceae from the Pacific Coast of North America, VI. *University of California Publications in Botany* 14(4), 99–138+[139]
- Gardner, N. L. 1940. New Species of Melanophyceae from the Pacific Coast of North America. *University of California Publications in Botany* 19(8), 267–286.
- Garth, J. S. 1967. E. Yale Dawson 1918–1966. *Bulletin of the Southern California Academy of Sciences* 66(3): 149–160.
- Gavio, B., and S. Fredericq. 2002. *Grateloupia turuturu* (Halymeniaceae, Rhodophyta) is the Correct Name of the Non-native Species in the Atlantic Known as *Grateloupia doryphora*. *European Journal of Phycology* 37(3): 349–360.

- Gepp, A., and E. S. Gepp. 1911. The Codiaceae of the Siboga Expedition Including a Monograph of Flabellariaea and Udoteae. In *Siboga Expeditie*. . . , Volume 62, M. Weber, ed., pp. 1–150, 22 pls. Leiden: E. J. Brill.
- Gilmartin, M., and N. Revelante. 1978. The Phytoplankton Characteristics of the Barrier Island Lagoons of the Gulf of California. *Estuarine and Coastal Marine Science* 7(1): 29–47.
- Glynn, P. W., and R. H. Stewart. 1973. Distribution of Coral Reef in the Pearl Islands (Gulf of Panamá) in Relation to Thermal Conditions. *Limnology and Oceanography* 18(3): 367–379.
- Gmelin, S. G. 1768. *Historia fucorum*. [xii]+239+6 pp., pls. IA, IB, IIA, IIB, III–XXXII, [XXXIII]. St. Petersburg: Academiae Scientiarum.
- Godínez-Ortega, J. L. 2008. Colectores de algas de México (1787–1954). *Acta Botanica Mexicana* 85: 75–97.
- Goertzen, L. R., and E. C. Theriot. 2003. Effect of Taxon Sampling, Character Weighting, and Combined Data on the Interpretation of Relationships among Heterokont Algae. *Journal of Phycology* 39(2): 423–439.
- González-González, J. 1993. Comunidades algales del Pacífico Tropical. In *Biodiversidad Marina y Costera de México*, S. I. Salazar-Vallejo and N. E. González, eds., pp. 420–443. México D.F.: Comisión Nacional para el Conocimiento y Aprovechamiento de la Biodiversidad, y Centro de Investigaciones de Quintana Roo.
- González-González, J., M. Gold-Morgan, H. León-Tejera, C. Candelaria, D. León-Álvarez, E. Servière-Zaragoza, and D. Fragoso. 1996. *Catálogo Onomástico (Nomenclátor) y Bibliografía Indexada de las Algas Bentónicas Marinas de México*. 492 pp. Cuadernos del Instituto de Biología, No. 29. México, D.F.: Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México.
- Graham, L. E., and L. W. Wilcox. 1999 [2000]. *Algae*. 1st Ed. xvi+640+G1–G14+L1–L28+TI1–TI2 pp. Upper Saddle River, N.J.: Prentice-Hall.
- Graham, M. H., B. P. Kinlan, L. D. Druehl, L. E. Garske, and S. Brooks. 2007. Deep-water Kelp Refugia as Potential Hotspots of Tropical Marine Diversity and Productivity. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 104(42): 16576–16580.
- Granados-Gallegos, J. L., and R. A. Schwartzlose. 1974. Corrientes superficiales en el Golfo de California. In *Memorias del Vth Congreso Nacional de Oceanografía Física en México*, F. A. Manrique, ed., pp. 173–182. Unión Geofísica Mexicana Monografía, No. 3. Ensenada, Mexico: Unión Geofísica Mexicana.
- Gray, J. E. 1864. *Handbook of British Water-Weeds or Algae*. i–iv, 1–123 pp. London: R. Hardwicke.
- Gray, J. E. 1866. On *Anadyomena* and *Microdictyon*, with the Description of Three New Allied Genera, Discovered by Menzies in the Gulf of Mexico. *The Journal of Botany, British and Foreign* 4: 41–51, 65–72, pl. 44.
- Gray, S. F. 1821. *A Natural Arrangement of British Plants, According to Their Relations to Each Other, as Pointed out by Jussieu, De Candolle, Brown, &c. Including Those Cultivated for Use; with an Introduction to Botany, in Which the Terms Newly Introduced Are Explained; Illustrated by Figures*. Volume 1. xxviii+824 pp., 21 pls. London: Baldwin, Cradock & Joy.
- Greuter, W. 2000. Notices of Publications: Cryptogamae, 2. *Optima Newsletter* 35: 1–38.
- Greville, R. K. 1828 [1827]. *Scottish Cryptogamic Flora; or Coloured Figures and Descriptions of Cryptogamic Plants, Belonging Chiefly to Order Fungi; and Intended to Serve as a Continuation of English Botany*. Vol. 5 (fasc. 60–66), pls. 296–330. Edinburgh: MacLachlan and Stewart, London: Baldwin, Cradock, and Joy.
- Greville, R. K. 1830. *Algae Britannicae, or Descriptions of the Marine and Other Inarticulated Plants of the British Islands, Belonging to the Order Algae; with Plates Illustrative of the Genera*. [iii]+lxxxviii+218 pp., pls. 1–19. Edinburgh: MacLachlan and Stewart.
- Griffith, J. W., and A. Henfrey. 1856. *The Micrographic Dictionary: A Guide to the Examination and Investigation of the Structure and Nature of Microscopic Objects; Illustrated by Forty-One Plates and Eight Hundred and Sixteen Woodcuts*. v+696 pp., 41 pls. London: John van Voorst.
- Grunow, A. 1915. Additamenta ad cognitionem Sargassorum. *Verhandlungen der Kaiserlich-Königlichen Zoologisch-Botanischen Gesellschaft in Wien* 65: 329–448.
- Grunow, A. 1916. Additamenta ad cognitionem Sargassorum. *Verhandlungen der Kaiserlich-Königlichen Zoologisch-Botanischen Gesellschaft in Wien* 66: 135–185.
- Guevara-Escamilla, S. 1973. Peces. In *Estudio químico sobre la contaminación por insecticidas en la desembocadura del Río Colorado, II*, pp. 236–262. Reporte final a la Dirección de Acuacultura, S.R.H. Ensenada, Mexico: Universidad Autónoma de Baja California.
- Guiry, M. D., and G. M. Guiry. 2008. *AlgaeBase* Version 4. 2. World-Wide Electronic Publication. Galway: National University of Ireland. <http://www.algaebase.org>.
- Gurgel, C. F. D., S. Fredericq, and J. N. Norris. 2004. Phylogeography of *Gracilaria tikvahiae* (Gracilariaceae, Rhodophyta): A Study of Genetic Discontinuity in a Continuously Distributed Species Based on Molecular Evidence. *Journal of Phycology* 40(3): 748–758.
- Guzmán del Próo, S. A., S. de la Campa de Guzmán, and J. Pineda Barrera. 1972. Flora macroscópica asociada a los bancos de abulón (*Haliotis* spp.) en algunas áreas de la costa occidental de Baja California. In *Memorias de la IVth Congreso Nacional de Oceanografía (México)*, J. Carranza, ed., pp. 257–263. México D.F.: Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México.
- Haeckel, E. [H. P. A. ] 1894. *Systematische Phylogenie der Protisten und Pflanzen. Erster Theil des Entwurfs einer systematischen Stammesgeschichte*. xvi+400 pp. Berlin: Von Georg Reimer.
- Hamel, A., and G. [G. H.] Hamel. 1929. Sur l'hétérogamie d'une Cladophoracée *Lola* (nov. gen.) *lubrica* (Setch. et Gardn.). *Compte Rendu Hebdomadaire des Séances de l'Académie des Sciences, Paris* 189: 1094–1096.
- Hamel, G. [G. H.]. 1931a. *Chlorophycées de côtes Françaises*. Fasciculus 3. *Revue algologique* 6(1): 9–73. [Reprint 1931, with new pagination xv+105–168.] Paris.
- Hamel, G. [G. H.]. 1931b. *Phéophycées de France*. Fasciculus 1. Pp. 1–80. Paris.
- Hamel, G. [G. H.]. 1937. *Phéophycées de France*. Fasciculus 3. Pp. 177–240. Paris.

- Hamel, G. [G. H.] 1939a. Sur la classification des Ectocarpales. *Botaniska Notiser* 1939: 65–70.
- Hamel, G. [G. H.] 1939b. *Phéophycées de France*. Fasciculus 5V, pp. 337–431+[432], [i]–xlvi+[xlvii], pls. 1–10. Paris. [Reprinted Amsterdam: Linnaeus Press, 1975.]
- Hansen, G. I. 1997. A Revised Checklist and Preliminary Assessment of the Macrobenthic Marine Algae and Seagrasses of Oregon. In *Conservation and Management of Native Flora and Fungi*, T. N. Kaye, A. Liston, R. M. Love, D. L. Luoma, R. J. Meinke, and M. V. Wilson, eds., pp. 175–200. Corvallis: Native Plant Society of Oregon.
- Hansgirg, A. 1886. Prodrum der Algenflora von Böhmen. Erster Theil enthaltend die Rhodophyceen, Phaeophyceen und einen Theil der Chlorophyceen. *Archiv der [für] naturwissenschaftliche Landesdurchforschung in [von] Böhmen*, No. 5(6), 1–96, figs. 1–45. Prag: Fr. Rivnác.
- Hanyuda, T., I. Wakana, S. Arai, K. Miyaji, Y. Watano, and K. Ueda. 2002. Phylogenetic Relationships within the Cladophorales (Ulvophyceae, Chlorophyta) Inferred from 18S rRNA Gene Sequences with Special Reference to *Aegagropila linnaei*. *Journal of Phycology* 38(3): 564–571.
- Hariot, P. 1889. Algues. In *Mission scientifique du Cap Horn 1882–1883*, Volume 5: *Botanique*, pp. 3–110, pls. 1–9, Ministère de la Marine et de l'Instruction publique, eds. Paris: Gauthier-Villars et fils.
- Hariot, P. 1891. Liste des algues marines rapportées de Yokosuka (Japon) par M. le Dr. Savatier. *Mémoires de la Société Nationale des Sciences Naturelles et Mathématiques de Cherbourg* 27: 211–230.
- Hariot, P. 1895. Algues du Golfe de Californie recueillies par M. Diguët. *Journal de Botanique (Paris)* 9: 167–170.
- Hartmann, M. 1929. Untersuchungen über die Sexualität und Entwicklung von Algen, III: Über die Sexualität und Generationswechsel von *Chaetomorpha* und *Enteromorpha*. *Berichte der Deutschen Botanischen Gesellschaft* 47: 485–494.
- Harvey, W. H. 1835 [1834]. Algological Illustrations, No. I: Remarks on Some British Algae, and Descriptions of New Species Recently Added to Our Flora. *The Journal of Botany* (edited by W.J. Hooker) 1(4): 296–305, pls. 138–139.
- Harvey, W. H. 1841. *A Manual of the British Algae: Containing Generic and Specific Descriptions of the Known British Species of Sea-Weeds and of Confervae Both Marine and Fresh-Water*. [i–v]–lvii, [1]–229 pp. London: John Van Voorst.
- Harvey, W. H. 1849. *A Manual of the British Marine Algae: Containing Generic and Specific Descriptions of All the Known British Species of Sea-Weeds*. 2nd ed. lii+252 pp., pls. 1–27. London: John van Voorst.
- Harvey, W. H. 1851. *Phycologica britannica: Or History of British Sea-Weeds, Containing Coloured Figures, Generic and Specific Characters, Synonymes, and Descriptions of All the Species of Algae Inhabiting the Shores of the British Islands*. Volume 3, Fascicle 60. xxxix+[xiv] pp., pls. CCCLV–CCCLX with text. London: Reeve Brothers.
- Harvey, W. H. 1852. *Nereis Boreali-Americana; or, Contributions towards a History of the Marine Algae of the Atlantic and Pacific Coasts of North America, Part 1: Melanospermeae*. [First Issue]. [vii]+149 pp., pls. 1–12. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution. [Second Issue: Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution, 1853. Third Issue: *Smithsonian Contributions to Knowledge*, 3(4): 1–150, pls. 1–12, 1858]
- Harvey, W. H. 1855. Algae, L. In *Volume 2, Flora Novae-Zelandiae, Part 2: Flowerless Plants*, J. D. Hooker, ed., pp. 211–266, pls. 107–121, of *The Botany of the Antarctic Voyage of H. M. Discovery Ships Erebus and Terror, in the Years 1839–1843, Under the Command of Captain Sir James Clark Ross*. . . . London: Reeve, Brothers.
- Harvey, W. H. 1858. *Nereis Boreali-Americana; or, Contributions towards a History of the Marine Algae of the Atlantic and Pacific Coasts of North America, Part 3: Chlorospermeae*. [ii]+1–140 pp., pls. 37–50; *General Part*, pp. [i]–iv, [i]–viii. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution. [Second Issue: Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution, 1858. Third Issue: *Smithsonian Contributions to Knowledge*, 5(5), 1858].
- Harvey, W. H. 1859. *Phycologia Australica; or, A History of Australian Sea-weeds; Comprising Coloured Figures and Descriptions of the More Characteristic Marine Algae of New South Wales, Victoria, Tasmania, South Australia, and Western Australia, and a Synopsis of All Known Australian Algae*. Volume 2. [iii]+iv–viii pp. (index), pls. LXI–CXX (with text.) London: Lovell Reeve.
- Harvey, W. H. 1860 [‘1859’]. Characters of New Algae, Chiefly from Japan and Adjacent Regions, Collected by Charles Wright in the North Pacific Exploring Expedition under Captain John Rodgers. *Proceedings of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences* 4: 327–335.
- Hauck, F. 1876. Verzeichniss der im Golfe von Triest gesammelten Meeralgeln. (Fortsetzung). *Österreichische Botanische Zeitschrift* 26: 24–26, 54–57, [2 figs.], 91–93.
- Hauck, F. 1883. *Die Meeresalgen Deutschlands und Oesterreichs*. [Second title page: *Dr. L. Rabenhorst's Kryptogamen-Flora von Deutschland, Oesterreich und der Schweiz*.] 2nd ed. Volume 2, Parts 3–6, pp. 113–320. Leipzig: Verlag von Eduard Kummer.
- Hauck, F. 1884. *Die Meeresalgen Deutschlands und Oesterreichs*. [Second title page: *Dr. L. Rabenhorst's Kryptogamen-Flora von Deutschland, Oesterreich und der Schweiz*.] 2nd ed. Volume 2, Parts 7–9. pp. 321–512. Leipzig: Verlag von Eduard Kummer.
- Hauck, F. 1887. Ueber einige von J. M. Hildebrandt im Rothen Meere und Indischen Ocean gesammelte Algen. *Hedwigia* 26: 18–21, 41–45.
- Hausmann, K., N. Hülsmann, and R. Radek. 2003. *Protistology*. 3rd ed. 379 pp. Stuttgart: Schweizerbart'sche.
- Hawkes, M. W. 1996. E. Yale Dawson: Naturalist on Desert Shores. In *Prominent Phycologists of the 20th Century*, D. J. Garbary and M. J. Wynne, eds., pp. 164–171. 50th Anniversary Special Publication of the Phycological Society of America. Hantsport, Nova Scotia, Canada: Lancelot Press.
- Hawkes, M. W. 2005. In Search of Cacti and Seaweeds on Desert Shores: E. Yale Dawson (1918–1966), *Botanist. Haseltonia* 11: 126–137.
- Hay, M. E. 1988. Can Tropical Seaweeds Reduce Herbivory by Growing at Night? Diel Patterns of Growth, Nitrogen Content Herbivory, and Chemical Versus Morphological Defenses. *Oecologia (Berlin)* 75(2): 233–245.
- Hay, M. E. 1997a. Synchronous Spawning—When Timing Is Everything. *Science* 275(5303): 1080–1081.

- Hay, M. E. 1997b. Calcified Seaweeds on Coral Reefs: Complex Defences, Trophic Relationships, and Value as Habitats. In *Proceedings of the 8th International Coral Reef Symposium*. Volume 1, H. A. Lessios and I. G. Macintyre, eds., pp. 713–718. Balboa, Panama: Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute.
- Hayden, H. S., J. Blomster, C. A. Maggs, P. C. Silva, M. J. Stanhope, and J. R. Waaland. 2003. Linnaeus Was Right All Along: *Ulva* and *Enteromorpha* Are Not Distinct Genera. *European Journal of Phycology* 38(3): 277–294.
- Hayden, H. S., and J. R. Waaland. 2004. A Molecular Systematic Study of *Ulva* (Ulveaceae, Ulvales) from the Northeast Pacific. *Phycologia* 43(4): 364–382.
- Hering, [C.] 1841. Diagnoses algarum novarum a cl. Dre Ferdinand Krauss in Africa Australi lectarum. *Annals and Magazine of Natural History* 8: 90–92.
- Hernández-Herrera, R. M., S. E. Ibarra-Obando, and M. del Refugio Mora-Navarro. 2005. Macroalgae Community Structure in Southern Coast of Jalisco, México. *Scientia—CUCBA* 7(2): 139–154.
- Hillis, L. W. 1959. A Revision of the Genus *Halimeda* (Order Siphonales). *Publications of the Institute of Marine Sciences [University of Texas]* 6: 321–403.
- Hillis, L. W., J. A. Engman, and W. H. C. F. Kooistra. 1998. Morphological and Molecular Phylogenetics of *Halimeda* (Chlorophyta, Bryopsidales) Identify Three Evolutionary Lineages. *Journal of Phycology* 34(4): 669–681.
- Hillis-Colinvaux, L. 1980. Ecology and Taxonomy of *Halimeda*: Primary Producers of Coral Reefs. *Advances in Marine Biology* no. 17, J. H. S. Blaxter, F. S. Russell, and M. Yonge, eds., pp. vii–viii, 1–327. London/New York: Academic Press Inc.
- Hillis-Colinvaux, L. 1984. Systematics of the Siphonales. In *Systematics of the Green Algae*, D. E. G. Irvine and D. M. John, eds., pp. 271–296. Systematics Association Special Volume, No. 27. London: Academic Press.
- Hinojosa-Arango, G., and R. Riosmena-Rodríguez. 2001. Ampliación de ámbito de *Neomeris annulata* (Dasycladales: Chlorophyta) en el Golfo de California, México. *Revista de Biología Tropical* (Universidad de Costa Rica) 49(1): 349–395.
- Hodgson, L. M., P. Huu Tri, K. Lewmanomont, and K. J. McDermid. 2004. Annotated Check-list of Species of *Caulerpa* and *Caulerpella* (Bryopsidales, Caulerpaceae) from Vietnam, Thailand, and the Hawaiian Islands. In *Taxonomy of Economic Seaweeds, with Reference to the Pacific and Other Localities*, Volume 9, I. A. Abbott and K. J. McDermid, eds., pp. 21–38. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Sea Grant College Program.
- Hoek, C. van den. 1958. The Algal Microvegetation in and on Barnacle Shells, Collected along the Dutch and French Coasts. *Blumea* 9(1): 206–214.
- Hoek, C. van den. 1963. *Revision of the European Species of Cladophora*. 248 pp. Leiden: E. J. Brill.
- Hoek, C. van den. C. 1981. Chlorophyta: Morphology and Classification. In *The Biology of Seaweeds*, C. S. Lobban and M. J. Wynne, eds., pp. 86–132. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Hoek, C. van den. 1982. A Taxonomic Revision of the American Species of *Cladophora* (Chlorophyceae) in the North Atlantic Ocean and Their Geographic Distribution. *Verhandlungen der Koninklijke Nederlandse Akademie van Wetenschappen, Afdeling Natuurkunde, Tweede Reeks*, Deel 78: 1–236. [Also published Amsterdam: North-Holland Publishing Co. 1982.]
- Hoek, C. van den. 1984. The Systematics of the Cladophorales. In *Systematics of the Green Algae*, D. E. G. Irvine and D. M. John, eds., pp. 157–178. Systematics Association Special Volume, No. 27. London: Academic Press.
- Hoek, C. van den, and M. Chihara. 2000. *A Taxonomic Revision of the Marine Species of Cladophora (Chlorophyta) along the Coasts of Japan and the Russian Far-East*. National Science Museum Monographs, No. 19. 242 pp. Tokyo: National Science Museum.
- Hoek, C. van den, and A. Flinterman. 1968. The Life-History of *Sphacelaria furcigera* Kütz. *Blumea* 16: 193–242.
- Hoek, C. van den, D. G. Mann, and H. M. Jahns. 1995. *Algae: An Introduction to Phycology*. xiv+1–623 pp. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Hoek, C. van den, and H. B. S. Womersley. 1984. Genus *Cladophora* Kuetzing 1843: 262, *nom. cons.* In *The Marine Benthic Flora of Southern Australia, Part 1*, H. B. S. Womersley, ed., pp. 185–213. Adelaide, South Australia: D. J. Woolman, Government Printer.
- Hoeksema, B. W., and C. van den Hoek. 1983. The Taxonomy of *Ulva* (Chlorophyceae) from the Coastal Region of Roscoff (Brittany, France). *Botanica Marina* 24(1): 65–86.
- Hoffmann, A., and B. Santelices. 1997. *Flora Marina de Chile Central*. 434 pp. Santiago: Ediciones Universidad Católica de Chile.
- Hollenberg, G. J. 1935. A Study of *Halicystis ovalis*, I. Morphology and Reproduction. *American Journal of Botany* 22(9): 783–812.
- Hollenberg, G. J. 1936. A Study of *Halicystis ovalis*, II. Periodicity in the Formation of Gametes. *American Journal of Botany* 23(1): 1–3.
- Hollenberg, G. J. 1941. Culture Studies of Marine Algae, II: *Hapterophycus canaliculatus* S. & G. *American Journal of Botany* 28(8): 676–683.
- Hollenberg, G. J. 1948. Notes on Pacific Coast Marine Algae. *Madroño* 9(2): 155–162.
- Hollenberg, G. J. 1969. An Account of the Ralfsiaceae (Phaeophyta) of California. *Journal of Phycology* 5(4): 290–301.
- Hollenberg, G. J. 1970. Phycological Notes, IV: Including New Marine Algae and New Records for California. *Phycologia* 9(1): 61–72.
- Hollenberg, G. J. 1971. Phycological Notes, VI: New Records, New Combinations, and Noteworthy Observations Concerning Marine Algae of California. *Phycologia* 10(2–3): 281–290.
- Hollenberg, G. J. 1978. Phycological Notes, VIII: Two Brown Algae (Phaeophyta) New to California. *Bulletin of the Southern California Academy of Sciences* 77(1): 28–35.
- Hollenberg, G. J., and I. A. Abbott. 1966. *Supplement to Smith's Marine Algae of the Monterey Peninsula*. xii+130 pp. Stanford, Calif.: Stanford University Press.
- Hollenberg, G. J., and I. A. Abbott. 1968. New Species of Marine Algae from California. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 46(10): 1235–1251.
- Holmes, E. M. 1896. New Marine Algae from Japan. *Journal of the Linnean Society, Botany*, 31(215): 248–260, pls. 7–12.

- Holmgren, P. K., and N. H. Holmgren. 1998 [continuously updated]. Index Herbariorum: A global directory of public herbaria and associated staff. Bronx, N. Y.: New York Botanical Garden. <http://sweetgum.nybg.org/ih/>.
- Holmgren, P. K., N. H. Holmgren, and L. C. Barnett. 1990. *Index Herbariorum, Pt. 1: The Herbaria of the World*. 8th ed. x+693 pp. Bronx, N. Y.: International Association of Plant Taxonomy, New York Botanical Garden. [Regnum Vegetabile, No. 121.]
- Hommersand, M. H. 1972. Taxonomic and Phytogeographic Relationships of Warm Temperate Marine Algae Occurring in Pacific North America and Japan. In *Proceedings of the Seventh International Seaweed Symposium, Sapporo, Japan*, I. Nozawa, ed., pp. 66–71. Tokyo: University of Tokyo Press.
- Hooker, W. J. 1833. *The English Flora of Sir James Edward Smith, Class XXIV: Cryptogamia*, Volume 5, Part 1: *Comprising the Mosses, Hepatiae, Lichens, Characeae and Algae*. 2nd ed. x+4+432 pp. London: Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown, Green and Longman. [Listed under J. E. Smith in most libraries. Also published as an identical issue: Hooker, W. J. 1833. *The British Flora*. . . . Volume 2, Part 1. 4th ed. London: Longman, Brown, Green and Longman.]
- Hori, T. 1971. Survey of Pyrenoid Distribution in Brown Algae. *The Botanical Magazine (Tokyo)* 84(994): 231–242.
- Hori, T. 1993. *An Illustrated Atlas of the Life History of Algae, Volume 2: Brown and Red Algae*. 345 pp. Tokyo: Uchida Rokakuho.
- Hori, T., and R. Ueda. 1975. The Fine Structure of Algal Chloroplasts and Algal Phylogeny. In *Advances of Phycology in Japan*, J. Tokida and H. Hirose, eds., pp. 11–42. The Hague: W. Junk.
- Hornemann, J. W., ed. 1818. [“*Flora danica*.”] *Icones Plantarum Sponte Nascentium in Regnis Daniae et Norvegiae, in Ducatibus Slesvici et Holsaticae, et in Comitatus Oldenburgi et Delmenhorstiae; ad Illustrandum Opus de Iisdem Plantis, Region Jussu Exarandum, Flora Danicae Nomine Inscriptum*. Volume 9, Fasciculus 27. 11 pp., pls. 1561–1620. Copenhagen: Hof-Bogtrykker Nicolaus Møller.
- Hörnig, I., and R. Schnetter. 1988. Notes on *Dictyota dichotoma*, *D. menstrualis*, *D. indica* and *D. pulchella* spec. nova (Phaeophyta). *Phyton (Austria)* 28(2): 277–291.
- Hörnig, I., R. Schnetter, and W. F. Prud’homme van Reine. 1992a. The Genus *Dictyota* (Phaeophyceae) in the North Atlantic, I: A New Generic Concept and New Species. *Nova Hedwigia* 54(1–2): 45–62.
- Hörnig, I., R. Schnetter, and W. F. Prud’homme van Reine. 1992b. The Genus *Dictyota* (Phaeophyceae) in the North Atlantic, II: Key to the Species. *Nova Hedwigia* 54(3–4): 397–402.
- Hörnig, I., R. Schnetter, and W. F. Prud’homme van Reine. 1993. Additional to “The Genus *Dictyota* (Phaeophyceae) in the North Atlantic, I: A New Generic Concept and New Species.” Correction and Validation of New Combinations in the Genus *Dictyota*. *Nova Hedwigia* 56(1–2): 169–171.
- Hoshina, R., K. Hasegawa, J. Tanaka, and Y. Hara. 2004. Molecular Phylogeny of the Dictyotaceae (Phaeophyceae) with Emphasis on Their Morphology and Its Taxonomic Implication. *Japanese Journal of Phycology (Sôru)* 52(Suppl.): 189–194.
- Howe, J. A. 2001. David Gregory Lindquist (1946–2001). *Copeia* 2001(3): 894–896.
- Howe, M. A. 1905. Phycological Studies, II. New Chlorophyceae, New Rhodophyceae and Miscellaneous Notes. *Bulletin of the Torrey Botanical Club* 32(11): 563–586, pls. 23–29.
- Howe, M. A. 1911. Phycological Studies, V. Some Marine Algae of Lower California, Mexico. *Bulletin of the Torrey Botanical Club* 38(11): 489–514, pls. 27–34.
- Howe, M. A. 1914. The Marine Algae of Peru. *Memoirs of the Torrey Botanical Club* 15: 185 pp., pls. 1–66.
- Howe, M. A. 1920. Class 2, Algae. In *The Bahama Flora*, N. L. Britton and C. F. Millspaugh, eds., pp. 553–618. New York: Author.
- Howe, M. A., and W. D. Hoyt. 1916. Notes on Some Marine Algae from the Vicinity of Beaufort, North Carolina. *Memoirs of the New York Botanical Garden* 6: 105–123, pls. 11–15.
- Hudson, W. 1762. *Flora Anglica, Exhibens Plantas per Regnum Angliae Sponte Crescentes, Distributes Secundum Systema Sexuale: Cum Differentiis Specierum, Synonymis Auctorum, Nominibus Incolarum, Solo Locorum, Tempore Florendi, Officinalibus Pharmacopoeorum*. 1st ed. viii+[8]+506+[22, index] pp. London: Impensis auctoris apud J. Nourse, et C. Moran.
- Hudson, W. 1778. *Flora Anglica, Exhibens Plantas per Regnum Britannia sponte crescentes, distributes Secundum Systema Sexuale Cum Differentiis Specierum, Synonymis Auctorum, Nominibus Incolarum, Solo Locorum, Tempore Florendi, Officinalibus Pharmacopoeorum*. 2nd ed. Volume 2: *Editio Altera, Emendata et Aucta*. Pp. [i]+335–690. London: Impensis auctoris apud J. Nourse.
- Huerta-M[úzquiz], L. 1960. Especies aprovechables de la flora marina de la costa occidental de Baja California. *Acta Politécnica Mexicana* 2(10): 401–405.
- Huerta-M[úzquiz], L. 1978. Vegetación marina litoral. In *Vegetación de México*, J. Rzedowski, ed., pp. 328–340. Mexico D. F.: Editorial Limusa, S. A. [Reprinted 1981 and 1983.]
- Huerta-M[úzquiz], L., and A. M. Garza Barrientos. 1975. Contribución al conocimiento de la flora de las islas Socorro y San Benedicto del archipiélago Revillagigedo, Colima, México. *Boletín Informativo del Instituto de Botánica, Universidad de Guadalajara, Jalisco Suplemento Agricultura*, 2(4): 4–16, mapa.
- Huerta-Múzquiz, L., and A. C. Mendoza-González. 1985. Algas marinas de la parte sur de la Bahía de la Paz, Baja California Sur. *Phytologia* 59(1): 35–57.
- Huerta-M[úzquiz], L., and J. Tirado-Lizárraga. 1970. Estudio florístico ecológico de las algas marinas de la costa del Golfo de Tehuantepec, México. *Boletín de la Sociedad Botánica de México* 31: 113–137.
- Huisman, J. M. 2000. *Marine Plants of Australia*. ix+300 pp. Australian Biological Resources Study. Nedlands, Western Australia: University of Western Australia Press.
- Humphrey, H. B. 1961. *Makers of North American Botany*. xi+265 pp. New York: Ronald Press.
- Hüstede, H. 1964. Entwicklungsphysiologische Untersuchungen über den Generationswechsel zwischen *Derbesia neglecta* Berth. und *Bryopsis halymeniae* Berth. *Botanica Marina* 6(2): 134–142.

- Hwang I.-K., H.-S. Kim, and W. J. Lee. 2004. Evidence for Taxonomic Status of *Pachydictyon coriaceum* (Holmes) Okamura (Dictyotales, Phaeophyceae) Based on Morphological and Plastid Protein Coding *rbcL*, *psa A* and *psa B* Gene Sequences. *Algae* 19(3): 175–190.
- Hwang, I.-K., W. J. Lee, H.-S. Kim, and O. De Clerck. 2009. Taxonomic Reappraisal of *Dilophus okamurae* (Dictyotales, Phaeophyta) from the Western Pacific. *Phycologia* 48(1): 1–12.
- Ibarra-Obando, S. E., and R. Aguilar-Rosas. 1985. Macroalgas flotantes y epífitas asociadas con *Zostera marina* L. en Bahía San Quintín (B. C., México) durante verano-otoño 1982: Biomasa y composición taxonómica. *Ciencias Marinas* 11(2): 89–104.
- Inagaki, K. 1958. A Systematic Study of the Order Chordariales from Japan and Its Vicinity. *Scientific Papers of the Institute of Algological Research, Hokkaido University* 4(1): 87–197, pls. 1–11.
- Issac, W. E. 1957. Some Marine Algae from Xai-Xai. *Journal of South African Botany* 23(3): 75–102, pls. 27–33.
- Jeffery, C. 1982. Kingdoms, Codes and Classification. *Kew Bulletin* 37(3): 403–416.
- John, D. M., G. W. Lawson, and G. K. Ameka. 2003. The Marine Macroalgae of the Tropical West Africa Subregion. *Beihfte zur Nova Hedwigia* 125: 1–217.
- John, D. M., W. F. Prud'homme van Reine, G. W. Lawson, T. B. Kostermans, and J. H. Price. 2004. A Taxonomic and Geographical Catalogue of the Seaweeds of the Western Coast of Africa and Adjacent Islands. *Beihfte zur Nova Hedwigia* 127: 1–139.
- Johnson, S. E., S. R. Paterson, J. M. Fletcher, G. H. Girty, D. L. Kimbrough, and A. Martin-Barajas, eds. 2003. *Tectonic Evolution of Northwestern México and the Southwestern USA*. Geological Society of America Special Paper, No. 374. viii+478 pp. Boulder, Colo.: Geological Society of America.
- Joly, A. B. 1965. Flora Marinha do litoral norte do Estado de São Paulo e regiões circunvizinhas. *Faculdade de Filosofia Ciências e Letras, Universidade de São Paulo, Boletim* 294, *Serie Botanica*, 21: 1–393, pls. 1–59.
- Jong, Y. S. D. M. de. 1999. A Review of *Nemacystus*. In *Systematic, Phylogenetic and Biogeographic Studies of Atlantic Seaweeds*, Jong, Y.S.D.M. de, pp. 83–112. Leiden, Netherlands: Rijksherbarium/Hortus Botanicus, Leiden University.
- Jong, Y. S. D. M. de, and W. F. Prud'homme van Reine. 1997. A Review of the Genus *Nemacystus* (Spermatocnaceae, Chordariales, Phaeophyceae), Including Phylogenetic and Biogeographical Hypotheses. *Nova Hedwigia* 64(1/2): 1–40.
- Jónsson, S., and S. Puiseux-Dao. 1959. Observations morphologiques relatives á la reproduction chez le *Siphonocladus pusillus* (Kütz.) Hauck, Siphonocladecées, en culture. *Comptes Rendus de l'Académie des Sciences, Paris* 249: 1383–1385.
- Jürgens, G. H. B. 1817. *Algae Aquaticae, quas in Littora Maris Dynastiam Jeveranam et Frisiam Orientalem Alluentis Rejectas, et in Harum Terrarum Aquis Habitantes Collegit et Exsiccavit Georg Heinrich Bernhard Jurgens*. Decade 5, Nos. 1–10. Jever: Mettcker.
- Kajimura, M. 1992. Vegetative Propagation in *Dilophus okamurae* and *Zonaria flabellata* (Dicytotaceae, Phaeophyta). *Memoirs of the Faculty of Sciences, Shimane University* 26: 95–106.
- Kajimura, M. 1993. Vegetative Propagation in *Padina crassa* Yamada (Dicytotaceae, Phaeophyta) from the Oki Islands. *Studies of San'in Region, Shimane University (Natural Environment)* 9: 19–25.
- Kajimura, M. 1995. Vegetative Propagation in *Dictyopteris undulata* and *Stypopodium zonale* (Dicytotaceae, Phaeophyta). *Memoirs of the Faculty of Sciences, Shimane University* 29: 89–95.
- Kawai, H., H. Sasaki, S. Maeba, and E. C. Henry. 2005. Morphology and Molecular Phylogeny of *Phaeostrophion irregulare* (Phaeophyceae) with a Proposal for *Phaeostrophaceae* fam. nov., and a Review of *Ishigeaceae*. *Phycologia* 44(2): 169–182.
- Kawai, H., S. Shimada, T. Hanyuda, T. Suzuki, and Gamagori City Office. 2007. Species Diversity and Seasonal Changes of Dominant *Ulva* species (Ulvales, Ulvophyceae) in Mikawa Bay, Japan, Deduced from ITS2 rDNA Region Sequences. *Algae* 22(3): 221–228.
- Keum, Y.-S., J. H. Oak, S. M. Boo, W. F. Prud'homme van Reine, and I. K. Lee. 1999. *Sphacelaria californica* and *S. nova-hollandiae*, Two Related Species of the Genus *Sphacelaria* (Sphacelariales, Phaeophyta). *Algae* 14(1): 23–35.
- Keum, Y.-S., J. H. Oak, S. G. A. Draisma, W. F. Prud'homme van Reine, and I. K. Lee. 2005. Taxonomic Reappraisal of *Sphacelaria rigidula* and *S. fusca* (Sphacelariales, Phaeophyceae) Based on Morphology and Molecular Data with Special Reference to *S. didichotoma*. *Algae* 20(1): 1–13.
- Kim, H.-S., and I. K. Lee. 1992. Morphotaxonomic Studies on the Korean Ectocarpaceae (Phaeophyta), II: Genus *Hincksia* J. E. Gray. *Korean Journal of Phycology* 7(2): 243–256.
- Kim, H.-S., and I. K. Lee. 1994. Morphotaxonomic Studies on the Korean Ectocarpaceae (Phaeophyta), III: Genus *Feldmannia* Hamel, Specially Referred to Morphogenesis and Phylogenetic Relationship among Related Genera. *Korean Journal of Phycology* 9(2): 153–168.
- Kitayama, T. 1994. A Taxonomic Study of the Japanese *Sphacelaria* (Sphacelariales, Phaeophyceae). *Bulletin of the National Science Museum, Tokyo, Series B, Botany* 20: 37–141.
- Kitayama, T. 1996. Brown Algae from Onagawa Bay, Miyagi Pref., Japan. *Memoirs of the National Science Museum, Tokyo* 29: 223–230.
- Kitayama, T. 2006. Brown Algae from the Suzaki Imperial Villa, Suzaki, Shimoda, Japan. *Memoirs of the National Science Museum, Tokyo*, 40: 7–21.
- Kitayama, T., H. Kawai, and T. Yoshida. 1991. Morphological Observations on *Sphacelaria californica* Sauvageau ex Setchell et Gardner (Sphacelariales, Phaeophyceae), New to Japan. *Japanese Journal of Phycology (Sôru)* 39(2): 189–193.
- Kitayama, T., H. Kawai, and T. Yoshida. 1992. Dominance of Female Gametophytes in Field Populations of *Cutleria cylindrica* (Cutleriales, Phaeophyceae) in the Tsugaru Strait, Japan. *Phycologia* 31(5): 449–461.
- Kitayama, T., and T. Yoshida. 1992. First Report of *Phaeophila dendroides* (P. Crouan et H. Crouan) Batters (Ulvophyceae, Chlorophyta) from Japan. *Japanese Journal of Phycology (Sôru)* 40(1): 47–50.

- Kjellman, F. R. 1872. *Bidrag till Kännedomen om Skandina-  
viens Ectocarpeer och Tilopterider med två taflor*. Aka-  
demisk afhandling, som med samtycke af vidtberömda filos.  
fakulteten i Upsala för filosofiska graden erhållande till of-  
fentlig granskning framställes af Frans Reinhold Kjellman  
. . . på botanoska lärosalen den 25 Maj 1872. 112 pp., 2 pls.  
Stockholm: K. L. Beckman.
- Kjellman, F. R. 1880. Rhodospermeae o. Fucoideae. In *Enume-  
rantur Plantae Scandinaviae* Gleerup, C. W. K., ed. *Points-  
förteckning öfver Skandina-  
viens växter* 4: 2–12.
- Kjellman, F. R. 1889. Om Beringhafvets algflora. *Kungliga Sven-  
ska Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar* 23(8): 1–58, 7 pls.
- Kjellman, F. R. 1890. *Handbok i Skandina-  
viens Hafsalgflora, I: Fucoideae med 17 afbildningar i texten*. [iv]+103 pp. Stock-  
holm: Oscar L. Lamms Förlag.
- Kjellman, F. R. 1891. Phaeophyceae (Fucoideae). In *Die  
natürlichen Pflanzenfamilien nebst ihren Gattungen und  
wichtigeren Arten insbesondere den Nutzpflanzen unter Mit-  
wirkung zahlreicher hervorragender Fachgelehrten*, [Teil] I.  
Abt. 2, Lieferung 60, H. G. A. Engler and K. A. E. Prantl,  
eds., pp. 176–192. Leipzig: Wilhelm Engelmann.
- Kjellman, F. R. 1896 [1893]. Dictyotales. In *Die natürlichen  
Pflanzenfamilien nebst ihren Gattungen und wichtigeren  
Arten insbesondere den Nutzpflanzen, unter Mitwirkung  
zahlreicher hervorragender Fachgelehrten*, [Teil] 1, Abt. 2,  
Lieferung 141, H. G. A. Engler and K. A. E. Prantl, eds., pp.  
291–297. Leipzig: Wilhelm Engelmann. [Print date on Lief-  
erung (Fasciculus) was “Dec. 1893;” however, the actual  
publication date was 1896 (see: Stafleu, 1972: 508; Stafleu  
and Cowan, 1976: 765).]
- Kjellman, F. R. 1897. Marina chlorophyceer från Japan. *Bihang  
til Kongliga Svenska Vetenskaps-Akademiens Handlingar*  
23(3), no. 11: 1–44, pls. 1–7.
- Kjellman, F. R., and Svedelius, N. 1910. Lithodermataceae. In  
*Die natürlichen Pflanzenfamilien Nachträge zum, Teil 1,  
Abt. 2*, Engler, A. and Prantl, K. eds., pp. 173–176. Leipzig:  
Wilhelm Engelmann.
- Kleen, E. A. G. 1874. Om Nordlandens högre hafsalg. *Öfver-  
sigt af Kongliga Vetenskaps-Akademiens Förhandlingar,  
Stockholm* 31(9): 1–46, pls. IX–X.
- Knoepffler-Péguy, M. 1974. Le genre *Acinetospora* Bornet  
1891 (Phaeophyceae–Ectocarpales). *Vie et Milieu, Série A*,  
24: 43–72.
- Knoepffler-Péguy, M. 1977. Polymorphisme et environment  
chez les *Feldmannia* (Ectocarpacées). *Revue Algologique,  
Nouvelle Série*, 12: 111–128.
- Kobara, T., and M. Chihara. 1980. Laboratory Culture and Tax-  
onomy of Two Species of *Halicystis* (Class Chlorophyceae)  
in Japan. *Japanese Journal of Phycology Japanese Journal  
of Phycology (Sôru)* 28(4): 211–217.
- Kobara, T., and M. Chihara. 1981. Laboratory Culture and  
Taxonomy of Two Species of *Derbesia* (Class Chloro-  
phyceae) in Japan. *The Botanical Magazine (Tokyo)* 94:  
1–10.
- Koeman, R. P. T., and C. van den Hoek. 1981. The Taxonomy  
of *Ulva* (Chlorophyceae) in the Netherlands. *British Phyco-  
logical Journal* 16(1): 9–53.
- Koeman, R. P. T., and C. van den Hoek. 1982a. The Taxonomy  
of *Enteromorpha* Link, 1820 (Chlorophyceae) in the Nether-  
lands, I: The Section *Enteromorpha*. *Archiv für Hydrobiolo-  
gie, Supplementband* 63. 3 (Algological Studies 32): 279–330.
- Koeman, R. P. T., and C. van den Hoek. 1982b. The Taxonomy  
of *Enteromorpha* Link, 1820 (Chlorophyceae) in the Neth-  
erlands, II: The section *Prolifera*. *Cryptogamie, Algologie*  
3(1), 37–70.
- Koeman, R. P. T., and C. van den Hoek. 1984. The Taxonomy  
of *Enteromorpha* Link, 1820 (Chlorophyceae) in the Neth-  
erlands, III: The Sections *Flexuosae* and *Clathratae*, and an  
Addition to the Section *Prolifera*. *Cryptogamie, Algologie*  
5(1): 21–61.
- Kogame, K. 1996. Morphology and Life History of *Scytosiphon  
canaliculatus* comb. nov. (Scytosiphonales, Phaeophyceae)  
from Japan. *Phycological Research* 44(2): 85–94.
- Kogame, K. 1997a. Sexual Reproduction and Life History of  
*Petalonia fascia* (Scytosiphonales, Phaeophyceae). *Phycolo-  
gia* 36(5): 389–394.
- Kogame, K. 1997b. Life History of *Colpomenia sinuosa* and  
*Hydroclathrus clathratus* (Scytosiphonales, Phaeophyceae).  
*Phycological Research* 45(4): 227–231.
- Kogame, K. 2001. Life History of *Chnoospora implexa* (Chnoo-  
sporaceae, Phaeophyceae) in Culture. *Phycological Re-  
search* 49(2): 123–128.
- Konno, K., and M. Noda. 1980. Some Marine Algae Further  
Added to the Marine Flora of Akita Prefecture (1). *Bulletin  
of the Niigata College of Pharmacy* 3(1): 27–31.
- Kooistra, W. H. C. F., J. L. Olsen, W. T. Stam, and C. van den  
Hoek. 1993. Problems Related to the Species Sampling  
in Phylogenetic Studies: An Example of Non-monophyly  
in *Cladophoropsis* and *Struvea* (Siphonocladales, Chlo-  
rophyta). *Phycologia* 32(6): 419–428.
- Kornmann, P. 1938. Zur Entwicklungsgeschichte von *Derbesia*  
and *Halicystis*. *Planta* 28: 218–233.
- Kornmann, P. 1953. Die Formenkreis von *Acinetospora crinita*  
(Carm.) nov. comb. *Helgoländer Wissenschaftliche Meere-  
suntersuchungen* 4: 205–224.
- Kornmann, P. 1962. Der Lebenszyklus von *Desmarestia viridis*.  
*Helgoländer Wissenschaftliche Meeresuntersuchungen* 8:  
287–292.
- Kornmann, P. 1972. Ein Beitrag zur Taxonomie der Gattung  
*Chaetomorpha* (Cladophorales, Chlorophyta). *Helgoländer  
Wissenschaftliche Meeresuntersuchungen* 23: 1–31.
- Kornmann, P., and P.-H. Sahling. 1983. Meeresalgen von Helgo-  
land: Ergänzung. *Helgoländer Meeresuntersuchungen* 36: 1–65.
- Kornmann, P., and P.-H. Sahling. 1985. Erythropeltidaceen  
(Bangiophyceae, Rhodophyta) von Helgoland. *Helgoländer  
Meeresuntersuchungen* 39: 213–236.
- Kornmann, P., and P.-H. Sahling. 1988. Die Entwerrung des  
*Botrytella (Sorocarpus)*-Komplexes (Ectocarpaceae, Pha-  
eophyta). *Helgoländer Meeresuntersuchungen* 42: 1–12.
- Koster, J. T. 1955. The genus *Rhizoclonium* in the Nether-  
lands. *Pubblicazioni della Stazione Zoologica de Napoli* 27:  
335–357.
- Kraft, G. T. 2000. Marine and Estuarine Benthic Green Algae  
(Chlorophyta) of Lord Howe Island, South-Western Pacific.  
*Australian Systematic Botany* 13(4): 509–648.
- Kraft, G. T. 2007. *Algae of Australia: Marine Benthic Algae of  
Lord Howe Island and the Southern Barrier Reef, 1: Green  
Algae*. Canberra: Australian Biological Resources Study.



- Kraft, G. T., and I. A. Abbott. 2003. *Hydroclathrus* (Scytosiphonaceae, Phaeophyceae): Conspectus of the Genus and Proposal of New Species from Australia and Hawaii. *Phycological Research* 51(4): 244–258.
- Kraft, G. T., G. W. Saunders, I. A. Abbott, and H. J. Haroun. 2004. A Uniquely Calcified Brown Alga from Hawaii: *Newhousia imbricata* gen. et sp. nov. (Dictyotales, Phaeophyceae). *Journal of Phycology* 40(2): 383–394.
- Kraft, G. T., and M. J. Wynne. 1996. Delineation of the Genera *Struvea* Sonder and *Phyllocladion* J. E. Gray (Cladophorales, Chlorophyta). *Phycological Research* 44(3): 129–142.
- Krellwitz, E. C., E. V. Kowalik, and P. S. Manos. 2001. Molecular and Morphological Analyses of *Bryopsis* (Bryopsidales, Chlorophyta) from the Western North Atlantic and Caribbean. *Phycologia* 40(4): 330–339.
- Kuckuck, P. 1897. Bemerkungen zur marinen Algen-vegetation von Helgoland, II. *Helgoländer Wissenschaftliche Meeresuntersuchungen, Neue Folge*, 2: 371–400.
- Kuckuck, P. 1899. Beiträge zur Kenntnis der Meeresalgen, 5–9. *Helgoländer Wissenschaftliche Meeresuntersuchungen, Neue Folge*, 3: 11–81, pls. II(8)–VIII(14).
- Kuckuck, P. 1912. Neue Untersuchungen über *Nemoderma Schousboe*. *Helgoländer Wissenschaftliche Meeresuntersuchungen, Neue Folge*, 5: 117–152, pls. 4–6.
- Kuckuck, P. (W. Nienburg, editor). 1929. Fragmente einer Monographie der Phaeosporeen. *Wissenschaftliche Meeresuntersuchungen, Series 2, Abt. Helgoländer*, 17(4): 1–93.
- Kumagai, N. 1969. Morphogenesis in Dictyotales, VII: Gametogenesis of *Pachydictyon coriaceum* (Holm.) Okamura. *Bulletin of the Japanese Society of Phycology* 17(3): 91–98.
- Kuntze, [C. E.] O. 1898. *Revisio Generum Plantarum Vascularium Omnium Atque Cellularum Multarum Secundum*. . . Part 3(3). 576 pp. Leipzig: Arthur Felix.
- Kützing, F. T. 1834. *Algarum Aquae Dulcis Germanicarum, Collegit Fridericus Traugott Kützing*. Decade 7, Nos. 61–100. Halis Saxonum. [Exsiccata with printed labels (Sayer, 1969).]
- Kützing, F. T. 1843. *Phycologia Generalis Oder Anatomie, Physiologie und Systemkunde der Tange*. . . xvi+1–114+xviii+xxxii+145–458+[1] pp., pls. 1–80. Leipzig: F. A. Brockhaus.
- Kützing, F. T. 1845. *Phycologia germanica, d. i. Deutschlands Algen in bündigen Beschreibungen*. . . x+340 pp. Nordhausen: Wilhelm Köhne.
- Kützing, F. T. 1847. Diagnosen und Bemerkungen zu neuen oder kritischen Algen. *Botanische Zeitung* 5: 1–5, 22–25, 33–38, 52–55, 164–167, 177–180, 193–198, 219–223.
- Kützing, F. T. 1849. *Species algarum*. [i]+vi+922 pp. Leipzig: F. A. Brockhaus.
- Kützing, F. T. 1853. *Tabulae phycologicae oder Abbildungen der Tange*. Volume 3. Parts 1–2. 28 pp., 100 pls. Nordhausen: Kosten des Verfassers.
- Kützing, F. T. 1854. *Tabulae phycologicae oder Abbildungen der Tange*. Volume 4. Parts 1–2. xvi+23 pp., 100 pls. Nordhausen: Kosten des Verfassers (W. Köhne).
- Kützing, F. T. 1855. *Tabulae phycologicae oder Abbildungen der Tange*. Volume 5. Parts 1–2. ii+30 pp., 100 pls. Nordhausen: Kosten des Verfassers (W. Köhne).
- Kützing, F. T. 1856. *Tabulae phycologicae oder Abbildungen der Tange*. Volume 6. Parts 1–2. ii+30 pp., 100 pls. Nordhausen: Kosten des Verfassers (W. Köhne).
- Kützing, F. T. 1859. *Tabulae phycologicae oder Abbildungen der Tange*. Volume 9. Parts 1–2. viii+42 pp., 100 pls. Nordhausen: Kosten des Verfassers (L. Klincksieck).
- Kylin, H. 1917. Über die Entwicklungsgeschichte und die systematische Stellung der Tilopterideen. *Berichte der Deutschen Botanischen Gesellschaft* 35: 298–310.
- Kylin, H. 1933. Über die Entwicklungsgeschichte der Phaeophyceen. *Lunds Universitets Årsskrift, Ny Följd, Andra Afdelningen* 2, 29(7), 1–102, pls. 1–2. [Also issued as *Kungliga Fysiografiska Sällskapets Handlingar, Ny Följd* 44(7), 1–102, pls. 1–2.
- Kylin, H. 1938. Über die Chlorophyceengattungen *Entocladia* und *Ectochaete*. *Botaniska Notiser* 91: 67–76.
- Kylin, H. 1940. Die Phaeophyceenordnung Chordariales. *Lunds Universitets Årsskrift, Ny Följd, Andra Afdelningen* 2, 36(9), 1–67, pls. 1–8. [Also issued as *Kungliga Fysiografiska Sällskapets Handlingar, Ny Följd* 51(9), 1–67, pls. 1–8.]
- Kylin, H. 1947a. Die Phaeophyceen der schwedischen Westküste. *Lunds Universitets Årsskrift, Ny Följd, Andra Afdelningen* 2, 43(4), 1–99, 18 pls.
- Kylin, H. 1947b. Über die Fortpflanzungsverhältnisse in der Ordnung Ulvales. *Kungliga Fysiografiska Sällskapets i Lund Förhandlingar* 17: 174–182.
- Kylin, H. 1956. *Die Gattungen der Rhodophyceen*. xv+673 pp. Lund: C. W. K. Gleerups Förlag.
- La Claire, J. W. II, and J. A. West. 1977. Virus-Like Particles in the Brown Alga *Streblonema*. *Protoplasma* 93(1): 127–130.
- La Claire, J. W. II, and J. A. West. 1978. Light- and Electron-Microscopic Studies of Growth and Reproduction in *Cutleria* (Phaeophyta), I: Gametogenesis in the Female Plant of *C. hancockii*. *Protoplasma* 97(2–3): 93–110.
- La Claire, J. W. II, and J. A. West. 1979. Light- and Electron-Microscopic Studies of Growth and Reproduction in *Cutleria* (Phaeophyta), II: Gametogenesis in the Male Plant of *C. hancockii*. *Protoplasma* 101(4): 247–267.
- La Claire, J. W. II, G. C. Zuccarello, and T. Shun. 1997. Adundant Plasmid-Like DNA in Various Members of the Orders Siphonocladales and Cladophorales (Chlorophyta). *Journal of Phycology* 33(5): 830–837.
- Lagerheim, G. 1883. Bidrag till Sveriges algflora. *Öfversigt Kongliga Svenska Vetenskapsakademiens Förhandlingar* 40(1/2): 37–78.
- Lam, D. W., and F. W. Zechman. 2006. Phylogenetic Analyses of the Bryopsidales (Ulvophyceae, Chlorophyta) Based on Rubisco Large Subunit Gene Sequences. *Journal of Phycology* 42(3): 669–678.
- Lamouroux, J. V. F. 1809a. Exposition des caractères du genre *Dictyota*, et tableau des espèces qu'il renferme. *Journal de Botanique [Desvaux]* 2: 38–44.
- Lamouroux, J. V. F. 1809b. Mémoire sur trois nouveaux genres de la famille des algues marines. *Journal de Botanique [Desvaux]* 2: 129–135, pls. I, III; Fig. 1.
- Lamouroux, J. V. F. 1809c. Mémoire sur les Caulerpes, nouveau genre de la famille des Algues marines. *Journal de Botanique [Desvaux]* 2: 136–146, pls. II, III; Figs. 2–3.
- Lamouroux, J. V. F. 1809d. Observations sur la physiologie des algues marines, et description de cinq nouveaux genres de cette famille. *Nouveau Bulletin des Sciences, Publie par la Société Philomatique de Paris* 1: 330–333, pl. 6.

- Lamouroux, J. V. F. 1812. Extrait d'un mémoire sur la classification des Polypiers coralligènes non entièrement pierreux. *Nouveau Bulletin des Sciences, Publie par la Société Philomatique de Paris* 3: 181–188.
- Lamouroux, J. V. F. 1813. Essai sur les genres de la famille des Thalassiophytes non articulées. . . . *Annales du Muséum d'Histoire Naturelle, Paris* 20: 21–47, 115–139, 267–293, pls. 7–13.
- Lamouroux, J. V. F. 1816. *Histoire des polypiers coralligènes flexibles, vulgairement nommés zoophytes*. . . . lxxxiv+559+[1, errata] pp., [1] chart, XIX pls. Caen: F. Poisson.
- Lavín, M. F., R. Durazo, E. Palacios, E. Argote, and L. Carrillo. 1997. Lagrangian Observations of the Circulation in the Northern Gulf of California. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 27(10): 2298–2305.
- Lavín, M. F., V. M. Godínez, and L. G. Álvarez. 1998. Inverse-Estuarine Features of the Upper Gulf of California. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 47(6): 769–795.
- Lavín, M. F., and S. G. Marinone. 2003. An Overview of the Physical Oceanography of the Gulf of California. In *Non-linear Processes in Geophysical Fluid Dynamics*, O. U. Velasco, J. Sheinbaum, and J. Ochoa, eds., pp. 173–204. New York: Springer.
- Lawson, G. W., and D. M. John. 1987. The Marine Algae and Coastal Environment of Tropical West Africa (Second Edition). *Beiheft zur Nova Hedwigia* 93: vi, 1–415.
- Lee, E.-Y., I. K. Lee, and H.-G. Choi. 2003. Morphological and Nuclear Small-Subunit rDNA Sequences of *Ishigea* (Ishigeaceae, Phaeophyceae) and Its Phylogenetic Relationship among Selected Brown Algal Orders. *Botanica Marina* 46(2): 193–201.
- Lee, M. K., G. H. Boo, R. Riosmena-Rodríguez, J. A. Shin, and S. M. Boo. 2009. Classification of the Genus *Ishigea* in the North Pacific Ocean with Recognition of *Ishigea foliacea* based on Plastid *rbcl* and Mitochondrial *cox3* Gene Sequences. *Journal of Phycology*, DOI: 10.1111/j.1529-8817.2009.00704.x
- Lee, R. K. 1999. *Phycology*. x+614 pp. 3rd ed. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Lee, Y.-P., and S. Kang. 2001. *A Catalogue of the Seaweeds in Korea*. [8]+1–662 pp. Jeju, Korea: Cheju National University Press.
- Lee, Y.-P. 2008. *Marine Algae of Jeju*. [i]–xvi, 1–177 pp., 1 map. Seoul, Korea: Academy Publication.
- Leipe, D. D., P. O. Wainright, J. H. Gunderson, D. Porter, D. J. Patterson, F. Valois, S. Himmerich, and M. L. Sogin. 1994. The Stramenopiles from a Molecular Perspective: 16S-like rRNA Sequences from *Labyrinthuloides minuta* and *Cafeteria roenbergensis*. *Phycologia* 33(5): 369–377.
- Le Jolis, A. 1863. Liste des algues marines de Cherbourg. *Mémoires de la Société Impériale des Sciences Naturelles de Cherbourg* 10: 5–168, pls. 1–6.
- Leliaert, F. 2004. Taxonomic and Phylogenetic Studies in the Cladophorophyceae (Chlorophyta). iv+294 pp. Ph.D. diss. Universiteit Gent, Ghent, Belgium.
- Leliaert, F., and E. Coppejans. 2003. The Marine Species of *Cladophora* (Chlorophyta) from the South African East Coast. *Nova Hedwigia* 76(1–2): 45–82.
- Leliaert, F., and E. Coppejans. 2004. Crystalline Cell Inclusions: A New Diagnostic Character in the Cladophorophyceae (Chlorophyta). *Phycologia* 43(2): 189–203.
- Leliaert, F., and E. Coppejans. 2006. A Revision of *Cladophoropsis* Børgesen (Siphonocladales, Chlorophyta). *Phycologia* 45(6): 657–679.
- Leliaert, F., and E. Coppejans. 2007. Systematics of Two Deep-Water Species from the Indo-West Pacific: *Struvea gardineri* A. Gepp & E. Gepp and *Phyllocladion orientale* (A. Gepp & E. Gepp) Kraft & M. J. Wynne (Siphonocladales, Chlorophyta). *Botanical Journal of the Linnean Society* 153: 115–132.
- Leliaert, F., O. De Clerck, H. Verbruggen, C. Boedeker, and E. Coppejans. 2007. Molecular Phylogeny of the Siphonocladales (Chlorophyta: Cladophorophyceae). *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* 44(3): 1237–1256.
- Leliaert, F., F. Rousseau, B. de Reviere, and E. Coppejans. 2003. Phylogeny of the Cladophorophyceae (Chlorophyta) Inferred from Partial LSU rRNA Gene Sequences: Is the Recognition of a Separate Order Siphonocladales Justified? *European Journal of Phycology* 38(3): 233–246.
- Leliaert, F., B. Wysor, H. Verbruggen, C. Vlaeminck, and O. De Clerck. 2008. *Phyllocladion robustum* (Setchell et Gardner) comb. nov. (Siphonocladales, Chlorophyta), a Morphologically Variable Species from the Tropical Pacific Coast of America. *Cryptogamie, Algologie* 29(3): 217–233.
- León-Álvarez, D., and J. González-González. 1993. Algas costeros del Pacífico Tropical. In *Biodiversidad Marina y Costera de México*, S. I. Salazar-Vallejo and N. E. González, eds., pp. 456–474. Mexico City: Comisión Nacional para el Conocimiento y Aprovechamiento de la Biodiversidad, y Centro de Investigaciones de Quintana Roo.
- León-Álvarez, D., and J. González-González. 1995. Characterization of the Environmental Distribution and Morphs of *Ralfsia hancockii* Dawson (Phaeophyta) in the Mexican Tropical Pacific. *Botanica Marina* 38(4): 359–367.
- León-Álvarez, D., and J. González-González. 2003. The Morphological Distinction of *Ralfsia expansa* and *R. hancockii* (Ralfsiaceae, Phaeophyta) from Mexico. *Phycologia* 42(6): 613–621.
- León-Álvarez, D., and J. N. Norris. 2004. Terminology and Position of Reproductive Structures in Crustose Brown Algae: Misapplication, Confusion and Clarification. *Cryptogamie, Algologie* 26(1): 91–102.
- León-Álvarez, D., E. Servière-Zaragoza, and J. González-González. 1997. Description of the Tetrasporangial Crustose and Gametangial Erect Phases of *Ahnfeltiopsis gigartinoides* (J. Ag.) Silva et DeCew (Rhodophyta, Phylloporaceae) in Bahía de Banderas, México. *Botanica Marina* 40(4): 397–404.
- León-Portillo, M. 1972. Descubrimiento en 1540 y primeras noticias de la isla de Cedros. *Calafia (Revista Universidad Autónoma de Baja California)* 2(1): 8–10.
- León-Portillo, M. 1995. *La California mexicana: Ensayos acerca de su historia*. México. 308 pp. México D. F.: Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México.
- León-Tejera, H. P., D. Fragoso, D. León-Álvarez, C. Candelaria, E. Servière, and J. González-González. 1993. Characterization of Tide Pool Algae in the Mexican Tropical Pacific Coast. *Hydrobiologia* 260/261: 197–205.
- León-Tejera, H. P., and J. González-González. 1993. Macroalgas de Oaxaca. In *Biodiversidad Marina y Costera de México*, S. I. Salazar-Vallejo and N. E. González, eds., pp. 486–498. Mexico City: Comisión Nacional para el Conocimiento y

- Aprovechamiento de la Biodiversidad, y Centro de Investigaciones de Quintana Roo.
- León-Tejera, H. P., and J. González-González. 1994. New Reports of Macroalgae from the Coast of Oaxaca, México. *Botanica Marina* 37(5): 491–494.
- León-Tejera, H. P., and J. González-González. 2000. Macroalgal Communities from Laguna Superior, Oaxaca. In *Aquatic Ecosystems of Mexico: Status and Scope*, M. Munawar, S. G. Lawrence, I. F. Munawar, and D. F. Malley, eds., pp. 323–334. Ecovision World Monograph Series. Leiden: Backhuys Publishers.
- Lepley, L. K., S. P. Vonder-Haar, J. R. Hendrickson, and G. Calderon-Riveroll. 1975. Circulation in the Northern Gulf of California from Orbital Photographs and Ship Investigations. *Ciencias Marinas* 2(2): 86–93.
- Lercari, D., and E. A. Chávez. 2007. Possible Causes Related to Historic Stock Depletion of the totoaba, *Totoaba macdonaldi* (Perciformes: Sciaenidae), Endemic to the Gulf of California. *Fisheries Research* 86 (2–3): 136–142.
- Leskinen, E., and P. Pamilo. 1997. Evolution of the ITS Sequences of Ribosomal DNA in *Enteromorpha* (Chlorophyceae). *Hereditas* 126(1): 17–13.
- Levring, T. 1938. Verzeichnis einiger Chlorophyceen und Phaeophyceen von Südafrika. *Lunds Universitets Årsskrift, Ny Följd* 2, 34(9): 1–25, 4 pls.
- Levring, T. 1939. Über die Phaeophyceengattungen *Myriogloia* Kuck. und *Haplogloia* nov. gen. *Botaniska Notiser* 1939: 40–52.
- Levring, T. 1941. Die Meeresalgen der Juan Fernandez-Inseln. In *Volume 2: Botany*, C. Skottsberg, ed., pp. 601–670, pls. 49–53, *The Natural History of Juan Fernandez and Easter Island*. Uppsala: Almqvist & Wiksells Boktryckeri.
- Levring, T. 1960. Contributions to the Marine Algal Flora of Chile. Reports of the Lund University Chile Expedition 1948–49, no. 39. *Lunds Universitets Årsskrift, Ny Följd* 2, 56(10): 1–83+[2].
- Lewbel, G. S., A. Wolfso, T. Gerrodette, W. H. Lippincott, J. L. Wilson, and M. M. Littler. 1981. Shallow-Water Benthic Communities on California's Outer Continental Shelf. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 4: 159–168.
- Lewis, J. E., and J. N. Norris. 1987. *A History and Annotated Account of the Benthic Marine Algae of Taiwan*. Smithsonian Contributions to the Marine Sciences, No. 29: iv+38 pp. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution Press.
- Lewis, L. A., and R. M. McCourt. 2004. Green Algae and the Origin of Land Plants. *American Journal of Botany* 91(10): 1535–1556.
- Lewis, L. R. 1971. *Baja Sea Guide, Volume 2: Covering the Waters of Baja California from San Diego to Cabo San Lucas, to San Felipe, Including All the Offshore and Oceanic Islands*. 368 pp. San Francisco: Miller Freeman Publications.
- Lewis, R. J., J. N. Norris, and J. W. Markham. 1994. In Memoriam: Michael Neushul, Jr. (1933–1993). *Phycologia* 33(3): 219–224.
- Lewis, S. M., J. N. Norris, and R. B. Searles. 1987. The Regulation of Morphological Plasticity in Tropical Reef Algae by Herbivory. *Ecology* 68(3): 636–641.
- Liebmann, F. M. (edited by A. S. Ørsted). 1869. *Chênes de l'Amérique tropicale. Iconographie des espèces nouvelles ou peu connues. Ouvrage posthume de F. M. Liebmann. Achevé et augmentée d'un aperçu sur la classification des chênes en general par A. S. Ørsted*. [iv]+x+29+[1] pp., pls. A–K, 1–17. Leipzig: Léopold Voss et al.
- Lightfoot, J. 1777a. *Flora scotica: Or, a Systematic Arrangement, in the Linnaean Method, of the Native Plants of Scotland and the Hebrides . . .* 1st ed. Volume 1. xli+530 pp., pls. 1–23. London: Printed for B. White.
- Lightfoot, J. 1777b. *Flora scotica: Or, a Systematic Arrangement, in the Linnaean Method, of the Native Plants of Scotland and the Hebrides . . .* 1st ed. Volume 2. Pp. [I]+531–1151+[24], pls. 24–35. London: Printed for B. White.
- Lim, P.-E., M. Sakaguchi, T. Hanyuda, K. Kogame, S.-M. Phang, and H. Kawai. 2007. Molecular Phylogeny of Crustose Brown Algae (Ralfsiales, Phaeophyceae) Inferred from *rbcL* Sequences Resulting in the Proposal for Neoralfsiaceae fam. nov. *Phycologia* 46(4): 456–466.
- Lindsay, G. E. 1955. Notes Concerning the Botanical Explorers and Exploration of Lower California, México. Stanford University, Biology 199 (Winter Quarter), unpublished mimeo. Library, California Academy of Sciences, San Francisco.
- Lindsay, G. E. 1983. History of Scientific Exploration in the Sea of Cortéz. In *Island Biogeography in the Sea of Cortéz*, T. J. Case and M. L. Cody, eds., pp. 3–12. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Lindsay, G. E., and I. Engstrand. 2002. History of Scientific Exploration in the Sea of Cortés. In *A New Island Biogeography of the Sea of Cortés*, T. J. Case, M. L. Cody, and E. Ezcurra, eds., pp. 3–13. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Link, [J.] H. F. 1820. Epistola ad Virum Celeberrimum Nees ad Esenbeck . . . de Algis Aquaticis, in Genera Disponendis. In *Horae Physicae Berolinenses . . .*, C. G. D. Nees von Esenbeck, ed., pp. 1–8, pl. 1. Bonn: Adolphi Marcus.
- Link, [J.] H. F. 1832. Über die Pflanzenzenthierie überhaupt und die dazu gerechneten Gewächse besonders. *Abhandlungen der Königlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften, Berlin* 1830: 109–123.
- Link, [J.] H. F. 1833. *Handbuch zur Erkennung der nutzbarsten und am häufigsten vorkommenden Gewächse . . .* xviii+536 pp. Volume 3. (Part 3) Berlin: S. J. Joseephy.
- Linnaeus, C. 1753. *Species Plantarum, Exhibentes Plantas Ritae Cognitas, ad Genera Relatas, cum Differentiis Specificas, Nominibus Trivialibus, Synonymis Selectis, Locis Natalibus, Secundum Systema Sexuale Digestas*. 1st ed. Volume 2. [I]+561–1200+[30, index]+[1, errata] pp. Holmiae [Stockholm]: Impensis Laurentii Salvii.
- Linnaeus, C. 1755. *Flora Svecica [Suecica] Exhibens Plantas per Regnum Sveciae Crescens, Systematice cum Differentiis Specierum Synonymis Autorum Nominibus Incolarum Solo Locorum usu Pharmacopaeorum*. Editio Secunda Aucta et Emendata. . . [iv]+xxxii+464+[30, index] pp., 1 pl. Stockholm: Sumtu and literis Laurentii Salvii.
- Linnaeus, C. 1771. *Carolo a Linné Mantissa plantarum [2] altera*. Generum ed. 6 and Specierum ed. 2. Pp. [vi]+143–587+[588]. Stockholm: Impensis Laurentii Salvii.
- Lipkin, Y., and P. C. Silva. 2002. Marine Algae and Seagrasses of the Dahlak Archipelago, Southern Red Sea. *Nova Hedwigia* 75(1): 1–90.
- Littler, M. M., and K. E. Arnold. 1982. Primary Productivity of Marine Macroalgal Functional-Form Groups from

- Southwestern North America. *Journal of Phycology* 18(3): 307–311.
- Littler, M. M., and D. S. Littler. 1981. Intertidal Macrophyte Communities from Pacific Baja California and the Upper Gulf of California: Relatively Constant vs. Environmentally Fluctuating Systems. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 4: 145–158.
- Littler, M. M., and D. S. Littler. 1984. Relationships between Macroalgal Function Form Groups and Substrata Stability in a Subtropical Rocky-Intertidal System. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 74(1): 13–34.
- Littler, M. M., D. S. Littler, S. M. Blair, and J. N. Norris. 1985. Deepest Known Plant Life Discovered on an Uncharted Seamount. *Science* 227(4682): 57–59.
- Littler, M. M., D. S. Littler, S. M. Blair, and J. N. Norris. 1986. Deep-Water Plant Communities from an Uncharted Seamount off San Salvador, Bahamas: Distribution, Abundance, and Primary Productivity. *Deep-Sea Research* 33(7): 881–892.
- Lluch-Cota, S.E. 2000. Coastal Upwelling in the Eastern Gulf of California. *Oceanologica Acta*, 23(6):731–740.
- Lluch-Cota, D. B., A. Castellanos-Vera, J. Llinas-Contreras, and A. Ortega-Rubio. 1993. La reserva de la biosfera El Vizcaíno. In *Biodiversidad Marina y Costera de México*, S. I. Salazar-Vallejo and N. E. González, eds., pp. 358–388. Mexico City: Comisión Nacional para el Conocimiento y Aprovechamiento de la Biodiversidad, y Investigaciones de Quintana Roo.
- Lockhart, J. C. 1982. Influence of Light, Temperature and Nitrogen on Morphogenesis of *Desmotrichum undulatum* (J. Agardh) Reinke (Phaeophyta, Punctariaceae). *Phycologia* 21(3): 264–272.
- Loiseaux, S. 1967. Recherches sur les cycles de développement des Myrionémacées, I-II: Hécatonématées et Myrionématées. *Revue Générale de Botanique* 74: 529–577, pls. 1–2.
- Loiseaux, S. 1968. Recherches sur les cycles de développement des Myrionémacées, III: Tribu des Ralfsiées, [and] IV: Conclusions générales. *Revue Générale de Botanique* 75: 295–318.
- Loiseaux, S. 1969. Sur une espèce de *Myriotrichia* obtenue en culture à partir de zoïdes d'*Hecatonema maculans* Sauv. *Phycologia* 8(1): 11–15.
- Loiseaux, S. 1970a. *Streblonema anomalum* S. & G. and *Composonema sporangiferum* S. & G., Stages in the Life History of a Minute Scytosiphon. *Phycologia* 9(2): 185–191.
- Loiseaux, S. 1970b. Notes on Several Myrionemataceae from California Using Culture Studies. *Journal of Phycology* 6(3): 248–260.
- López, M., J. Candela, and M. L. Argote. 2006. Why Does the Ballenas Channel Have the Coldest SST in the Gulf of California? *Geophysical Research Letters*, 33, L11603. doi:10.1029/2006GL025908.
- López, N., D. Rodríguez, and C. Candelaria-Silva. 2004. Intraspecific Morphological Variation in Turf-Forming Algal Species. *Universidad y Ciencia (Universidad Juárez Autónoma de Tabasco)*, número especial 1: 7–15.
- López, N., D. Rodríguez, C. Candelaria-Silva, and J. González-González. 2000. Subtidal macroalgal communities of Acapulco and Zihuatanejo, Guerrero, México. In *Aquatic Ecosystems of Mexico: Status and Scope*, Munawar, M., S. G. Lawrence, I. F. Munawar, and D. F. Malley, eds., pp. 335–351. Ecovision World Monograph Series, Leiden: Backhuys Publishers.
- Lyngbye, H. C. 1819. *Tentamen Hydrophytologiae Danicae Continens Omina Hydrophyta Cryptogama Daniae, Holsatiae, Faeroae, Islandiae, Groenlandiae Hucusque Cognita, Systematice Disposita, Descriptata et Iconibus Illustrata, Adjectis Simul Speciebus Norvegicis*. xxxii+248 pp., 70 pls. Copenhagen: Typis Schultzianis.
- Mahendran, M., S. Samasundarun, and R. M. Thomson. 1979. A Revised Structure from Caulerpicin from *Caulerpa racemosa*. *Phytochemistry* 18(4): 1085–1086.
- Maiti, B. C., R. H., Thomson, and M. Mahendran. 1978. The Structure of Caulerpin, a Pigment from *Caulerpa* Algae. *Journal of Chemical Research, Part S (Synopsis)*, 4: 126–127.
- Maluf, L. Y. 1983. The Physical Oceanography. In *Island Biogeography in the Sea of Cortéz*, T. J. Case and M. L. Cody, eds., pp. 26–45. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Margulis, L., J. O. Corliss, M. Melkonian, and D. J. Chapman. 1990. *Handbook of Protoctista: The Structure, Cultivation, Habitats and Life Histories of Eukaryotic Microorganisms and Descendants Exclusive of Animals, Plants and Fungi*. 914 pp. Boston: Jones & Bartlett.
- Margulis, L., and K. V. Schwartz. 1998. *Five Kingdoms: An Illustrated Guide to the Phyla of Life on Earth*. 3rd ed. 520 pp. New York: W. H. Freeman.
- Marinone, S. G. 2007. A Note on “Why Does the Ballenas Channel Have the Coldest SST in the Gulf of California?” *Geophysical Research Letters* 34: L02607, doi:10.1029/2006GL028589
- Marinone, S. G., and M. F. Lavín. 1997. Mareas y Corrientes Residuales en el Golfo de California. In *Contribuciones a la Oceanografía Física en México*, M. F. Lavín, ed., pp. 113–139, Monografía 3. Ensenada, Baja California: Unión Geofísica Mexicana.
- Martens, G. [M.] von. 1868 [1866]. *Die Tange*. In *Die Preussische Expedition nach Ost-Asien*. Nach amtlichen Quellen. Botanischer Theil. [iii]+152 pp., 8 pls. Berlin: Ober-Hofbuchdruckerei, R.v. Decker.
- Martínez-Díaz de León, A., I. Pacheco-Ruíz, F. Delgadillo-Hinojosa, J. A. Zertuche-González, A. Chee-Barragán, R. Blanco-Betancourt, J. M. Guzmán-Calderón, and A. Gálvez-Telles. 2006. Spatial and Temporal Variability of the Surface Temperature in the Ballenas-Salsipuedes Channel (Central Gulf of California). *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 111, C02008, doi:10.1029/2005JC002940.
- Martínez-Lozano, S., R. J. Bernal-Fematt, and M. A. Escalante-Cavazos. 1991. Algas marinas de algunas localidades de Baja California Sur, Sinaloa y Sonora, México. *Biotam* 3(2): 15–40.
- Masuda, M. 1982. A Systematic Study of the Tribe Rhodomelae (Rhodomelaceae, Rhodophyta). *Journal of the Faculty of Science, Hokkaido University, Series 5, Botany* 12: 209–400, pls. 1–28.
- Mateo-Cid, L. E., and A. C. Mendoza-González. 1991. Algas marinas bénticas de la costa del estado de Colima, México. *Acta Botánica Mexicana* 13: 9–30.
- Mateo-Cid, L. E., and A. C. Mendoza-González. 1992. Algas marinas bentónicas de la costa sur de Nayarit, México. *Acta Botánica Mexicana* 20: 13–28.

- Mateo-Cid, L. E., and A. C. Mendoza-González. 1993. Algas marinas poco conocidas de la flora Mexicana, X: *Derbesia marina* (Lyngbye) Solier y *D. prolifera* W. Taylor (Chlorophyta, Bryopsidaceae). *Anales de la Escuela Nacional de Ciencias Biológicas, México* 38: 9–16.
- Mateo-Cid, L. E., and A. C. Mendoza-González. 1994a. Estudio florístico de las algas bentónicas de Bahía Asunción, Baja California Sur, México. *Ciencias Marinas* 20(1): 41–64.
- Mateo-Cid, L. E., and A. C. Mendoza-González. 1994b. Algas marinas bentónicas de Todos Santos, Baja California Sur, México. *Acta Botánica Mexicana* 29: 32–47.
- Mateo-Cid, L. E., and A. C. Mendoza-González. 1997. Nuevos registros de algas marinas para Oaxaca, México. *Polibotánica* 4: 54–74.
- Mateo-Cid, L. E., and A. C. Mendoza-González. 2003 [2001]. Algas marinas bentónicas de la costa de Oaxaca, México. *Anales de la Escuela Nacional de Ciencias Biológicas, México*, 47: 11–26.
- Mateo-Cid, L. E., A. C. Mendoza-González, R. Aguilar-Rosas, and L. E. Aguilar-Rosas. 2006. Algas marinas bentónicas de Puerto Peñasco, Sonora, México. *Hidrobiológica* 16: 45–65.
- Mateo-Cid, L. E., A. C. Mendoza-González, C. Galicia-García, and L. Huerta-Múzquiz. 2000a. Contribución al estudio de las algas marinas bentónicas de Punta Arena y Cabo Pulmo, Baja California Sur, México. *Acta Botánica Mexicana* 52: 55–73.
- Mateo-Cid, L. E., A. C. Mendoza-González, L. Huerta-Múzquiz, R. Aguilar-Rosas, and L. E. Aguilar-Rosas. 2000b. La familia Dictyotaceae (Dictyotales, Phaeophyta) en la Península de Baja California, México. *Anales de la Escuela Nacional de Ciencias Biológicas* 46: 189–270.
- Mateo-Cid, L. E., I. Sánchez-Rodríguez, Y. E. Rodríguez-Montesinos, and M. M. Casas-Valdez. 1993. Estudio florístico de las algas marinas bentónicas de Bahía Concepción, B. C. S., México. *Ciencias Marinas* 19(1): 41–60.
- Mattox, K. R., and K. D. Stewart. 1984. Classification of the Green Algae: A Concept Based on Comparative Cytology. In *Systematics of the Green Algae*, D. E. G. Irvine and D. M. John, eds., pp. 29–72. Systematics Association Special Volume, No. 27. London: Academic Press.
- Mazé, H., and A. Schramm. 1878 [1870–1877]. *Essai de Classification des Algues de la Guadeloupe*. 2nd ed. XIX+283+III pp. Basse-Terre, Guadeloupe: Imprimerie du Gouvernement.
- McClatchie, A. J. 1897. Seedless Plants of Southern California. *Proceedings of the Southern California Academy of Sciences* 1(5): 337–395.
- McClintock, M., N. Higinbotham, E. G. Uribe, and R. E. Cleland. 1982. Active, Irreversible Accumulation of Extreme Levels of H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> in the Brown Alga, *Desmarestia*. *Plant Physiology* 70(3): 771–774.
- McCourt, R. M. 1984a. Seasonal Patterns of Abundance, Distributions, and Phenology in Relation to Growth Strategies of Three Species of *Sargassum*. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 74(2): 141–156.
- McCourt, R. M. 1984b. Niche Differences between Sympatric *Sargassum* Species in the Northern Gulf of California. *Marine Biology Progress Series* 18: 139–148.
- McCourt, R. M. 1993. In Memoriam: Robert W. Hoshaw. *Phytologia* 32(6): 471.
- McEnroe, F. J., K. J. Robertson, and W. H. Fenical. 1977. Di-terpenoid Synthesis in Brown Seaweeds of the Family Dictyotaceae. In *Marine Natural Products Chemistry*, D. J. Faulkner and W. H. Fenical, eds., pp. 179–189. New York: Plenum Press.
- McNeill, J., F. R. Barrie, H. M. Burdet, V. Demoulin, D. L. Hawksworth, K. Marhold, D. H. Nicolson, J. Prado, P. C. Silva, J. E. Skog, H. Wiersema, and N. J. Turland. 2006. *International Code of Botanical Nomenclature (Vienna Code)*. xviii+568 pp. Regnum Vegetabile, No. 146. Ruggell, Lichenstein: A. R. G. Gantner Verlag K.-G.
- McVaugh, R. 1956. *Edward Palmer, Plant Explorer of the American West*. xvii+430 pp. Norman: University of Oklahoma Press.
- Medlin, L. K., A. Cooper, C. Hill, S. Wrieden, and U. Wellbrock. 1995. Phylogenetic Position of the Chromista Plastids Based on Small Subunit rRNA Coding Regions. *Current Genetics* 28(6): 560–565.
- Medlin, L. K., W. H. C. F. Kooistra, D. Potter, G. W. Saunders, and R. A. Andersen. 1997. Phylogenetic Relationships of the “Golden Algae” (Haptophytes, Heterokont Chromophytes) and Their Chloroplasts. In *Origins of the Algae and Their Plastids*, D. Bhattacharya, ed, pp. 187–219. New York: Springer-Verlag.
- Mendoza-González, A. C., and L. E. Mateo-Cid. 1985. Contribución al estudio florístico ficológica de la costa occidental de Baja California, México. *Phytologia* 59(1): 17–33.
- Mendoza-González, A. C., and L. E. Mateo-Cid. 1986. Flora marinas bentónica de la costa noroeste del estado de Sonora, México. *Phytologia* 60(6): 414–427.
- Mendoza-González, A. C., and L. E. Mateo-Cid. 1992. Estudio preliminar de las algas marinas bentónicas de la costa de Jalisco, México. *Anales de la Escuela Nacional de Ciencias Biológicas, México* 37(1–4): 9–25.
- Mendoza-González, A. C., and L. E. Mateo-Cid. 1996. Contribución al estudio de la ficoflora marina de la costa del estado de Chiapas, México. *Polibotánica* 2: 61–118.
- Mendoza-González, A. C., and L. E. Mateo-Cid. 1998. Avance de un estudio sobre las macroalgas marinas de Guerrero y Oaxaca, México. *Ciencia y Mar* 3(Enero-Abril): 15–29.
- Mendoza-González, A. C., and L. E. Mateo-Cid. 1999. Adiciones a la ficoflora marina bentónica de las costas Oaxaca, México. *Polibotánica* 10: 39–58.
- Mendoza-González, A. C., and L. E. Mateo-Cid. 2005. El género *Dictyopteris* J. V. Lamouroux (Dictyotales, Phaeophyceae) en las costas de México. *Hidrobiológica* 15(1): 43–63.
- Mendoza-González, A. C., L. E. Mateo-Cid, R. Aguilar-Rosas, and L. E. Aguilar-Rosas. 1999. Algas marinas bentónicas de Punta San Isidro, Baja California, México. *Anales de la Escuela Nacional de Ciencias Biológicas, México* 45(1–4): 51–67.
- Mendoza-González, A. C., L. E. Mateo-Cid, R. Aguilar-Rosas, and L. E. Aguilar-Rosas. 2000. La familia Sphacelariaceae (Sphacelariales, Phaeophyta) en las costas de México. *Polibotánica* 11: 21–48.
- Mendoza-González, A. C., L. E. Mateo-Cid, and L. Huerta-Múzquiz. 1994. Algas marinas bentónicas de Mazatlán, Sinaloa, México. *Acta Botánica Mexicana* 27: 99–115.
- Meneghini, G. [G. A.]. 1840. *Lettera del Prof. Giuseppe Meneghini al Dottore Jacob Corinaldi a Pisa*. [4] pp. Pisa: Tipografia Prospero.

- Meneghini, G. [G. A.]. 1842. *Alge italiane e dalmatiche*. Fasciculus 1–3. Pp. [1–3]–4–255, pls. 1–4. Padua: Tipografia di Angelo Sicca.
- Menzel, D. 1980. Plug Formation and Peroxydase Accumulation in Two Orders of Siphonous Green Algae (Caulerpales and Dasycladales) in Relation to Fertilization and Injury. *Phycologia* 19(1): 7–48.
- Menzel, D. 1988. How Do Giant Plant Cells Cope with Injury?—The Wound Response in Siphonous Green Algae. *Protoplasma* 144(2-3): 73–91.
- Migita, S., and T. Yotsui. 1972. Experimental Studies on the Propagation of *Nemacystus decipiens*, I: On the Life Cycle of *Nemacystus decipiens*. *Bulletin of the Faculty of Fisheries, Nagasaki University* 34: 51–62.
- Migula, W. 1908. *Kryptogamen-Flora von Deutschland, Deutsch-Österreich und der Schweiz im Anschluss an Thomé's Flora von Deutschland bearbeitet von Dr. W. Migula*. . . ., Volume 2: *Algen* Pt. 2(no. 2), *Teil: Rhodophyceae, Phaeophyceae, Characeae*. Pp. [ii–iv]+1–276, 126 pls. Berlin: Hugo Bermühler Verlag.
- Möbius, M. 1889. Bearbeitung der von H. Schenck in Brasilien gesammelten Algen. *Hedwigia* 28: 309–347, pls. 10–11.
- Moe, R. L., and P. C. Silva. 1977. Sporangia in the Brown Algal Genus *Desmarestia* with Special Reference to Antarctic *D. ligulata*. *Bulletin of the Japanese Society of Phycology (Sôru)* 25(Supplement memorial issue Yamada): 159–167.
- Moe, R. L., and P. C. Silva. 1989. *Desmarestia antarctica* (Desmarestiales, Phaeophyceae), a New Ligulate Antarctic Species with an Endophytic Gametophyte. *Plant Systematics and Evolution* 164(1–4): 273–283.
- Moestrup, Ø. 1992. The Algal Classes. In *Proceedings of the Symposium on Culture Collection of Algae*, 4, M. M. Watanabe, ed., pp. 1–10. Tsukuba, Japan: National Institute for Environmental Studies.
- Moestrup, Ø., and R. A. Andersen. 1991. Organization of Heterotrophic Heterokonts. In *The Biology of Free-living Heterotrophic Flagellates*, D. J. Patterson and J. Larsen, eds., pp. 333–360. Systematics Association Special Volume, No. 45. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Moewus, L. 1949. Zur Biologie und Systematik der Gattung *Ectochoete* (*E. polymorpha* and *E. ramulosa*). *Botaniska Notiser* 102(4): 283–312.
- Montagne, [J. P. F.] C. 1837. Centurie des plantes cellulaires exotiques nouvelles. *Annales Sciences Naturelles, Botanique, Série 2*, 8: 345–370.
- Montagne, [J. P. F.] C. 1842a. Algae. In *Histoire physique, politique et naturelle de l'île de Cuba, Volume 2: Botanique—plantes cellularis*, M. Ramon de la Sagra, ed., pp. 1–104, pls. 1–20 in accompanying *Atlas* (Cryptogamie). Paris: Arthur Bertrand.
- Montagne, [J. P. F.] C. 1842b. Troisième centurie de plantes cellulaires exotiques nouvelles, Décades V, VI, VII, et VIII. *Annales des Sciences Naturelles, Botanique, Série 2*, 18: 241–282, pl. 7.
- Montagne, [J. P. F.] C. 1846. Ordo I. Phyceae Fries. In *Exploration Scientifique de l'Algérie pendant les années 1840, 1841, 1842 publiée par ordre du gouvernement et avec le concours d'une commission académique. Sciences physiques. Botanique par MM Bory de Saint-Vincent et Durieu de Maisonneuve*, Volume 1, *Cryptogamie*, M. C. Durieu de Maisonneuve, ed., pp. 1–197, pls. 1–16. Paris: Imprimerie Royale.
- Montagne, [J. P. F.] C. 1849. Sixième centurie de plantes cellulaires nouvelles, tant indigènes qu'exotiques. Décades III à VI. *Annales des Sciences Naturelles, Botanique, Série 3*, 11: 33–66.
- Montagne, [J. P. F.] C. 1850. *Cryptogamia guayanensis*, seu plantarum cellularium in Guyana gallica annis 1835–1849 a cl. Leprieur collectarum enumeration universalis. . . . *Annales des Sciences Naturelles, Botanique, Série 3*, 14(5): 283–309.
- Montagne, [J. P. F.] C. 1856. *Sylloge generum specierumque cryptogamarum quas in variis operibus descriptas inonobusque illustrates, nunc ad diagnosim reductas, nonnullasque novas interjectas, ordine systematico disposuit*. xxiv+498 pp. Paris: J.-B. Baillière.
- Mosiña, A. P., and E. García. 1974. The Climate of México. In *The Climates of North America: World Survey of Climatology*, R. A. Bryson and F. K. Hare, eds., pp. 345–404. Amsterdam: Elsevier.
- Mower, A., and T. B. Widdowson. 1969. New Records of Marine Algae from Southern California. *Bulletin of the Southern California Academy of Sciences* 68(1): 72–81.
- Müller, D. G. 1974. Sexual Reproduction and Isolation of a Sex Attractant in *Cutleria multifida* (Smith) Grev. (Phaeophyta). *Biochemie und Physiologie der Pflanzen* 165: 212–215.
- Müller, D. G. 1986. Apomeiosis in *Acinetospora* (Phaeophyceae, Ectocarpales). *Helgoländer Meeresuntersuchungen* 40: 219–224.
- Müller, D. G., M. N. Clayton, and I. Germann. 1985. Sexual Reproduction and Life History of *Perithalia caudata* (Sporochnales, Phaeophyta). *Phycologia* 24(4): 467–473.
- Müller, D. G., and N. Lütke. 1981. Hormonal Interaction in Sexual Reproduction of *Desmarestia aculeata* (Phaeophyceae). *British Phycological Journal* 16(4): 351–356.
- Müller, D. G., A. Peters, G. Gassmann, W. Boland, F.-J. Marner, and L. Jaenicke. 1982. Identification of a Sexual Hormone and Related Substances in the Brown Alga *Desmarestia*. *Naturwissenschaften* 69(6): 290–291.
- Müller, O. F. 1778. *Icones plantarum sponte nascentium in regnis Daniae et Norvegiae*. . . . *Flora Danica*. Volume 5, Fasciculus 13. 8 pp., pls. 721–780. Copenhagen: Hof-Bogtrykker Nicolas Møller.
- Müller, O. F. 1782. [“*Flora danica*.”] *Icones plantarum sponte nascentium in regnis Daniae et Norvegiae, in ducatus Slesvici et Holsaticae, et in comitatibus oldenburgi et Delmenhorstiae; ad illustrandum opus de iisdem plantis, region jussu exarandum, Flora danicae nomine inscriptum*. Vol. 5, Fasciculus 15. [1]–6 pp., pls. 841–900. Copenhagen: Hof-Bogtrykker Nicolas Møller.
- Murray, G. 1889. On *Boodlea*, a New Genus of Siphonocladaceae. *Journal of the Linnean Society London* 25: 243–245, pl. 49.
- Murray, G., and L. A. Boddle, 1888. A Structural and Systematic Account of the Genus *Struwea*. *Annals of Botany* 2: 265–282, pl. 16.
- Nagasato, C., T. Motomura, and T. Ichimura. 1998. Selective Disappearance of Maternal Centrioles after Fertilization in the Anisogamous Brown Alga *Cutleria cylindrica* (Cutle-

- riales, Phaeophyceae): Paternal Inheritance of Centrioles is Universal in the Brown Algae. *Phycological Research* 46(3): 191–198.
- Nägeli, C. 1847. Die neueren Algensysteme und Versuch zur Begründung eines eigenen Systems der Algen und Florideen. *Neue Denkschriften der Allgemeinen Schweizerischen Gesellschaft für die Gesammten Naturwissenschaften* 9(2): 1–275. [Also published Zurich: Friedrich Schulthess.]
- Nakahara, H. 1984. Alternation of Generations of Some Brown Algae in Unialgal and Axenic Cultures. *Scientific Papers of the Institute of Algological Research, Faculty of Science, Hokkaido University* 7: 77–194.
- Nakamura, Y. 1965. Development of Zoospores in *Ralfsia*-Like Thallus, with Special Reference to the Life Cycle of the Scytosiphonales. *The Botanical Magazine (Tokyo)* 78(921): 109–110.
- Nakamura, Y. 1972. A Proposal on the Classification of the Phaeophyta. In *Contributions to the Systematics of Benthic Marine Algae of the North Pacific*, I. A. Abbott and M. Kurogi, eds., pp. 147–156. Kobe: Japanese Society of Phycology.
- Nakamura, Y., and M. Tatewaki. 1975. The Life History of Some Species of the Scytosiphonales. *Scientific Papers of the Institute of Algological Research, Faculty of Science, Hokkaido University* 6(2): 53–93, pls. 1–5.
- Nardo, G.D. 1841. Nuove osservazioni sulla struttura, abitudine e valore dei generi *Stiffitia*, *Hildenbrandtia* et *Agardhina*. *Memorie della Accademia della Scienze di Torino anno 1840, Serie 2*, 4: 189–236.
- Nees [von Esenbeck], C. G. [D.]. 1820. *Horae physicae berlinenses collectae ex symbolis virorum doctorum H. Linkii . . . Edi curavit Dr. Christianus Godof. Nees ab Esenbeck*. Pp. [i–xii]+[1]–123+[4], pls. I–XXVII. Bonn: Adolphi Marcus.
- Nelson, W. A. 1982. A Critical Review of the Ralfsiales, Ralfsiaceae and the Taxonomic Position of *Analipus japonicus* (Harv.) Wynne (Phaeophyta). *British Phycological Journal* 17(3): 311–320.
- Nielsen, P. G., J. S. Carle, and C. Christopher. 1982. Final Structure of Caulerpicin, a Toxic Mixture from the Green Alga *Caulerpa racemosa*. *Phytochemistry* 21: 1643–1645.
- Nielsen, R. 1972. A Study of the Shell-Boring Marine Algae around the Danish Island Læsø. *Botanisk Tidsskrift* 67: 245–269.
- Nielsen, R. 1977. Culture Studies of *Ulvella lens* and *Ulvella setchellii*. *British Phycological Journal* 12(1): 1–5.
- Nielsen, R. 1979. Culture Studies on the Type Species of *Acrochaete*, *Bolbocoleon* and *Entocladia* (Chaetophoraceae, Chlorophyceae). *Botanisk Notiser* 132(4): 441–449.
- Nielsen, R. 1980. A Comparative Study of Five Marine Chaetophoraceae. *British Phycological Journal* 15(2): 131–138.
- Nielsen, R. 1983. Culture Studies of *Acrochaete leptochaete* comb. nov. and *A. wittrockii* comb. nov. (Chaetophoraceae, Chlorophyceae). *Nordic Journal of Botany* 3(6): 689–694.
- Nielsen, R. 1984. *Epicladia flustrae*, *E. phillipsii* stat. nov., and *Pseudendoclonium dynamenae* sp. nov. Living in Bryozoans and a hydroid. *British Phycological Journal* 19(4): 371–379.
- Nielsen, R. 1987. Marine Algae within Calcareous Shells from New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Botany* 25: 425–438.
- Nielsen, R. 1988a. Small Green Algae from Brackish Water in the Tvärminne Area, Southern Finland. *Annales Botanici Fennici* 25: 237–257.
- Nielsen, R. 1988b. Morphological Variation of *Stromatella monostromatica*. *Helgoländer Meeresuntersuchungen* 42: 427–434.
- Nielsen, R., A. Kristiansen, L. Mathiesen, and H. Mathiesen. 1995. Distributional Index of the Benthic Marine Macroalgae of the Baltic Sea Area. *Acta Botanica Fennica* 155: 1–70.
- Nielsen, R., and J. McLachlan. 1985. The Genus *Pringsheimiella* (Chlorophyta), Including *P. santae-luciae* sp. nov. *Nordic Journal of Botany* 5(5): 511–516.
- Nielsen, R., and J. McLachlan. 1986a. Investigations of the Marine Algae of Nova Scotia, XVI: The Occurrence of Small Green Algae. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 64(4): 808–814.
- Nielsen, R., and J. McLachlan. 1986b. *Acrochaete marchantiae* comb. nov. and *Trichothyra irregularis* gen. et. sp. nov. with Notes on Other Species of Small Filamentous Green Algae from St. Lucia (West Indies). *Nordic Journal of Botany* 6(4): 515–524.
- Nienhuis, P. H. 1975. *Biosystematics and Ecology of Rhizoclonium riparium* (Roth) Harvey (Chlorophyceae; Cladophorales) in the Estuarine Area of the Rivers Rhine, Meuse, and Scheldt. 240 pp. Rotterdam: Rijksuniversiteit te Groningen.
- Nienhuis, P. H., and B. H. H. de Bree. 1981 [1974]. Morphological Variability in *Rhizoclonium riparium* (Roth) Harv. (Chlorophyceae: Cladophorales) under Natural and Experimental Conditions. In *Proceedings of the 8th International Seaweed Symposium*, G. E. Fogg and W. E. Jones, eds., pp. 434–442. Menai Bridge, UK: The Marine Science Laboratories, University College of North Wales.
- Nitecki, M. H. 1970. North American Cyclocrinid Algae. Field Museum of Natural History Publication no. 1110. *Fieldiana: Geology*, 21: xiv, 1–182.
- Nizamuddin, M., and A. C. Campbell. 1995. *Glossophorella*, a New Genus of the Family Dictyotaceae (Dictyotales-Phaeophyta) and Its Ecology from the Coast of the Sultanate of Oman. *Pakistan Journal of Botany* 27(2): 257–262.
- Nizamuddin, M., and J. Gerloff. 1979. New Species and New Combinations in the Genus *Dilophus* J. Agardh. *Nova Hedwigia* 31(4): 865–879.
- Noda, M. 1968. The Species of Chlorophyta from Sado Island in the Japan Sea. *Scientific Reports of Niigata University, Series D, Biology*, 5: 47–69.
- Noda, M. 1975. Notes on Some Marine Algae from the Coast of Kakuda-Maze District, Echigo Province, in the Japan Sea. *Scientific Reports of Niigata University, Series D, Biology*, 12: 33–43.
- Noro, T., and S. Nanba. 1990. Taxonomy of *Sargassum asymmetricum* Yamada and *S. alternato-pinnatum* Yamada (Phaeophyceae) from Kyushu. *Japanese Journal of Phycology (Sôru)* 38(1): 97. (In Japanese.)
- Norris, J. N. 1973 [1972]. Marine Algae from the 1969 Cruise of *Makrele* to the Northern Part of the Gulf of California. *Boletín de la Sociedad Botánica de México* 32: 1–30.
- Norris, J. N. 1975. Marine Algae of the Northern Gulf of California. Ph.D. Dissertation. xx+575 pp. University of California, Santa Barbara.
- Norris, J. N. 1976a. [The Green Algal Genus] *Enteromorpha* Link 1820. In *Marine Algae of California*, I. A. Abbott and G. J. Hollenberg, eds., pp. 73–77. Stanford, Calif.: Stanford University Press.

- Norris, J. N. 1976b. Reseña Histórica de las Exploraciones Marinas Botánicas en el Golfo de California. In *Sonora: Antropología del Desierto*, B. Braniff C. and R. S. Felger, eds., pp. 79–84+[4]. Científic Diversa, No. 2. México D.F.: Instituto Nacional de Antropología y Historia.
- Norris, J. N. 1985. Marine Algae. In *People of the Desert and Sea: Ethnobotany of the Seri Indians*, R. S. Felger and M. B. Moser, eds., pp. 207–216, 389–410, 415–421. Tucson: University of Arizona Press.
- Norris, J. N., and I. A. Abbott. 1972. Some New Records of Marine Algae from the R/V *Proteus* Cruise to British Columbia. *Syesis* 5(3–4): 87–94.
- Norris, J. N., and K. E. Bucher. 1976. New Records of Marine Algae from the 1974 R/V *Dolphin* Cruise to the Gulf of California. *Smithsonian Contributions to Botany*, No. 34: 1–22. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution Press.
- Norris, J. N., and K. E. Bucher. 1977. The Genus *Platoma* (Gigartinales, Rhodophyta) with a Description of *P. abbottiana* sp. nov. *Journal of Phycology* 13(2): 155–162.
- Norris, J. N., and W. Fenical. 1982. Chemical Defense in Tropical Marine Algae. In *The Atlantic Barrier Reef Ecosystem at Carrie Bow Cay, Belize*, K. Ruetzler and I. G. Macintyre, eds., pp. 417–431. *Smithsonian Contributions to the Marine Sciences*, No. 12. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution Press.
- Norris, J. N., and J. L. Olsen. 1991. Deep-Water Green Algae from the Bahamas, Including *Cladophora vandenboeckii* sp. nov. (Cladophorales). *Phycologia*, 30(4): 315–328.
- Norton, T. A. 1981 [1974]. *Sargassum muticum* on the Pacific Coast of North America. In *Proceedings of the 8th International Seaweed Symposium*, G. E. Fogg and W. E. Jones, eds., pp. 449–456. Menai Bridge, UK: The Marine Science Laboratories, University College of North Wales.
- Notoya, M. 1983. Note on *Ulvella lens* Crouan frat. (Chlorophyta). *Science Reports of the Aquaculture Center, Aomori Prefecture* 2: 9–12.
- Novacek, I. 1987. Periodicity of Epiphytes on *Zostera marina* in Two Embayments of the Southern Gulf of St. Lawrence. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 65(8): 1676–1681.
- Núñez-López, R. A., and M. M. Casas-Valdez. 1997. Variación estacional de la biomasa y talla de *Sargassum* spp. (Sargassaceae, Phaeophyta) en la Bahía Concepción, B. C. S., México. *Hidrobiológica* 7: 19–25.
- Núñez-López, R. A., M. M. Casas-Valdez, A. C. Mendoza-González, and L. E. Mateo-Cid. 1998. Flora ficológica de la laguna San Ignacio, B. C. S., México. *Hidrobiológica* 8: 33–42.
- Oates, B. R., and K. M. Cole. 1990a. Pit and Hole Production in the Subtidal Saccate Alga *Hydroclathrus clathratus* (Phaeophyta, Scytosiphonales). *Cryptogamic Botany* 2(1): 12–16.
- Oates, B. R., and K. M. Cole. 1990b. Cell-Wall Features on *Desmarestia ligulata* and *D. viridis* (Phaeophyta). *Phycologia* 29(4): 529–532.
- Okamura, K. 1899a. Contributions to the Knowledge of the Marine Algae of Japan, III. *The Botanical Magazine (Tokyo)* 13(145): 35–43, pl. II.
- Okamura, K. 1899b. *Algae japonicae exsiccatae*. Fasciculus 1, Nos. 1–50. Tokyo: Imperial Fisheries Institute.
- Okamura, K. 1902a. *Nippon Sorui Meii*. vi+276 pp. Tokyo: Keigyosha & Co.
- Okamura, K. 1902b. *Illustrations of the Marine Algae of Japan*. Volume 1, No. 6. Pp. 75–93 [English text], 103–128 [Japanese text], Pls. XXVI–XXX. Tokyo: Keigyosha & Co.
- Okamura, K. 1903. Contents of the “Algae Japonicae Exsiccatae” Fasciculus II. *The Botanical Magazine (Tokyo)* 17: 129–132.
- Okamura, K. 1907. *Icones of Japanese Algae*. Volume 1, Nos. 1–5. Pp. i–ii+1–119, pls. I–XXV. Tokyo: Kazamashobo.
- Okamura, K. 1912. *Icones of Japanese Algae*. Volume 2, Nos. 8–10. Pp. 127–191+4+2, pls. LXXXVI–C. Tokyo: Kazamashobo.
- Okamura, K. 1913. *Icones of Japanese Algae*. Volume 3, Nos. 1–4. Pp. 1–77, pls. CI–CXX. Tokyo: Kazamashobo.
- Okamura, K. 1915. *Icones of Japanese Algae*. Volume 3, Nos. 7–10. Pp. 123–218, pls. CXXXI–CL. Tokyo: Kazamashobo.
- Okamura, K. 1928. *Icones of Japanese Algae*. Volume 5, No. 9–10. Pp. 181–203, pls. CCXLI–CCL. Tokyo: Kazamashobo.
- Okamura, K. 1936. *Nippon Kaisô-Shi* [Marine Algae of Japan]. 12+6+964+11 pp. Tokyo: Uchida Rokakuho Publishing House.
- O’Kelly, C. J., and G. L. Floyd. 1983. The Flagellar Apparatus of *Entocladia viridis* Motile Cells, and the Taxonomic Position of the Resurrected Family Ulvellaceae (Ulvaes, Chlorophyta). *Journal of Phycology* 19(2): 153–164.
- O’Kelly, C. J., and G. L. Floyd. 1984. Correlations among Patterns of Sporangial Structure and Development, Life Histories, and Ultrastructural Features in the Ulvophyceae. In *Systematics of Green Algae*, D. E. G. Irvine and D. M. John, eds., pp. 121–156. Systematic Association Special Volume, No. 27. London: Academic Press.
- O’Kelly, C. J., B. Wysor, and W. K. Bellows. 2004. Gene Sequence Diversity and the Phylogenetic Position of Algae Assigned to the Genera *Phaeophila* and *Ochlochaete* (Ulvophyceae, Chlorophyta). *Journal of Phycology* 40(4): 789–799.
- O’Kelly, C. J., and C. Yarish. 1981a [1980]. Observations on Marine Chaetophoraceae (Chlorophyta), I: Sporangial Ontogeny in the Type Species of *Entocladia* and *Phaeophila*. *Journal of Phycology* 16(4): 549–558.
- O’Kelly, C. J., and C. Yarish. 1981b. Observations on Marine Chaetophoraceae (Chlorophyta), II: On the Circumscription of the Genus *Entocladia* Reinke. *Phycologia* 20(1): 32–45.
- Oliva-Martínez, M. G., and M. M. Ortega. 1987 [1983]. Estudio preliminar de la vegetación sumergida en la Laguna Caimanero y marisma de Huizache, Sinaloa. *Anales del Instituto de Biología de la Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México, Serie Botánica* 54(1): 113–151.
- Oliveira Filho, E.C. de. 1977. *Algas Marinhas Bentônicas do Brasil*. [iv]+407 pp. São Paulo, Brazil: Universidade de São Paulo, Departamento de Botânica do Instituto de Biociências.
- Olsen, J. L., W. T. Stam, S. Berger, and D. Menzel. 1994. 18S rDNA and Evolution in the Dasycladales (Chlorophyta): Modern Living Fossils. *Journal of Phycology* 30(4): 729–744.
- Oltmanns, F. 1904. *Morphologie und Biologie der Algen*. Erster Band. vi+733 pp. Jena: Verlag von Gustav Fischer.
- Oltmanns, F. 1922. *Morphologie und Biologie der Algen, Volume 2: Phaeophyceae - Rhodophyceae*. 2nd ed. iv+439 pp. Jena: Verlag von Gustav Fischer.



- Ortega, M. M., J. L. Godínez[-Ortega], and G. Garduño-Solórzano. 2001. *Catálogo de Algas Bénticas de las Costas Mexicanas del Golfo de México y Mar Caribe*. Cuadernos del Instituto de Biología, No. 34. 594 pp. México D.F.: Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México.
- Ortega, M. M., J. Ruíz-Cárdenas, and M. G. Oliva-Martínez. 1987 [1986]. La vegetación sumergida en la Laguna Agiabampo, Sonora-Sinaloa. *Anales del Instituto de Biología de la Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México* 57, Serie Botánica (numero único): 59–108.
- Ortuño-Aguirre, C., and R. Riosmena-Rodríguez. 2007. Dinámica del epifitismo en *Padina concrescens* (Dictyotales: Phaeophyta) en el suroeste de la Península de Baja California, México. *Ciencias Marinas* 33(3): 311–317.
- Ouoriques, L.C., and Bouzon, Z.L. 2000. Stellate chloroplast organization in *Asteronema breviarticulatum* comb. nov. (Ectocarpales, Phaeophyta). *Phycologia* 39(3): 267–271.
- Overbeek, J. van, and Crist, R.E. 1947. The role of a tropical green alga in beach sand formation. *American Journal of Botany* 34(6): 299–300.
- Owens, D. 2003. Obituary: John Roscoe Hendrickson 1921–2002. *Marine Turtle Newsletter* 99: 1–3.
- Pacheco-Ruiz, I. 1982. Algas pardas (Phaeophyta) de la costa del Pacífico entre Bahía Todos Santos y la frontera con E. U. A. *Ciencias Marinas* 8(1): 64–77.
- Pacheco-Ruiz, I., F. Becerril-Bobadilla, J. A. Zertuche-González, A. Chee-Barragán, A. Gálvez-Télles, and R. Blanco-Betancourt. 2003. Effects of El Niño on Beds of *Ulva lactuca* along the Northwest Coast of the Gulf of California, Mexico. *Geofísica Internacional* 42(3): 447–453.
- Pacheco-Ruiz, I., and J. A. Zertuche-González. 1996a. Green Algae (Chlorophyta) from Bahía de Los Ángeles, Gulf of California, México. *Botanica Marina* 39(5): 431–433.
- Pacheco-Ruiz, I., and J. A. Zertuche-González. 1996b. Brown Algae (Phaeophyta) from Bahía de Los Ángeles, Gulf of California, México. In 15th International Seaweed Symposium, S. C. Lindstrom and D. J. Chapman, eds. *Hydrobiologia* 326/327: 169–172.
- Pacheco-Ruiz, I., J. A. Zertuche-González, A. Chee-Barragán, and E. Arroyo-Ortega. 2002. Biomass and Potential Commercial Utilization of *Ulva lactuca* (Chlorophyta, Ulvaceae) Beds along the North-West Coast of the Gulf of California. *Phycologia* 41(2): 199–201.
- Pacheco-Ruiz, I., J. A. Zertuche-González, J. Espinoza-Ávalos, R. Riosmena-Rodríguez, L. Galindo-Bect, A. Gálvez-Télles, A. E. Meling-López, and J. Orduña-Rojas. 2008. Macroalgas. In *Bahía de Los Ángeles: Recursos Naturales y Comunidad Línea Base 2007*, G. D. Danemann and E. Ezcurra, eds., pp. 181–214. Ensenada, México: Pronatura Noroeste A. C., San Diego Natural History Museum, and Instituto Nacional de Ecología.
- Page, J. Z. 1970. Existence of a *Derbesia* Phase in the Life-History of *Halicystis osterhoutii* Blinks and Blinks. *Journal of Phycology* 6(4): 375–380.
- Pallas, P. S. 1766. *Miscellanea Zoologica Quibus Novae Imprius Atque Obscurae Animalium Species Describuntur et Observationibus Iconibusque Illustrantur . . .* Pp. 3-6+viii-xii+1-224, pls. 1-14. The Hague: Petrum van Cleef. [Reissue date 1778.]
- Papenfuss, G. F. 1943. Notes on South African Marine Algae, II. *Journal of South African Botany* 9: 79–92.
- Papenfuss, G. F. 1951. Phaeophyta. In *Manual of Phycology—An Introduction to the Algae and Their Biology*, G. M. Smith, ed., pp. 119–158. New Series of Plant Science Books, No. 27. Waltham, Mass.: The Chronica Botanica Co.
- Papenfuss, G. F. 1955. Classification of the Algae. In *A Century of Progress in the Natural Sciences: 1853–1953*, pp. 115–224. San Francisco: California Academy of Sciences.
- Papenfuss, G. F. 1956. Notes on South African Marine Algae, IV. *Journal of South African Botany* 22: 65–77.
- Papenfuss, G. F. 1960. On the Genera of the Ulvales and the Status of the Order. *Journal of the Linnean Society, Botany* 56(367): 303–316, pls. 1–6.
- Papenfuss, G. F. 1962. On the Circumscription of the Green Algal Genera *Ulvella* and *Pilinia*. *Phykos* 1: 6–12.
- Papenfuss, G. F. 1976. Landmarks in Pacific North American Marine Phycology. In *Marine Algae of California*, I. A. Abbott and G. J. Hollenberg, eds., pp. 21–46. Stanford, Calif.: Stanford University Press.
- Papenfuss, G. F. 1977. Review of the Genera of Dictyotales (Phaeophycophyta). *Bulletin of the Japanese Society of Phycology (Sôru)* 25(Suppl. Mem. Issue Yamada): 271–287.
- Papenfuss, G. F., and M. Chihara. 1975. The Morphology and Systematic Position of the Green Algae *Ernodesmis* and *Apjohnia*. *Phycologia* 14(4): 309–316.
- Papenfuss, G. F., and L. E. Egerod. 1957. Notes on South African Marine Algae: Chlorophyceae. *Phytomorphology* 7(1): 82–93.
- Parham, J. F., and G. R. Zug. 1996. *Chelonina agassizii*—Valid or Not? *Marine Turtle Newsletter* 72: 2–5.
- Parke, M. W., and P. S. Dixon. 1976. Check-list of British Marine Algae—Third revision. *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom* 56: 527–594.
- Parsons, M. J. 1982. *Colpomenia* (Endlicher) Derbés et Solier (Phaeophyta) in New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Botany* 20: 289–301.
- Pascher, A. 1914. Über Flagellaten und Algen. *Berichte der Deutschen Botanischen Gesellschaft* 32: 136–160.
- Pascher, A. 1931. Systematische Übersicht über die mit Flagellaten in Zusammenhang stehenden Algenreihen und Versuch einer Einreihung dieser Algenstämme in die Stämme des Pflanzenreiches. *Beiheft zum Botanischen Centralblatt, Abteilung 2, Systematik, Pflanzengeographie, angewandte Botanik* 48: 317–332.
- Patterson, D. J. 1989. Stramenopiles: Chromophytes from a Protistan Perspective. In *The Chromophyte Algae Problems and Perspectives*, J. C. Green, B. S. C. Leadbeater, and W. L. Diver, eds., pp. 357–379. Systematics Association Special Volume, No. 38. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Patterson, D. J. 1999. The Diversity of Eukaryotes. *The American Naturalist* 154(Suppl. S1): S96–S124.
- Paul, V. J., and W. Fenical. 1985. Diterpenoid Metabolites from Pacific Marine Algae of the Order Cauleriales (Chlorophyta). *Phytochemistry* 24: 2239–2243.
- Paul, V. J., and W. Fenical. 1986. Chemical Defense in Tropical Green Algae, Order Cauleriales. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 34: 157–169.
- Paul, V. J., and W. Fenical. 1987. Natural Products Chemistry and Chemical Defense in Tropical Marine Algae of

- the Phylum Chlorophyta. In *Bioorganic Marine Chemistry*, Volume 1, P. J. Scheuer, ed., pp. 1–29. Berlin: Springer-Verlag.
- Paul-Chávez, L., and R. Riosmena-Rodríguez. 2000. Floristic and Biogeographical Trends in Seaweed Assemblages from a Subtropical Island Complex in the Gulf of California. *Pacific Science* 54(2): 137–147.
- Pedersen, P. M. 1978. Culture Studies in the Pleomorphic Brown Alga *Myriotrichia claviformis* (Dictyosiphonales, Myriotrichiaceae). *Norwegian Journal of Botany* 25(4): 281–291.
- Pedersen, P. M. 1981. Phaeophyta: Life Histories. In *The Biology of Seaweeds*, C. S. Lobban and M. J. Wynne, eds., pp. 194–217. Botanical Monographs, No. 17. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Pedersen, P. M. 1984. Studies on Primitive Brown Algae (Fucophyceae). *Opera Botanica* 74: 1–76.
- Pedersen, P. M., and A. Kristiansen. 2001. On the Enigmatic Brown Alga *Acinetospora crinita* (Ectocarpales, Fucophyceae). *Cryptogamie, Algologie* 22(2): 209–218.
- Pedersen, P. M., and G. Sokhi. 1990. Studies on the Type Species of *Compsonema*, *C. minutum* (Fucophyceae, Scytosiphonales): Aspects of Life History, Taxonomic Position, Shedding of Wall Elements and Plasmodesmata. *Nordic Journal of Botany* 10(5): 547–555.
- Pedroche, F. F., and J. González-González. 1981. Lista florística preliminar de las algas marinas de la región sur de la costa de Jalisco, México. In *Latin-America Phycologia Latino-Americana*, vol. 1, C. Aceldo O., C. E. de M. Bicudo, M. Cordeiro-Marino, A. R. de Halperín, L. Huerta M., E. C. de Oliveira Filho, B. Santelices, and G. Tell, eds., pp. 60–72. Vaduz, Liechtenstein: J. Cramer.
- Pedroche, F. F., and P. C. Silva. 1996. *Codium picturatum* sp. nov. (Chlorophyta), una especie extraordinaria del Pacífico tropical mexicano. *Acta Botánica Mexicana* 35: 1–8.
- Pedroche, F. F., P. C. Silva, and M. Chacana. 2002. El género *Codium* (Codiaceae, Chlorophyta) en el Pacífico de México. In *Monografías Ficológicas 2002*, A. Senties-Granados and K. M. Dreckman, eds., pp. 11–74. México D.F.: Universidad Autónoma Metropolitana-Iztapalapa.
- Pedroche, F. F., P. C. Silva, L. E. Aguilar-Rosas, K. M. Dreckman, and R. Aguilar-Rosas. 2005. *Catálogo de las algas marinas bentónicas del Pacífico de México, I: Chlorophycota*. [ii]+ i–viii, 17–135 pp. México D.F.: Universidad Autónoma de Baja California, Universidad Autónoma Metropolitana Iztapalapa, and University of California, Berkeley.
- Pedroche, F. F., Silva, P. C., L. E. Aguilar-Rosas, K. M. Dreckmann, and R. Aguilar-Rosas. 2008. *Catálogo de las algas bentónicas del Pacífico de México, II: Phaeophycota*. [iv]+i–vi, 15–146 pp. Mexico D.F.: Universidad Autónoma Metropolitana Iztapalapa, Universidad Autónoma de Baja California, and University of California, Berkeley.
- Pedroche, F. F., J. A. West, G. C. Zuccarello, A. Senties, and U. Karsten. 1995. Marine Red Algae of the Mangroves in Southern Pacific Mexico and Pacific Guatemala. *Botanica Marina* 38(2): 111–119.
- Perrot, Y. 1965. Sur le cycle de reproduction d'une Cladophoracée marine de la région de Roscoff: *Lola implexa* (Harvey). *Compte Rendu Hebdomadaire des Séances de l'Académie des Sciences, Paris* 261: 503–506.
- Peters, A. F. 1987. Reproduction and Sexuality in the Chordariales (Phaeophyceae): A Review of Culture Studies. *Progress in Phycological Research* 5: 223–263.
- Peters, A. F., and D. G. Müller. 1986a. Critical Re-examination of Sexual Reproduction in *Tinocladia crassa*, *Nemacystus decipiens* and *Sphaerotrichia divaricata* (Phaeophyceae, Chordariales). *Japanese Journal of Phycology (Sôru)* 34(1): 69–73.
- Peters, A. F., and D. G. Müller. 1986b. Life-History Studies—A New Approach to the Taxonomy of Ligulate Species of *Desmarestia* (Phaeophyceae) from the Pacific Coast of Canada. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 64(10): 2192–2196.
- Peters, A. F., and M. E. Ramírez. 2001. Molecular Phylogeny of Small Brown Algae, with Special Reference to the Systematic Position of *Caepidium antarcticum* (Adenocystaceae, Ectocarpales). *Cryptogamie, Algologie* 22(2): 187–200.
- Peters, A. F., M. J. H. van Oppen, C. Wiencke, W. T. Stam, and J. L. Olsen. 1997. Phylogeny and Historical Ecology of the Desmarestiales (Phaeophyceae) Support a Southern Hemisphere Origin. *Journal of Phycology* 33(2): 294–309.
- Phillips, J. A. 1988. Field, Anatomical and Developmental Studies of South Australian Species of *Ulva*. *Australian Systematic Botany* 1(4): 411–456.
- Phillips, J. A. 1992. Taxonomy and Reproduction in Australian Species of *Dilophus* (Dictyotales, Phaeophyta). *Australian Systematic Botany* 5(6): 657–694.
- Phillips, N. 1995. Biogeography of *Sargassum* (Phaeophyta) in the Pacific Basin. In *Taxonomy of Economic Seaweeds, with reference to Some Pacific Species*, Volume 5, I. A. Abbott, ed., pp. 107–144. La Jolla, Calif.: California Sea Grant College System, University of California, San Diego.
- Phillips, N., R. Burrowes, F. Rousseau, B. de Reviere, and G. W. Saunders. 2008. Resolving Evolutionary Relationships among the Brown Algae Using Chloroplast and Nuclear Genes. *Journal of Phycology* 44(2): 394–495.
- Pia, J. 1927. Thallophtya. In *Handbuch der Paläobotanik*, M. Hirmer, ed., pp. 31–136. Munich: R. Oldenbourg.
- Piccone, A. 1886. *Alge del viaggio di circumnavigazione della Vettor Pisani*. 97 pp., pls. 1–2. Genoa: Tipografia del Reale Istituto de'Sordo-Muti. [Reprint of *Giornale della Società di letture e conversazioni scientifiche di Genova*, March 1886.]
- Price, J. H., D. M. John, and G. W. Lawson. 1978. Seaweeds of the Western Coast of Tropical Africa and Adjacent Islands: A Critical Assessment, II: Phaeophyta. *Bulletin of the British Museum (Natural History), Botany* 6: 87–182.
- Pröschold, T., and F. Leliaert. 2007. Systematics of the Green Algae: Conflict of Classic and Modern Approaches. In *Unravelling the Algae: The Past, Present and Future of the Algae Systematics*, J. Brodie and J. Lewis, eds., pp. 123–153. London: Taylor and Francis.
- Provasoli, L., and I. J. Pintner. 1964. Symbiotic Relationships between Microorganisms and Seaweeds. *American Journal of Botany* 51(6, Pt. 2): 681.
- Provasoli, L., and I. J. Pintner. 1980. Bacteria Induced Polymorphism in an Axenic Laboratory Strain of *Ulva lactuca* (Chlorophyceae). *Journal of Phycology* 16(2): 196–201.
- Provasoli, L., and I. J. Pintner. 1981 [1974]. Bacteria-Induced Polymorphism in an Axenic Laboratory Strain of *Ulva lactuca*. In *Proceedings of the 8th International Seaweed*

- Symposium*, G. E. Fogg and W. E. Jones, eds., p. 231. Menai Bridge. UK: The Marine Science Laboratories, University College of North Wales.
- Prud'homme van Reine, W. F. 1982. *A Taxonomic Revision of the European Sphacelariaceae (Sphacelariales, Phaeophyceae)*. Leiden Botanical Series, No. 6. ix+293 pp. Leiden: E. J. Brill.
- Prud'homme van Reine, W. F. 1993. Sphacelariales (Phaeophyceae) of the World, a New Synthesis. *Korean Journal of Phycology* 8(2): 145–160.
- Prud'homme van Reine, W. F., and G. M. Lokhorst. 1992. *Caulerpella* gen. nov., a Non-holocarpic Member of the Caulerpales (Chlorophyta). *Nova Hedwigia* 54: 113–126.
- Quoy, J. R. C., and P. Gaimard, 1824. Zoologie. In *Voyage autour du Monde, entrepris par ordre du roi . . . exécuté sur les corvettes de S. M. l'Uranie et la Physicienne, pendant les années 1817, 1818, 1819 et 1820*, M. Louis de Freycinet, ed., [v]+713 pp., 96 pls. Paris: Pillet-ainé.
- Rabenhorst, L. 1863. *Kryptogamen-Flora von Sachsen, der Ober-Lausitz, Thüringen und Nordböhmen, mit Berücksichtigung der benachbarten Länder . . . Vol. 1. Abtheilung. Algen im weitesten Sinne, Leber- und Laubmoose*. xx+653 pp. Leipzig: Eduard Kummer.
- Rains, P. M. 2006 [updated 2008]. *Mexico Boating Guide. Pacific México: Baja, Sea of Cortez & All Mainland Mexico*. . . . 2nd ed. 272+4 pp. San Diego, Calif.: Point Loma Publishing.
- Ramírez, M. E., and G. Rojas V. 1991. El género *Colpomenia* (F. C. Mertens ex Roth) Derbés et Solier (Phaeophyceae) en Chile. *Boletín del Museo Nacional de Historia Natural, Chile* 42: 11–42.
- Ramírez, M. E., and B. Santelices. 1991. *Catálogo de las algas marinas bentónicas de la costa temperada del Pacífico de Sudamérica*. Monografías Biológicas, No. 5. 410+37 pp. Santiago: Ediciones Universidad Católica de Chile.
- Reed, D. C., J. N. Norris, and M. S. Foster. 1994. Obituary: Dr. Michael Neushul, Jr. *Botanica Marina* 37(4): 287–292.
- Reinke, J. 1879. Zwei parasitische Algen. *Botanische Zeitung* 37: 473–478, pl. VI.
- Reinke, J. 1889a. *Algenflora der westlichen Ostsee deutschen Antheils. Eine systematisch-pflanzengeographische Studie*. . . . pp. [i]-xi, 1–101. Kiel: Druck von Schmidt & Klaunig.
- Reinke, J. 1889b. *Atlas deutscher Meeressalgen*. Volume 1. [i-iv] +1–34 pp., pls. 1–25. Berlin: Paul Parey.
- Reinke, J. 1890. Uebersicht der Bisher Bekannten Sphacelariaceen. *Berichte der Deutschen Botanischen Gesellschaft* 8: 201–215.
- Reith, M. 1995. Molecular Biology of Rhodophyte and Chromophyte Plastids. *Annual Review of Plant Physiology and Plant Molecular Biology* 46: 549–575.
- Rhyn, C. F., and H. Robinson. 1969 [1968]. *Struveopsis*, a New Genus of Green Algae. *Phytologia* 17(7): 467–472.
- Ricker, R. W. 1987. *Taxonomy and Biogeography of Macquarie Island Seaweeds*. 344 pp. London: British Museum of Natural History.
- Rietema, H. 1975. *Comparative Investigations on the Life-Histories and Reproduction of Some Species in the Siphonous Green Algal Genera Bryopsis and Derbesia*. [vi]+1–130 pp. Groningen: University of Groningen.
- Riosmena-Rodríguez, R., G. Hinojosa-Arango, J. M. López-Vivas, K. León-Cisneros, and E. Holguín-Acosta. 2005. Caracterización espacial y biogeográfica de las asociaciones de macroalgas de Bahía del Ricón, Baja California Sur, México. *Revista de Biología Tropical* 53(1–2): 97–109.
- Riosmena-Rodríguez, R., and E. Holguín-Acosta. 2008. Population Structure of *Codium amplivesiculatum* (Chlorophyta) Associated with Rhodolith Beds from the Southwestern Gulf of California. *Algae* 23(2): 1–10.
- Riosmena-Rodríguez, R., and Paul-Chávez, L. 1997. Sistemática y biogeografía de las macroalgas de la Bahía de La Paz. In *La Bahía de La Paz: Investigación y Conservación*, ed. R. J. Urbán, and R. M. Ramírez, pp. 59–82. Mexicali, Mexico: Universidad Autónoma de Baja California.
- Riosmena-Rodríguez, R., L. Paul-Chávez, and G. Hinojosa-Arango. 2001. Range Extension of *Cutleria hancockii* Dawson (Cutleriales, Phaeophyta) to the Southwestern Gulf of California, México. *Botanica Marina* 44(5): 461–465.
- Riosmena-Rodríguez, R., D. A. Siqueiros-Beltrones, and G. Anaya-Reyna. 1998. New Localities in the Distribution of Macroalgae for the Gulf of California. *Revista de Investigación Científica, Serie Ciencias Marinas, Universidad Autónoma de Baja California Sur* 8(1–2): 34–58.
- Riosmena-Rodríguez, R., D. A. Siqueiros-Beltrones, O. García de la Rosa, and V. Rocha-Ramírez. 1992 [1991]. The Extension Geographic Range of Selected Seaweeds on the Baja California Peninsula. *Revista de Investigación Científica, Serie Ciencias Marinas, Universidad Autónoma de Baja California Sur* 2(2): 13–20.
- Rivera, M., and R. Scrosati. 2006. Population Dynamics of *Sargassum lapazeanum* (Fucales, Phaeophyta) from the Gulf of California, México. *Phycologia* 45(2): 178–189.
- Rivera, M., and R. Scrosati. 2008. Self-Thinning and Size Inequality Dynamics in a Clonal Seaweed (*Sargassum lapazeanum*, Phaeophyceae). *Journal of Phycology* 44(1): 45–49.
- Robertson, K. J., and W. Fenical. 1977. Pachydictyol-A Epoxide, a New Diterpene from the Brown Seaweed *Dictyota flabelata*. *Phytochemistry* 16: 1071–1073.
- Rocha-Ramírez, V., and D. A. Siqueiros-Beltrones. 1990. Review of the Species of the Genus *Sargassum* C. Agardh Recorded for Bahía de La Paz, B. C. S., México. *Ciencias Marinas* 16(1): 15–26.
- Rocha-Ramírez, V., and D. A. Siqueiros-Beltrones. 1991. El herbario ficológico de la U. A. B. C. S.: Elenco florístico de macroalgas para Balandra en la Bahía de La Paz, B. C. S., México. *Revista de Investigación Científica, por la Universidad Autónoma de Baja California Sur* 2(1): 13–34.
- Roden, G. I. 1958. Oceanographic and Meteorological Aspects of the Gulf of California. *Pacific Science* 12(1): 21–45.
- Roden, G. I. 1964. Oceanographic Aspects of the Gulf of California. In *A Symposium: Marine Geology of the Gulf of California*, T. H. van Andel and G. G. Shor, eds., pp. 30–58. American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir, No. 3. Tulsa, Okla: American Association of Petroleum Geologists.
- Rodger, K. A. 2006. *Breaking Through: Essays, Journals, and Travelogues of Edward F. Ricketts*, 369 pp. Berkeley: University of California Press.

- Rodríguez-Montesinos, Y. E., D. L. Arvizu-Higuera, and G. Hernández-Carmona. 2008. Seasonal Variation on Size and Chemical Constituents of *Sargassum sinicola* Setchell et Gardner from Bahía de La Paz, Baja California Sur, México. *Phycological Research* 56(1): 33–38.
- Rodríguez-Morales, E. O., and D. A. Siqueiros-Beltrones. 1999. Time Variations in a Subtropical Macroalgal Assemblage from the Mexican Pacific. *Oceánides* 13(2): 11–24.
- Rosenvinge, L. K. 1893. Grønlands Havalger. . . *Meddelser om Grønland* 3: 763–981, pls. 1–2.
- Roth, A. W. 1797. *Catalecta Botanica, Quibus Plantae, Novae et Minus Cognitae Describuntur Atque Illustrantur. . . Fasciculus 1*. [viii]+244+[10, indices] pp., pls. 1–8. Leipzig: Bibliopolo I. G. Mülleriano.
- Roth, A. W. 1800. *Catalecta Botanica, Quibus Plantae Novae et Minus Cognitae Describuntur Atque Illustrantur. . . Fasciculus 2*. [x]+258+[12, indices] pp., pls. 1–9. Leipzig: Bibliopolo I. G. Mülleriano.
- Roth, A. W. 1806. *Catalecta Botanica, quibus Plantae Novae et Minus Cognitae Describuntur Atque Illustrantur. . . Fasciculus 3*. [viii]+350+[8, indices]+[1, errata], pp., pls. 1–12. Leipzig: Bibliopolo I. G. Mülleriano.
- Rousseau, F., R. Burrowes, A. F. Peters, R. Kuhlenkamp, and B. de Reviere. 2001. A Comprehensive Phylogeny of the Phaeophyceae Based on nrDNA Sequences Resolves the Earliest Divergences. *Comptes Rendus Hebdomadaire des Séances de l'Académie des Sciences Paris, Série 3, Sciences de la vie*, 324: 305–319.
- Rousseau, F., and B. de Reviere. 1999a. Circumscription of the Order Ectocarpales (Phaeophyceae): Bibliographical Synthesis and Molecular Evidence. *Cryptogamie, Algologie* 20(1): 5–18.
- Rousseau, F., and B. de Reviere. 1999b. Phylogenetic Relationships within the Fucales (Phaeophyceae) Based on Combined Partial SSu + LSU rDNA Sequence Data. *European Journal of Phycology* 34(1): 53–64.
- Rusnak, G. A., R. L. Fisher, and F. P. Shepard. 1964. Bathymetry and Faults of Gulf of California. In *A Symposium: Marine Geology of the Gulf of California*, T. H. van Andel and G. C. Shor, eds., pp. 59–75. American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir, No. 3. Tulsa, Okla.: American Association of Petroleum Geologists.
- Russell, G. 1966. The Genus *Ectocarpus* in Britain, I: The Attached Forms. *Journal of the Marine Biology Association of the United Kingdom* 46: 267–294.
- Sakai, Y. 1964. The Species of *Cladophora* from Japan and Its Vicinity. *Scientific Papers of the Institute of Algological Research, Faculty of Science, Hokkaido University* 5(1): 1–104, pls. I–XVII.
- Salcedo-Martínez, S., G. Green, A. Gamboa-Conteras, and P. Gómez. 1988. Inventario de macroalgas y macroinvertebrados bénticos, presentes en áreas rocosas de la región de Zihuatanejo, Guerrero, México. *Anales del Instituto de Ciencias del Mar y Limnología de la Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México* 15(1): 73–95.
- Sánchez-Lizaso, J. L., and R. Riosmena-Rodríguez. 1997. Macroalgas epífitas de *Zostera marina* L. en Bahía Concepción, B. C. S., México. *Oceánides* 12: 55–59.
- Sánchez-Puerta, M. V., P. I. Leonardi, C. J. O'Kelly, and E. J. Cáceres. 2006. *Pseudulvella americana* Belongs to the Order Chaetopeltidales (Class Chlorophyceae), Evidence from Ultrastructure and SSU rDNA Sequence Data. *Journal of Phycology* 42(6): 943–950.
- Sánchez-Rodríguez, I., M. Fajardo-León, and C. Oliveira-Pantoja. 1989. Estudio florístico estacional de las algas en Bahía Magdalena, B. C. S., México. *Investigaciones Marinas CICIMAR* 4(1), 35–48.
- Sánchez-Rodríguez, I., M. A. Huerta-Díaz, E. Choumiline, O. Holguín-Quiñones, and J. Zertuche-González. 2001. Elemental Concentrations in Different Species of Seaweeds from Loreto Bay, Baja California Sur, México: Implications for the Geochemical Control of Metals in Algal Tissue. *Environmental Pollution* 114: 145–160.
- Sánchez-Vargas, D. P., and M. E. Hendrickx. 1987. Utilization of Algae and Sponges by Tropical Decorating Carbs (Majidae) in the Southeastern Gulf of California. *Revista de Biología Tropical* (Universidad de Costa Rica) 35: 161–164.
- Santelices, B. 1989. *Algas Marinas de Chile: Distribución, Ecología, Utilización, y Diversidad*. 399 pp. Santiago: Ediciones Universidad Católica de Chile.
- Santelices, B., and I. A. Abbott. 1978. New Records of Marine Algae from Chile and Their Effects on Phytogeography. *Phycologia* 17(2): 213–222.
- Santelices, B., and I. A. Abbott. 1987. Geographic and Marine Isolation: An Assessment of the Marine Algae of Easter Island. *Pacific Science* 41(1): 1–20.
- Santelices, B., M. E. Ramírez, and I. A. Abbott. 1989. A New Species and New Records of Marine Algae from Chile. *British Phycological Journal* 24(1): 73–82.
- Santos, G. A., and M. S. Doty. 1968. Chemical Studies of Three Species of the Marine Algal Genus *Caulerpa*. In *Drugs from the Sea*, H. D. Freudenthal, ed., pp. 173–176. Washington, D.C.: Marine Technology Society.
- Sasaki, H., H. Kataoka, M. Kamiya, and H. Kawai. 1999. Accumulation of Sulfuric Acid in Dictyotales (Phaeophyceae): Taxonomic Distribution and Ion Chromatography. *Journal of Phycology* 35(4): 732–739.
- Sasaki, H., H. Kataoka, A. Murakami, and H. Kawai. 2004. Inorganic Ion Compositions in Brown Algae, with Special Reference to Sulfuric Acid Accumulations. *Hydrobiologia* 512(1–3): 253–260.
- Sasaki, H., A. Murakami, and H. Kawai. 2005. Seasonal Stability of Sulfuric Acid Accumulation in the Dictyotales. *Phycological Research* 53(2): 134–137.
- Saunders, D. A. 1898. Phycological Memoirs. *Proceedings of the California Academy of Sciences, Third Series*, 1: 147–168, pls. 12–32.
- Saunders, D. A. 1899. New and Little Known Brown Algae of the Pacific Coast. *Erythrea* 7: 37–40.
- Saunders, G. W., G. Kraft, I. H. Tan, and L. D. Druehl. 1992. When is a Family Not a Family? *BioSystems* 28: 109–116.
- Saunders, G. W., D. Potter, and R. A. Andersen. 1997. Phylogenetic Affinities of the Sarcinochrysidales and Chrysomerales (Heterokonta) Based on Analyses of Molecular and Combined Data. *Journal of Phycology* 33(2): 310–318.

- Sauvageau, C. 1897. Sur quelques Myrionémacées. *Annales des Sciences Naturelles, Botanique, Séries 8*, 5: 161–288.
- Sauvageau, C. 1900. Remarques sur les Sphacélariacées. *Journal de Botanique (Morot)* 14: 213–234. [For details of original publication in journal and later reprint, see Stafleu and Cowan, 1985:76–77.]
- Sauvageau, C. 1901. Remarques sur les Sphacélariacées. *Journal de Botanique (Morot)* 15: 105–116. [Originally published 1900–1903 in *Journal de Botanique (Morot)*; the entire suite of these publications was later included in reprint with new pagination in 1904, *Remarques sur les Sphacélariacées*, Fascicle 1, pp. 1–320, Bordeaux: Férét et fils, libraires-éditeurs, and again later as a Facsimile edition in 1971, *Bibliotheca phycologica*, Band 14, Lehre: J. Cramer.]
- Sauvageau, C. 1926. Sur un nouveau type d'alternance de générations chez les Algues brunes; les Sporochnales. *Comptes Rendus Hebdomadaires des Séances de l'Académie des Sciences Paris* 182: 361–364.
- Sauvageau, C. 1927. Sur le *Colpomenia sinuosa* Derb. et Sol. *Bulletin de la Station Biologique d'Arcachon* 24: 309–355.
- Scagel, R. F. 1956. Introduction of a Japanese Alga *Sargassum muticum* into the Northeast Pacific. *Fisheries Research Papers Washington (State) Department of Fisheries* 1(4): 49–58.
- Scagel, R. F. 1957. An Annotated List of the Marine Algae of British Columbia and Northern Washington. *Bulletin of the National Museum of Canada* 150 (*Biological Series* no. 52): vi+ 289 pp.
- Scagel, R. F. 1966. Marine Algae of British Columbia and Northern Washington, Part I: Chlorophyceae (Green Algae). *Bulletin of the National Museum of Canada* 207 (*Biological Series* no. 74): vii+257 pp.
- Scagel, R. F., P. W. Gabrielson, D. J. Garbary, L. Golden, M. W. Hawkes, S. C. Lindstrom, J. C. Oliveira, and T. B. Widdowson. 1989. *A Synopsis of the Benthic Marine Algae of British Columbia, Southeastern Alaska, Washington and Oregon*. v+532 pp. Phycological Contribution, No. 3. Vancouver: Department of Botany, University of British Columbia.
- Schaffner, J. H. 1922. The Classification of Plants, XII. *Ohio Journal of Science* 22: 129–139.
- Schiff, J. A. 1962. Sulfur. In *Physiology and Biochemistry of Algae*, R. A. Lewin, ed., pp. 239–246. New York: Academic Press.
- Schmidle, W. 1899. Algologische notizen, XV. *Allgemeine Botanische Zeitschrift für Systematik* 5: 39–41, 57–58.
- Schmidt, O. C. 1935. *Pringsheimia* Reinke jetzt *Pringsheimiella* v. Hoehn. *Hedwigia* 74: 29.
- Schmitz, [C. J.] F. 1879. Über grüne Algen im Golf von Athen. *Bericht der Naturforschenden Gesellschaft zu Halle* 1878: 17–23.
- Schneider, C. W., and R. B. Searles. 1991. *Seaweeds of the Southeastern United States: Cape Hatteras to Cape Canaveral*. xiv+[2]+533 pp. Durham, N.C.: Duke University Press.
- Schnetter, R., and G. Bula Meyer. 1982. *Marine Algen der Pazifikküste von Kolumbien; Algas marinas del litoral Pacífico de Colombia: Chlorophyceae, Phaeophyceae, Rhodophyceae*. *Bibliotheca Phycologica*, No. 60. xvii+1–287 pp. Vaduz, Liechtenstein: J. Cramer.
- Schnetter, R., I. Hörnig, and G. Weber-Peukert. 1987. Taxonomy of Some North Atlantic *Dictyota* Species (Phaeophyta). In *Twelfth International Seaweed Symposium*, M. A., Ragan and C. J. Bird, eds. *Hydrobiologia* 151/152: 193–197.
- Schramm, A., and H. Mazé, 1865. *Essai de Classification des Algues de la Guadeloupe*. [1st ed.] [iii]+52 pp. Basse-Terre, Guadeloupe: Imprimerie du Gouvernement.
- Schramm, A., and H. Mazé, 1866. *Essai de Classification des Algues de la Guadeloupe*. [1a ed.] [ii]+144 pp. Cayenne, Guyane Française: Imprimerie du Gouvernement.
- Scrosati, R. 2001. Population Dynamics of *Caulerpa sertularioides* (Chlorophyta: Bryopsidales) from Baja California, Mexico, during El Niño and La Niña Years. *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom* 81(3):721–726.
- Sears, J. R., and R. T. Wilce. 1970. Reproduction and Systematics of the Marine Alga *Derbesia* (Chlorophyceae) in New England. *Journal of Phycology* 6(4): 381–392.
- Segawa, S. 1935. On the Marine Algae of Susaki, Prov. Idzumi, and Its Vicinity. *Scientific Papers of the Institute of Algological Research, Faculty of Science, Hokkaido Imperial University* 1: 59–90.
- Serra, C. S. 1971. Hurricanes and Tropical Storms of the West Coast of Mexico. *Monthly Weather Review* 99: 7423–7431.
- Servière-Zaragoza, E., S. Castillo-Arguero, and J. González-González. 1998. Descripción ficológica de los ambientes de la región de Bahía de Banderas, Nayarit-Jalisco, México. *Boletín del Instituto de Botánica, Universidad de Guadalajara* 5: 157–180.
- Servière-Zaragoza, E., J. González-González, and D. Rodríguez-Vargas. 1993. Ficoflora de la región de Bahía de Banderas, Jalisco-Nayarit. In *Biodiversidad Marina y Costera de México*, S. I. Salazar-Vallejo and N. E. González, eds., pp. 475–485. México D.F.: Comisión Nacional para el Conocimiento y Aprovechamiento de la Biodiversidad y Centro de Investigaciones de Quintana Roo.
- Servière-Zaragoza, E., R. Riosmena-Rodríguez, H. León-Tejera, and J. González-González. 2007. Distribución espacial de macroalgas marinas en las Islas Revillagigedo, México. *Ciencia y Mar* 11(31): 3–13.
- Setchell, W. A. 1896. Notes on Kelps. *Erythraea* 4: 41–48.
- Setchell, W. A. 1912. Algae Novae et Minus Cognitae, I. *University of California Publications in Botany* 4(14): 229–268, pls. 25–31.
- Setchell, W. A. 1926. Tahitian Algae Collected by W. A. Setchell, C. B. Setchell, and H. E. Parks. *University of California Publications in Botany* 12(5): 61–142.
- Setchell, W. A. 1928. Townshend Stith Brandegee and Mary Katharine (Layne) Curran Brandegee. *University of California Publications in Botany* 13(6): 158–178.
- Setchell, W. A. 1929. The Genus *Microdictyon*. *University of California Publications in Botany* 14(20): 453–588.
- Setchell, W. A. 1937a. The Codiums of the Juan Fernandez Islands. In *Volume 2: Botany*, Part 5, No. 21, C. Skottsberg, ed., pp. 587–600, pls. 34–48, *The Natural History of Juan Fernandez and Easter Island*. Uppsala: Almqvist & Wiksells Boktryckeri A. B.
- Setchell, W. A. 1937b. The Templeton Crocker Expedition of the California Academy of Sciences, 1932, No. 34: Report

- on the *Sargassums*. *Proceedings of the California Academy of Sciences, Fourth Series*, 22(5): 127–158, pls. 28–33.
- Setchell, W. A. 1937c. Nathaniel Lyon Gardner, 1864–1937. *Madroño* 4: 126–128.
- Setchell, W. A. 1938. Biogeographical Memoir of Marshall Avery Howe, 1867–1936. *Biographical Memoirs of the National Academy of Sciences* 19: 243–269.
- Setchell, W. A., and E. Y. Dawson. 1941. *Binghamia*, the Alga, Versus *Binghamia*, the Cactus. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 27(8): 376–381.
- Setchell, W. A., and N. L. Gardner. 1903. Algae of Northwestern America. *University of California Publications in Botany* 1(3): 165–419.
- Setchell, W. A., and N. L. Gardner. 1920a. Phycological Contributions, I. *University of California Publications in Botany* 7(9): 279–324+[325].
- Setchell, W. A., and N. L. Gardner. 1920b. The Marine Algae of the Pacific Coast of North America, Pt. II: Chlorophyceae. *University of California Publications in Botany* 8(2): 139–374+[1]+375–382.
- Setchell, W. A., and N. L. Gardner. 1922a. Phycological Contributions, III: New Species of *Compsomena*. *University of California Publications in Botany* 7(11): 353–377.
- Setchell, W. A., and N. L. Gardner. 1922b. Phycological Contributions, V: New Species of *Pylaiella* and *Streblonema*. *University of California Publications in Botany* 7(11): 385–403.
- Setchell, W. A., and N. L. Gardner. 1922c. Phycological Contributions, VI: New Species of *Ectocarpus*. *University of California Publications in Botany* 7(11): 403–427.
- Setchell, W. A., and N. L. Gardner. 1924a. Expedition of the California Academy of Sciences to the Gulf of California in 1921: The Marine Algae. *Proceedings of the California Academy of Sciences, Fourth Series*, 12(29): 695–949, 1 map.
- Setchell, W. A., and N. L. Gardner. 1924b. Phycological Contributions, VII. *University of California Publications in Botany* 13(1): 1–13.
- Setchell, W. A., and N. L. Gardner. 1925. The Marine Algae of the Pacific Coast of North America, Part III: Melanophyceae. *University of California Publications in Botany* 8(3): 383–898.
- Setchell, W. A., and N. L. Gardner. 1930. The Marine Algae of the Revillagigedo Islands Expedition in 1925. *Proceedings of the California Academy of Sciences, Fourth Series*, 19(11): 109–215.
- Setchell, W. A., and N. L. Gardner. 1937. The Templeton Crocker Expedition of the California Academy of Sciences: A Preliminary Report on the Algae. *Proceedings of the California Academy of Sciences, Fourth Series*, 22(2): 65–98.
- Shen, Y.-C., P. I. Tsai, W. Fenical, and M. E. Hay. 1993. Secondary Metabolite Chemistry of the Caribbean Marine Alga *Sporochnus bolleanus*: A Basis for Herbivore Chemical Defence. *Phytochemistry* 32(1): 71–75.
- Shepard, F. P. 1950. Submarine Topography of the Gulf of California. Part 3 of *The 1940 E. W. Scripps Cruise to the Gulf of California*. 32 pp. Geological Society of America Memoir, No. 43. Boulder, Colo.: Geological Society of America.
- Shimada, S., M. Hiraoka, S. Nabata, M. Iima, and M. Masuda. 2003. Molecular Phylogenetic Analyses of the Japanese *Ulva* and *Enteromorpha* (Ulvales, Ulvophyceae), with Special Reference to the Free-Floating *Ulva*. *Phycological Research* 51(2): 99–108.
- Silva, P. C. 1951. The Genus *Codium* in California with Observations on the Structure of the Walls of the Utricles. *University of California Publications in Botany* 25(2): 79–114.
- Silva, P. C. 1952. A Review of Nomenclatural Conservation in the Algae from the Point of View of the Type Method. *University of California Publications in Botany* 25(4): 241–323.
- Silva, P. C. 1957. Notes on Pacific Marine Algae. *Madroño* 14(2): 41–51.
- Silva, P. C. 1960. Gilbert Morgan Smith, 1885–1960. *Revue Algologique, Série 2*, 5: 97–102.
- Silva, P. C. 1962. Comparison of Algal Floristic Patterns in the Pacific with Those in the Atlantic and Indian Oceans, with Special Reference to *Codium*. In *Proceedings of the Ninth Pacific Science Congress, Bangkok, 1957*, Vol. 4: Botany, pp. 201–216. Bangkok: Chulalongkorn University.
- Silva, P. C. 1967. E. Yale Dawson (1918–1966). *Phycologia* 6(4): 218–236.
- Silva, P. C. 1979. The Benthic Algal Flora of Central San Francisco Bay. In *San Francisco Bay: The Urbanized Estuary*, T. J. Conomos, A. E. Leviton, and M. Berson, eds., pp. 287–345. San Francisco: Pacific Division, American Association for the Advancement of Science.
- Silva, P. C. 1980. *Names of Classes and Families of Living Algae; with Special Reference to Their Use in the Index Nominum Genericorum (Plantarum)*. Regnum Vegetabile, No. 103. [iii]+156 pp. Utrecht: Bohn, Scheltema & Holkema.
- Silva, P. C. 1982. Chlorophycota. In *Synopsis and Classification of Living Organisms*, Volume 1, S. P. Parker, ed., pp. 133–161. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Silva, P. C., P. W. Basson, and R. L. Moe. 1996a. Catalogue of the Benthic Marine Algae of the Indian Ocean. *University of California Publications in Botany* 79: xiv+1–1259.
- Silva, P. C., and B. de Reviere. 2000. Ordinal Names in the Phaeophyceae. *Cryptogamie, Algologie* 21(1): 49–58.
- Silva, P. C., D. Lamy, S. Loiseaux-de Goër, and B. de Reviere. 1999. Proposal to Conserve the Name *Pylaiella* Bory (Phaeophyceae) with a Conserved Spelling. *Taxon* 48(2): 139–140.
- Silva, P. C., E. G. Meñez, and R. L. Moe. 1987. Catalog of the Benthic Marine Algae of the Philippines. *Smithsonian Contributions to the Marine Sciences*, No. 27: iv+1–179. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution Press.
- Silva, P. C., R. A. Rasmussen, H. Krauss, and P. Avila. 1996b. Marine Flora of Rocas Alijos. In *Rocas Alijos: Scientific Results from the Cordell Expeditions*, R. W. Schmieider, ed., pp. 227–236. Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic Publications.
- Sivalingam, P. M. 1989. Biochemical Relationships of *Valonia fastigata* and *Valoniopsis pachynema* with Regard to the External Environmental Medium. *Japanese Journal of Phycology (Sôru)* 37(1): 1–3.
- Slevin, J. R. 1923. General Account: Expedition of the California Academy of Sciences to the Gulf of California. *Proceedings of the California Academy of Sciences, Fourth Series*, 12(6): 55–72.
- Smith, G. M. 1930. Observations on Some Siphonaceous Green Algae of the Monterey Peninsula. In *Contributions to Marine Biology, Lectures and Symposia Given at Hopkins*

- Marine Station Dec 20–21, 1929*, pp. 222–233. Stanford, Calif.: Stanford University.
- Smith, G. M. 1933. *The Fresh-Water Algae of the United States*. xi+716 pp. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Smith, G. M. 1942. Notes on Some Brown Algae from the Monterey Peninsula, California. *American Journal of Botany* 29(8): 645–653.
- Smith, G. M. 1944. *Marine Algae of the Monterey Peninsula, California*. viii+622 pp., 98 pls. Stanford, Calif.: Stanford University Press.
- Smith, G. M. 1969. *Marine Algae of the Monterey Peninsula, California*. 2nd ed. (incorporating the 1966 Supplement by G. J. Hollenberg and I. A. Abbott), x+752 pp. Stanford, Calif.: Stanford University Press.
- Smith, J. E. 1810. *English Botany; or, Coloured Figures of British Plants, with Their Essential Characters, Synonyms, and Places of Growth*. Volume 30. [i] p., pls. 2089–2160, pp. [1,3,5, indices]+[1,2 corrections for earlier plates]. London: Author (J. Davis, printer).
- Smith, J. E. 1811. *English Botany; or, Coloured Figures of British Plants, with Their Essential Characters, Synonyms, and Places of Growth*. Volume 33. [i] p., pls. 2305–2362, pp. [1,3,5]. London: Printed for the Author (J. Davis, printer).
- Smith, J. E., and J. de Carle Sowerby. 1843. *English Botany; or, Coloured Figures of British Plants . . . Supplement to the English Botany of the Late Sir J. E. Smith and Mr. Sowerby. The Descriptions, Synonyms, and Places of Growth by William Jackson Hooker . . . and Other Eminent Botanists; the Figures by James de Carle Sowerby . . .* Volume 3. [viii] pp., pls. 2797–2867. London: Longman.
- Söderström, J. 1955. Some Drawings of *Cladophora*. *Svensk Botanisk Tidskrift* 49(1–2): 275–281.
- Söderström, J. 1963. Studies in *Cladophora*. *Botanica Gothoburgensia* 1: 1–147.
- Söderström, J. 1965. Remarks on Some Species of *Cladophora* in the Sense of van den Hoek and Söderström. *Botanica Marina* 8(2–4): 169–182.
- Solier, A.-J.-J. 1845. Algues. In *Catalogue des Plantes qui croissent Naturellement aux Environs de Marseille*, J. L. M. Castagne, ed., pp. 225–253. Aix: Nicot et Pardigon.
- Solier, A.-J.-J. 1846. Sur deux algues zoosporées formant le nouveau genre *Derbesia*. *Revue Botanique, Recueil Mensuel (Duchartre)* 1: 452–454.
- Solier, A.-J.-J. 1847. Mémoire sur deux algues zoospores devant former un genre distinct, le genre *Derbesia*. . . . *Annales de Sciences Naturelles, Botanique, Série 3*, 7: 157–166, pl. 9.
- Solms-Laubach, H. 1895. Monograph of the Acetabulariae. *Transactions of the Linnean Society of London, Second Series, Botany* 5: 1–39, pls. 1–4.
- Sonder, O. G. 1845. Nova Algarum Genera et Species, Quas in Itinere ad Oras Occidentales Novae Hollandiae, Collegit L. Preiss, Ph. Dr. *Botanische Zeitung* 3: 49–57.
- Sonder, O. W. 1871. Die algen des tropischen Australiens. *Abhandlungen aus dem Gebiete der Naturwissenschaften herausgegeben von dem Naturwissenschaftlichen Verein in Hamburg* 5(2): 33–71, pls. I-VI.
- South, G. R., and I. Tittley. 1986. *A Checklist and Distributional Index of the Benthic Marine Algae of the North Atlantic Ocean*. 76 pp. St. Andrews, N. B.: Huntsman Marine Laboratory.
- Sparling, S. 1971. Recent Records of Marine Algae in San Luis Obispo County, California. *Phycologia* 10(2–3): 235–240.
- Stackhouse, J. 1797. *Nereis Britannica; Continens Species Omnes Fucorum in Insulis Britannicis Crescentium: Descriptione Latine et Anglico*. Fasciculus 2. Pp. xi–xxiv+31–70, pls. 9–13. Bath: S. Hazard.
- Stafleu, F. A. 1972. The volumes on Cryptogams of “Engler und Prantl.” *Taxon* 21(4): 501–511.
- Stafleu, F. A., and R. S. Cowan. 1976–1988. *Taxonomic Literature*. 2nd ed. [TL-2]. Volumes 1–7. Utrecht: Bohn, Scheltema & Holkema.
- Stafleu, F. A., and E. A. Mennega. 1992–2000. *Taxonomic Literature*. 2nd ed. [TL-2]. Supplement Volumes 1–6. Königstein: Koeltz Scientific Books.
- Stearn, W. T. 1957. Introduction to the *Species Plantarum* and Cognate Botanical Works of Carl Linnaeus. In *Carl Linnaeus, Species Plantarum: A Facsimile of the First Edition, 1753*, pp. xiv+1–176. London: The Ray Society.
- Stearn, W. T. 2004. *Botanical Latin*. 4th ed. xiv+546 pp. Portland, Oreg.: Timber Press Inc.
- Stegenga, H., J. J. Bolton, and R. J. Anderson. 1997. *Seaweeds of the South African West Coast*. Contributions from the Bolus Herbarium, No. 18. 655 pp. Cape Town: Bolus Herbarium, University of Cape Town.
- Steinbeck, J. 2001. *The Log from the “Sea of Cortez.”* 320 pp. New York: Penguin Group.
- Steinbeck, J., and E. F. Ricketts. 1941. *Sea of Cortez: A Leisurely Journal of Travel and Research*. New York: The Viking Press. [Republished Mamaroneck, N.Y.: Paul P. Appel. 1971.]
- Stewart, J. G. 1982. Anchor Species and Epiphytes in Intertidal Algal Turf. *Pacific Science* 36(1): 45–59.
- Stewart, J. G. 1991. *Marine Algae and Seagrasses of San Diego County. A Handbook of Benthic Marine Plants from Intertidal and Subtidal Sites Between the U.S.-Mexican Border and Orange County, California*. 197 pp. La Jolla: California Sea Grant College Program, University of California.
- Stewart, J. G., and J. R. Stewart. 1984. Marine Algae of Guadalupe Island, México, Including a Checklist. *Ciencias Marinas* 10(2): 129–148.
- Stockmayer, S. 1890. Ueber die Algengattung *Rhizoclonium*. *Verhandlungen der Kaiserlich-Königlichen Zoologisch-Botanischen Gesellschaft in Wien* 40: 571–586.
- Stout, I., and K. M. Dreckmann. 1993. Macroalgas bentónicas de Faro de Bucerías, Michoacán, México. *Anales Instituto Biología de la Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México, Serie Botánica* 64(1): 1–23.
- Suringar, W. R. F. 1868 [1867]. Algarum japonicarum musei botanici L. B. [Lugduno-Batavi], Index praecursorius. *Annales Musei Botanici Lugduno-Batavi* 3: 256–259.
- Svedelius, N. 1906. Reports on the Marine Algae of Ceylon, No. 1: Ecological and Systematic Studies of the Ceylon Species of *Caulerpa*. *Reports of the Ceylon Marine Biological Laboratory* 2: 81–144.
- Tan, I. H., J. Blomster, G. Hansen, E. Leskinen, C. A. Maggs, D. G. Mann, H. J. Sluiman, and M. J. Stanhope. 1999. Molecular Phylogenetic Evidence for a Reversible Morpho-

- genetic Switch Controlling the Gross Morphology of Two Common Genera of Green Seaweeds, *Ulva* and *Enteromorpha*. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 16(8): 1011–1018.
- Tan, I. H., and L. D. Druehl. 1994. A Molecular Study of *Analphus* and *Ralfsia* (Phaeophyceae) Suggests the Order Ectocarpales is Polyphyletic. *Journal of Phycology* 30(4): 721–729.
- Tanaka, J. 1993. *Ishige okamurai* Yendo. In *Volume 2: Brown and Red Algae*, T. Hori, ed., pp. 40–41, *An Illustrated Atlas of the Life History of Algae*. Tokyo: Uchida Rokakuho.
- Tanaka, J. 1998. Reproductive Structures of *Dictyopteris undulata* (Dictyotales, Phaeophyceae) from Japan. *Phycological Research* 46(1): 75–80.
- Tanaka, J., and M. Chihara. 1980a. Taxonomic Study of Japanese Crustose Brown Algae (1), General Account of the Order Ralfsiales. *Journal of Japanese Botany* 55: 193–202.
- Tanaka, J., and M. Chihara. 1980b. Taxonomic Study of Japanese Crustose Brown Algae (2), *Ralfsia* (Ralfsiaceae, Ralfsiales), (Part 1). *Journal of Japanese Botany* 55: 225–236.
- Tanaka, J., and M. Chihara. 1980c. Taxonomic Study of the Japanese Crustose Brown Algae (3), *Ralfsia* (Ralfsiaceae, Ralfsiales), (Part 2). *Japanese Journal of Botany* 55: 337–342.
- Tanaka, J., and M. Chihara. 1981a. Taxonomic Study of the Japanese Crustose Brown Algae (4), *Ralfsia* (Ralfsiaceae, Ralfsiales), (Part 3). *Journal of Japanese Botany* 56: 97–104.
- Tanaka, J., and M. Chihara. 1981b. Taxonomic Study of the Japanese Crustose Brown Algae (5), *Endoplura* and *Diplura* (Ralfsiaceae, Ralfsiales). *Journal of Japanese Botany* 56: 153–160.
- Tanaka, J., and M. Chihara. 1982. Morphology and Taxonomy of *Mesospora schmidtii* Weber van Bosse, Mesosporaceae fam. nov. (Ralfsiales, Phaeophyceae). *Phycologia* 21(3): 382–389.
- Tanaka, T., and H. Itono. 1977. On Two New Species of Chlorophyta from Southern Parts of Japan. *Bulletin of the Japanese Society of Phycology* 25(Suppl. Mem. Issue Yamada): 347–352.
- Tanner, C. E. 1979. The Taxonomy and Morphological Variation of Distromatic Ulvaceous Algae (Chlorophyta) from the Northeast Pacific. xv+249 pp. Ph. D. diss. Department of Botany, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, Canada.
- Tanner, C. E. 1980. *Chloropelta* gen. nov., an Ulvaceous Green Alga with a Different Type of Development. *Journal of Phycology* 16(2): 128–137.
- Tanner, C. E. 1981. Chlorophyta: Life Histories. In *The Biology of Seaweeds*, C. S. Lobban and M. J. Wynne, eds., pp. 218–247. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Tanner, C. E. 1986. Investigations of the Taxonomy and Morphological Variation of *Ulva* (Chlorophyta): *Ulva californica* Wille. *Phycologia* 25(4): 510–520.
- Tatewaki, M. 1966. Formation of a Crustaceous Sporophyte with Unilocular Sporangia in *Scytosiphon lomentaria*. *Phycologia* 6(1): 62–66.
- Taylor, W. R. 1928. *The Marine Algae of Florida with Special Reference to the Dry Tortugas*. Papers from the Tortugas Laboratory of the Carnegie Institution of Washington, No. 24. Carnegie Institution of Washington Publication, No. 379, v+219 pp. Washington, D.C.: Carnegie Institution of Washington. [Reprinted *Bibliotheca Phycologica*, Volume 2. Lehre: J. Cramer. 1967.]
- Taylor, W. R. 1939. Algae Collected on the Presidential Cruise of 1938. *Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collections* 98(9): 1–18, 2 pls. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution.
- Taylor, W. R. 1945. Pacific Marine Algae of the Allan Hancock Expeditions to the Galápagos Islands. *Allan Hancock Pacific Expeditions* 12: iv+528 pp.
- Taylor, W. R. 1947. Algae Collected by the “Hassler,” “Albatross,” and Schmitt Expeditions, III: Marine Algae from Peru and Chile. *Papers of the Michigan Academy of Sciences, Arts and Letters* 31: 57–90, pls. 1–14.
- Taylor, W. R. 1950. *Plants of Bikini and Other Northern Marshall Islands*. xv+227 pp., 79 pls. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Press.
- Taylor, W. R. 1955. Notes on Algae from the Tropical Atlantic Ocean, IV. *Papers of the Michigan Academy of Sciences, Arts and Letters* 40: 67–76.
- Taylor, W. R. 1960. *Marine Algae of the Eastern Tropical and Subtropical Coasts of the Americas*. xii+870 pp. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Press.
- Tello-Velazco, M. 1986. Cuantificación del efecto de la tormenta tropical “Lidia” y el ciclón “Paul” sobre una comunidad de macroalgas bentónicas marinas en la Laguna Costera de Balandra, Baja California Sur, México. *Anales del Instituto de Ciencias del Mar y Limnología de la Universidad Nacional Autónoma México* 13: 69–78.
- Thivy, F. 1943. New Records of Some Marine Chaetophoraceae and Chaetosphaeridiaceae for North America. *Biological Bulletin* 85(3): 244–264.
- Thivy, F., and V. D. Chauhan. 1964. *Sargassum johnstonii* Setchell & Gardner, a New Record for the Indian Ocean Region. *Hydrobiologia* 23(1–2): 292–299.
- Thomas, J. H. 1969. Botanical Explorations in Washington, Oregon, California and Adjacent Regions. *Huntia* 3(1): 5–66.
- Thomson, D. A., L. T. Findley, and A. N. Kerstitch. 2000. *Reef Fishes of the Sea of Cortez: The Rocky-Shore Fishes of the Gulf of California*. revised ed. Corrie Herring Hooks Series, No. 44. [viii]+xx+353 pp. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Thomson, D. A., and C. E. Lehner. 1976. Resilience of a Rocky Intertidal Fish Community in a Physically Unstable Environment. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 22(1): 1–29.
- Toste, M. F., M. I. Parente, A. I. Nero, and R. L. Fletcher. 2003a. Life History of *Hydroclathrus clathratus* (Scytosiphonaceae, Phaeophyta) in the Azores. *Cryptogamie, Algologie* 24(3): 209–218.
- Toste, M. F., M. I. Parente, A. I. Nero, and R. L. Fletcher. 2003b. Life History of *Colpomenia sinuosa* (Scytosiphonaceae, Phaeophyceae) in the Azores. *Journal of Phycology* 39(6): 1268–1274.
- Trench, R. K. 1973. Of “Leaves that Crawl”: Functional Chloroplasts in Animal Cells. In *Symbiosis*, D. H. Jennings and D. L. Lee, eds., pp. 229–265. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Tribollet, A., C. Langdon, S. Golubic, and M. Atkinson. 2006. Endolithic Microflora Are Major Primary Producers in Dead Carbonate Substrates of Hawaiian Coral Reefs. *Journal of Phycology* 42(2): 292–303.
- Tronholm, A., M. Sansón, J. Afonso-Carrillo, and O. De Clerck. 2008. Distinctive Morphological Features, Life-Cycle



- Phases and Seasonal Variations in Subtropical Populations of *Dictyota dichotoma* (Dictyotales, Phaeophyceae). *Botanica Marina* 51(2): 132–144.
- Tseng, C. K. 1983. *Common Seaweeds of China*. [ii]+x+316 pp. Beijing: Science Press.
- Tsuda, R. T., and I. A. Abbott. 1985. Collecting, Handling, Preservation, and Logistics. In *Volume 4: Ecological Field Methods: Macroalgae*, M. M. Littler and D. S. Littler, eds., pp. 67–86, *Handbook of Phycological Methods*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Tsuda, R. T., and S. Kamura. 1991. Floristic and Geographic Distribution of *Halimeda* (Chlorophyta) in the Ryukyu Islands. *Japanese Journal of Phycology (Sôruï)* 39(1): 57–76.
- Urban, P. 1969. The Fine Structure of Pronuclear Fusion in the Coenocytic Marine Alga *Bryopsis hypnoides* Lamouroux. *Journal of Cell Biology* 42(2): 606–611.
- Valet, G. 1969. Contributions à l'étude des Dasycladales: Revision systematique. *Nova Hedwigia* 17(1–4): 575–637.
- van Andel, T. H., and G. S. Shor. 1964. *A Symposium: Marine Geology of the Gulf of California*. American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir, No. 3. 408 pp. Tulsa, Okla.: American Association of Petroleum Geologists.
- Vest, S. E., C. J. Dawes, and J. T. Romeo. 1983. Distribution of Caulerpin and Caulerpicin in Eight Species of the Green Alga *Caulerpa* (Caulerpales). *Botanica Marina* 26(4): 313–316.
- Vickers, A. 1905. Liste des algues marines de la Barbade. *Annales des Sciences Naturelles, Botanique, Série 9*, 1: 45–66.
- Vinogradova, K. L. 1973. K anatomii *Petalonia* Derb. et Sol. (Scytosiphonales). *Novosti Sistematiki Nizshikh Rastenij* 10: 28–32.
- Warming, E. 1884. *Haandbog I den systematiske Botanik. Naermest til Brug for Laerere og Universitets-Studerende. Anden giennemsete Udgave*. [iv]+434+[iii] pp. Copenhagen: P. G. Philipsens Forlag.
- Webber, E. E. 1981. Observations on *Leathesia difformis* (L.) Aresch. from Nahant, Massachusetts. *Botanica Marina* 24(3): 297–298.
- Weber-van Bosse, A. 1898. Monographie des Caulerpes. *Annales du Jardin Botanique de Buitenzorg* 15: 243–401, pls. 20–34.
- Weber-van Bosse, A. 1905. Note sur le genre *Dictyosphaeria* Dec. *Nuova Notarisia* 15: 142–144.
- Weber-van Bosse, A. 1913. *Liste des algues du Siboga, I: Myxophyceae, Chlorophyceae, Phaeophyceae avec le concours de M. Th. Rienbold*, M. Weber, ed., Siboga-Expedition Monographie, No. 59A, pp. 1–186, pls. I–V. Leiden: E. J. Brill.
- Wehr, J. D., and R. G. Sheath, eds. 2003. *Freshwater Algae of North America: Ecology and Classification*. 917 pp. San Diego, Calif.: Academic Press.
- West, G. S. 1904. *A Treatise on the British Fresh-water Algae, . . .* [1st ed.]. xv+372 pp. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Whittaker, R. H. 1969. New Concepts of Kingdoms of Organisms. *Science* 163(3863): 150–161.
- Wiggins, I. L. 1962. Gilbert Morgan Smith, January 6, 1885–July 11, 1959. *Biographical Memoirs of the National Academy of Sciences* 36: 289–313.
- Wilce, R. T., C. W. Schneider, A. V. Quinlan, and K. van den Bosch. 1982. The Life History and Morphology of Free-Living *Pilayella littoralis* (L.) Kjellm. (Ectocarpaceae, Ectocarpales) in Nahant Bay, Massachusetts. *Phycologia* 21(3): 336–354.
- Wille, N. 1899. *Ulva californica*. In *Phycotheca Boreali-Americana. A Collection of Dried Specimens of the Algae of North America*, Fascicle 13, F. S. Collins, I. Holden, W. A. Setchell, eds., Exsiccatae No. 611. Malden, Mass.: Authors.
- Wille, N. 1910 [1909]. Conjugatae und Chlorophyceae. In *Die natürlichen Pflanzenfamilien . . . Nachträge zu I Teil, Abt. 2*, Fascicles 236–237, [H. G.] A. Engler and K. [A. E.] Prantl, eds., pp. 1–96. Leipzig: Wilhelm Engelmann.
- Williams, D. M. 1991a. Phylogenetic Relationships among the Chromista: A Review and Preliminary Analysis. *Cladistics* 7(2):141–156.
- Williams, D. M. 1991b. Cladistic Methods and Chromophyte Phylogeny. *BioSystems* 25(1–2): 101–112.
- Williams, J. 1996. *Baja Boater's Guide, Volume 2: The Sea of Cortez*. 3rd ed. 256 pp. Sausalito, Calif.: H. J. Williams Publications.
- Wittrock, V. B., and C. F. O. Nordstedt. 1884. *Algae Aquae Dulcis Exsiccatae Praecipue Scandinavicae, quas Adjectis Algis Marinis Chlorophyllaceis t Phycochromaceis. . .* Fasciculus 13. [2] pp., exsiccatae nos. 601–650. pp. [1–2], exsiccatae nos. 601–650. Uppsala: Ed. Berling.
- Wollny, R. 1881. Die Merresalgen von Helgoland. *Hedwigia* 20: 1–8, 17–32, 2 pls.
- Womersley, H. B. S. 1967. A Critical Study of the Marine Algae of Southern Australia, II: Phaeophyta. *Australian Journal of Botany* 15(2): 189–270.
- Womersley, H. B. S. 1971. New Records and Taxa of Marine Chlorophyta in Southern Australia. *Transactions and Proceedings of the Royal Society of South Australia* 95(Pt. 2): 113–120.
- Womersley, H. B. S. 1984. *The Marine Benthic Flora of Southern Australia, Part I*, [1–6]+7–329 pp. Adelaide, South Australia: D. J. Woolman, Government Printer.
- Womersley, H. B. S. 1987. *The Marine Benthic Flora of Southern Australia, Part II*. Adelaide, South Australia: South Australian Government Printing Division.
- Woronine, M. 1862. Recherches sur les algues marines *Acetabularia* Lamx. et *Espera* Dcne. *Annales des Sciences Naturelles, Série 4: Botanique et Biologie Végétale* 16: 200–214.
- Wulfen, F. X. 1803. Cryptogama aquatica. In *Archiv für die Botanik*, K. Roemer, ed., 3: 1–64, pl. 1.
- Wynne, M. J. 1969. Life History and Systematic Studies of Some Pacific North American Phaeophyceae (Brown Algae). *University of California Publications in Botany* 50: [iv]+1–88.
- Wynne, M. J. 1971. Concerning the Phaeophycean Genera *An-alipus* and *Heterochordaria*. *Phycologia* 10(2–3): 169–175.
- Wynne, M. J. 1972. Studies of Life Forms in Nature and Culture of Selected Brown Algae. In *Contributions to the Systematics of Benthic Marine Algae of the North Pacific*, I. A. Abbott and M. Kurogi, eds., pp. 133–145. Kobe: Japanese Society of Phycology.
- Wynne, M. J. 1973. A Key to Unbranched, Cylindrical Brown Algae. *Contributions in Marine Science* 17: 133–152.
- Wynne, M. J. 1981. Phaeophyta: Morphology and Classification. In *The Biology of Seaweeds*, C. S. Lobban and M. J. Wynne, eds., pp. 52–85. Botanical Monographs, No. 17. Berkeley: University of California Press.

- Wynne, M. J. 1986. A Checklist of Benthic Marine Algae of the Tropical and Subtropical Western Atlantic. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 64(10): 2239–2281.
- Wynne, M. J. 1991. Prof. Dr. William Randolph Taylor. *Botanica Marina* 34(1): 63–67.
- Wynne, M. J. 1997. *Rosenvingea antillarum* (P. Crouan & H. Crouan) comb. nov. to Replace *R. floridana* (W. R. Taylor) W. R. Taylor (Scytosiphonales, Phaeophyta). *Cryptogamie, Algologie* 18(4): 331–336.
- Wynne, M. J. 1998a. A Checklist of Benthic Marine Algae of the Tropical and Subtropical Western Atlantic: First Revision. *Nova Hedwigia Beiheft* 116: iii+155 pp.
- Wynne, M. J. 1998b. A Study of *Padina antillarum* (Kützinger) Piccone and a Comparison with *P. tetrastromatica* Hauck (Dictyotales, Phaeophyta). *Cryptogamie, Algologie* 19(3): 271–289.
- Wynne, M. J. 1999. Concerning the Names of Two Phaeophycan Algae: *Colpomenia durvillei* (Bory) M. E. Ramírez and *Utriculidium durvillei* Skottsberg. *Cryptogamie, Algologie* 20(4): 289–293.
- Wynne, M. J. 2002. The Reinstatement of the Name *Ulva nematoidea* Bory de Saint-Vincent (Chlorophyta) and the Placement of *U. costata* (Howe) Hollenberg in Its Taxonomic Synonymy. *Cryptogamie, Algologie* 23(1): 5–12.
- Wynne, M. J. 2003. *Sporochnus anomalus* (Pallas) comb. nov. (Sporochnales, Phaeophyceae), the Oldest Available Name for *Sporochnus gaertnera* C. Agardh. *Cryptogamie, Algologie* 24(1): 75–81.
- Wynne, M. J. 2005. A Checklist of Benthic Marine Algae of the Tropical and Subtropical Western Atlantic: Second Revision. *Nova Hedwigia Beiheft* 129: ii+152 pp.
- Wynne, M. J., and O. De Clerck. 1999. First Reports of *Padina antillarum* and *P. glabra* (Phaeophyta-Dictyotaceae) from Florida, with a Key to the Western Atlantic Species of the Genus. *Caribbean Journal of Science* 35(3–4): 286–295.
- Wynne, M. J., and J. N. Norris. 1976. The Genus *Colpomenia* Derbes et Solier (Phaeophyta) in the Gulf of California. *Smithsonian Contributions to Botany* No. 35: iii+18 pp. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution Press.
- Wysor, B. 2004. An Annotated List of Marine Chlorophyta from the Pacific Coast of the Republic of Panamá, with a Comparison to Caribbean Panamá Species. *Nova Hedwigia* 78(1–2): 209–241.
- Yamada, Y. 1928. Report of the Biological Survey of Mutsu Bay, 9: Marine Algae of Mutsu Bay and Adjacent Waters, II. *Science Reports of the Tohoku Imperial University, 4th Series, Biology* 3: 497–534.
- Yamada, Y. 1935. Marine Algae from Urup, the Middle Kuriles, Especially from the Vicinity of Iema Bay. *Scientific Papers of the Institute of Algological Research, Faculty of Science, Hokkaido Imperial University* 1: 1–26, 10 pls.
- Yamada, Y. 1940. On the Species of *Caulerpa* from Micronesia. *Kagaku Nanyō [Japan Society for the Promotion of Scientific Research]* 3: 95–107. (In Japanese.)
- Yamada, Y. 1942. Notes on *Sargassum* from the Southern Parts of Japan, III. *Journal of Japanese Botany* 18: 553–562. (In Japanese.)
- Yamada, Y. 1944. Diagnoses of New *Sargassums* from Japan. *Scientific Papers of the Institute of Algological Research, Faculty of Science, Hokkaido Imperial University* 3(1): 1–10.
- Yamada, Y. 1948. Marine Algae. In *Icones of the Marine Plants and Animals of Hokkaido, No. 1*, Y. Yamada and S. Kinoshita, eds., p. 6, pl. 4 [*Colpomenia bullosa*]. Yoichi, Hokkaido: Hokkaido Fisheries Scientific Institution.
- Yamanouchi, S. 1912. The Life History of *Cutleria*. *Botanical Gazette* 54(6): 441–502, pls. 26–35.
- Yang, M.-H., G. Blunden, F.-L. Huang, and R. L. Fletcher. 1997. Growth of a Dissociated, Filamentous Stage of *Codium* Species in Laboratory Culture. *Journal of Applied Phycology* 9(1): 1–3.
- Yarish, C. 1975. A Cultural Assessment of the Taxonomic Criteria of Selected Marine Chaetophoraceae (Chlorophyta). *Nova Hedwigia* 26: 385–430.
- Yendo, K. 1907. The Fucaceae of Japan. *Journal of the College of Science, Imperial University of Tokyo* 21(12): 1–174, pls. 1–18.
- Yoshida, T. 1988. Japanese and Taiwanese Species of *Sargassum* subgenus *Sargassum*. In *Taxonomy of Economic Seaweeds with Reference to Some Pacific and Caribbean Species*, Volume 2, I. A. Abbott, ed., pp. 5–21. La Jolla: California Sea Grant College Program, University of California.
- Yoshida, T. 1998. *Marine Algae of Japan* [Shin Nihon kaisoshi; Nihonsan kaisorui soran]. 25+[2]+3–1222 pp. Tokyo: Uchida Rokakuho Publishing Company.
- Yoshida, T., and K. Akiyama. 1979. *Streblonema* (Phaeophyceae) Infection in the Frond of Cultivated *Undaria* (Phaeophyceae). In *Proceedings of the Ninth International Seaweed Symposium*, Jensen, A. and J. R. Stein, eds., pp. 219–223. Princeton: Science Press.
- Yoshida, T., Y. Nakajima, and Y. Nakata. 1990. Check-list of Marine Algae of Japan (revised in 1990). *Japanese Journal of Phycology (Sôru)* 38(4): 269–320.
- Yoshida, T., K. Yoshinaga, and Y. Nakajima. 1995. Check-list of Marine Algae of Japan (revised in 1995). *Japanese Journal of Phycology (Sôru)* 43(3): 115–171.
- Yotsui, T. 1976. Seasonal Occurrence and Sporangia Formation of *Nemacystus decipiens* (Chordariales, Phaeophyta). *Bulletin of the Japanese Society of Phycology* 24(4): 130–136.
- Yotsui, T. 1980. Studies on the Life Cycle and Artificial Propagation of a Brown Alga, *Nemacystus decipiens* (Phaeophyta, Chordariales). *Special Report of the Nagasaki Prefectural Institute of Fisheries* 7: 1–48.
- Zanardini, G. [A. M.] 1843. *Saggio di classificazione naturale delle Ficee*. 64+[i] pp., 1 pl. Venice: Girolamo Tasso.
- Zaneveld, J. S. 1966. Elmer Yale Dawson (1918–1966). *Nova Hedwigia* 12: I–XII.
- Zedler, J. B. 1980. Algal Mat Productivity: Comparisons in a Salt Marsh. *Estuaries* 2: 122–131.
- Zedler, J. B. 1982. Salt Marsh Algal Composition: Spatial and Temporal Comparisons. *Bulletin of the Southern California Academy of Sciences* 81(1): 41–50.

# Index of Scientific Names

---

Names of all taxa recognized in the northern Gulf of California are shown in **bold type**. Higher taxa (e.g., orders and families) that are synonyms or have a distribution outside of the northern Gulf are in non-bold, SMALL CAPITAL letters. Names of genera and species that are synonyms or have a distribution outside of the northern Gulf are in non-bold *italics*.

Page numbers in **bold type** refer to northern Gulf taxa descriptions. Page numbers in non-bold type refer to basionyms or synonyms or to taxa mentioned in the text or in discussion, e.g., Remarks. Page numbers in non-bold *italics* to pages with the figure(s) of the genus or species.

- Acanthocodium fragile*, 92
- Acetabularia*, 102**
  - Acetabularia caliculus*, 103, 103**
  - Acetabularia crenulata*, 102
  - Acetabularia farlowii*, 102
  - Acetabularia parvula*, 102
  - Acetabularia pusilla*, 102
  - Acetabularia schenckii*, 102
- ACETABULARIACEAE, 102
- Acinetospora*, 166, 167
  - Acinetospora crinita*, 166
  - Acinetospora pusilla*, 166
- ACINETOSPORACEAE, 166, 186**
- Acrochaete*, 30
  - Acrochaete codicola*, 26
  - Acrochaete marchantiae*, 22
  - Acrochaete viridis*, 25
- Aglaozonia*, 162
- Aglaozonia*-phase of *Cutleria*, 163, 164**
- ALARIACEAE, 219
- Anadyomena*, 67, 68
- ANADYOMENACEAE, 67
- Analipus*, 155
- Annulina albida*, 55
- ARCHAEPLASTIDA, 20
- Asperococcus*, 175
  - Asperococcus intricatus*, 198
  - Asperococcus* β. *Colpomenia*, 189

- Asteronema*, 166  
*Asteronema breviararticulatum*, 166
- Batophora*, 101  
*Batophora oerstedii*, 101
- Blidingia*, 32  
*Blidingia marginata*, 32  
*Blidingia minima*, 32
- Boodlea*, 68, 70  
*Boodlea composita*, 68
- BOODLEACEAE**, 67, 68
- Botrytella reinboldii*, 187
- BRYOPSIDACEAE**, 78
- BRYOPSIDALES**, 77, 78
- Bryopsidella*, 79
- BRYOPSIDINEAE**, 78
- BRYOPSIDOPHYCEAE**, 20, 77, 78
- Bryopsis*, 79, 83  
*Bryopsis corticulans*, 79, 80  
*Bryopsis hypnoides*, 79, 80  
*Bryopsis muscosa*, 79  
*Bryopsis pachynema*, 76  
*Bryopsis pennata* var. *minor*, 79, 81, 82  
*Bryopsis pennata* var. *pennata*, 79, 80, 81, 82, 85  
*Bryopsis pennatula*, 81, 82  
*Bryopsis plumosa*, 80  
*Bryopsis plumosa* var. *pennata*, 81  
*Bryopsis salvadoreana*, 79, 82
- Canistrocarpus*, 118  
*Canistrocarpus crispatus*, 122
- Carpopeltis sinicola*, 109
- Caulerpa**, 94, 95  
*Caulerpa antoensis*, 95  
*Caulerpa arenicola*, 95  
*Caulerpa ashmeadii*, 98  
*Caulerpa crassifolia* f. *pectinata*, 95  
*Caulerpa mexicana* f. *pectinata*, 95, 95, 96  
*Caulerpa pectinata*, 95  
*Caulerpa peltata*, 95  
*Caulerpa pinnata* f. *pectinata*, 95, 96  
*Caulerpa racemosa*, 95  
*Caulerpa racemosa* var. *chemnitzia*, 95  
*Caulerpa racemosa* var. *turbinata*, 95  
*Caulerpa racemosa* var. *uvifera*, 95  
*Caulerpa sertularioides*, 95, 96, 97  
*Caulerpa sertularioides* f. *brevipes*, 96  
*Caulerpa sertularioides* f. *longiseta*, 96  
*Caulerpa vanbosseae*, 95, 97, 98
- CAULERPACEAE**, 78, 94
- CAULERPALES**, 78
- Caulerpella*, 94
- Chaetomorpha**, 50, 53, 64  
*Chaetomorpha aerea*, 51, 52, 54  
*Chaetomorpha aerea* f. *linum*, 54  
*Chaetomorpha antennina*, 51, 52, 52, 53  
*Chaetomorpha bangioides*, 51, 53, 53  
*Chaetomorpha javanica*, 50  
*Chaetomorpha linoides*, 50  
*Chaetomorpha linum*, 51, 53, 54  
*Chaetomorpha minima*, 50  
*Chaetomorpha pachynema*, 50  
*Chaetomorpha spiralis*, 50  
*Chaetomorpha tortuosa*, 66
- CHAETOPHORALES**, 21
- Chaetophora marina*, 187
- Chamaedoris*, 70
- CHLOROBIONTA**, 20
- Chlorodesmis hildebrandtii*, 94
- Chloropelta*, 32
- CHLOROPHYCEAE**, 77
- CHLOROPHYTA**, 19, 20, 78
- CHLOROPLASTIDA**, 19
- Chnoospora**, 172  
*Chnoospora fastigiata* α [var.] *pacifica*, 172  
*Chnoospora implexa*, 171, 172  
*Chnoospora minima*, 172, 173  
*Chnoospora pacifica*, 171, 172, 173  
*Chnoospora pannosa*, 172
- CHNOOSPORACEAE**, 166, 171
- CHORDARIACEAE**, 166, 174, 175, 187, 194
- CHORDARIALES**, 108, 165
- CHROMAVELOLATA**, 106
- CHROMISTA**, 106
- Cladophora**, 50, 54  
*Cladophora albida*, 55, 56, 61  
*Cladophora bertolonii* var. *hamosa*, 56  
*Cladophora brachyclados*, 61, 62  
*Cladophora columbiana*, 55, 56, 57  
*Cladophora crispata*, 54  
*Cladophora delicatula*, 61  
*Cladophora densa*, 60  
*Cladophora expansa*, 63  
*Cladophora fascicularis*, 63  
*Cladophora flexuosa*, 63, 64  
*Cladophora glomerata*, 54  
*Cladophora glomerata* var. *crassior*, 54  
*Cladophora gracilis*, 63  
*Cladophora graminea*, 55, 57, 58, 63  
*Cladophora hesperia*, 55, 58, 59  
*Cladophora insignis*, 54  
*Cladophora lehmanniana*, 54  
*Cladophora macdougalii*, 13, 55, 57, 59, 60  
*Cladophora magdalenae*, 56  
*Cladophora media*, 53  
*Cladophora membranacea*, 68  
*Cladophora microcladioides*, 55, 56, 60, 61  
*Cladophora montagneana*, 55, 60, 61  
*Cladophora ovoidea*, 60  
*Cladophora pacifica*, 53  
*Cladophora pellucida*, 57  
*Cladophora prolifera*, 55, 62  
*Cladophora rivularis*, 54  
*Cladophora rudolphiana*, 62  
*Cladophora rugulosa*, 62  
*Cladophora sakaii*, 60  
*Cladophora sericea*, 55, 60, 62  
*Cladophora stimpsonii*, 54  
*Cladophora tiburoniensis*, 55, 56, 63  
*Cladophora trichotoma*, 56  
*Cladophora uncinella*, 63  
*Cladophora utriculosa*, 54  
*Cladophora vagabunda*, 55, 63, 64
- CLADOPHORACEAE**, 50
- CLADOPHORALES**, 49, 50, 67, 74
- CLADOPHOROPHYCEAE**, 20, 49
- Cladophoropsis*, 67, 68, 70, 76  
*Cladophoropsis gracillima*, 68, 69, 69  
*Cladophoropsis macromeres*, 68, 69, 70  
*Cladophoropsis membranacea*, 68  
*Cladophoropsis mexicana*, 72  
*Cladophoropsis pulcherrima*, 70  
*Cladophoropsis robusta*, 72, 73, 74, 76  
*Cladosiphonia?* *floridana*, 197
- CODIACEAE**, 78, 85
- CODIALES**, 78
- Codium**, 86, 87, 89, 90  
*Codium amplivesiculatum*, 86, 87, 88, 89  
*Codium anastomosans*, 90, 91  
*Codium brandegeei*, 14, 86, 87, 89, 90, 91  
*Codium cervicornae*, 89, 90, 91  
*Codium conjunctum*, 91  
*Codium cuneatum*, 90, 91, 92  
*Codium cylindricum*, 87  
*Codium decorticatedum*, 87  
*Codium dichotomum*, 87, 91  
*Codium fernandezianum*, 87  
*Codium fragile*, 92  
*Codium isabelae*, 90  
*Codium latum* subsp. *palmeri*, 91  
*Codium longiramum*, 87  
*Codium macdougalii*, 14, 90  
*Codium magnum*, 87  
*Codium palmeri*, 91  
*Codium picturatum*, 86  
*Codium reductum*, 90  
*Codium setchellii*, 86  
*Codium simulans*, 11, 86, 89, 90, 92  
*Codium* sp. A, 92, 93  
*Codium tomentosum*, 90, 91  
*Codium unilaterale*, 91
- Colpomenia**, 12, 189, 190, 193  
*Colpomenia bullosa*, 190  
*Colpomenia durvillei*, 190  
*Colpomenia expansa*, 193  
*Colpomenia peregrina*, 189  
*Colpomenia phaeodactyla*, 8, 190, 191, 194  
*Colpomenia ramosa*, 190, 191, 191, 199  
*Colpomenia sinuosa*, 8, 11, 190, 192, 192, 193

- Colpomenia sinuosa* f. *deformans*, 190  
*Colpomenia sinuosa* f. *expansissima*, 193  
*Colpomenia sinuosa* f. *expansa*, 192  
*Colpomenia sinuosa* f. *tuberculata*, 193  
**Colpomenia sp. A**, 190, 193  
*Colpomenia tuberculata*, 8, 190, 192, 193  
**Compsonema**, 176, 189, 194  
*Compsonema gracile*, 194  
**Compsonema immixtum**, 194  
*Compsonema intricatum*, 194  
*Compsonema myrionematoides*, 176  
*Compsonema nummuloides*, 176  
*Compsonema pusillum*, 176  
*Compsonema ramulosum*, 176  
*Compsonema secundum*, 176  
*Compsonema secundum* f. *terminale*, 176  
**Compsonema serpens**, 194, 195  
*Compsonema speciosum* f. *piliferum*, 176  
*Compsonema streblonematoides*, 175  
*Conferva aerea*, 51  
*Conferva albida*, 55  
*Conferva antennina*, 52  
*Conferva brachyclados*, 61  
*Conferva clathrata*, 41  
*Conferva crispata* var. *brachyclados*, 62  
*Conferva expansa*, 63  
*Conferva fascicularis*, 63  
*Conferva flexuosa*, 44, 63  
*Conferva gracilis*, 63  
*Conferva granulosa*, 170  
*Conferva hamosa*, 56  
*Conferva implexa*, 65  
*Conferva linum*, 53  
*Conferva media*, 53  
*Conferva pellucida*, 57  
*Conferva prolifera*, 62  
*Conferva riparia*, 64  
*Conferva rudolphiana*, 62  
*Conferva sericea*, 62  
*Conferva siliculosa*, 185  
*Conferva tortuosa*, 66  
*Conferva trichotoma*, 56  
*Conferva vagabunda*, 63  
*Corynophlaea*, 187  
CORYNOPHLAECEAE, 187  
*Cruoria verrucosa*, 161  
**CTENOCLADALES**, 20, 21  
**Cutleria**, 162, 165  
*Cutleria cylindrica*, 163  
**Cutleria hancockii**, 8, 163, 164  
CUTLERIACEAE, 162  
CUTLERIALES, 107, 161, 162  
CYSTOSEIRACEAE, 200  
  
DASYCLADACEAE, 101, 102  
DASYCLADALES, 101, 102  
DASYCLADOPHYCEAE, 20, 101  
**Derbesia**, 79, 82, 83, 84, 85  
*Derbesia hollenbergii*, 83  
**Derbesia marina**, 83, 84, 85  
*Derbesia* sp., 83, 84, 85  
**Derbesia sp. A**, 83, 84  
*Derbesia tenuissima*, 82, 85  
*Derbesia turbinata*, 83  
*Derbesia vaucheriaeformis*, 84  
**DERBESIACEAE**, 78, 82  
**Desmarestia**, 13, 145, 146  
*Desmarestia filamentosa*, 145, 146, 147, 148  
*Desmarestia kurilensis*, 146  
*Desmarestia ligulata*, 145, 146, 148  
*Desmarestia media*, 146  
*Desmarestia mexicana*, 145, 146, 148  
*Desmarestia munda*, 148  
*Desmarestia munda* var. *munda*, 148  
**Desmarestia munda** subsp. *mexicana*, 146, 148, 149  
*Desmarestia pacifica*, 146  
*Desmarestia viridis*, 145, 146  
**DESMARESTIACEAE**, 144  
**DESMARESTIALES**, 107, 144  
*Desmotrichum*, 175  
*Dictyropa*, 133  
**Dictyopteris**, 118, 119, 120  
*Dictyopteris delicatula*, 119  
*Dictyopteris johnstonei*, 122  
*Dictyopteris membranacea*, 119  
*Dictyopteris polypodioides*, 119, 121  
*Dictyopteris repens*, 119  
**Dictyopteris undulata**, 8, 119, 121, 122  
*Dictyopteris zonarioides*, 121  
DICTYOSIPHONACEAE, 174  
DICTYOSIPHONALES, 165, 186  
*Dictyosphaeria*, 67, 74  
*Dictyosphaeria australis*, 74  
*Dictyosphaeria cavernosa*, 74  
*Dictyosphaeria versluisii*, 74  
**Dictyota**, 117, 118, 119, 120, 122, 123, 126, 130, 131, 133  
*Dictyota bartayresiana*, 122  
*Dictyota binghamiae*, 125, 126  
*Dictyota cervicornis*, 122  
*Dictyota ceylanica*, 128  
**Dictyota concrescens**, 123, 124  
**Dictyota coriacea**, 8, 120, 123, 124, 125, 126, 130  
**Dictyota crenulata**, 123, 126, 127  
*Dictyota dichotoma*, 123, 128, 130, 132, 133  
**Dictyota dichotoma** var. *intricata*, 123, 128, 129  
*Dictyota divaricata*, 128  
**Dictyota flabellata**, 123, 124, 128, 130, 133  
*Dictyota friabilis*, 123, 124  
*Dictyota hesperia*, 130  
*Dictyota johnstonii*, 124, 126, 130  
*Dictyota marginata*, 141, 142  
*Dictyota okamurae*, 141  
*Dictyota pinnata*, 118  
*Dictyota pulchella*, 128  
**Dictyota stolonifera**, 123, 130, 131  
**Dictyota vivesii**, 13, 123, 132, 132, 133  
*Dictyota volubilis*, 123  
**DICTYOTACEAE**, 109, 117, 118, 120, 126  
**DICTYOTALES**, 7, 108, 117  
DICTYOTEAE, 118  
*Dilophus*, 118, 132, 133  
*Dilophus crenulatus*, 126  
*Dilophus flabellatus*, 128  
*Dilophus gunnianus*, 118  
*Dilophus marginatus*, 141  
*Dilophus okamurae*, 141, 142  
*Dilophus pinnatus*, 118  
*Dilophus stoloniferus*, 131  
*Diplura*, 108  
  
**ECTOCARPACEAE**, 166, 180, 186, 194  
**ECTOCARPALES**, 107, 108, 109, 156, 165, 186  
**Ectocarpus**, 180, 183  
**Ectocarpus acutus**, 180, 181, 181  
*Ectocarpus breviararticulatus*, 166  
*Ectocarpus bryantii*, 14, 169, 170  
*Ectocarpus chantrasoides*, 180  
**Ectocarpus commensalis**, 181, 182, 183, 184  
*Ectocarpus confervoides* f. *parvus*, 184  
*Ectocarpus confervoides* f. *pygmaeus*, 184  
*Ectocarpus confervoides* f. *variabilis*, 182  
*Ectocarpus confervoides* var. *pygmaeus*, 184  
*Ectocarpus corticulans*, 180  
*Ectocarpus dimorphus*, 182  
*Ectocarpus fasciculatus*, 184  
**Ectocarpus gonodioides**, 170, 181, 182, 183  
*Ectocarpus granulatus*, 170  
**Ectocarpus hancockii**, 181, 183, 184  
*Ectocarpus irregularis*, 167, 168  
*Ectocarpus lebelii*, 167  
*Ectocarpus mitchelliae*, 170  
*Ectocarpus mucronatus*, 167  
**Ectocarpus parvus**, 181, 182, 184, 185  
*Ectocarpus pygmaeus*, 184  
**Ectocarpus siliculosus**, 181, 185  
*Ectocarpus siliculosus* var. *parvus*, 184  
*Ectocarpus simulans*, 180  
**Ectocarpus sonorensis**, 181, 183, 186  
*Ectocarpus variabilis*, 182  
*Ectochaete ramulosa*, 30  
Egredia, 219  
*Egredia laevigata*, 219  
ELASCHISTACEAE, 174  
*Encoelium clathratum*, 195, 196  
*Endarachne binghamiae*, 189

- Endoderma vagans*, 30  
*Endoderma viride*, 25  
*Endoderma viride* f. *major*, 23  
*Endoplura*, 156  
*Endoplura aurea*, 156  
*Enteromorpha*, 32, 33, 41  
*Enteromorpha acanthophora*, 41  
*Enteromorpha angusta*, 34  
*Enteromorpha clathrata*, 41  
*Enteromorpha clathrata* var. *crinita*, 43  
*Enteromorpha compressa*, 44  
*Enteromorpha compressa* var. *flexuosa*, 45  
*Enteromorpha crinita*, 43  
*Enteromorpha flexuosa*, 44  
*Enteromorpha intestinalis*, 46  
*Enteromorpha intestinalis* var. *tubulosa*, 46, 49  
*Enteromorpha lingulata*, 45  
*Enteromorpha linza*, 47  
*Enteromorpha marchantiae*, 46  
*Enteromorpha marginata*, 32  
*Enteromorpha micrococca*, 32  
*Enteromorpha minima*, 32  
*Enteromorpha muscoides*, 43  
*Enteromorpha plumosa*, 43  
*Enteromorpha prolifera*, 48, 49  
*Enteromorpha prolifera* subsp. *radiata*, 48, 49  
*Enteromorpha prolifera* var. *flexuosa*, 45  
*Enteromorpha radiata*, 47, 49  
*Enteromorpha ramulosa*, 41, 43  
*Enteromorpha ramulosa* var. *acanthophora*, 41  
*Enteromorpha tubulosa*, 46, 49  
*Entocladia*, 21, 22, 25  
*Entocladia codicola*, 26  
*Entocladia condensata*, 25  
*Entocladia marchantiae*, 22, 23, 24  
*Entocladia mexicana*, 26  
*Entocladia polysiphoniae*, 22, 23, 24  
*Entocladia robustum*, 23  
*Entocladia* sp. A, 22, 23, 24, 25  
*Entocladia velutina*, 25  
*Entocladia viridis*, 22, 23, 24, 25  
*Epicladia*, 21, 22, 25  
*Epicladia condensata*, 22, 25, 26  
*Epicladia mexicana*, 22, 26, 26  
*Ernodesmis*, 74  
*Ernodesmis verticillata*, 75, 75  
*Feldmannia*, 166, 167, 168  
*Feldmannia hemispherica*, 167  
*Feldmannia irregularis*, 167, 167, 168  
*Feldmannia lebelii*, 167  
**FUCALES**, 7, 108, 199  
**FUCOPHYCEAE**, 106  
*Fucus*, 106, 199  
*Fucus anomalus*, 150  
*Fucus gaertnera*, 150  
*Fucus ligulatus*, 146  
*Fucus minimus*, 173  
*Fucus pedunculatus*, 150  
*Fucus pyriferus*, 220  
*Fucus sertularioides*, 96  
*Fucus viridis*, 146  
*Gastridium ovale*, 84  
*Geppella*, 94  
*Geppella?* *decussata*, 94  
*Geppella mortensenii*, 94  
*Giffordia*, 168  
*Giffordia granulosa*, 170  
*Giffordia irregularis*, 167  
*Giffordia mitchelliae*, 170  
*Glossophora*, 118, 122  
*Glossophora coriacea*, 124  
*Glossophorella*, 118, 122  
*Glossophorella coriacea*, 124  
*Gonodia*, 187  
*Gonodia johnstonii*, 187  
*Gonodia manchantiae*, 14, 187  
**HALICYSTACEAE**, 82  
**HALICYSTIDACEAE**, 82  
**Halicystis**, 82, 84, 85  
*Halicystis ovalis*, 84, 85  
*Halicystis parvula*-phase, 85  
**Halicystis-phase**, 82, 83, 84, 85, 85  
*Halicystis-phase* of *Derbesia marina*, 84, 85  
**Halimeda**, 99  
**Halimeda discoidea**, 99, 100  
*Halimeda opuntia*, 99  
**HALIMEDACEAE**, 78, 94, 98  
**HALIMEDALES**, 77  
**HALIMEDINEAE**, 78, 92, 94  
*Haliseris polydoides*, 121  
*Haliseris undulata*, 121  
*Hapalospogonion*, 155  
*Haplogloia*, 174  
*Haplogloia andersonii*, 174, 177  
**Hapterophycus**, 156  
**Hapterophycus anastomosans**, 156, 157  
*Hapterophycus canaliculatus*, 156, 157  
**Hecatonema**, 174, 175, 176  
*Hecatonema clavatum*, 176  
**Hecatonema streblonematoides**, 175, 175, 176  
*Hecatonema variabile*, 176  
**HETEROKONTA**, 106  
**HETEROKONTOPHYTA**, 106  
**Hinckesia**, 166, 167, 168, 169  
*Hinckesia breviarticulata*, 166  
**Hinckesia bryantii**, 168, 169, 169, 170  
**Hinckesia granulosa**, 168, 169, 170  
*Hinckesia irregularis*, 167, 168  
**Hinckesia mitchelliae**, 168, 170, 171  
*Hinckesia rallsiae*, 168  
**Hydroclathrus**, 189, 195  
*Hydroclathrus cancellatus*, 196  
**Hydroclathrus clathratus**, 195, 196  
**Isbige**, 108, 109  
*Isbige foliacea*, 108, 109, 111  
*Isbige okamurae*, 108, 109, 111  
**Isbige sinicola**, 108, 109, 110, 111  
**ISHIGEACEAE**, 108  
**ISHIGEALES**, 108  
*Laminaria*, 106  
**LAMINARIALES**, 7, 13, 219  
*Laminariocolax*, 179  
**Leathesia**, 187  
*Leathesia difformis*, 187, 189  
*Leathesia japonica*, 187  
*Leathesia marina*, 187, 189  
**Leathesia nana**, 187, 188, 189  
*Leathesia* sect. *Leathesia*, 187  
*Leathesia* sect. *Primariae*, 187  
*Leathesia tuberiformis*, 187  
**LEATHESIACEAE**, 166, 187  
**LESSONIACEAE**, 220  
**LITHODERMATACEAE**, 155  
*Litosiphon laminariae*, 179  
*Litosiphon pusillum*, 179  
*Lobophora*, 118  
*Lobophora variegata*, 118  
*Lola*, 64  
*Lola implexa*, 65  
*Lola lubrica*, 66  
*Lola tortuosa*, 66  
*Macrocystis*, 106, 220  
*Macrocystis pyrifer*, 220  
**MELANOPHYCEAE**, 106  
*Meneghiniella brandegeei*, 177  
*Mesogloia andersonii*, 177  
**MESOGLOIALES**, 165  
**MESOSPORACEAE**, 155  
*Microdictyon*, 67, 68  
*Microzon*, 162  
*Myriactula*, 187  
*Myriactula johnstonii*, 187  
*Myriactula marchantiae*, 187  
*Myrionema*, 194  
**MYRIONEMATACEAE**, 156, 174, 175, 194  
*Myriotrichia*, 175  
*Myriotrichia clavaeformis*, 179  
**MYRIOTRICHIAEAE**, 174  
**Nemacystus**, 174, 176  
**Nemacystus brandegeei**, 14, 177, 178  
*Nemacystus decipiens*, 177  
*Nemoderma*, 155  
**NEMODERMATAEAE**, 155  
**NEMODERMATALES**, 155  
*Neomeris*, 101

- Neomeris annulata*, 101  
*Neurocarpus undulata*, 121  
*Neurocarpus zonarioides*, 121, 122  
*Newbousia*, 106
- Ochlochaete dendroides*, 30
- Pachydictyon*, 118, 122, 126  
*Pachydictyon binghamiae*, 125, 126  
*Pachydictyon coriaceum*, 8, 124, 126
- Padina**, 7, 8, 106, 119, 120, 133, 165  
*Padina antillarum*, 135  
*Padina boergesenii*, 138  
***Padina caulescens***, 134, 135  
*Padina concrescens*, 133  
***Padina crispata***, 134, 135, 136, 139  
***Padina durvillei***, 118, 134, 136, 137, 138  
***Padina gymnospora***, 134, 138, 139  
***Padina mexicana* var. *mexicana***, 133, 139, 140, 141  
***Padina mexicana* var. *erecta***, 134, 140, 141  
*Padina ramonribae*, 133  
*Padina sanctae-crucis*, 133  
*Padina tetrastromatica*, 135, 136  
*Padina vickersiae*, 138
- Parvocaulis*, 102  
*Parvocaulis parvulus*, 102  
*Parvocaulis pusilla*, 102
- Petalonia binghamiae*, 189  
*Petalonia fascia*, 161, 189  
*Petroderma*, 155
- Phaeophila**, 30  
***Phaeophila dendroides***, 30, 31  
*Phaeophila engleri*, 30  
*Phaeophila ramulosa*, 30  
*Phaeophila vagans*, 30  
*Phaeophila viridis*, 25
- PHAEOPHILACEAE**, 30  
**PHAEOPHILALES**, 20, 30  
**PHAEOPHYCEAE**, 106, 107  
*Phycoseris lobata*, 36, 37
- Phyllodictyon**, 67, 68, 70, 74  
*Phyllodictyon anastomosans*, 70  
***Phyllodictyon pulcherrimum***, 70, 71  
***Phyllodictyon robustum***, 70, 72, 73, 74, 76
- Pilayella*, 186  
*Pocockiella variegata*, 118  
*Polyopes sinicola*, 109
- POLYPHYSAEAE**, 102  
*Polytretus reinboldii*, 187  
*Pringsbeimia marchantiae*, 14, 22  
*Pringsbeimiella marchantiae*, 22
- PROTISTA**, 106  
**PROTOCTISTA**, 106  
*Pseudolithoderma*, 156  
*Pseudolithoderma nigrum*, 156
- Pseudostruvea*, 72  
*Pseudostruvea robusta*, 72
- Pseudulvella*, 28  
*Pseudulvella americana*, 28  
*Pseudulvella applanata*, 28
- Punctaria*, 175
- PUNCTARIACEAE**, 174, 175
- Pylaiella**, 186  
*Pylaiella littoralis*, 186  
***Pylaiella* sp. A**, 186
- PYLAIELLACEAE**, 165, 186
- Ralfsia**, 156, 157, 159  
*Ralfsia californica*, 158, 160, 161  
***Ralfsia confusa***, 155, 158, 159, 160, 161  
*Ralfsia expansa*, 160  
***Ralfsia bancockii***, 158, 159, 160  
*Ralfsia hesperia*, 158  
*Ralfsia occidentalis*, 161  
***Ralfsia pacifica***, 158, 159, 160, 161  
*Ralfsia verrucosa*, 161  
*Ralfsia* subgen. *ralfsia*, 155
- RALFSIACEAE**, 108, 155, 156  
**RALFSIALES**, 107, 108, 155, 156  
*Rhipiliopsis mortensenii*, 94
- Rhizoclonium**, 50, 64  
*Rhizoclonium hieroglyphicum*, 64  
*Rhizoclonium implexum*, 65, 66  
*Rhizoclonium kernerii*, 65  
*Rhizoclonium kochianum*, 65  
*Rhizoclonium lubricum*, 66  
***Rhizoclonium riparium***, 64, 65, 66  
*Rhizoclonium riparium* f. *validum*, 66  
***Rhizoclonium riparium* var. *implexum***, 64, 65, 66  
***Rhizoclonium tortuosum***, 64, 66, 66
- Rosenvingea**, 189, 196, 197  
*Rosenvingea* aff. *santae-crucis*, 197  
***Rosenvingea antillarum***, 197, 198  
***Rosenvingea floridana***, 197, 198  
***Rosenvingea intricata***, 191, 197, 198, 199
- Rugulopteryx**, 118, 119, 120, 132, 141  
*Rugulopteryx marginata*, 141  
***Rugulopteryx okamurae***, 141, 142
- SARGASSACEAE**, 200  
***Sargassum***, 7, 8, 13, 106, 118, 138, 199, 200, 201, 213, 217  
***Sargassum acinacifolium***, 201, 206, 207, 210  
*Sargassum agardhianum*, 219  
*Sargassum alternato-pinnatum*, 209  
*Sargassum asymmetricum*, 209, 210  
***Sargassum brandegeei***, 14, 201, 206, 217, 218, 219  
*Sargassum bryantii*, 205  
*Sargassum californicum*, 213  
*Sargassum camouii*, 213
- Sargassum cylindrocarpum*, 200  
*Sargassum fuliginosum* var.? *californica*, 213  
*Sargassum guardiense*, 202  
***Sargassum herporhizum***, 201, 214, 216, 217, 219  
*Sargassum horridum*, 200, 210, 213  
*Sargassum howelli*, 200  
*Sargassum insulare*, 205  
***Sargassum johnstonii***, 12, 13, 201, 202, 203, 217  
***Sargassum johnstonii* f. *gracile***, 202, 204  
*Sargassum johnstonii* f. *laxius*, 202  
***Sargassum lapazeanum***, 201, 204, 205, 207, 209  
*Sargassum liebmanni*, 200, 214  
***Sargassum macdougalii***, 14, 201, 207, 208, 209  
*Sargassum muticum*, 200  
*Sargassum pacificum*, 200  
*Sargassum palmeri*, 200  
*Sargassum paniculatum*, 213  
*Sargassum polyacanthum* f. *americanum*, 210  
***Sargassum* sect. *herporhizum***, 214  
***Sargassum* sect. *johnstonii***, 201  
***Sargassum* sect. *lapazeanum***, 202  
***Sargassum* sect. *sinicola***, 210  
***Sargassum sinicola* subsp. *camouii***, 201, 213, 214, 215, 217  
***Sargassum sinicola* subsp. *sinicola***, 200, 201, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214  
*Sargassum sinicola* var. *camouii*, 213  
***Sargassum sonorensis***, 201, 207, 209, 209, 210  
***Sargassum* subgen. *Sargassum***, 201
- Scytosiphon*, 156, 194  
*Scytosiphon bullosus*, 190  
*Scytosiphon canaliculatus*, 156  
*Scytosiphon lomentaria*, 161
- SCYTOSIPHONACEAE**, 156, 161, 166, 171, 189, 194  
**SCYTOSIPHONALES**, 165  
**SCYTOHAMNACEAE**, 166  
**SIPHONALES**, 78  
**SIPHONOCLADACEAE**, 67, 74  
**SIPHONOCLADALES**, 49, 50, 67, 74  
*Siphonocladus*, 67, 68, 74  
*Siphonocladus pusillus*, 74  
*Siphonocladus wilbergii*, 74
- Spatoglossum**, 118, 119, 120, 142, 143  
*Spatoglossum* cf. *schroederi*, 144  
*Spatoglossum howellii*, 143, 144  
***Spatoglossum lanceolatum***, 143, 143  
***Spatoglossum subflabellatum***, 143, 144
- SPERMATOCHNACEAE**, 174  
**Sphacelaria**, 111, 112, 115  
*Sphacelaria brevicornis*, 112

- Sphacelaria californica*, 112, 114, 115, 116  
*Sphacelaria cornuta*, 112  
*Sphacelaria didichotoma*, 112  
*Sphacelaria divaricata*, 112  
*Sphacelaria furcigera*, 113, 114  
*Sphacelaria hancockii*, 112, 114, 115, 115, 116  
*Sphacelaria mexicana*, 116  
*Sphacelaria novae-hollandica*, 114  
*Sphacelaria plumula* var. *californica*, 114, 115  
*Sphacelaria rigidula*, 112, 113, 114  
*Sphacelaria* sp., 112  
*Sphacelaria subfusca*, 114  
*Sphacelaria* subgen. *Propagulifera*, 111, 112  
*Sphacelaria* subgen. *Propagulifera* sect. *Furcigerae*, 112  
*Sphacelaria* subgen. *Propagulifera* sect. *Tribuloides*, 114, 116  
*Sphacelaria tribuloides*, 112, 114, 116, 117
- SPHACELARIAEAE**, 111  
**SPHACELARIALES**, 107, 111  
*Sphacella*, 111  
*Sphaerotruchia divaricata*, 179
- SPOROCHNACEAE**, 150  
**SPOROCHNALES**, 107, 148  
*Sporochnus*, 13, 150  
*Sporochnus anomalus*, 150, 151, 152, 153  
*Sporochnus apodus*, 153, 155  
*Sporochnus bolleanus*, 150, 152  
*Sporochnus gaertnera*, 150  
*Sporochnus neushulii*, 150, 153, 154, 155  
*Sporochnus pedunculatus*, 150, 152, 153, 155
- Stilophora antillarum*, 197  
*Stilophora rhizodes*, 179  
*Stilophora tenella*, 179
- STRAMENOPILES**, 105  
*Streblonema*, 174, 177, 179, 180  
*Streblonema accidioides*, 179  
*Streblonema* sp. A, 180  
*Streblonema sphaericum*, 179  
*Streblonema transfixum*, 179, 179
- Stromatella*, 22, 26, 27  
*Stromatella monostromatica*, 27, 27
- Struvea*, 68, 70, 72  
*Struvea anastomosans*, 70  
*Struvea delicatula*, 70  
*Struvea pulcherrima*, 70  
*Struvea ramosa*, 70  
*Struvea* sp., 68  
*Struveopsis*, 70, 72  
*Struveopsis robusta*, 72
- Taonia*, 118  
*Taonia lennebacheriae*, 118
- TILOPTERIDACEAE**, 162  
**TILOPTERIDALES**, 162
- UDOTEACEAE**, 78, 94  
*Ulothrix*, 20
- ULOTRICHALES**, 20  
*Ulva*, 12, 31, 32, 33, 34  
*Ulva acanthophora*, 33, 41, 42  
*Ulva angusta*, 34, 35  
*Ulva californica*, 33, 34, 35  
*Ulva clathrata*, 34, 41, 43, 44  
*Ulva compressa*, 33, 44, 47  
*Ulva costata*, 37, 39  
*Ulva dactylifera*, 39  
*Ulva dichotoma*, 132  
*Ulva expansa*, 33  
*Ulva fasciata*, 33  
*Ulva fasciata* f. *costata*, 37  
*Ulva fasciata* f. *expansa*, 33  
*Ulva fasciata* f. *lobata*, 37  
*Ulva fasciata* f. *taeniata*, 39  
*Ulva flexuosa*, 34, 44, 45, 49  
*Ulva intestinalis*, 33, 46, 47  
*Ulva lactuca*, 33, 35, 36  
*Ulva lactuca* var. *rigida*, 40  
*Ulva linza*, 33, 47, 48  
*Ulva lobata*, 33, 36, 37  
*Ulva muscoides*, 43  
*Ulva nematoidea*, 33, 37, 38, 39
- Ulva paradoxa*, 43  
*Ulva pertusa*, 33  
*Ulva prolifera*, 49  
*Ulva radiata*, 34, 41, 47–49  
*Ulva ramulosa*, 41, 43  
*Ulva rigida*, 33, 39, 40  
*Ulva scagelii*, 34  
*Ulva* sect. *enteromorpha*, 31, 32, 33, 41  
*Ulva* sect. *ulva*, 31, 32, 33, 34, 41  
*Ulva sinuosa*, 192  
*Ulva taeniata*, 34, 39
- ULVACEAE**, 31  
**ULVALES**, 20, 21, 31  
*Ulvella*, 21, 27, 28  
*Ulvella appplanata*, 28  
*Ulvella lens*, 28, 29  
*Ulvella monostromatica*, 27  
*Ulvella setchellii*, 28, 29, 29, 30
- ULVELLACEAE**, 21  
**ULVOPHYCEAE**, 20  
*Undaria*, 179
- Valonia*, 67, 74, 75, 76  
*Valonia macrophysa*, 75  
*Valonia pachynema*, 76  
*Valonia pusilla*, 74  
*Valonia verticillata*, 75
- VALONIAEAE**, 67, 74, 75  
*Valoniopsis*, 72, 74, 75, 76, 77  
*Valoniopsis hancockii*, 76, 77  
*Valoniopsis pachynema*, 72, 76, 77
- Vaucheria*, 86, 106  
*Vaucheria marina*, 83  
*Vaughaniella*, 118, 133
- Willeella*, 72  
*Willeella mexicana*, 72, 73, 74
- Zanardinia*, 162  
*Zanardina prototypus*, 163  
*Zanardina typus*, 163
- Zonaria*, 118  
*Zonaria dichotoma* var. *intricata*, 128  
*Zonaria gymnospora*, 138
- ZONARIAEAE**, 118



## REQUIREMENTS FOR SMITHSONIAN SERIES PUBLICATION

ALL MANUSCRIPTS ARE REVIEWED FOR ADHERENCE TO THE SISP MANUSCRIPT PREPARATION AND STYLE GUIDE FOR AUTHORS (available on the “Submissions” page at [www.scholarlypress.si.edu](http://www.scholarlypress.si.edu)). Manuscripts not in compliance will be returned to the author. Manuscripts intended for publication in the Contributions Series are evaluated by a content review board and undergo substantive peer review. Accepted manuscripts are submitted for funding approval and scheduling to the Publications Oversight Board.

MINIMUM MANUSCRIPT LENGTH is thirty manuscript pages. If a manuscript is longer than average, an appropriate length will be determined during peer review and evaluation by the Content Review Board. Authors may be asked to edit manuscripts that are determined to be too long.

TEXT must be prepared in a recent version of Microsoft Word; use a Times font in 12 point for regular text; be double spaced; and have 1” margins. Each chapter/section must be saved in a separate file.

REQUIRED ELEMENTS are title page, abstract page, table of contents, main text, and reference section. See the SISP Manuscript Preparation and Style Guide for Authors for the order of all elements.

HEADINGS should be styled so different levels of headings are distinct from each other and so the organization of the manuscript is clear. Insert one line space above and one line space below all headings.

FRONT MATTER should include title page, abstract page, and table of contents. All other sections are optional. Abstracts must not exceed 300 words. Table of contents should include A-, B-, and C-level headings.

TABLES (numbered, with captions, stubs, rules) should be submitted in separate MS Word files; should include footnotes, if appropriate; should have rules only at top, bottom, and beneath column heads. Print outs of each table should accompany the manuscript to ensure correct layout of data. Tabulations within running text should not be numbered or formatted like formal tables, and should be included in the text of the manuscript.

FIGURE CAPTIONS should be provided in a separate MS Word file.

FIGURES (e.g., photographs, line art, maps) should be numbered sequentially (1, 2, 3, etc.) in the order called out; be placed throughout text, not at end of manuscript; have all components of composites lettered with lowercase letters and described in the caption; include a scale bar or scale description, if appropriate; include any legends in or on the figure rather than in a caption.

ART must not be embedded in the main text.

Figures must be original and submitted as individual TIFF or EPS files. Resolution for art files must be at least 300 dpi for grayscale and color images and at least 1200 dpi for line art. Electronic images should measure no more than 100% and no less than 75% of final size when published. JPG files will not be accepted. Color images significantly increase costs so should be included only if required. Funding for color art is subject to approval by SISP and the Publications Oversight Board.

IN-TEXT REFERENCES should be used rather than bibliographic notes and should follow the author-date system in the following format: “(author last name, year)” or “. . . author (year)”; “(author, year:page used within the text)” or “. . . author (year:page).” A full citation should be included in a “References” section.

ENDNOTES are to be used in lieu of footnotes and should be keyed manually into a separate MS Word file, in a section titled “Notes”. Notes should not contain bibliographic information. Manually type superscript numerals in text and use full-sized numerals at the beginning of each note in the “Notes” section. SISP will determine the best placement of the notes section, either at the end of each chapter or at the end of the main text.

REFERENCES should be in alphabetical order, and in chronological order for same-author entries. Each reference should be cited at least once in main text. Complete bibliographic information must be included in all citations (e.g., author/editor, title, subtitle, edition, volume, issue, pages, figures). For books, place of publication and publisher are required. For journals, use the parentheses system for volume(number):page-ination [e.g., “10(2):5–9”]. Do not use “et al.”; all authors/editors should be included in reference citations. In titles, capitalize first word, last word, first word after colon, and all other words except articles, conjunctions, and prepositions. Examples of the most common types of citations are provided in the SISP Manuscript Preparation and Author Style Guide.

For questions regarding the guidelines, please email SISP at [schol.press@si.edu](mailto:schol.press@si.edu).